To all our customers

Regarding the change of names mentioned in the document, such as Hitachi Electric and Hitachi XX, to Renesas Technology Corp.

The semiconductor operations of Mitsubishi Electric and Hitachi were transferred to Renesas Technology Corporation on April 1st 2003. These operations include microcomputer, logic, analog and discrete devices, and memory chips other than DRAMs (flash memory, SRAMs etc.) Accordingly, although Hitachi, Hitachi, Ltd., Hitachi Semiconductors, and other Hitachi brand names are mentioned in the document, these names have in fact all been changed to Renesas Technology Corp. Thank you for your understanding. Except for our corporate trademark, logo and corporate statement, no changes whatsoever have been made to the contents of the document, and these changes do not constitute any alteration to the contents of the document itself.

Renesas Technology Home Page: http://www.renesas.com

Renesas Technology Corp.
Customer Support Dept.
April 1, 2003

Cautions

Keep safety first in your circuit designs!

1. Renesas Technology Corporation puts the maximum effort into making semiconductor products better and more reliable, but there is always the possibility that trouble may occur with them. Trouble with semiconductors may lead to personal injury, fire or property damage.
   Remember to give due consideration to safety when making your circuit designs, with appropriate measures such as (i) placement of substitutive, auxiliary circuits, (ii) use of nonflammable material or (iii) prevention against any malfunction or mishap.

Notes regarding these materials

1. These materials are intended as a reference to assist our customers in the selection of the Renesas Technology Corporation product best suited to the customer's application; they do not convey any license under any intellectual property rights, or any other rights, belonging to Renesas Technology Corporation or a third party.
2. Renesas Technology Corporation assumes no responsibility for any damage, or infringement of any third-party's rights, originating in the use of any product data, diagrams, charts, programs, algorithms, or circuit application examples contained in these materials.
3. All information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs and algorithms represents information on products at the time of publication of these materials, and are subject to change by Renesas Technology Corporation without notice due to product improvements or other reasons. It is therefore recommended that customers contact Renesas Technology Corporation or an authorized Renesas Technology Corporation product distributor for the latest product information before purchasing a product listed herein.
   The information described here may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors.
   Renesas Technology Corporation assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability, or other loss rising from these inaccuracies or errors.
   Please also pay attention to information published by Renesas Technology Corporation by various means, including the Renesas Technology Corporation Semiconductor home page (http://www.renesas.com).
4. When using any or all of the information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs, and algorithms, please be sure to evaluate all information as a total system before making a final decision on the applicability of the information and products. Renesas Technology Corporation assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability or other loss resulting from the information contained herein.
5. Renesas Technology Corporation semiconductors are not designed or manufactured for use in a device or system that is used under circumstances in which human life is potentially at stake. Please contact Renesas Technology Corporation or an authorized Renesas Technology Corporation product distributor when considering the use of a product contained herein for any specific purposes, such as apparatus or systems for transportation, vehicular, medical, aerospace, nuclear, or undersea repeater use.
6. The prior written approval of Renesas Technology Corporation is necessary to reprint or reproduce in whole or in part these materials.
7. If these products or technologies are subject to the Japanese export control restrictions, they must be exported under a license from the Japanese government and cannot be imported into a country other than the approved destination.
   Any diversion or reexport contrary to the export control laws and regulations of Japan and/or the country of destination is prohibited.
8. Please contact Renesas Technology Corporation for further details on these materials or the products contained therein.

Hitachi 16-bit Single-Chip Microcomputer

H8S/2218 Series

H8S/2212 Series

H8S/2218
HD64F2218, HD64F2218U, HD6432217

H8S/2212
HD64F2212, HD64F2212U,
HD6432211, HD6432210

Hardware Manual

ADE-602-310
Rev. 1.0
02/27/03
Hitachi Ltd.

Cautions

1. Hitachi neither warrants nor grants licenses of any rights of Hitachi's or any third party's patent, copyright, trademark, or other intellectual property rights for information contained in this document. Hitachi bears no responsibility for problems that may arise with third party's rights, including intellectual property rights, in connection with use of the information contained in this document.
2. Products and product specifications may be subject to change without notice. Confirm that you have received the latest product standards or specifications before final design, purchase or use.
3. Hitachi makes every attempt to ensure that its products are of high quality and reliability. However, contact Hitachi's sales office before using the product in an application that demands especially high quality and reliability or where its failure or malfunction may directly threaten human life or cause risk of bodily injury, such as aerospace, aeronautics, nuclear power, combustion control, transportation, traffic, safety equipment or medical equipment for life support.
4. Design your application so that the product is used within the ranges guaranteed by Hitachi particularly for maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation conditions and other characteristics. Hitachi bears no responsibility for failure or damage when used beyond the guaranteed ranges. Even within the guaranteed ranges, consider normally foreseeable failure rates or failure modes in semiconductor devices and employ systemic measures such as fail-safes, so that the equipment incorporating Hitachi product does not cause bodily injury, fire or other consequential damage due to operation of the Hitachi product.
5. This product is not designed to be radiation resistant.
6. No one is permitted to reproduce or duplicate, in any form, the whole or part of this document without written approval from Hitachi.
7. Contact Hitachi's sales office for any questions regarding this document or Hitachi semiconductor products.

General Precautions on the Handling of Products

1. Treatment of NC Pins

Note: Do not connect anything to the NC pins.
The NC (not connected) pins are not connected to any of the internal circuitry; they are used as test pins or to reduce noise. If something is connected to the NC pins, the operation of the LSI is not guaranteed.

2. Treatment of Unused Input Pins

Note: Fix all unused input pins to high or low level.
Generally, the input pins of CMOS products are high-impedance input pins. If unused pins are in their open states, intermediate levels are induced by noise in the vicinity, a pass-through current flows internally, and a malfunction may occur.

3. Processing before Initialization

Note: When power is first supplied, the product's state is undefined. The states of internal circuits are undefined until full power is supplied throughout the chip and a low level is input on the reset pin. During the period where the states are undefined, the register settings and the output state of each pin are also undefined. Design your system so that it does not malfunction because of processing while it is in this undefined state. For those products which have a reset function, reset the LSI immediately after the power supply has been turned on.

4. Prohibition of access to undefined or reserved address

Note: Access to undefined or reserved addresses is prohibited.
The undefined or reserved addresses may be used to expand functions, or test registers may have been be allocated to these address. Do not access these registers: the system's operation is not guaranteed if they are accessed.

Configuration of this Manual

This manual comprises the following items:

1. Precautions in Relation to this Product
2. Configuration of this Manual
3. Overview
4. Table of Contents
5. Summary
6. Description of Functional Modules
   - CPU and System-Control Modules
   - On-chip Peripheral Modules

   The configuration of the functional description of each module differs according to the module. However, the generic style includes the following items:

   i) Features
   ii) I/O pins
   iii) Description of Registers
   iv) Description of Operation
   v) Usage: Points for Caution

When designing an application system that includes this LSI, take the points for caution into account. Each section includes points for caution in relation to the descriptions given, and points for caution in usage are given, as required, as the final part of each section.

7. List of Registers
8. Electrical Characteristics
9. Appendix
10. Main Revisions and Additions in this Edition (only for revised versions)

The list of revisions is a summary of points that have been revised or added to earlier versions. This does not include all of the revised contents. For details, see the actual locations in this manual.

11. Index

Preface

This LSI is a high-performance microcomputer (MCU) made up of the H8S/2000 CPU with Hitachi's original architecture as its core, and the peripheral functions required to configure a system.

The H8S/2000 CPU has an internal 32-bit configuration, sixteen 16-bit general registers, and a simple and optimized instruction set for high-speed operation. The H8S/2000 CPU can handle a 16-Mbyte linear address space.

This LSI is equipped with ROM, RAM, a direct memory access controller (DMAC), a bus master, a 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU), a watchdog timer (WDT), a realtime clock (RTC) a universal serial bus (USB), two types of serial communication interfaces (SCIs), an A/D converter, and I/O ports as on-chip peripheral modules for system configuration.

A single-power flash memory (F-ZTAT™*) version and masked ROM version are available for this LSI's ROM. The F-ZTAT version provides flexibility as it can be reprogrammed in no time to cope with all situations from the early stages of mass production to full-scale mass production. This is particularly applicable to application devices with specifications that will most probably change.

This manual describes this LSI's hardware.

Note: * F-ZTAT™ is a trademark of Hitachi, Ltd.

Target Users: This manual was written for users who will be using the H8S/2218 Series and H8S/2212 Series in the design of application systems. Target users are expected to understand the fundamentals of electrical circuits, logical circuits, and microcomputers.

Objective: This manual was written to explain the hardware functions and electrical characteristics of the H8S/2218 Series and H8S/2212 Series to the target users. Refer to the H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Programming Manual for a detailed description of the instruction set.

Notes on reading this manual:

- In order to understand the overall functions of the chip
  Read the manual according to the contents. This manual can be roughly categorized into parts on the CPU, system control functions, peripheral functions and electrical characteristics.
- In order to understand the details of the CPU's functions
  Read the H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Programming Manual.

- In order to understand the details of a register when its name is known

  Read the index that is the final part of the manual to find the page number of the entry on the register. The addresses, bits, and initial values of the registers are summarized in section 21, List of Registers.

  Examples:
  - Register name: The following notation is used for cases when the same or a similar function, e.g. 16-bit timer pulse unit or serial communication, is implemented on more than one channel: XXX_N (XXX is the register name and N is the channel number)
  - Bit order: The MSB is on the left and the LSB is on the right.
  - Number notation: Binary is B'xxxx, hexadecimal is H'xxxx.
  - Signal notation: An overbar is added to a low-active signal: $\overline{\text{xxxx}}$

Related Manuals: The latest versions of all related manuals are available from our web site. Please ensure you have the latest versions of all documents you require. http://www.hitachisemiconductor.com/

H8S/2218 Series, H8S/2212 Series manuals:

Manual Title	ADE No.
H8S/2218 Series, H8S/2212 Series Hardware Manual	This manual
H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Programming Manual	ADE-602-083

User's manuals for development tools:

Manual Title	ADE No.
H8S, H8/300 Series C/C++ Compiler, Assembler, Optimizing Linkage Editor User's Manual	ADE-702-247
H8S, H8/300 Series Simulator Debugger (for Windows) Users Manual	ADE-702-085
H8S, H8/300 Series Hitachi Embedded Workshop, Hitachi Debugging Interface Tutorial	ADE-702-231
Hitachi Embedded Workshop User's Manual	ADE-702-201

Contents

Section 1 Overview 1
1.1 Overview 1
1.2 Internal Block Diagram 3
1.3 Pin Arrangement 5
1.4 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode 7
1.5 Pin Functions 12

Section 2 CPU 21
2.1 Features 21
2.1.1 Differences between H8S/2600 CPU and H8S/2000 CPU 22
2.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU 23
2.1.3 Differences from H8/300H CPU 23
2.2 CPU Operating Modes 24
2.2.1 Normal Mode 24
2.2.2 Advanced Mode 26
2.3 Address Space 28
2.4 Register Configuration 29
2.4.1 General Registers 30
2.4.2 Program Counter (PC) 31
2.4.3 Extended Control Register (EXR) 31
2.4.4 Condition-Code Register (CCR) 32
2.4.5 Initial Register Values 33
2.5 Data Formats 33
2.5.1 General Register Data Formats 33
2.5.2 Memory Data Formats 35
2.6 Instruction Set 36
2.6.1 Table of Instructions Classified by Function 37
2.6.2 Basic Instruction Formats 46
2.7 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation 47
2.7.1 Register Direct—Rn 48
2.7.2 Register Indirect—@ERn 48
2.7.3 Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:32, ERn) 48
2.7.4 Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @-ERn 48
2.7.5 Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32 49
2.7.6 Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32 49
2.7.7 Program-Counter Relative—@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC) 50
2.7.8 Memory Indirect—@@aa:8 50
2.7.9 Effective Address Calculation 51
2.8 Processing States 53

2.9 Usage Notes 55
2.9.1 Note on TAS Instruction Usage 55
2.9.2 STM/LTM Instruction Usage 55
2.9.3 Note on Bit Manipulation Instructions 55

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes 57
3.1 Operating Mode Selection 57
3.2 Register Descriptions 58
3.2.1 Mode Control Register (MDCR) 58
3.2.2 System Control Register (SYSCR) 59
3.3 Operating Mode Descriptions 60
3.3.1 Mode 4 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series) 60
3.3.2 Mode 5 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series) 60
3.3.3 Mode 6 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series) 61
3.3.4 Mode 7 61
3.3.5 Pin Functions 62
3.4 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode 63

Section 4 Exception Handling 67
4.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority 67
4.2 Exception Sources and Exception Vector Table 67
4.3 Reset 69
4.3.1 Reset Types 69
4.3.2 Reset Exception Handling 70
4.3.3 Interrupts after Reset 72
4.3.4 State of On-Chip Peripheral Modules after Reset Release 72
4.4 Traces 73
4.5 Interrupts 73
4.6 Trap Instruction 74
4.7 Stack Status after Exception Handling 75
4.8 Notes on Use of the Stack 76

Section 5 Interrupt Controller 77
5.1 Features 77
5.2 Input/Output Pins 79
5.3 Register Descriptions 79
5.3.1 Interrupt Priority Registers A to G, J, K, M (IPRA to IPRG, IPRJ, IPRK, IPRM) 80
5.3.2 IRQ Enable Register (IER) 81
5.3.3 IRQ Sense Control Registers H and L (ISCRH, ISCRL) 82
5.3.4 IRQ Status Register (ISR) 84
5.4 Interrupt Sources 85
5.4.1 External Interrupts 85

5.4.2 Internal Interrupts 86
5.5 Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table 86
5.6 Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation 88
5.6.1 Interrupt Control Mode 0 88
5.6.2 Interrupt Control Mode 2 90
5.6.3 Interrupt Exception Handling Sequence 92
5.6.4 Interrupt Response Times 93
5.6.5 DMAC Activation by Interrupt 94
5.7 Usage Notes 96
5.7.1 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling 96
5.7.2 Instructions that Disable Interrupts 97
5.7.3 Times when Interrupts are Disabled 97
5.7.4 Interrupts during Execution of EEPMOV Instruction 97

Section 6 Bus Controller 99
6.1 Features 99
6.2 Input/Output Pins 101
6.3 Register Descriptions 102
6.3.1 Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR) 102
6.3.2 Access State Control Register (ASTCR) 103
6.3.3 Wait Control Registers H and L (WCRH, WCRL) 104
6.3.4 Bus Control Register H (BCRH) 108
6.3.5 Bus Control Register L (BCRL) 109
6.3.6 Pin Function Control Register (PFCR) 110
6.4 Bus Control 111
6.4.1 Area Divisions 111
6.4.2 Bus Specifications 112
6.4.3 Bus Interface for Each Area 113
6.4.4 Chip Select Signals 114
6.5 Basic Timing 114
6.5.1 On-Chip Memory (ROM, RAM) Access Timing 114
6.5.2 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Timing 115
6.5.3 External Address Space Access Timing 116
6.6 Basic Bus Interface 117
6.6.1 Data Size and Data Alignment (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series) 117
6.6.2 Valid Strobes 118
6.6.3 Basic Timing 119
6.6.4 Wait Control 128
6.7 Burst ROM Interface 130
6.7.1 Basic Timing 130
6.7.2 Wait Control 132
6.8 Idle Cycle 132
6.9 Bus Release 135

6.10 Bus Arbitration 137
6.10.1 Operation 137
6.10.2 Bus Transfer Timing 137
6.10.3 External Bus Release Usage Note 138
6.11 Resets and the Bus Controller 138

Section 7 DMA Controller 139
7.1 Features 139
7.2 Register Configuration 141
7.3 Register Descriptions 143
7.3.1 Memory Address Registers (MAR) 143
7.3.2 I/O Address Register (IOAR) 143
7.3.3 Execute Transfer Count Register (ETCR) 144
7.3.4 DMA Control Register (DMACR) 145
7.3.5 DMA Band Control Register (DMABCR) 151
7.4 Operation 158
7.4.1 Transfer Modes 158
7.4.2 Sequential Mode 159
7.4.3 Idle Mode 162
7.4.4 Repeat Mode 164
7.4.5 Normal Mode 167
7.4.6 Block Transfer Mode 170
7.4.7 DMAC Activation Sources 175
7.4.8 Basic DMAC Bus Cycles 176
7.4.9 DMAC Bus Cycles (Dual Address Mode) 177
7.4.10 DMAC Multi-Channel Operation 182
7.4.11 Relation between the DMAC and External Bus Requests 183
7.4.12 NMI Interrupts and DMAC 183
7.4.13 Forced Termination of DMAC Operation 184
7.4.14 Clearing Full Address Mode 184
7.5 Interrupts 185
7.6 Usage Notes 186
7.6.1 DMAC Register Access during Operation 186
7.6.2 Module Stop 187
7.6.3 Medium-Speed Mode 187
7.6.4 Activation Source Acceptance 188
7.6.5 Internal Interrupt after End of Transfer: 188
7.6.6 Channel Re-Setting 188

Section 8 I/O Ports 189
8.1 Port 1 194
8.1.1 Port 1 Data Direction Register (P1DDR) 194
8.1.2 Port 1 Data Register (P1DR) 195

8.1.3 Port 1 Register (PORT1) 195
8.1.4 Pin Functions 196
8.2 Port 3 201
8.2.1 Port 3 Data Direction Register (P3DDR) 201
8.2.2 Port 3 Data Register (P3DR) 202
8.2.3 Port 3 Register (PORT3) 202
8.2.4 Port 3 Open-Drain Control Register (P3ODR) 203
8.2.5 Pin Functions 203
8.3 Port 4 204
8.3.1 Port 4 Register (PORT4) 204
8.3.2 Pin Function 204
8.4 Port 7 205
8.4.1 Port 7 Data Direction Register (P7DDR) 205
8.4.2 Port 7 Data Register (P7DR) 206
8.4.3 Port 7 Register (PORT7) 207
8.4.4 Pin Functions 208
8.5 Port 9 209
8.5.1 Port 9 Register (PORT9) 209
8.5.2 Pin Function 209
8.6 Port A 210
8.6.1 Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR) 210
8.6.2 Port A Data Register (PADR) 211
8.6.3 Port A Register (PORTA) 211
8.6.4 Port A Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PAPCR) 212
8.6.5 Port A Open-Drain Control Register (PAODR) 212
8.6.6 Pin Functions 213
8.6.7 Port A Input Pull-Up MOS States 215
8.7 Port B (H8S/2218 Series Only) 216
8.7.1 Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR) 216
8.7.2 Port B Data Register (PBDR) 217
8.7.3 Port B Register (PORTB) 217
8.7.4 Port B Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PBPCR) 218
8.7.5 Port B Open-Drain Control Register (PBODR) 218
8.7.6 Pin Functions 219
8.7.7 Port B Input Pull-Up MOS States 221
8.8 Port C (H8S/2218 Series Only) 221
8.8.1 Port C Data Direction Register (PCDDR) 222
8.8.2 Port C Data Register (PCDR) 222
8.8.3 Port C Register (PORTC) 223
8.8.4 Port C Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PCPCR) 223
8.8.5 Port C Open-Drain Control Register (PCODR) 224
8.8.6 Pin Functions 224
8.8.7 Port C Input Pull-Up MOS States 226

8.9 Port D (H8S/2218 Series Only) 226
8.9.1 Port D Data Direction Register (PDDDR) 227
8.9.2 Port D Data Register (PDDR) 227
8.9.3 Port D Register (PORTD) 228
8.9.4 Port D Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PDPCR) 228
8.9.5 Pin Functions 229
8.9.6 Port D Input Pull-Up MOS States 230
8.10 Port E 231
8.10.1 Port E Data Direction Register (PEDDR) 231
8.10.2 Port E Data Register (PEDR) 232
8.10.3 Port E Register (PORTE) 232
8.10.4 Port E Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PEPCR) 233
8.10.5 Pin Functions 233
8.10.6 Port E Input Pull-Up MOS States 236
8.11 Port F 237
8.11.1 Port F Data Direction Register (PFDDR) 237
8.11.2 Port F Data Register (PFDR) 238
8.11.3 Port F Register (PORTF) 238
8.11.4 Pin Functions 239
8.12 Port G 241
8.12.1 Port G Data Direction Register (PGDDR) 242
8.12.2 Port G Data Register (PGDR) 243
8.12.3 Port G Register (PORTG) 243
8.12.4 Pin Functions 244

Section 9 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU) 247
9.1 Features 247
9.2 Input/Output Pins 251
9.3 Register Descriptions 252
9.3.1 Timer Control Register (TCR) 253
9.3.2 Timer Mode Register (TMDR) 256
9.3.3 Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR) 258
9.3.4 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER) 267
9.3.5 Timer Status Register (TSR) 268
9.3.6 Timer Counter (TCNT) 271
9.3.7 Timer General Register (TGR) 271
9.3.8 Timer Start Register (TSTR) 271
9.3.9 Timer Synchro Register (TSYR) 272
9.4 Interface to Bus Master 273
9.4.1 16-Bit Registers 273
9.4.2 8-Bit Registers 273
9.5 Operation 275
9.5.1 Basic Functions 275

9.5.2 Synchronous Operation 279
9.5.3 Buffer Operation 281
9.5.4 PWM Modes 284
9.5.5 Phase Counting Mode 288
9.6 Interrupts 293
9.6.1 Interrupt Source and Priority 293
9.6.2 DMAC Activation 294
9.6.3 A/D Converter Activation 294
9.7 Operation Timing 295
9.7.1 Input/Output Timing 295
9.7.2 Interrupt Signal Timing 299
9.8 Usage Notes 302

Section 10 Watchdog Timer 309
10.1 Features 309
10.2 Register Descriptions 310
10.2.1 Timer Counter (TCNT) 310
10.2.2 Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR) 310
10.2.3 Reset Control/Status Register (RSTCSR) 312
10.3 Operation 313
10.3.1 Watchdog Timer Mode 313
10.3.2 Timing of Setting of Watchdog Timer Overflow Flag (WOVF) 314
10.3.3 Interval Timer Mode 314
10.3.4 Timing of Setting of Overflow Flag (OVF) 315
10.4 Interrupts 315
10.5 Usage Notes 316
10.5.1 Notes on Register Access 316
10.5.2 Contention between Timer Counter (TCNT) Write and Increment 317
10.5.3 Changing Value of CKS2 to CKS0 318
10.5.4 Switching between Watchdog Timer Mode and Interval Timer Mode 318
10.5.5 Internal Reset in Watchdog Timer Mode 318

Section 11 Realtime Clock (RTC) 319
11.1 Features 319
11.2 Input/Output Pin 320
11.3 Register Descriptions 320
11.3.1 Second Data Register/Free Running Counter Data Register (RSECDR) 320
11.3.2 Minute Data Register (RMINDR) 321
11.3.3 Hour Data Register (RHRDR) 322
11.3.4 Day-of-Week Data Register (RWKDR) 323
11.3.5 RTC Control Register 1 (RTCCR1) 324
11.3.6 RTC Control Register 2 (RTCCR2) 325
11.3.7 Clock Source Select Register (RTCCSR) 326

11.3.8 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTP) 327
11.4 Operation 327
11.4.1 Initial Settings of Registers after Power-On 327
11.4.2 Resetting Procedure 328
11.4.3 Data Reading Procedure 329
11.5 Interrupt Source 330
11.6 Operating State in Each Mode 332

Section 12 Serial Communication Interface 333
12.1 Features 333
12.1.1 Block Diagram 334
12.2 Input/Output Pins 337
12.3 Register Descriptions 337
12.3.1 Receive Shift Register (RSR) 338
12.3.2 Receive Data Register (RDR) 338
12.3.3 Transmit Data Register (TDR) 338
12.3.4 Transmit Shift Register (TSR) 338
12.3.5 Serial Mode Register (SMR) 339
12.3.6 Serial Control Register (SCR) 342
12.3.7 Serial Status Register (SSR) 346
12.3.8 Smart Card Mode Register (SCMR) 352
12.3.9 Serial Extended Mode Register A_0 (SEMRA_0) 353
12.3.10 Serial Extended Mode Register B_0 (SEMRB_0) 355
12.3.11 Bit Rate Register (BRR) 362
12.4 Operation in Asynchronous Mode 369
12.4.1 Data Transfer Format 370
12.4.2 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode 371
12.4.3 Clock 372
12.4.4 SCI Initialization (Asynchronous Mode) 372
12.4.5 Data Transmission (Asynchronous Mode) 373
12.4.6 Serial Data Reception (Asynchronous Mode) 375
12.5 Multiprocessor Communication Function 378
12.5.1 Multiprocessor Serial Data Transmission 379
12.5.2 Multiprocessor Serial Data Reception 380
12.6 Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode 383
12.6.1 Clock 383
12.6.2 SCI Initialization (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 384
12.6.3 Serial Data Transmission (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 385
12.6.4 Serial Data Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 387
12.6.5 Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 388

12.7 Operation in Smart Card Interface 390
12.7.1 Pin Connection Example 390
12.7.2 Data Format (Except for Block Transfer Mode) 390
12.7.3 Block Transfer Mode 392
12.7.4 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin 392
12.7.5 Initialization 393
12.7.6 Serial Data Transmission (Except for Block Transfer Mode) 394
12.7.7 Serial Data Reception (Except for Block Transfer Mode) 397
12.7.8 Clock Output Control 398
12.8 SCI Select Function 400
12.9 Interrupts 402
12.9.1 Interrupts in Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode 402
12.9.2 Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode 403
12.10 Usage Notes 403
12.10.1 Break Detection and Processing (Asynchronous Mode Only) 403
12.10.2 Mark State and Break Detection (Asynchronous Mode Only) 403
12.10.3 Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operations (Clocked Synchronous Mode Only) 404
12.10.4 Restrictions on Use of DMAC 404
12.10.5 Operation in Case of Mode Transition 405
12.10.6 Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function: 407

Section 13 Boundary Scan Function 409
13.1 Features 409
13.2 Pin Configuration 410
13.3 Register Descriptions 411
13.3.1 Instruction Register (INSTR) 411
13.3.2 IDCODE Register (IDCODE) 413
13.3.3 BYPASS Register (BYPASS) 413
13.3.4 Boundary Scan Register (BSCANR) 413
13.4 Boundary Scan Function Operation 421
13.4.1 TAP Controller 421
13.5 Usage Notes 422

Section 14 Universal Serial Bus (USB) 425
14.1 Features 425
14.2 Input/Output Pins 427
14.3 Register Descriptions 428
14.3.1 USB Control Register (UCTLR) 429
14.3.2 USB DMAC Transfer Request Register (UDMAR) 431
14.3.3 USB Device Resume Register (UDRR) 432
14.3.4 USB Trigger Register 0 (UTRG0) 433
14.3.5 USB FIFO Clear Register 0 (UFCLR0) 434

14.3.6 USB Endpoint Stall Register 0 (UESTL0) 435
14.3.7 USB Endpoint Stall Register 1 (UESTL1) 436
14.3.8 USB Endpoint Data Register 0s (UEDR0s) 437
14.3.9 USB Endpoint Data Register 0i (UEDR0i) 437
14.3.10 USB Endpoint Data Register 0o (UEDR0o) 437
14.3.11 USB Endpoint Data Register 3 (UEDR3) 438
14.3.12 USB Endpoint Data Register 1 (UEDR1) 438
14.3.13 USB Endpoint Data Register 2 (UEDR2) 438
14.3.14 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 0o (UESZ0o) 439
14.3.15 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 2 (UESZ2) 439
14.3.16 USB Interrupt Flag Register 0 (UIFR0) 439
14.3.17 USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1) 441
14.3.18 USB Interrupt Flag Register 3 (UIFR3) 442
14.3.19 USB Interrupt Enable Register 0 (UIER0) 443
14.3.20 USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1) 444
14.3.21 USB Interrupt Enable Register 3 (UIER3) 444
14.3.22 USB Interrupt Select Register 0 (UISR0) 445
14.3.23 USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1) 445
14.3.24 USB Interrupt Select Register 3 (UISR3) 446
14.3.25 USB Data Status Register (UDSR) 446
14.3.26 USB Configuration Value Register (UCVR) 447
14.3.27 USB Test Register 0 (UTSTR0) 448
14.3.28 USB Test Register 1 (UTSTR1) 449
14.3.29 USB Test Registers 2 and A to F (UTSTR2, UTSTRA to UTSTRF) 451
14.3.30 Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) 451
14.3.31 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTAP) 452
14.4 Interrupt Sources 453
14.5 Communication Operation 455
14.5.1 Initialization 455
14.5.2 USB Cable Connection/Disconnection 456
14.5.3 Suspend and Resume Operations 460
14.5.4 Control Transfer 463
14.5.5 Interrupt-In Transfer: (Endpoint 3) 469
14.5.6 Bulk-In Transfer (Dual FIFOs): (Endpoint 1) 470
14.5.7 Bulk-Out Transfer (Dual FIFOs): (Endpoint 2) 471
14.5.8 Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands 472
14.5.9 Stall Operations 473
14.6 DMA Transfer Specifications 476
14.6.1 Overview 476
14.6.2 On-Chip DMAC Settings 476
14.6.3 EP1 DMA Transfer 476
14.6.4 EP2 DMA Transfer 476
14.6.5 EP1PKTE and EP2RDFN Bits in UTRG0 477

14.7 USB External Circuit Example 478
14.8 Usage Notes 480
14.8.1 E6000 Usage Notes 480
14.8.2 Operating Frequency 480
14.8.3 Bus Interface 480
14.8.4 Setup Data Reception 480
14.8.5 FIFO Clear 481
14.8.6 $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ Interrupt 481
14.8.7 Data Register Overread or Overwrite 481
14.8.8 Reset 482
14.8.9 EP0 Interrupt Sources Assignment 482
14.8.10 Level Shifter for VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ Pins 482
14.8.11 Read and Write to USB Endpoint Data Register 483
14.8.12 Restrictions on Entering and Canceling Power-Down Mode 483
14.8.13 USB External Circuit Example 485

Section 15 A/D Converter 487
15.1 Features 487
15.2 Input/Output Pins 489
15.3 Register Descriptions 489
15.3.1 A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDRD) 490
15.3.2 A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR) 490
15.3.3 A/D Control Register (ADCR) 492
15.4 Interface to Bus Master 493
15.5 Operation 494
15.5.1 Single Mode 494
15.5.2 Scan Mode 495
15.5.3 Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time 496
15.5.4 External Trigger Input Timing 497
15.6 Interrupts 498
15.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions 498
15.8 Usage Notes 500
15.8.1 Permissible Signal Source Impedance 500
15.8.2 Influences on Absolute Precision 500
15.8.3 Range of Analog Power Supply and Other Pin Settings 501
15.8.4 Notes on Board Design 501

Section 16 RAM 503

Section 17 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version) 505
17.1 Features 505
17.2 Mode Transitions 507
17.3 Block Configuration 510

17.4 Input/Output Pins 511
17.5 Register Descriptions....511
17.5.1 Flash Memory Control Register 1 (FLMCR1) 512
17.5.2 Flash Memory Control Register 2 (FLMCR2) 513
17.5.3 Erase Block Register 1 (EBR1) 514
17.5.4 Erase Block Register 2 (EBR2) 514
17.5.5 RAM Emulation Register (RAMER) 515
17.5.6 Flash Memory Power Control Register (FLPWCR) 516
17.5.7 Serial Control Register X (SCRX) 516
17.6 On-Board Programming Modes 517
17.6.1 SCI Boot Mode (HD64F2218 and HD64F2212) 517
17.6.2 USB Boot Mode (HD64F2218U and HD64F2212U) 521
17.6.3 Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode 525
17.7 Flash Memory Emulation in RAM 526
17.8 Flash Memory Programming/Erasing 528
17.8.1 Program/Program-Verify 528
17.8.2 Erase/Erase-Verify 530
17.9 Program/Erase Protection 532
17.9.1 Hardware Protection 532
17.9.2 Software Protection 532
17.9.3 Error Protection 532
17.10 Interrupt Handling when Programming/Erasing Flash Memory 533
17.11 Programmer Mode 533
17.12 Power-Down States for Flash Memory 534
17.13 Flash Memory Programming and Erasing Precautions 535
17.14 Note on Switching from F-ZTAT Version to Masked ROM Version 537

Section 18 Masked ROM 539
18.1 Features 539

Section 19 Clock Pulse Generator 541
19.1 Register Descriptions....542
19.1.1 System Clock Control Register (SCKCR) 542
19.1.2 Low Power Control Register (LPWRCR) 543
19.2 System Clock Oscillator 545
19.2.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator 545
19.2.2 Inputting External Clock 546
19.3 Duty Adjustment Circuit 547
19.4 Medium-Speed Clock Divider 547
19.5 Bus Master Clock Selection Circuit 547
19.6 Subclock Oscillator 548
19.6.1 Connecting 32.768kHz Crystal Resonator 548
19.6.2 Handling Pins When Subclock Not Required 548

19.7 Subclock Waveform Generation Circuit 549
19.8 PLL Circuit for USB 549
19.9 Usage Notes 549
19.9.1 Note on Crystal Resonator 549
19.9.2 Note on Board Design 549
19.9.3 Note on Switchover of External Clock 550

Section 20 Power-Down Modes 553
20.1 Register Descriptions 557
20.1.1 Standby Control Register (SBYCR) 557
20.1.2 Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR_1) 559
20.1.3 Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC) 560
20.1.4 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTP) 561
20.2 Medium-Speed Mode 562
20.3 Sleep Mode 563
20.3.1 Transition to Sleep Mode 563
20.3.2 Exiting Sleep Mode 563
20.4 Software Standby Mode 563
20.4.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode 563
20.4.2 Clearing Software Standby Mode 564
20.4.3 Setting Oscillation Stabilization Time after Clearing Software Standby Mode 564
20.4.4 Software Standby Mode Application Example 565
20.5 Hardware Standby Mode 566
20.5.1 Transition to Hardware Standby Mode 566
20.5.2 Clearing Hardware Standby Mode 566
20.5.3 Hardware Standby Mode Timing 567
20.5.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timings 567
20.6 Module Stop Mode 568
20.7 Watch Mode 569
20.7.1 Transition to Watch Mode 569
20.7.2 Exiting Watch Mode 569
20.8 Sub-Sleep Mode 570
20.8.1 Transition to Sleep Mode 570
22.8.2 Exiting Sub-Sleep Mode 570
20.9 Sub-Active Mode 571
20.9.1 Transition to Sub-Active Mode 571
22.9.2 Exiting Sub-Active Mode 571
20.10 Direct Transitions 572
20.10.1 Direct Transitions from High-Speed Mode to Sub-Active Mode 572
20.10.2 Direct Transitions from Sub-Active Mode to High-Speed Mode 572
20.11 φ Clock Output Disabling Function 572
20.12 Usage Notes 573
20.12.1 I/O Port Status 573

20.12.2 Current Dissipation during Oscillation Stabilization Wait Period....573
20.12.3 DMAC Module Stop....573
20.12.4 On-Chip Peripheral Module Interrupt....573

Section 21 List of Registers....575
21.1 Register Addresses (Address Order)....576
21.2 Register Bits....583
21.3 Register States in Each Operating Mode....591

Section 22 Electrical Characteristics....599
22.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings....599
22.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range....600
22.3 DC Characteristics....601
22.4 AC Characteristics....604
22.4.1 Clock Timing....605
22.4.2 Control Signal Timing....607
22.4.3 Bus Timing....609
22.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules....615
22.5 UBS Characteristics....619
22.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics....620
22.7 Flash Memory Characteristics....621
22.8 Usage Note....622

Appendix....623
A. I/O Port States in Each Processing State....623
B. Product Model Lineup....627
C. Package Dimensions....628

Index....631

Figures

Section 1 Overview
Figure 1.1 Internal Block Diagram of H8S/2218 Series 3
Figure 1.2 Internal Block Diagram of H8S/2212 Series 4
Figure 1.3 Pin Arrangement of H8S/2218 Series (TFP-100G) 5
Figure 1.4 Pin Arrangement of H8S/2212 Series (FP-64E) 6

Section 2 CPU
Figure 2.1 Exception Vector Table (Normal Mode) 25
Figure 2.2 Stack Structure in Normal Mode 25
Figure 2.3 Exception Vector Table (Advanced Mode) 26
Figure 2.4 Stack Structure in Advanced Mode 27
Figure 2.5 Memory Map 28
Figure 2.6 CPU Registers 29
Figure 2.7 Usage of General Registers 30
Figure 2.8 Stack 31
Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (1) 34
Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (2) 34
Figure 2.10 Memory Data Formats 35
Figure 2.11 Instruction Formats (Examples) 47
Figure 2.12 Branch Address Specification in Memory Indirect Mode 50
Figure 2.13 State Transitions 54

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes
Figure 3.1 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2218 and HD64F2218U 63
Figure 3.2 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432217 64
Figure 3.3 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2212, HD64F2212U, HD6432211, and HD6432210 65

Section 4 Exception Handling
Figure 4.1 Reset Sequence (Modes 2 and 3: Not available in this LSI) 71
Figure 4.2 Reset Sequence (Mode 4) 72
Figure 4.3 Stack Status after Exception Handling 75
Figure 4.4 Operation when SP Value Is Odd 76

Section 5 Interrupt Controller
Figure 5.1 Block Diagram of Interrupt Controller 78
Figure 5.2 Block Diagram of Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 85
Figure 5.3 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 0 89
Figure 5.4 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 2 91
Figure 5.5 Interrupt Exception Handling 92
Figure 5.6 Interrupt Control for DMAC 94
Figure 5.7 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling 96

Section 6 Bus Controller

Figure 6.1 Block Diagram of Bus Controller 100
Figure 6.2 Overview of Area Divisions 111
Figure 6.3 CSn Signal Output Timing (n = 0 to 5) 114
Figure 6.4 On-Chip Memory Access Cycle 115
Figure 6.5 Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access 115
Figure 6.6 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Cycle 116
Figure 6.7 Pin States during On-Chip Peripheral Module Access 116
Figure 6.8 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (8-Bit Access Space) 117
Figure 6.9 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (16-Bit Access Space) 118
Figure 6.10 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 2-State Access Space in the H8S/2218 Series 119
Figure 6.11 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6) 120
Figure 6.12 Bus Timing for Area 6 and RTC 121
Figure 6.13 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access) 122
Figure 6.14 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access) 123
Figure 6.15 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (3) (Word Access) 124
Figure 6.16 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access) 125
Figure 6.17 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access) 126
Figure 6.18 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (3) (Word Access) 127
Figure 6.19 Example of Wait State Insertion Timing 129
Figure 6.20 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When AST0 = BRSTS1 = 1) 131
Figure 6.21 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When AST0 = BRSTS1 = 0) 131
Figure 6.22 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (1) 132
Figure 6.23 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (2) 133
Figure 6.24 Relationship between Chip Select (CS) and Read (RD) 134
Figure 6.25 Bus-Released State Transition Timing 136

Section 7 DMA Controller

Figure 7.1 Block Diagram of DMAC 140
Figure 7.2 Operation in Sequential Mode 160
Figure 7.3 Example of Sequential Mode Setting Procedure 161
Figure 7.4 Operation in Idle Mode 162
Figure 7.5 Example of Idle Mode Setting Procedure 163
Figure 7.6 Operation in Repeat mode 165
Figure 7.7 Example of Repeat Mode Setting Procedure 166
Figure 7.8 Operation in Normal Mode 168
Figure 7.9 Example of Normal Mode Setting Procedure 169
Figure 7.10 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 0) 171
Figure 7.11 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 1) 172
Figure 7.12 Operation Flow in Block Transfer Mode 173
Figure 7.13 Example of Block Transfer Mode Setting Procedure 174
Figure 7.14 Example of DMA Transfer Bus Timing 176
Figure 7.15 Example of Short Address Mode Transfer 177

Figure 7.16 Example of Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal) Transfer 178
Figure 7.17 Example of Full Address Mode (Burst Mode) Transfer 178
Figure 7.18 Example of Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode) Transfer 179
Figure 7.19 Example of DREQ Level Activated Normal Mode Transfer 180
Figure 7.20 Example of DREQ Level Activated Block Transfer Mode Transfer 181
Figure 7.21 Example of Multi-Channel Transfer 182
Figure 7.22 Example of Procedure for Continuing Transfer on Channel Interrupted by NMI Interrupt 183
Figure 7.23 Example of Procedure for Forcibly Terminating DMAC Operation 184
Figure 7.24 Example of Procedure for Clearing Full Address Mode 184
Figure 7.25 Block Diagram of Transfer End/Transfer Break Interrupt 185
Figure 7.26 DMAC Register Update Timing 186
Figure 7.27 Contention between DMAC Register Update and CPU Read 187

Section 9 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

Figure 9.1 Block Diagram of TPU 248
Figure 9.2 16-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCNT (16 Bits)] 273
Figure 9.3 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR (Upper 8 Bits)] 273
Figure 9.4 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TMDR (Lower 8 Bits)] 274
Figure 9.5 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR and TMDR (16 Bits)] 274
Figure 9.6 Example of Counter Operation Setting Procedure 275
Figure 9.7 Free-Running Counter Operation 276
Figure 9.8 Periodic Counter Operation 276
Figure 9.9 Example of Setting Procedure for Waveform Output by Compare Match 277
Figure 9.10 Example of 0 Output/1 Output Operation 277
Figure 9.11 Example of Toggle Output Operation 278
Figure 9.12 Example of Input Capture Operation Setting Procedure 278
Figure 9.13 Example of Input Capture Operation 279
Figure 9.14 Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure 280
Figure 9.15 Example of Synchronous Operation 281
Figure 9.16 Compare Match Buffer Operation 281
Figure 9.17 Input Capture Buffer Operation 282
Figure 9.18 Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure 282
Figure 9.19 Example of Buffer Operation (1) 283
Figure 9.20 Example of Buffer Operation (2) 283
Figure 9.21 Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure 285
Figure 9.22 Example of PWM Mode Operation (1) 285
Figure 9.23 Example of PWM Mode Operation (2) 286
Figure 9.24 Example of PWM Mode Operation (3) 287
Figure 9.25 Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure 288
Figure 9.26 Example of Phase Counting Mode 1 Operation 289
Figure 9.27 Example of Phase Counting Mode 2 Operation 290
Figure 9.28 Example of Phase Counting Mode 3 Operation 291

Figure 9.29 Example of Phase Counting Mode 4 Operation 292
Figure 9.30 Count Timing in Internal Clock Operation 295
Figure 9.31 Count Timing in External Clock Operation 295
Figure 9.32 Output Compare Output Timing 296
Figure 9.33 Input Capture Input Signal Timing 296
Figure 9.34 Counter Clear Timing (Compare Match) 297
Figure 9.35 Counter Clear Timing (Input Capture) 297
Figure 9.36 Buffer Operation Timing (Compare Match) 298
Figure 9.37 Buffer Operation Timing (Input Capture) 298
Figure 9.38 TGI Interrupt Timing (Compare Match) 299
Figure 9.39 TGI Interrupt Timing (Input Capture) 299
Figure 9.40 TCIV Interrupt Setting Timing 300
Figure 9.41 TCIU Interrupt Setting Timing 300
Figure 9.42 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by CPU 301
Figure 9.43 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by DMAC Activation 301
Figure 9.44 Phase Difference, Overlap, and Pulse Width in Phase Counting Mode 302
Figure 9.45 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations 303
Figure 9.46 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations 303
Figure 9.47 Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match 304
Figure 9.48 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match 304
Figure 9.49 Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture 305
Figure 9.50 Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture 305
Figure 9.51 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture 306
Figure 9.52 Contention between Overflow and Counter Clearing 306
Figure 9.53 Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow 307

Section 10 Watchdog Timer

Figure 10.1 Block Diagram of WDT 309
Figure 10.2 Operation in Watchdog Timer Mode 313
Figure 10.3 Timing of WOVF Setting 314
Figure 10.4 Operation in Interval Timer Mode 314
Figure 10.5 Timing of OVF Setting 315
Figure 10.6 Format of Data Written to TCNT and TCSR 316
Figure 10.7 Format of Data Written to RSTCSR (Example of WDT0) 317
Figure 10.8 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment 317

Section 11 Realtime Clock (RTC)

Figure 11.1 Block Diagram of RTC 319
Figure 11.2 Definition of Time Expression 324
Figure 11.3 Initial Setting Procedure 327
Figure 11.4 Resetting Procedure 328
Figure 11.5 Example: Reading of Inaccurate Time Data 329
Figure 11.6 Initializing Procedure in Using RTC Interrupt 331
Figure 11.7 Example of RTC Interrupt Handling Routine 331

Section 12 Serial Communication Interface

Figure 12.1 Block Diagram of SCI_0 335
Figure 12.2 Block Diagram ofSCI_2 336
Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (1) 357
Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (2) 358
Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (3) 359
Figure 12.4 Example of Base Clock when TPU Clock is Input (1) 360
Figure 12.4 Example of Base Clock when TPU Clock is Input (2) 361
Figure 12.5 Data Format in Asynchronous Communication
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, Two Stop Bits) 369
Figure 12.6 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode 371
Figure 12.7 Relationship between Output Clock and Transfer Data Phase
(Asynchronous Mode) 372
Figure 12.8 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart 373
Figure 12.9 Example of Operation in Transmission in Asynchronous Mode
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit) 374
Figure 12.10 Sample Serial Transmission Flowchart 374
Figure 12.11 Example of SCI Operation in Reception
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit) 375
Figure 12.12 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (1) 376
Figure 12.12 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (2) 377
Figure 12.13 Example of Communication Using Multiprocessor Format
(Transmission of Data H'AA to Receiving Station A) 378
Figure 12.14 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Transmission Flowchart 379
Figure 12.15 Example of SCI Operation in Reception
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Multiprocessor Bit, One Stop Bit) 380
Figure 12.16 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (1) 381
Figure 12.16 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (2) 382
Figure 12.17 Data Format in Synchronous Communication (For LSB-First) 383
Figure 12.18 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart 384
Figure 12.19 Sample SCI Transmission Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode 385
Figure 12.20 Sample Serial Transmission Flowchart 386
Figure 12.21 Example of SCI Operation in Reception 387
Figure 12.22 Sample Serial Reception Flowchart 388
Figure 12.23 Sample Flowchart of Simultaneous Serial Transmit and Receive Operations 389
Figure 12.24 Schematic Diagram of Smart Card Interface Pin Connections 390
Figure 12.25 Normal Smart Card Interface Data Format 391
Figure 12.26 Direct Convention (SDIR = SINV = O/E = 0) 391
Figure 12.27 Inverse Convention (SDIR = SINV = O/E = 1) 391
Figure 12.28 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Smart Card Mode
(Using Clock of 372 Times the Transfer Rate) 393
Figure 12.29 Retransfer Operation in SCI Transmit Mode 395
Figure 12.30 TEND Flag Generation Timing in Transmission Operation 395

Figure 12.31 Example of Transmission Processing Flow 396
Figure 12.32 Retransfer Operation in SCI Receive Mode 397
Figure 12.33 Example of Reception Processing Flow 398
Figure 12.34 Timing for Fixing Clock Output Level 398
Figure 12.35 Clock Halt and Restart Procedure 399
Figure 12.36 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function 400
Figure 12.37 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function 401
Figure 12.38 Example of Clocked Synchronous Transmission by DMAC 404
Figure 12.39 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Transmission 405
Figure 12.40 Port Pin State of Asynchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock 406
Figure 12.41 Port Pin State of Synchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock 406
Figure 12.42 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Reception 407
Figure 12.43 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function 408
Figure 12.44 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function (Example of Preventing Low-Level Output) 408

Section 13 Boundary Scan Function

Figure 13.1 Block Diagram of Boundary Scan Function 409
Figure 13.2 Boundary Scan Register Configuration 414
Figure 13.3 TAP Controller Status Transition 421
Figure 13.4 Recommended Reset Signal Design 422
Figure 13.5 Serial Data Input/Output 422

Section 14 Universal Serial Bus (USB)

Figure 14.1 Block Diagram of USB 426
Figure 14.2 USB Initialization 455
Figure 14.3 USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is not Used) 456
Figure 14.4 USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is Used) 457
Figure 14.5 USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is not Used) 458
Figure 14.6 USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is Used) 459
Figure 14.7 Suspend Operation 460
Figure 14.8 Resume Operation from Up-Stream 461
Figure 14.9 Remote-Wakeup 462
Figure 14.10 Control Transfer Stage Configuration 463
Figure 14.11 Setup Stage Operation 464
Figure 14.12 Data Stage Operation (Control-In) 465
Figure 14.13 Data Stage Operation (Control-Out) 466
Figure 14.14 Status Stage Operation (Control-In) 467
Figure 14.15 Status Stage Operation (Control-Out) 468
Figure 14.16 EP3 Interrupt-In Transfer Operation 469

Figure 14.17 EP1 Bulk-In Transfer Operation 470
Figure 14.18 EP2 Bulk-Out Transfer Operation 471
Figure 14.19 Forcible Stall by Firmware 474
Figure 14.20 Automatic Stall by USB Function Module 475
Figure 14.21 EP1PKTE Operation in UTRG0 477
Figure 14.22 EP2RDFN Operation in UTRG0 478
Figure 14.23 USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode 478
Figure 14.24 USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode 479
Figure 14.25 Flowchart 484
Figure 14.26 Timing Chart 485

Section 15 A/D Converter

Figure 15.1 Block Diagram of A/D Converter 488
Figure 15.2 Access to ADDR (When Reading H'AA40) 493
Figure 15.3 A/D Conversion Timing (Single-Chip Mode, Channel 1 Selected) 494
Figure 15.4 A/D Conversion Timing (Scan Mode, Channels AN0 to AN3 Selected) 495
Figure 15.5 A/D Conversion Timing 496
Figure 15.6 External Trigger Input Timing 497
Figure 15.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (1) 499
Figure 15.8 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (2) 499
Figure 15.9 Example of Analog Input Circuit 500
Figure 15.10 Analog Input Pin Equivalent Circuit 501

Section 17 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version)

Figure 17.1 Block Diagram of Flash Memory 506
Figure 17.2 Flash Memory State Transitions 507
Figure 17.3 Boot Mode (Sample) 508
Figure 17.4 User Program Mode (Sample) 509
Figure 17.5 Flash Memory Block Configuration 510
Figure 17.6 System Configuration in Boot Mode 518
Figure 17.7 System Configuration Diagram when Using USB Boot Mode 522
Figure 17.8 Programming/Erasing Flowchart Example In User Program Mode 525
Figure 17.9 Flowchart for Flash Memory Emulation in RAM 526
Figure 17.10 Example of RAM Overlap Operation 527
Figure 17.11 Program/Program-Verify Flowchart 529
Figure 17.12 Erase/Erase-Verify Flowchart 531
Figure 17.13 Memory Map in Programmer Mode 533

Section 18 Masked ROM

Figure 18.1 Block Diagram of On-Chip Masked ROM (64 kbytes) 539

Section 19 Clock Pulse Generator

Figure 19.1 Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator 541
Figure 19.2 Connection of Crystal Resonator (Example) 545
Figure 19.3 Crystal Resonator Equivalent Circuit 545

Figure 19.4 External Clock Input (Examples) 546
Figure 19.5 External Clock Input Timing 547
Figure 19.6 Example Connection of 32.768kHz Quartz Oscillator 548
Figure 19.7 Equivalence Circuit for 32.768kHz Oscillator 548
Figure 19.8 Pin Handling When Subclock Not Required 548
Figure 19.9 Note on Board Design of Oscillator Circuit 550
Figure 19.10 Example of External Clock Switching Circuit 550
Figure 19.11 Example of External Clock Switchover Timing 551

Section 20 Power-Down Modes

Figure 20.1 Mode Transition Diagram 555
Figure 20.2 Medium-Speed Mode Transition and Clearance Timing 562
Figure 20.3 Software Standby Mode Application Example 565
Figure 20.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timing (Example) 567
Figure 20.5 Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode 567
Figure 20.6 Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode 568

Section 22 Electrical Characteristics

Figure 22.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges 600
Figure 22.2 Output Load Circuit 604
Figure 22.3 System Clock Timing 606
Figure 22.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing 606
Figure 22.5 Reset Input Timing 608
Figure 22.6 Interrupt Input Timing 608
Figure 22.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access) 611
Figure 22.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access) 612
Figure 22.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State) 613
Figure 22.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access) 614
Figure 22.11 External Bus Release Timing 614
Figure 22.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing 617
Figure 22.13 TPU Input/Output Timing 617
Figure 22.14 TPU Clock Input Timing 617
Figure 22.15 SCK Clock Input Timing 617
Figure 22.16 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode) 618
Figure 22.17 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing 618
Figure 22.18 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing 618
Figure 22.19 Boundary Scan TRST Input Timing (At Reset Hold) 618
Figure 22.20 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing 618
Figure 22.21 Data Signal Timing 619
Figure 22.22 Test Load Circuit 620

Appendix

Figure C.1 TFP-100 Package Dimensions 628
Figure C.2 FP-64E Package Dimensions 629

Tables

Section 1 Overview
Table 1.1 Pin functions in Each Operating Mode for H8S/2218 Series 7
Table 1.2 Pin functions in Each Operating Mode for H8S/2212 Series 10

Section 2 CPU
Table 2.1 Instruction Classification 36
Table 2.2 Operation Notation 37
Table 2.3 Data Transfer Instructions 38
Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (1) 39
Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (2) 40
Table 2.5 Logic Operations Instructions 41
Table 2.6 Shift Instructions 41
Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (1) 42
Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (2) 43
Table 2.8 Branch Instructions 44
Table 2.9 System Control Instruction 45
Table 2.10 Block Data Transfer Instruction 46
Table 2.11 Addressing Modes 47
Table 2.12 Absolute Address Access Ranges 49
Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (1) 51
Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (2) 52

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes
Table 3.1 MCU Operating Mode Selection 57
Table 3.2 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode 62

Section 4 Exception Handling
Table 4.1 Exception Types and Priority 67
Table 4.2 Exception Handling Vector Table 68
Table 4.3 Reset Types 69
Table 4.4 Status of CCR and EXR after Trace Exception Handling 73
Table 4.5 Status of CCR and EXR after Trap Instruction Exception Handling 74

Section 5 Interrupt Controller
Table 5.1 Pin Configuration 79
Table 5.2 Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Interrupt Priorities 86
Table 5.3 Interrupt Control Modes 88
Table 5.4 Interrupt Response Times 93
Table 5.5 Number of States in Interrupt Handling Routine Execution Statuses 94
Table 5.6 Interrupt Source Selection and Clearing Control 95

Section 6 Bus Controller
Table 6.1 Pin Configuration 101

Table 6.2 Bus Specifications for Each Area (Basic Bus Interface) 113
Table 6.3 Data Buses Used and Valid Strobes 118
Table 6.4 Pin States in Idle Cycle 134
Table 6.5 Pin States in Bus Released State 135

Section 7 DMA Controller

Table7.1 Short Address Mode and Full Address Mode (For 1 Channel: Example of Channel 0) 142
Table 7.2 DMAC Transfer Modes 158
Table 7.3 Register Functions in Sequential Mode 159
Table 7.4 Register Functions in Idle Mode 162
Table 7.5 Register Functions in Repeat Mode 164
Table 7.6 Register Functions in Normal Mode 167
Table 7.7 Register Functions in Block Transfer Mode 170
Table 7.8 DMAC Activation Sources 175
Table 7.9 DMAC Channel Priority Order 182
Table 7.10 Interrupt Source Priority Order 185

Section 8 I/O Ports

Table 8.1 Port Functions of H8S/2218 Series 189
Table 8.2 Port Functions of H8S/2212 Series 192
Table 8.3 P17 Pin Function 196
Table 8.4 P16 Pin Function 196
Table 8.5 P15 Pin Function 196
Table 8.6 P14 Pin Function 197
Table 8.7 P13 Pin Function 197
Table 8.8 P12 Pin Function 197
Table 8.9 P11 Pin Function 198
Table 8.10 P10 Pin Function 198
Table 8.11 P17 Pin Function 198
Table 8.12 P16 Pin Function 199
Table 8.13 P15 Pin Function 199
Table 8.14 P14 Pin Function 199
Table 8.15 P13 Pin Function 200
Table 8.16 P12 Pin Function 200
Table 8.17 P11 Pin Function 200
Table 8.18 P10 Pin Function 200
Table 8.19 P36 Pin Function 203
Table 8.20 P32 Pin Function 203
Table 8.21 P31 Pin Function 204
Table 8.22 P30 Pin Function 204
Table 8.23 P74 Pin Function 208
Table 8.24 P71 Pin Function 208
Table 8.25 P70 Pin Function 208

Table 8.26 P77 Pin Function 208
Table 8.27 P76 Pin Function 209
Table 8.28 P75 Pin Function 209
Table 8.29 PA3 Pin Function 213
Table 8.30 PA2 Pin Function 213
Table 8.31 PA1 Pin Function 214
Table 8.32 PA0 Pin Function 214
Table 8.33 PA3 Pin Function 214
Table 8.34 PA2 Pin Function 215
Table 8.35 PA1 Pin Function 215
Table 8.36 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port A) 215
Table 8.37 PB7 Pin Function 219
Table 8.38 PB6 Pin Function 219
Table 8.39 PB5 Pin Function 219
Table 8.40 PB4 Pin Function 219
Table 8.41 PB3 Pin Function 220
Table 8.42 PB2 Pin Function 220
Table 8.43 PB1 Pin Function 220
Table 8.44 PB0 Pin Function 220
Table 8.45 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port B) 221
Table 8.46 PC7 Pin Function 224
Table 8.47 PC6 Pin Function 224
Table 8.48 PC5 Pin Function 224
Table 8.49 PC4 Pin Function 225
Table 8.50 PC3 Pin Function 225
Table 8.51 PC2 Pin Function 225
Table 8.52 PC1 Pin Function 225
Table 8.53 PC0 Pin Function 225
Table 8.54 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port C) 226
Table 8.55 PD7 Pin Function 229
Table 8.56 PD6 Pin Function 229
Table 8.57 PD5 Pin Function 229
Table 8.58 PD4 Pin Function 229
Table 8.59 PD3 Pin Function 229
Table 8.60 PD2 Pin Function 229
Table 8.61 PD1 Pin Function 230
Table 8.62 PD0 Pin Function 230
Table 8.63 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port D) 230
Table 8.64 PE7 Pin Function 233
Table 8.65 PE6 Pin Function 233
Table 8.66 PE5 Pin Function 234
Table 8.67 PE4 Pin Function 234
Table 8.68 PE3 Pin Function 234

Table 8.69 PE2 Pin Function 234
Table 8.70 PE1 Pin Function 234
Table 8.71 PE0 Pin Function 235
Table 8.72 PE7 Pin Function 235
Table 8.73 PE6 Pin Function 235
Table 8.74 PE5 Pin Function 235
Table 8.75 PE4 Pin Function 235
Table 8.76 PE3 Pin Function 235
Table 8.77 PE2 Pin Function 236
Table 8.78 PE1 Pin Function 236
Table 8.79 PE0 Pin Function 236
Table 8.80 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port E) 236
Table 8.81 PF7 Pin Function 239
Table 8.82 PF6 Pin Function 239
Table 8.83 PF5 Pin Function 239
Table 8.84 PF4 Pin Function 239
Table 8.85 PF3 Pin Function 240
Table 8.86 PF2 Pin Function 240
Table 8.87 PF1 Pin Function 240
Table 8.88 PF0 Pin Function 240
Table 8.89 PF7 Pin Function 241
Table 8.90 PF3 Pin Function 241
Table 8.91 PF0 Pin Function 241
Table 8.92 PG4 Pin Function 244
Table 8.93 PG3 Pin Function 244
Table 8.94 PG2 Pin Function 244
Table 8.95 PG1 Pin Function 244
Table 8.96 PG1 Pin Function 245
Table 8.97 PG0 Pin Function 245

Section 9 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

Table 9.1 TPU Functions 249
Table 9.2 Pin Configuration 251
Table 9.3 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channel 0) 254
Table 9.4 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channels 1 and 2) 254
Table 9.5 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 0) 255
Table 9.6 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 1) 255
Table 9.7 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 2) 256
Table 9.8 MD3 to MD0 257
Table 9.9 TIORH_0 (channel 0) 259
Table 9.10 TIORH_0 (channel 0) 260
Table 9.11 TIORL_0 (channel 0) 261
Table 9.12 TIORL_0 (channel 0) 262

Table 9.13 TIOR_1 (channel 1) 263
Table 9.14 TIOR_1 (channel 1) 264
Table 9.15 TIOR_2 (channel 2) 265
Table 9.16 TIOR_2 (channel 2) 266
Table 9.17 Register Combinations in Buffer Operation 281
Table 9.18 PWM Output Registers and Output Pins 284
Table 9.19 Phase Counting Mode Clock Input Pins 288
Table 9.20 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 1 289
Table 9.21 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 2 290
Table 9.22 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 3 291
Table 9.23 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 4 292
Table 9.24 TPU Interrupts 293

Section 10 Watchdog Timer

Table 10.1 WDT Interrupt Source 315

Section 11 Realtime Clock (RTC)

Table 11.1 Pin Configuration 320
Table 11.2 Interrupt Source 330
Table 11.3 Operating State in Each Mode 332

Section 12 Serial Communication Interface

Table 12.1 Pin Configuration 337
Table 12.2 Relationships between the N Setting in BRR and Bit Rate B 362
Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (1) 363
Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (2) 364
Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (3) 365
Table 12.4 Maximum Bit Rate for Each Frequency (Asynchronous Mode) 366
Table 12.5 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Asynchronous Mode) 366
Table 12.6 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 367
Table 12.7 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Clocked Synchronous Mode) 367
Table 12.8 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Smart Card Interface Mode, when n = 0 and S = 372) 368
Table 12.9 Maximum Bit Rate at Various Frequencies (Smart Card Interface Mode, when S = 372) 368
Table 12.10 Serial Transfer Formats (Asynchronous Mode) 370
Table 12.11 SSR Status Flags and Receive Data Handling 376
Table 12.12 SCI Interrupt Sources 402
Table 12.13 Interrupt Sources in Smart Card Interface Mode 403

Section 13 Boundary Scan Function

Table 13.1 Pin Configuration 410
Table 13.2 Instruction configuration 411
Table 13.3 IDCODE Register Configuration 413
Table 13.4 Correspondence between LSI Pins and Boundary Scan Register 414

Section 14 Universal Serial Bus (USB)
Table 14.1 Pin Configuration 427
Table 14.2 Relationship between UTSTR0 Setting and Pin Output 448
Table 14.3 Relationship between Pin Input and UTSTR1 Monitoring Value 450
Table 14.4 Interrupt Sources 453
Table 14.5 Command Decoding by Firmware 472

Section 15 A/D Converter
Table 15.1 Pin Configuration 489
Table 15.2 Analog Input Channels and Corresponding ADDR Registers 490
Table 15.3 A/D Conversion Time (Single Mode) 497
Table 15.4 A/D Conversion Time (Scan Mode) 497
Table 15.5 A/D Converter Interrupt Source 498
Table 15.6 Analog Pin Specifications 501

Section 17 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version)
Table 17.1 Differences between Boot Mode and User Program Mode 507
Table 17.2 Pin Configuration 511
Table 17.3 Setting On-Board Programming Modes 517
Table 17.4 Boot Mode Operation 520
Table 17.5 System Clock Frequencies for which Automatic Adjustment of LSI Bit Rate is Possible 520
Table 17.6 Enumeration Information 521
Table 17.7 USB Boot Mode Operation 523
Table 17.8 Flash Memory Operating States 534
Table 17.9 Registers Present in F-ZTAT Version but Absent in Masked ROM Version 537

Section 19 Clock Pulse Generator
Table 19.1 Damping Resistance Value 545
Table 19.2 Crystal Resonator Characteristics 545
Table 19.3 External Clock Input Conditions 546
Table 19.4 External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit is not Used 547

Section 20 Power-Down Modes
Table 20.1 LSI Internal States in Each Mode 554
Table 20.2 Transition Conditions of Power-Down Modes 556
Table 20.3 Oscillation Stabilization Time Settings 565
Table 20.4 ϕ Pin State in Each Processing State 572

Section 22 Electrical Characteristics
Table 22.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings 599
Table 22.2 DC Characteristics 601
Table 22.3 Permissible Output Currents 604
Table 22.4 Clock Timing 605
Table 22.5 Control Signal Timing 607
Table 22.6 Bus Timing 609

Table 22.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules 615
Table 22.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used 619
Table 22.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics 620
Table 22.10 Flash Memory Characteristics 621

Section 1 Overview

1.1 Overview

- High-speed H8S/2000 central processing unit with 16-bit architecture
  - Upward-compatible with H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs on an object level
  - Sixteen 16-bit general registers
  - 65 basic instructions
- Various peripheral functions
  - DMA controller (DMAC)
  - 16-bit timer-pulse unit (TPU)
  - Watchdog timer (WDT)
  - Realtime clock (RTC)
  - Serial communication interface (SCI)
  - Boundary scan
  - Universal serial bus (USB)
  - 10-bit A/D converter
  - Hitachi user debugging interface (H-UDI)
  - Clock pulse generator
- On-chip memory

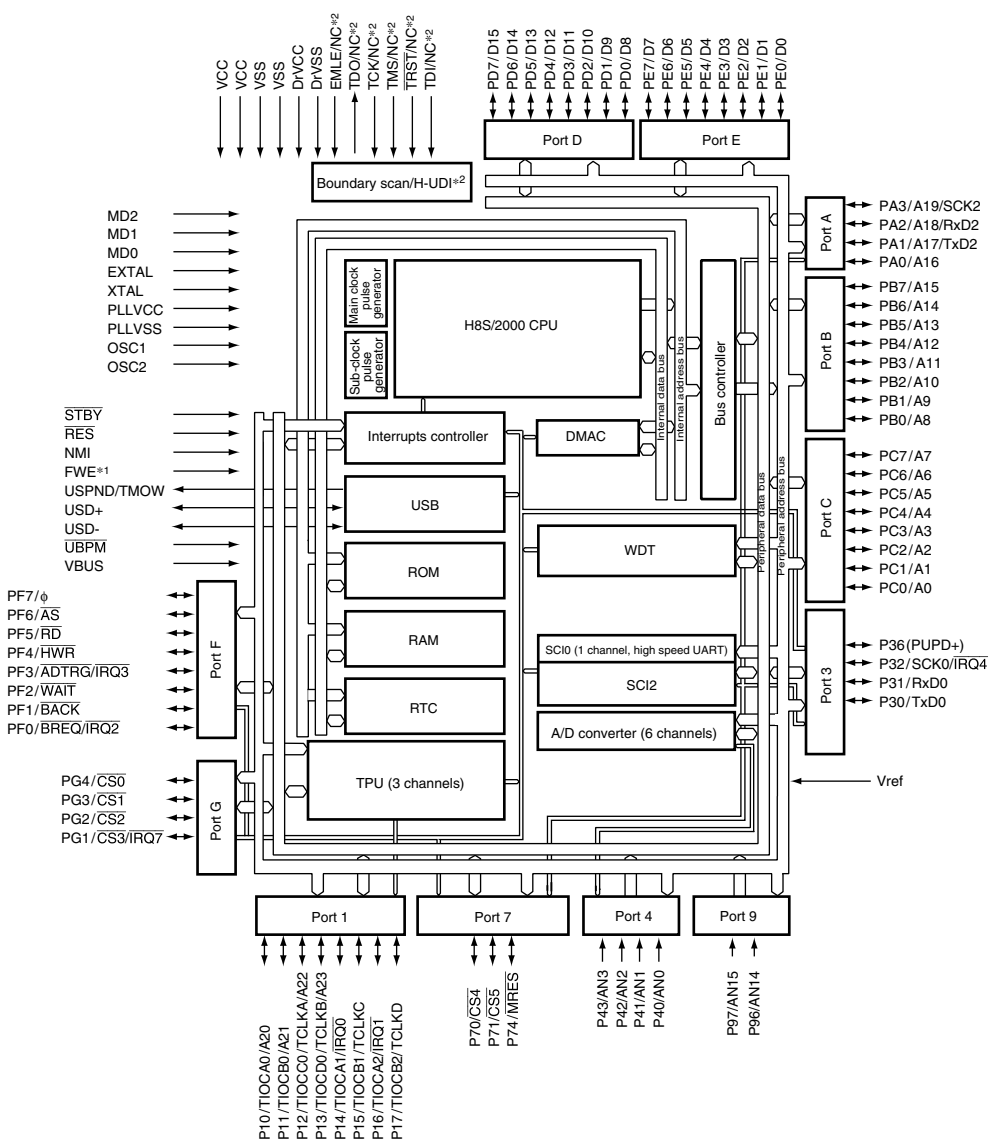
ROM	Product Code	ROM	RAM	Package	Remarks
Flash memory Version	HD64F2218	128 kbytes	12 kbytes	TQFP-100	SCI boot mode
	HD64F2218U	128 kbytes	12 kbytes	TQFP-100	USB boot mode
	HD64F2212	128 kbytes	12 kbytes	LQFP-64	SCI boot mode
	HD64F2212U	128 kbytes	12 kbytes	LQFP-64	USB boot mode
Masked ROM Version	HD6432217	64 kbytes	8 kbytes	TQFP-100	—
	HD6432211	64 kbytes	8 kbytes	LQFP-64	—
	HD6432210	32 kbytes	4 kbytes	LQFP-64	—

- General I/O ports
  I/O pins: 69 for the H8S/2218 Series, 37 for the H8S/2212 Series

- Supports various power-down states
- Compact package

Package	(Code)	Body Size	Pin Pitch	Remarks
TQFP-100	TFP-100G	12.0 × 12.0 mm	0.4 mm	H8S/2218 Series
LQFP-64	FP-64E	10.0 × 10.0 mm	0.5 mm	H8S/2212 Series

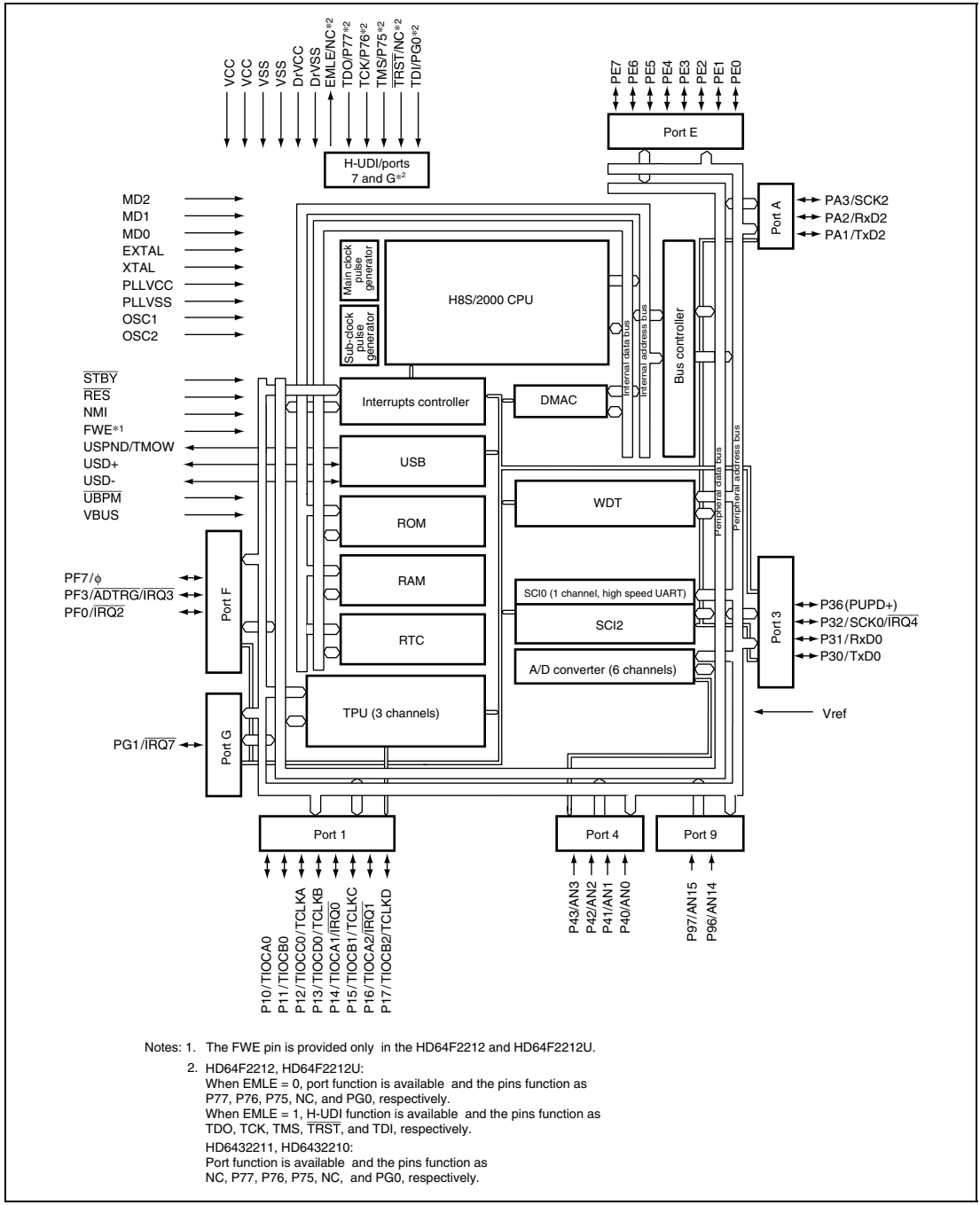
1.2 Internal Block Diagram



Notes: 1. The FWE pin is provided only in the HD64F2218 and HD64F2218U.

2. HD64F2218, HD64F2218U:
When EMLE = 0, boundary scan is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$, and TDI, respectively.
When EMLE = 1, H-UDI function is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$, and TDI, respectively.
HD6432217:
All pins function as NC.
Boundary scan and H-UDI function are not available.

Figure 1.1 Internal Block Diagram of H8S/2218 Series



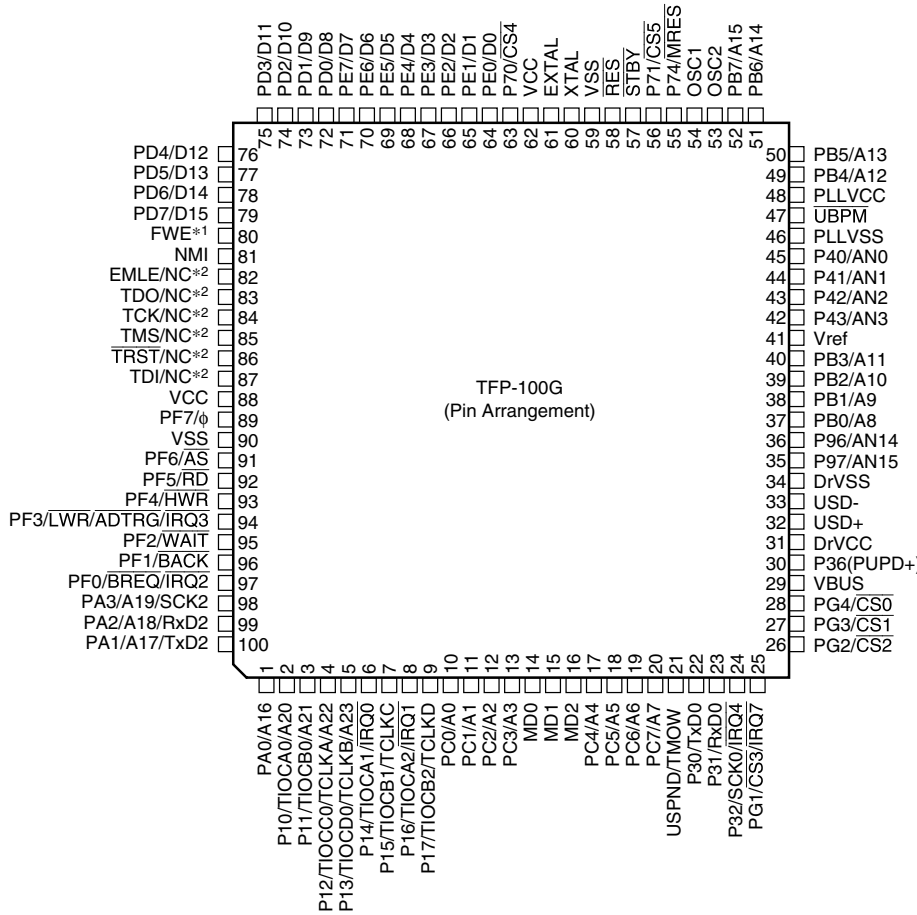
Notes: 1. The FWE pin is provided only in the HD64F2212 and HD64F2212U.

2. HD64F2212, HD64F2212U:
When EMLE = 0, port function is available and the pins function as P77, P76, P75, NC, and PG0, respectively.
When EMLE = 1, H-UDI function is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$, and TDI, respectively.
HD6432211, HD6432210:
Port function is available and the pins function as NC, P77, P76, P75, NC, and PG0, respectively.

Figure 1.2 Internal Block Diagram of H8S/2212 Series

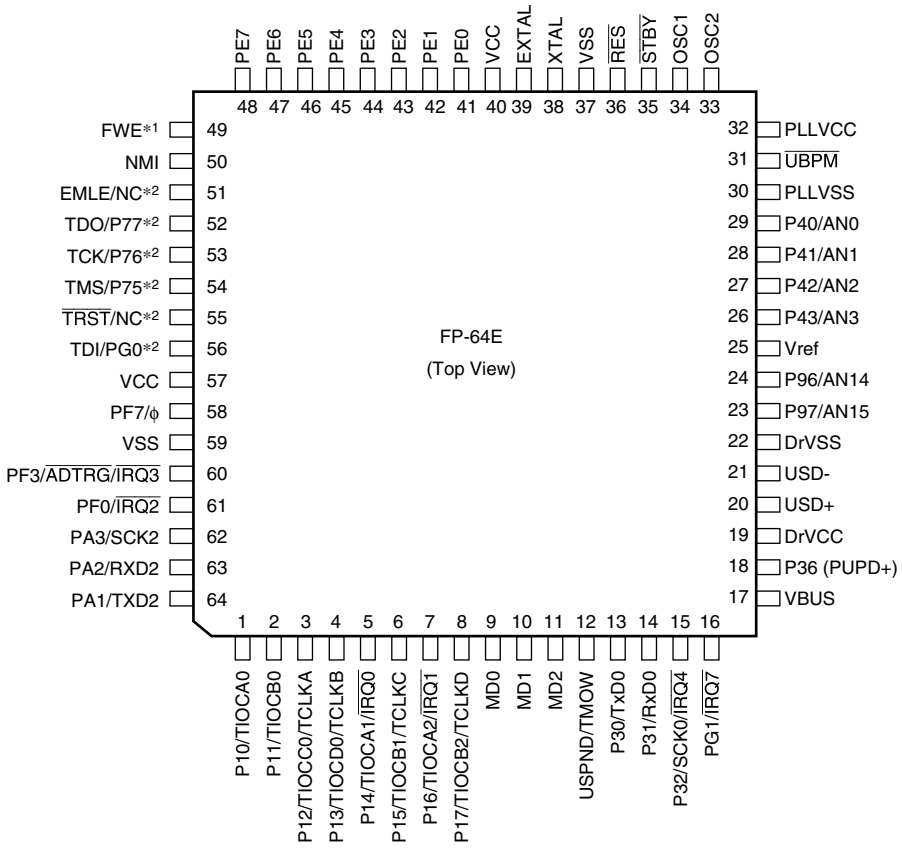
1.3 Pin Arrangement

The pin arrangements of H8S/2218 Series and H8S/2212 are shown in figure 1.3 and figure1.4 respectively.



Notes: 1. The FWE pin is provided only in the HD64F2218 and HD64F2218U.
2. HD64F2218, HD64F2218U:
When EMLE = 0, boundary scan is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, TRST, and TDI, respectively.
When EMLE = 1, H-UDI function is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, TRST, and TDI, respectively.
HD6432217:
All pins function as NC.
Boundary scan and H-UDI function are not available.

Figure 1.3 Pin Arrangement of H8S/2218 Series (TFP-100G)



Notes: 1. The FWE pin is provided only in the HD64F2212 and HD64F2212U.
2. HD64F2212, HD64F2212U:
When EMLE = 0, port function is available and the pins function as P77, P76, P75, NC, and PG0, respectively.
When EMLE = 1, H-UDI function is available and the pins function as TDO, TCK, TMS, TRST, and TDI, respectively.
HD6432211, HD6432210:
Port function is available and the pins function as NC, P77, P76, P75, and PG0, respectively.

Figure 1.4 Pin Arrangement of H8S/2212 Series (FP-64E)

1.4 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode

Table 1.1 shows the pin functions in each operating mode for the H8S/2218 Series, and table 1.2 shows that for the H8S/2212 Series.

Table 1.1 Pin functions in Each Operating Mode for H8S/2218 Series

Pin No.	Pin Name			
TFP-100G	Modes 4, 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
1	PA0/A16	PA0/A16	PA0	NC
2	P10/TIOCA0/A20	P10/TIOCA0/A20	P10/TIOCA0	A2
3	P11/TIOCB0/A21	P11/TIOCB0/A21	P11/TIOCB0	A3
4	P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22	P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22	P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA	A4
5	P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23	P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23	P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB	A5
6	P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	VSS
7	P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC	P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC	P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC	$\overline{\text{WE}}$
8	P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	VSS
9	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD	$\overline{\text{CE}}$
10	A0	PC0/A0	PC0	NC
11	A1	PC1/A1	PC1	NC
12	A2	PC2/A2	PC2	NC
13	A3	PC3/A3	PC3	NC
14	MD0	MD0	MD0	VSS
15	MD1	MD1	MD1	VSS
16	MD2	MD2	MD2	VSS
17	A4	PC4/A4	PC4	NC
18	A5	PC5/A5	PC5	NC
19	A6	PC6/A6	PC6	NC
20	A7	PC7/A7	PC7	NC
21	USPND/TMOW	USPND/TMOW	USPND/TMOW	NC
22	P30/TxD0	P30/TxD0	P30/TxD0	A10
23	P31/RxD0	P31/RxD0	P31/RxD0	A11
24	P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	A12
25	PG1/$\overline{\text{CS3}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	PG1/$\overline{\text{CS3}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	PG1/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	A15
26	PG2/$\overline{\text{CS2}}$	PG2/$\overline{\text{CS2}}$	PG2	NC
27	PG3/$\overline{\text{CS1}}$	PG3/$\overline{\text{CS1}}$	PG3	NC
28	PG4/$\overline{\text{CS0}}$	PG4/$\overline{\text{CS0}}$	PG4	NC

Pin No.	Pin Name			
TFP-100G	Modes 4, 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
29	VBUS	VBUS	VBUS	VSS
30	P36 (PUDP+)	P36 (PUDP+)	P36 (PUDP+)	A16
31	DrVCC	DrVCC	DrVCC	VCC
32	USD+	USD+	USD+	NC
33	USD-	USD-	USD-	NC
34	DrVSS	DrVSS	DrVSS	VSS
35	P97/AN15	P97/AN15	P97/AN15	A7
36	P96/AN14	P96/AN14	P96/AN14	A6
37	PB0/A8	PB0/A8	PB0	NC
38	PB1/A9	PB1/A9	PB1	NC
39	PB2/A10	PB2/A10	PB2	NC
40	PB3/A11	PB3/A11	PB3	NC
41	Vref	Vref	Vref	VCC
42	P43/AN3	P43/AN3	P43/AN3	A14
43	P42/AN2	P42/AN2	P42/AN2	A13
44	P41/AN1	P41/AN1	P41/AN1	A9
45	P40/AN0	P40/AN0	P40/AN0	A8
46	PLLVSS	PLLVSS	PLLVSS	VSS
47	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	A17
48	PLLVCC	PLLVCC	PLLVCC	VCC
49	PB4/A12	PB4/A12	PB4	NC
50	PB5/A13	PB5/A13	PB5	NC
51	PB6/A14	PB6/A14	PB6	NC
52	PB7/A15	PB7/A15	PB7	NC
53	OSC2	OSC2	OSC2	NC
54	OSC1	OSC1	OSC1	VCC
55	P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	NC
56	P71/$\overline{\text{CS5}}$	P71/$\overline{\text{CS5}}$	P71	NC
57	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	VCC
58	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	$\overline{\text{RES}}$
59	VSS	VSS	VSS	VSS
60	XTAL	XTAL	XTAL	XTAL

Pin No.	Pin Name			
TFP-100G	Modes 4, 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
61	EXTAL	EXTAL	EXTAL	EXTAL
62	VCC	VCC	VCC	VCC
63	P70/$\overline{CS4}$	P70/$\overline{CS4}$	P70	NC
64	PE0/D0	PE0/D0	PE0	D0
65	PE1/D1	PE1/D1	PE1	D1
66	PE2/D2	PE2/D2	PE2	D2
67	PE3/D3	PE3/D3	PE3	D3
68	PE4/D4	PE4/D4	PE4	D4
69	PE5/D5	PE5/D5	PE5	D5
70	PE6/D6	PE6/D6	PE6	D6
71	PE7/D7	PE7/D7	PE7	D7
72	D8	D8	PD0	NC
73	D9	D9	PD1	NC
74	D10	D10	PD2	NC
75	D11	D11	PD3	NC
76	D12	D12	PD4	NC
77	D13	D13	PD5	NC
78	D14	D14	PD6	NC
79	D15	D15	PD7	NC
80	FWE	FWE	FWE	FWE
81	NMI	NMI	NMI	VCC
82	EMLE/NC	EMLE/NC	EMLE/NC	VSS
83	TDO/NC	TDO/NC	TDO/NC	NC
84	TCK/NC	TCK/NC	TCK/NC	VCC
85	TMS/NC	TMS/NC	TMS/NC	VCC
86	$\overline{TRST}$/NC	$\overline{TRST}$/NC	$\overline{TRST}$/NC	$\overline{RES}$
87	TDI/NC	TDI/NC	TDI/NC	VSS
88	VCC	VCC	VCC	VCC
89	PF7/ϕ	PF7/ϕ	PF7/ϕ	NC
90	VSS	VSS	VSS	VSS
91	$\overline{AS}$	$\overline{AS}$	PF6	NC
92	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{RD}$	PF5	NC
93	$\overline{HWR}$	$\overline{HWR}$	PF4	NC

Pin No.	Pin Name			
TFP-100G	Modes 4, 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
94	PF3/$\overline{\text{LWR}}$/$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$	PF3/$\overline{\text{LWR}}$/$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$	PF3/$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$	VCC
95	PF2/$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$	PF2/$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$	PF2	NC
96	PF1/$\overline{\text{BACK}}$	PF1/$\overline{\text{BACK}}$	PF1	NC
97	PF0/$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	PF0/$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	PF0/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	VCC
98	PA3/A19/SCK2	PA3/A19/SCK2	PA3/SCK2	A1
99	PA2/A18/RxD2	PA2/A18/RxD2	PA2/RxD2	A0
100	PA1/A17/TxD2	PA1/A17/TxD2	PA1/TxD2	$\overline{\text{OE}}$

Table 1.2 Pin functions in Each Operating Mode for H8S/2212 Series

Pin No.	Pin Name	
FP-64E	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
1	P10/TIOCA0	A2
2	P11/TIOCB0	A3
3	P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA	A4
4	P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB	A5
5	P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	VSS
6	P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC	$\overline{\text{WE}}$
7	P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	VSS
8	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD	$\overline{\text{CE}}$
9	MD0	VSS
10	MD1	VSS
11	MD2	VSS
12	USPND/TMOW	NC
13	P30/TxD0	A10
14	P31/RxD0	A11
15	P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	A12
16	PG1/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	A15
17	VBUS	VSS
18	P36(PD+)	A16
19	DrVCC	VCC
20	USD+	NC
21	USD-	NC
22	DrVSS	VSS

Pin No.	Pin Name	
FP-64E	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
23	P97/AN15	A7
24	P96/AN14	A6
25	Vref	VCC
26	P43/AN3	A14
27	P42/AN2	A13
28	P41/AN1	A9
29	P40/AN0	A8
30	PLLVSS	VSS
31	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	A17
32	PLLVCC	VCC
33	OSC2	NC
34	OSC1	VCC
35	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	VCC
36	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	$\overline{\text{RES}}$
37	VSS	VSS
38	XTAL	XTAL
39	EXTAL	EXTAL
40	VCC	VCC
41	PE0	D0
42	PE1	D1
43	PE2	D2
44	PE3	D3
45	PE4	D4
46	PE5	D5
47	PE6	D6
48	PE7	D7
49	FWE	FWE
50	NMI	VCC
51	EMLE/NC	VSS
52	TDO/P77	NC
53	TCK/P76	VCC
54	TMS/P75	VCC
55	$\overline{\text{TRST}}$/NC	$\overline{\text{RES}}$

Pin No.		Pin Name
FP-64E	Mode 7	Programmer Mode
56	TDI/PG0	VSS
57	VCC	VCC
58	PF7/ϕ	NC
59	VSS	VSS
60	PF3/$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$	VCC
61	PF0/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	VCC
62	PA3/SCK2	A1
63	PA2/RxD2	A0
64	PA1/TxD2	$\overline{\text{OE}}$

1.5 Pin Functions

		Pin No.			
Type	Symbol	TFP-100G	FP-64E	I/O	Function
Power supply	VCC	62 88	40 57	Input	Power supply pins. Connect all these pins to the system power supply.
	VSS	59 90	37 59	Input	Ground pins. Connect all these pins to the system power supply (0 V).
	PLLVCC	48	32	Input	Power supply pin for an on-chip PLL oscillator. Connect this pin to the system power supply.
	PLLVSS	46	30	Input	Ground pin for an on-chip PLL oscillator
Clock	XTAL	60	38	Input	For connection to a crystal resonator. For examples of crystal resonator connection and external clock input, see section 19, Clock Pulse Generator.
	EXTAL	61	39	Input	For connection to a crystal resonator. An external clock can be supplied from the EXTAL pin. For examples of crystal resonator connection and external clock input, see section 19, Clock Pulse Generator.

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
Clock	OSC1	54	34	Input	For connection to a 32.768-kHz crystal resonator. For examples of crystal resonator connection, see section 19, Clock Pulse Generator.
	OSC2	53	33		
	ϕ	89	58	Output	Supplies the system clock to external devices.
Operating mode control	MD2	16	11	Input	Set the operating mode. Inputs at these pins cannot be modified during operation.
	MD1	15	10		
	MD0	14	9		
System control	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	58	36	Input	Reset pin. When this pin is driven low, the chip is reset.
	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	57	35	Input	When this pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.
	$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	55	—	Input	When this pin is driven low, a transition is made to manual reset mode. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$	97	—	Input	Used by an external bus master to issue a bus request to this LSI (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{\text{BACK}}$	96	—	Output	Indicates that the bus has been released to an external bus master. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	FWE	80	49	Input	Pin for use by flash memory. This pin is only used in the flash memory version.
	EMLE	82	51	Input	Emulator enable Connect this pin to the system power supply (0 V).
Interrupts	NMI	81	50	Input	Nonmaskable interrupt pin. If this pin is not used, it should be fixed high.

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
Interrupts	$\overline{IRQ7}$	25	16	Input	These pins request a maskable interrupt.
	$\overline{IRQ4}$	24	15		
	$\overline{IRQ3}$	94	60		
	$\overline{IRQ2}$	97	61		
	$\overline{IRQ1}$	8	7		
	$\overline{IRQ0}$	6	5		
Address bus	A23	5	—	Output	These pins output an address. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	A22	4	—		
	A21	3	—		
	A20	2	—		
	A19	98	—		
	A18	99	—		
	A17	100	—		
	A16	1	—		
	A15	52	—		
	A14	51	—		
	A13	50	—		
	A12	49	—		
	A11	40	—		
	A10	39	—		
	A9	38	—		
	A8	37	—		
	A7	20	—		
	A6	19	—		
	A5	18	—		
	A4	17	—		
	A3	13	—		
	A2	12	—		
	A1	11	—		
	A0	10	—		

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
Data bus	D15	79	—	I/O	These pins constitute a bi-directional data bus. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	D14	78	—		
	D13	77	—		
	D12	76	—		
	D11	75	—		
	D10	74	—		
	D9	73	—		
	D8	72	—		
	D7	71	—		
	D6	70	—		
	D5	69	—		
	D4	68	—		
	D3	67	—		
	D2	66	—		
	D1	65	—		
	D0	64	—		
Bus control	$\overline{CS5}$	56	—	Output	Signals for selecting areas 5 to 0 in the external address space. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{CS4}$	63	—		
	$\overline{CS3}$	25	—		
	$\overline{CS2}$	26	—		
	$\overline{CS1}$	27	—		
	$\overline{CS0}$	28	—		
	$\overline{AS}$	91	—	Output	When this pin is low, it indicates that address output on the address bus is enabled. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{RD}$	92	—	Output	When this pin is low, it indicates that the external address space can be read. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{HWR}$	93	—	Output	A strobe signal that writes to external address space and indicates that the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is enabled. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
Bus control	$\overline{\text{LWR}}$	94	—	Output	A strobe signal that writes to external address space and indicates that the lower half (D7 to D0) of the data bus is enabled. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$	95	—	Input	Requests insertion of a wait state in the bus cycle when accessing external 3-state address space. (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU)	TCLKA	4	3	Input	TPU external clock input pins
	TCLKB	5	4		
	TCLKC	7	6		
	TCLKD	9	8		
	TIOCA0	2	1	I/O	The TGRA_0 to TGRD_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins
	TIOCB0	3	2		
	TIOCC0	4	3		
	TIOCD0	5	4		
	TIOCA1	6	5	I/O	The TGRA_1 and TGRB_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins
	TIOCB1	7	6		
	TIOCA2	8	7	I/O	The TGRA_2 and TGRB_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins
	TIOCB2	9	8		
Realtime clock (RTC)	TMOW	21	12	Output	The divided clock output pin
Serial communication interface (SCI)	TxD2	100	64	Output	Data output pins
	TxD0	22	13		
	RxD2	99	63	Input	Data input pins
	RxD0	23	14		
	SCK2	98	62	I/O	Clock input/output pins
	SCK0	24	15		

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
A/D converter	AN15	35	23	Input	Analog input pins for the A/D converter
	AN14	36	24		
	AN3	42	26		
	AN2	43	27		
	AN1	44	28		
	AN0	45	29		
	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$	94	60	Input	Pin for input of an external trigger to start A/D conversion
	Vref	41	25	Input	The reference voltage input pin for the A/D converter. When the A/D converter is not used, this pin should be connected to the system power supply (VCC).
Boundary scan (Supported only by the HD64F2218 and HF64F2218U.)	TMS	85	54	Input	Control signal input pin for the boundary scan
	TCK	84	53	Input	Clock input pin for the boundary scan
	TDO	83	52	Output	Data output pin for the boundary scan
	TDI	87	56	Input	Data input pin for the boundary scan
	$\overline{\text{TRST}}$	86	55	Input	Reset pin for the TAP controller
USB	DrVCC	31	19	Input	Power supply pin for the on-chip transceiver. Connect this pin to the system power supply.
	DrVSS	34	22	Input	Ground pin for the on-chip transceiver.
	USD+	32	20	I/O	USB data I/O pin
	USD-	33	21		
	VBUS	29	17	Input	Connection/disconnection detecting input/output pin for the USB cable
	USPND	21	12	Output	USB suspend output This pin is driven high when a transition is made to suspend state.

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
USB	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	47	31	Input	Bus power/self power mode setting Input When the USB is used in bus power mode, this input pin must be fixed low. When the USB is used in self power mode, this input pin must be fixed high.
	P36 (PUPD+)	30	18	I/O	Use as D+ signal pull-up control pin.
I/O port	P17	9	8	I/O	8-bit I/O pins
	P16	8	7		
	P15	7	6		
	P14	6	5		
	P13	5	4		
	P12	4	3		
	P11	3	2		
	P10	2	1		
	P36	30	18	I/O	4-bit I/O pins
	P32	24	15		(Use P36 as D+ signal pull-up control pin of USB.)
	P31	23	14		
	P30	22	13		
	P43	42	26	Input	4-bit input pins
	P42	43	27		
	P41	44	28		
	P40	45	29		
	P77	—	52	I/O	3-bit I/O pins
	P76	—	53		
	P75	—	54		
	P74	55	—		
	P71	56	—		
	P70	63	—		
	P97	35	23	Input	2-bit input pins
	P96	36	24		

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
I/O port	PA3	98	62	I/O	4-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2218 Series. 3-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2212 Series.
	PA2	99	63		
	PA1	100	64		
	PA0	1	—		
	PB7	52	—	I/O	8-bit I/O pins (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	PB6	51	—		
	PB5	50	—		
	PB4	49	—		
	PB3	40	—		
	PB2	39	—		
	PB1	38	—		
	PB0	37	—		
	PC7	20	—	I/O	8-bit I/O pins (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	PC6	19	—		
	PC5	18	—		
	PC4	17	—		
	PC3	13	—		
	PC2	12	—		
	PC1	11	—		
	PC0	10	—		
	PD7	79	—	I/O	8-bit I/O pins (Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series)
	PD6	78	—		
	PD5	77	—		
	PD4	76	—		
	PD3	75	—		
	PD2	74	—		
	PD1	73	—		
	PD0	72	—		

Type	Symbol	Pin No. TFP-100G	Pin No. FP-64E	I/O	Function
I/O port	PE7	71	48	I/O	8-bit I/O pins
	PE6	70	47		
	PE5	69	46		
	PE4	68	45		
	PE3	67	44		
	PE2	66	43		
	PE1	65	42		
	PE0	64	41		
	PF7	89	58	I/O	8-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2218 Series. 3-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2212 Series.
	PF6	91	—		
	PF5	92	—		
	PF4	93	—		
	PF3	94	60		
	PF2	95	—		
	PF1	96	—		
	PF0	97	61		
	PG4	28	—	I/O	4-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2218 Series. 2-bit I/O pins for the H8S/2212 Series.
	PG3	27	—		
	PG2	26	—		
	PG1	25	16		
	PG0	—	56		

Section 2 CPU

The H8S/2000 CPU is a high-speed central processing unit with an internal 32-bit architecture that is upward compatible with the H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs. The H8S/2000 CPU has sixteen 16-bit general registers, can address a 16-Mbyte linear address space, and is ideal for realtime control.

This section describes the H8S/2000 CPU. The usable modes and address spaces differ depending on the product. For details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

2.1 Features

- Upward-compatible with H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs
  - Can execute H8/300 and H8/300H CPU object programs
- General-register architecture
  - Sixteen 16-bit general registers also usable as sixteen 8-bit registers or eight 32-bit registers
- Sixty-five basic instructions
  - 8/16/32-bit arithmetic and logic instructions
  - Multiply and divide instructions
  - Powerful bit-manipulation instructions
- Eight addressing modes
  - Register direct [Rn]
  - Register indirect [@ERn]
  - Register indirect with displacement [@(d:16,ERn) or @(d:32,ERn)]
  - Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement [@ERn+ or @–ERn]
  - Absolute address [@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32]
  - Immediate [#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32]
  - Program-counter relative [@(d:8,PC) or @(d:16,PC)]
  - Memory indirect [@@aa:8]
- 16-Mbyte address space
  - Program: 16 Mbytes
  - Data: 16 Mbytes
- High-speed operation
  - All frequently-used instructions execute in one or two states
  - 8/16/32-bit register-register add/subtract: 1 state
  - 8 × 8-bit register-register multiply: 12 states
  - 16 ÷ 8-bit register-register divide: 12 states
  - 16 × 16-bit register-register multiply: 20 states
  - 32 ÷ 16-bit register-register divide: 20 states

- Two CPU operating modes
  - Normal mode*
  - Advanced mode

Note: * Normal mode is not available in this LSI.

- Power-down state
  - Transition to power-down state by SLEEP instruction
  - CPU clock speed selection

2.1.1 Differences between H8S/2600 CPU and H8S/2000 CPU

The differences between the H8S/2600 CPU and the H8S/2000 CPU are as shown below.

- Register configuration

  The MAC register is supported only by the H8S/2600 CPU.
- Basic instructions

  The four instructions MAC, CLRMAC, LDMAC, and STMAC are supported only by the H8S/2600 CPU.
- The number of execution states of the MULXU and MULXS instructions

		Execution States	
Instruction	**Mnemonic**	**H8S/2600**	**H8S/2000**
MULXU	MULXU.B Rs, Rd	3	12
	MULXU.W Rs, ERd	4	20
MULXS	MULXS.B Rs, Rd	4	13
	MULXS.W Rs, ERd	5	21

In addition, there are differences in address space, CCR and EXR register functions, power-down modes, etc., depending on the model.

2.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU

In comparison to the H8/300 CPU, the H8S/2000 CPU has the following enhancements.

- More general registers and control registers
  - Eight 16-bit extended registers, and one 8-bit and two 32-bit control registers, have been added.
- Extended address space
  - Normal mode supports the same 64-kbyte address space as the H8/300 CPU.
  - Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced addressing
  - The addressing modes have been enhanced to make effective use of the 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced instructions
  - Addressing modes of bit-manipulation instructions have been enhanced.
  - Signed multiply and divide instructions have been added.
  - Two-bit shift instructions have been added.
  - Instructions for saving and restoring multiple registers have been added.
  - A test and set instruction has been added.
- Higher speed
  - Basic instructions execute twice as fast.

2.1.3 Differences from H8/300H CPU

In comparison to the H8/300H CPU, the H8S/2000 CPU has the following enhancements.

- Additional control register
  - One 8-bit control registers have been added.
- Enhanced instructions
  - Addressing modes of bit-manipulation instructions have been enhanced.
  - Two-bit shift instructions have been added.
  - Instructions for saving and restoring multiple registers have been added.
  - A test and set instruction has been added.
- Higher speed
  - Basic instructions execute twice as fast.

2.2 CPU Operating Modes

The H8S/2000 CPU has two operating modes: normal and advanced. Normal mode supports a maximum 64-kbyte address space. Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte total address space. The mode is selected by the mode pins.

2.2.1 Normal Mode

The exception vector table and stack have the same structure as in the H8/300 CPU.

- Address Space

  A maximum address space of 64 kbytes can be accessed.
- Extended Registers (En)

  The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit registers, or as the upper 16-bit segments of 32-bit registers. When En is used as a 16-bit register it can contain any value, even when the corresponding general register (Rn) is used as an address register. If the general register is referenced in the register indirect addressing mode with pre-decrement (@–Rn) or post-increment (@Rn+) and a carry or borrow occurs, however, the value in the corresponding extended register (En) will be affected.
- Instruction Set

  All instructions and addressing modes can be used. Only the lower 16 bits of effective addresses (EA) are valid.
- Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses

  In normal mode the top area starting at H'0000 is allocated to the exception vector table. One branch address is stored per 16 bits. The exception vector table in normal mode is shown in figure 2.1. For details of the exception vector table, see section 4, Exception Handling.

  The memory indirect addressing mode (@@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address included in the instruction code to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In normal mode the operand is a 16-bit (word) operand, providing a 16-bit branch address. Branch addresses can be stored in the top area from H'0000 to H'00FF. Note that this area is also used for the exception vector table.
- Stack Structure

  When the program counter (PC) is pushed onto the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC, condition-code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are pushed onto the stack in exception handling, they are stored as shown in figure 2.2. EXR is not pushed onto the stack in interrupt control mode 0. For details, see section 4, Exception Handling.

Note: Normal mode is not available in this LSI.

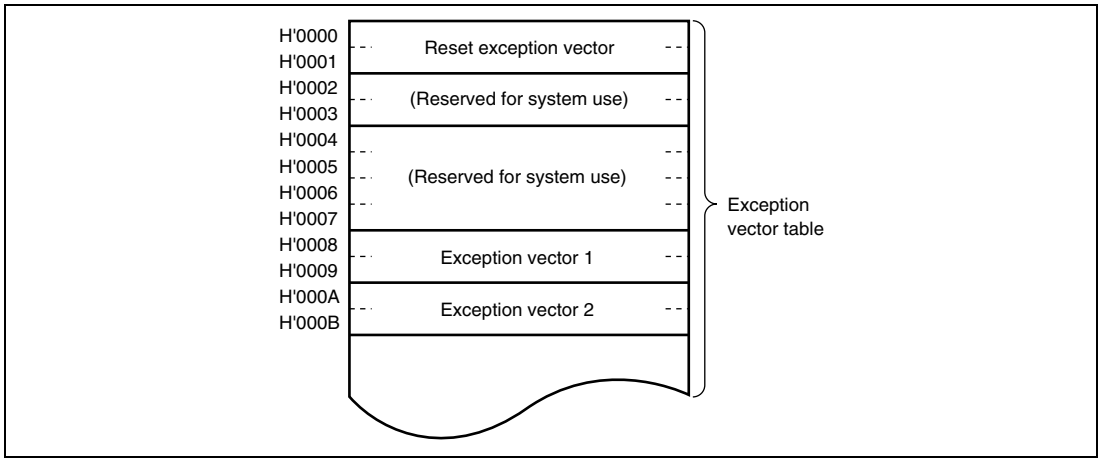
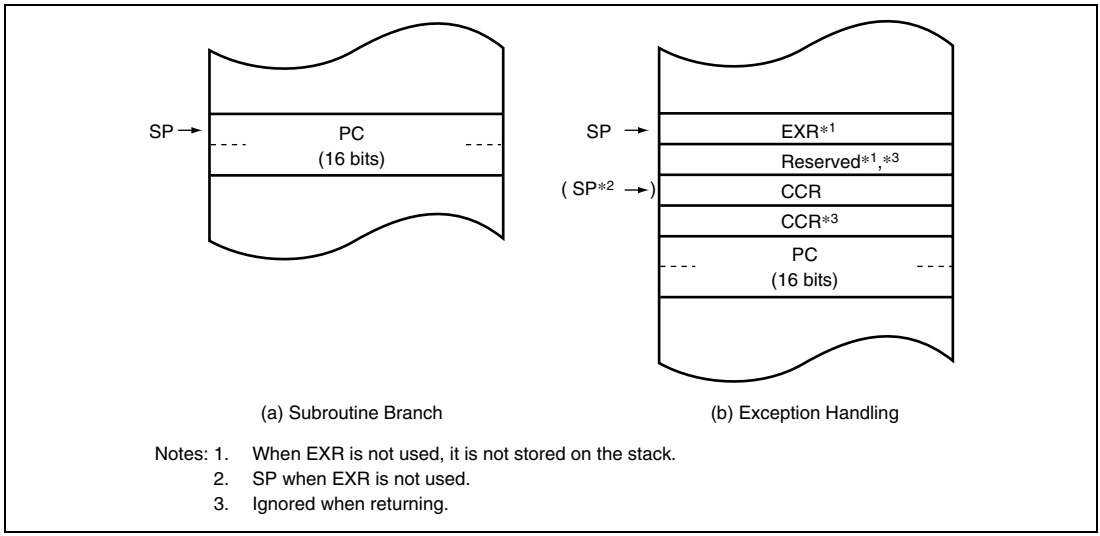


Figure 2.1 Exception Vector Table (Normal Mode)



Notes: 1. When EXR is not used, it is not stored on the stack.
2. SP when EXR is not used.
3. Ignored when returning.

Figure 2.2 Stack Structure in Normal Mode

2.2.2 Advanced Mode

- Address Space

  Linear access is provided to a 16-Mbyte maximum address space.

- Extended Registers (En)

  The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit registers, or as the upper 16-bit segments of 32-bit registers or address registers.

- Instruction Set

  All instructions and addressing modes can be used.

- Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses

  In advanced mode the top area starting at H'00000000 is allocated to the exception vector table in units of 32 bits. In each 32 bits, the upper 8 bits are ignored and a branch address is stored in the lower 24 bits (figure 2.3). For details of the exception vector table, see section 4, Exception Handling.

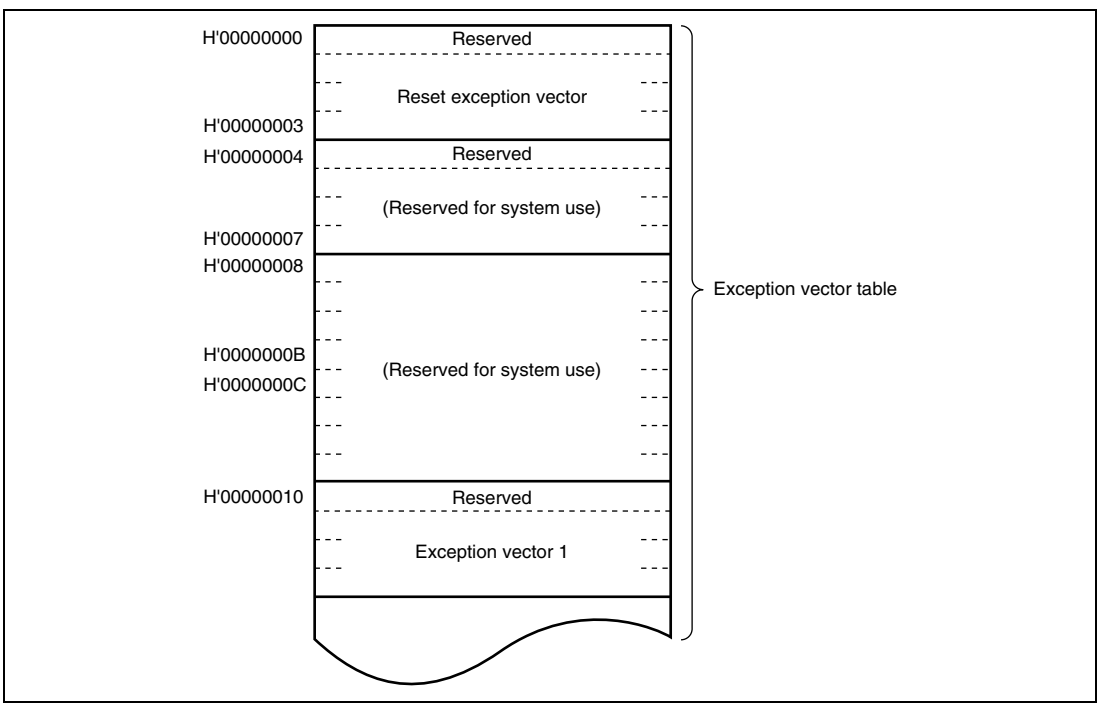
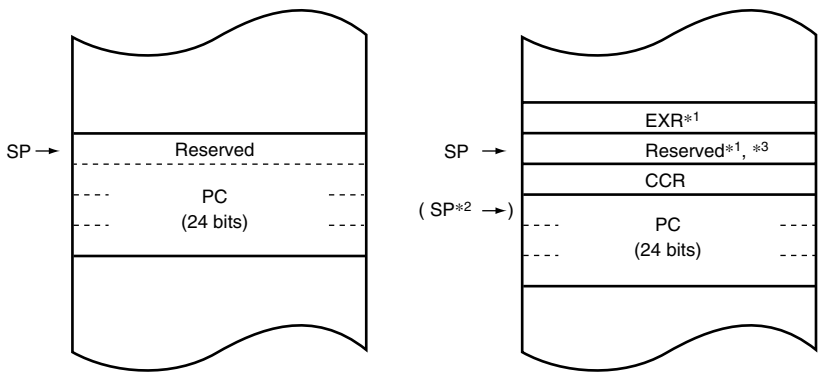


Figure 2.3 Exception Vector Table (Advanced Mode)

The memory indirect addressing mode (@@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address included in the instruction code to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In advanced mode the operand is a 32-bit longword operand, providing a 32-bit branch address. The upper 8 bits of these 32 bits are a reserved area that is regarded as H'00. Branch addresses can be stored in the area from H'00000000 to H'000000FF. Note that the first part of this range is also the exception vector table.

- Stack Structure

  In advanced mode, when the program counter (PC) is pushed onto the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC, condition-code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are pushed onto the stack in exception handling, they are stored as shown in figure 2.4. When EXR is invalid, it is not pushed onto the stack. For details, see section 4, Exception Handling.



Notes: 1. When EXR is not used, it is not stored on the stack.
2. SP when EXR is not used.
3. Ignored when returning.

Figure 2.4 Stack Structure in Advanced Mode

2.3 Address Space

Figure 2.5 shows a memory map of the H8S/2000 CPU. The H8S/2000 CPU provides linear access to a maximum 64-kbyte address space in normal mode, and a maximum 16-Mbyte (architecturally 4-Gbyte) address space in advanced mode. The usable modes and address spaces differ depending on the product. For details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

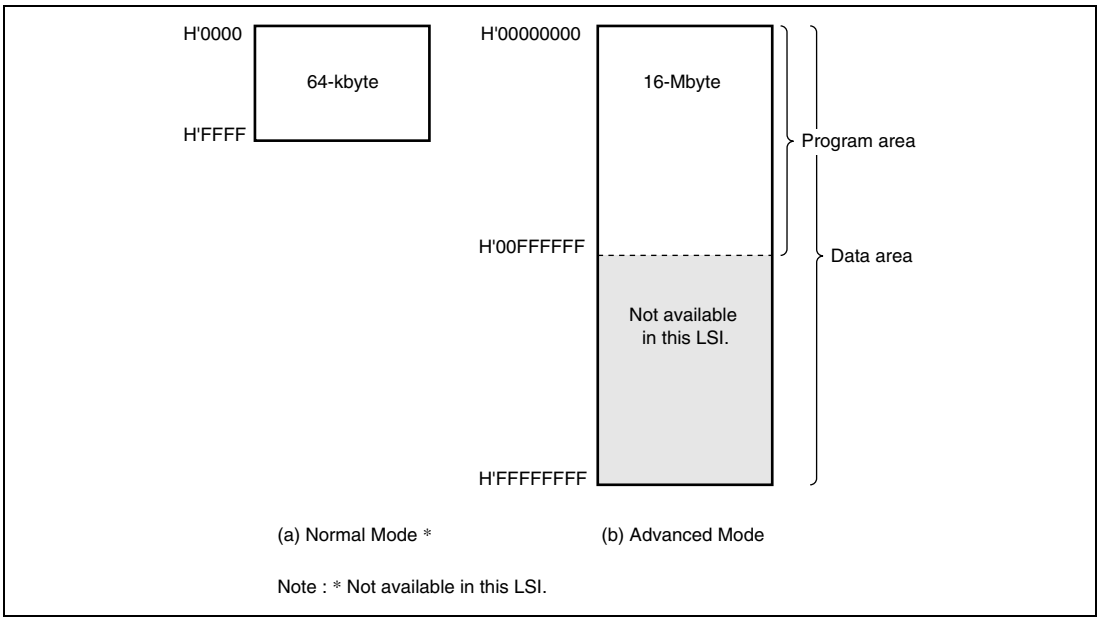


Figure 2.5 Memory Map

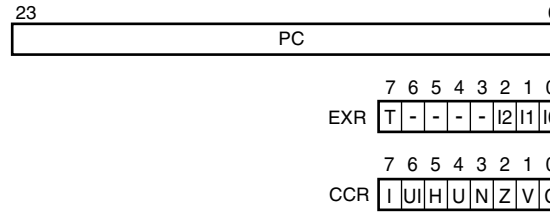
2.4 Register Configuration

The H8S/2000 CPU has the internal registers shown in figure 2.6. There are two types of registers: general registers and control registers. Control registers are a 24-bit program counter (PC), an 8-bit extended control register (EXR), and an 8-bit condition code register (CCR).

General Registers (Rn) and Extended Registers (En)

	15 0	7 0	7 0
ER0	E0	R0H	R0L
ER1	E1	R1H	R1L
ER2	E2	R2H	R2L
ER3	E3	R3H	R3L
ER4	E4	R4H	R4L
ER5	E5	R5H	R5L
ER6	E6	R6H	R6L
ER7 (SP)	E7	R7H	R7L

Control Registers (CR)



Legend

SP	: Stack pointer	H	: Half-carry flag
PC	: Program counter	U	: User bit
EXR	: Extended control register	N	: Negative flag
T	:Trace bit	Z	: Zero flag
I2 to I0	: Interrupt mask bits	V	: Overflow flag
CCR	: Condition-code register	C	: Carry flag
I	: Interrupt mask bit		
UI	:User bit or interrupt mask bit*		

Note: * Cannot be used as an interrupt mask bit in this LSI.

Figure 2.6 CPU Registers

2.4.1 General Registers

The H8S/2000 CPU has eight 32-bit general registers. These general registers are all functionally alike and can be used as both address registers and data registers. When a general register is used as a data register, it can be accessed as a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit register. Figure 2.7 illustrates the usage of the general registers. When the general registers are used as 32-bit registers or address registers, they are designated by the letters ER (ER0 to ER7).

The ER registers divide into 16-bit general registers designated by the letters E (E0 to E7) and R (R0 to R7). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 16-bit registers. The E registers (E0 to E7) are also referred to as extended registers.

The R registers divide into 8-bit general registers designated by the letters RH (R0H to R7H) and RL (R0L to R7L). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 8-bit registers.

The usage of each register can be selected independently.

General register ER7 has the function of stack pointer (SP) in addition to its general-register function, and is used implicitly in exception handling and subroutine calls. Figure 2.8 shows the stack.

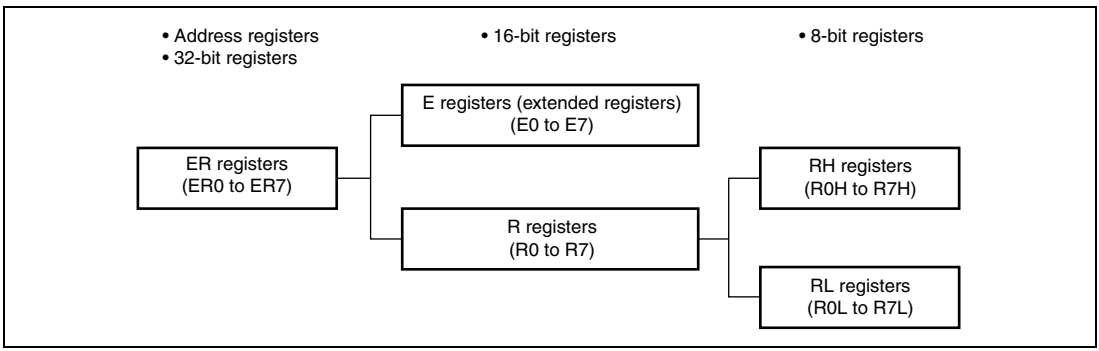


Figure 2.7 Usage of General Registers

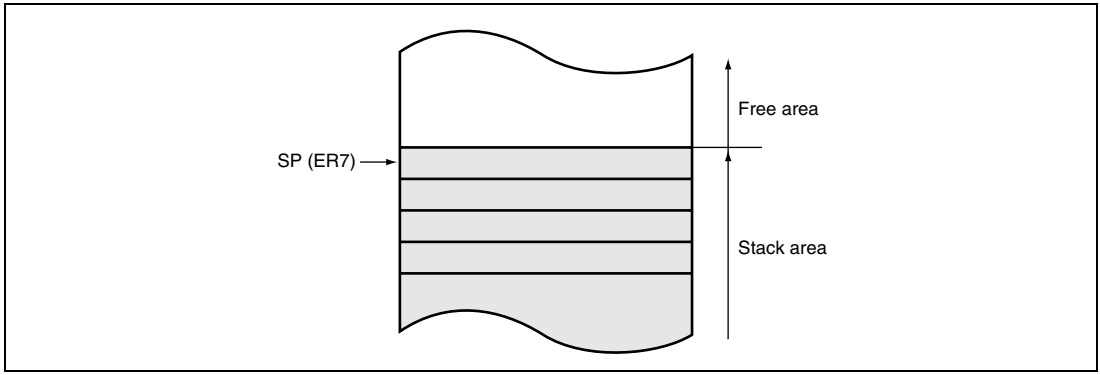


Figure 2.8 Stack

2.4.2 Program Counter (PC)

This 24-bit counter indicates the address of the next instruction the CPU will execute. The length of all CPU instructions is two bytes (one word), so the least significant PC bit is ignored. (When an instruction is fetched, the least significant PC bit is regarded as 0.)

2.4.3 Extended Control Register (EXR)

EXR is an 8-bit register that manipulates the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. When these instructions except for the STC instruction is executed, all interrupts including NMI will be masked for three states after execution is completed.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	T	0	R/W	Trace Bit When this bit is set to 1, a trace exception is generated each time an instruction is executed. When this bit is cleared to 0, instructions are executed in sequence.
6 to3	–	1	–	Reserved These bits are always read as 1.
2 to 0	I2 to I0	1	R/W	These bits designate the interrupt mask level (0 to 7). For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.

2.4.4 Condition-Code Register (CCR)

This 8-bit register contains internal CPU status information, including an interrupt mask bit (I) and half-carry (H), negative (N), zero (Z), overflow (V), and carry (C) flags.

Operations can be performed on the CCR bits by the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. The N, Z, V, and C flags are used as branching conditions for conditional branch (Bcc) instructions.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	I	1	R/W	Interrupt Mask Bit Masks interrupts other than NMI when set to 1. NMI is accepted regardless of the I bit setting. The I bit is set to 1 by hardware at the start of an exception-handling sequence. For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.
6	UI	undefined	R/W	User Bit or Interrupt Mask Bit Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. This bit cannot be used as an interrupt mask bit in this LSI.
5	H	undefined	R/W	Half-Carry Flag When the ADD.B, ADDX.B, SUB.B, SUBX.B, CMP.B or NEG.B instruction is executed, this flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 3, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.W, SUB.W, CMP.W, or NEG.W instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 11, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.L, SUB.L, CMP.L, or NEG.L instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 27, and cleared to 0 otherwise.
4	U	undefined	R/W	User Bit Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions.
3	N	undefined	R/W	Negative Flag Stores the value of the most significant bit of data as a sign bit.
2	Z	undefined	R/W	Zero Flag Set to 1 to indicate zero data, and cleared to 0 to indicate non-zero data.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
1	V	undefined	R/W	Overflow Flag Set to 1 when an arithmetic overflow occurs, and cleared to 0 at other times.
0	C	undefined	R/W	Carry Flag Set to 1 when a carry occurs, and cleared to 0 otherwise. Used by: • Add instructions, to indicate a carry • Subtract instructions, to indicate a carry • Shift and rotate instructions, to indicate a carry They carry flag is also used as a bit accumulator by bit manipulation instructions.

2.4.5 Initial Register Values

Reset exception handling loads the CPU's program counter (PC) from the vector table, clears the trace bit in EXR to 0, and sets the interrupt mask bits in CCR and EXR to 1. The other CCR bits and the general registers are not initialized. In particular, the stack pointer (ER7) is not initialized.

The stack pointer should therefore be initialized by an MOV.L instruction executed immediately after a reset.

2.5 Data Formats

The H8S/2000 CPU can process 1-bit, 4-bit (BCD), 8-bit (byte), 16-bit (word), and 32-bit (longword) data. Bit-manipulation instructions operate on 1-bit data by accessing bit n (n = 0, 1, 2, …, 7) of byte operand data. The DAA and DAS decimal-adjust instructions treat byte data as two digits of 4-bit BCD data.

2.5.1 General Register Data Formats

Figure 2.9 shows the data formats in general registers.

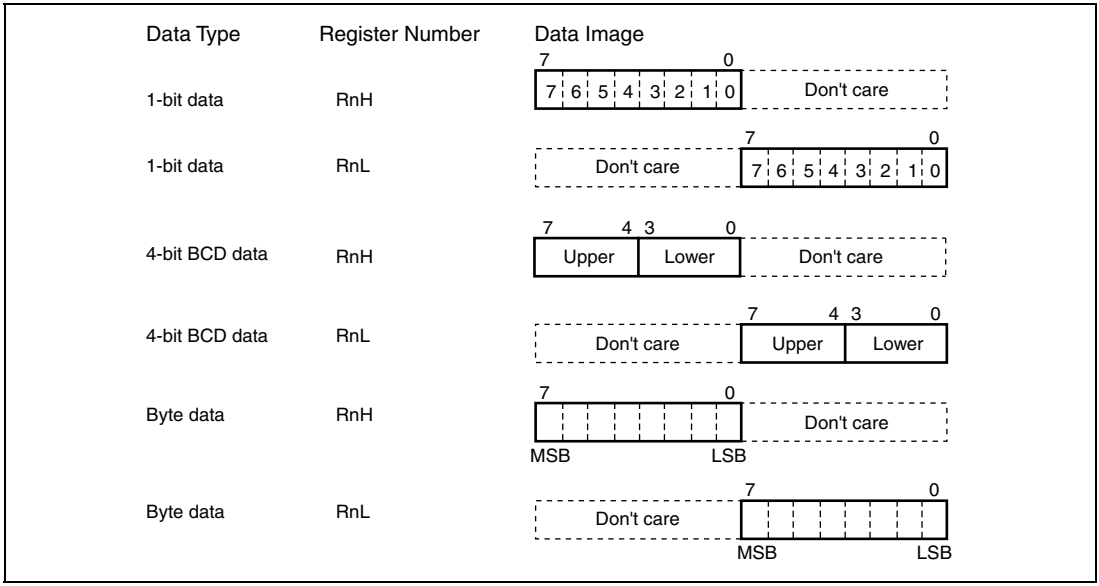


Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (1)

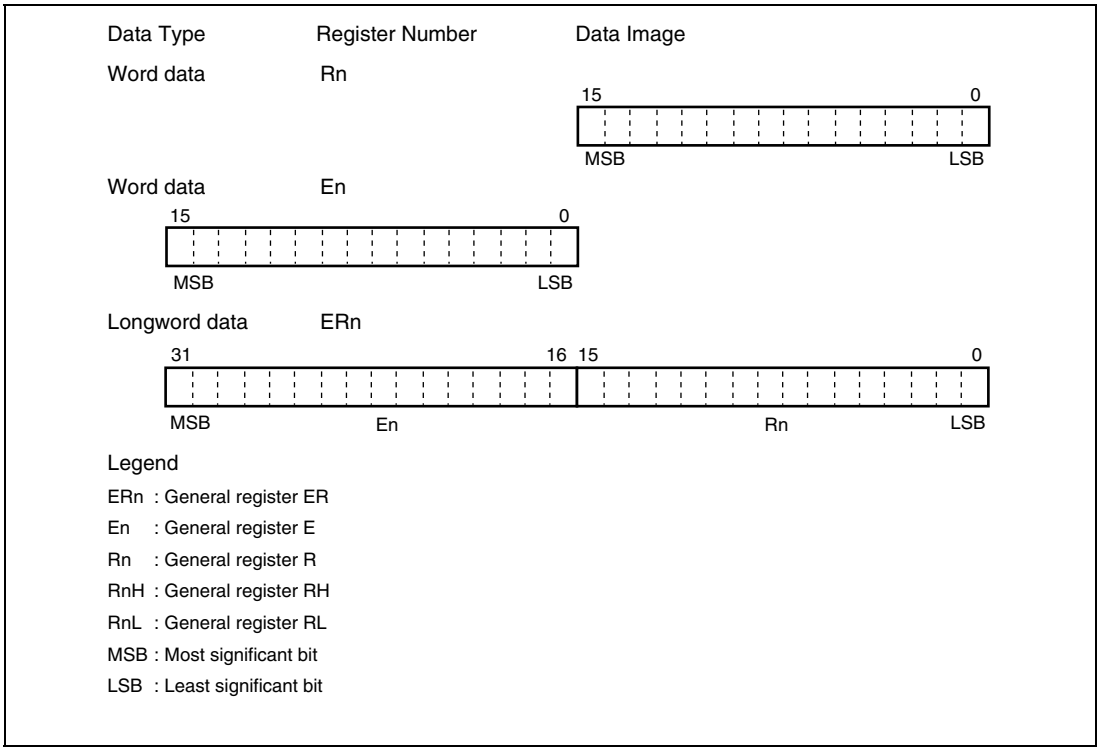


Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (2)

2.5.2 Memory Data Formats

Figure 2.10 shows the data formats in memory. The H8S/2000 CPU can access word data and longword data in memory, but word or longword data must begin at an even address. If an attempt is made to access word or longword data at an odd address, no address error occurs but the least significant bit of the address is regarded as 0, so the access starts at the preceding address. This also applies to instruction fetches.

When SP (ER7) is used as an address register to access the stack, the operand size should be word size or longword size.

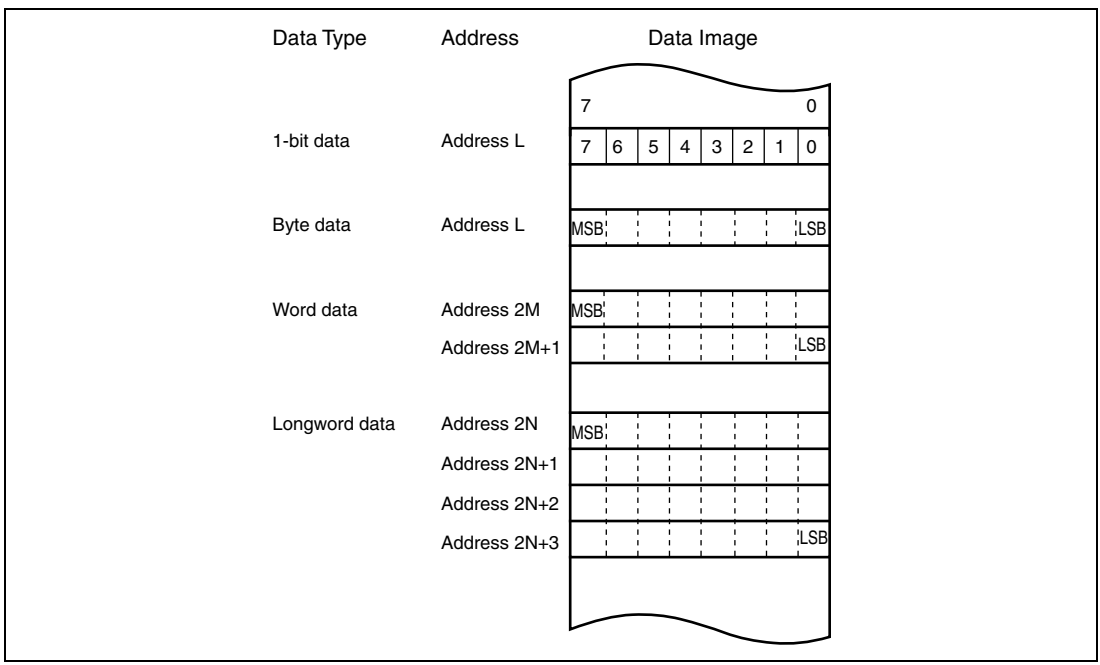


Figure 2.10 Memory Data Formats

2.6 Instruction Set

The H8S/2000 CPU has 65 types of instructions. The instructions are classified by function in table 2.1.

Table 2.1 Instruction Classification

Function	Instructions	Size	Types
Data transfer	MOV	B/W/L	5
	POP*[1], PUSH*[1]	W/L	
	LDM, STM	L	
	MOVFPE*[3], MOVTPE*[3]	B	
Arithmetic operations	ADD, SUB, CMP, NEG	B/W/L	19
	ADDX, SUBX, DAA, DAS	B	
	INC, DEC	B/W/L	
	ADDS, SUBS	L	
	MULXU, DIVXU, MULXS, DIVXS	B/W	
	EXTU, EXTS	W/L	
	TAS*[4]	B	
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR, NOT	B/W/L	4
Shift	SHAL, SHAR, SHLL, SHLR, ROTL, ROTR, ROTXL, ROTXR	B/W/L	8
Bit manipulation	BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BTST, BLD, BILD, BST, BIST, BAND, BIAND, BOR, BIOR, BXOR, BIXOR	B	14
Branch	BCC*[2], JMP, BSR, JSR, RTS	–	5
System control	TRAPA, RTE, SLEEP, LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, XORC, NOP	–	9
Block data transfer	EEPMOV	–	1
		Total:	65

Notes: B: byte size; W:word size; L:longword size.

1. POP.W Rn and PUSH.W Rn are identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn and MOV.W Rn, @-SP. POP.L ERn and PUSH.L ERn are identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn and MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
2. Bcc is the general name for conditional branch instructions.
3. Cannot be used in this LSI.
4. Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction.

2.6.1 Table of Instructions Classified by Function

Tables 2.3 to 2.10 summarizes the instructions in each functional category. The notation used in tables 2.3 to 2.10 is defined below.

Table 2.2 Operation Notation

Symbol	Description
Rd	General register (destination)*
Rs	General register (source) *
Rn	General register*
ERn	General register (32-bit register)
(EAd)	Destination operand
(EAs)	Source operand
EXR	Extended control register
CCR	Condition-code register
N	N (negative) flag in CCR
Z	Z (zero) flag in CCR
V	V (overflow) flag in CCR
C	C (carry) flag in CCR
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
#IMM	Immediate data
disp	Displacement
+	Addition
–	Subtraction
×	Multiplication
÷	Division
∧	Logical AND
∨	Logical OR
⊕	Logical exclusive OR
→	Move
~	NOT (logical complement)
:8/:16/:24/:32	8-, 16-, 24-, or 32-bit length

Note: * General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H to R7H, R0L to R7L), 16-bit registers (R0 to R7, E0 to E7), and 32-bit registers (ER0 to ER7).

Table 2.3 Data Transfer Instructions

Instruction	Size*[1]	Function
MOV	B/W/L	(EAs) → Rd, Rs → (EAd) Moves data between two general registers or between a general register and memory, or moves immediate data to a general register.
MOVFPE	B	Cannot be used in this LSI.
MOVTPE	B	Cannot be used in this LSI.
POP	W/L	@SP+ → Rn Pops a general register from the stack. POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn. POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn
PUSH	W/L	Rn → @-SP Pushes a general register onto the stack. PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @-SP. PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
LDM*[2]	L	@SP+ → Rn (register list) Pops two or more general registers from the stack.
STM*[2]	L	Rn (register list) → @-SP Pushes two or more general registers onto the stack.

Notes: 1. Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword
2. ER7 is used as a stack pointer in STM and LDM instructions. ER7, therefore, should not be used as a saving (STM) or restoring (LDM) register.

Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (1)

Instruction	Size*	Function
ADD	B/W/L	Rd ± Rs → Rd, Rd ± #IMM → Rd
SUB		Performs addition or subtraction on data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register. (Immediate byte data cannot be subtracted from byte data in a general register. Use the SUBX or ADD instruction.)
ADDX	B	Rd ± Rs ± C → Rd, Rd ± #IMM ± C → Rd
SUBX		Performs addition or subtraction with carry or borrow on byte data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register.
INC	B/W/L	Rd ± 1 → Rd, Rd ± 2 → Rd
DEC		Increments or decrements a general register by 1 or 2. (Byte operands can be incremented or decremented by 1 only.)
ADDS	L	Rd ± 1 → Rd, Rd ± 2 → Rd, Rd ± 4 → Rd
SUBS		Adds or subtracts the value 1,2, or 4 to or from data in a 32-bit register.
DAA	B	Rd (decimal adjust) → Rd
DAS		Decimal-adjusts an addition or subtraction result in a general register by referring to the OCR to produce 4-bit BCD data.
MULXU	B/W	Rd × Rs → Rd
		Performs unsigned multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits × 8 bits → 16 bits or 16 bits × 16 bits → 32 bits.
MULXS	B/W	Rd × Rs → Rd
		Performs signed multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits × 8 bits → 16 bits or 16 bits × 16 bits → 32 bits.
DIVXU	B/W	Rd ÷ Rs → Rd
		Performs unsigned division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (2)

Instruction	Size*[1]	Function
DIVXS	B/W	Rd ÷ Rs → Rd Performs signed division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.
CMP	B/W/L	Rd – Rs, Rd – #IMM Compares data in a general register with data in another general register or with immediate data, and sets CCR bits according to the result.
NEG	B/W/L	0 – Rd → Rd Takes the two's complement (arithmetic complement) of data in a general register.
EXTU	W/L	Rd (zero extension) → Rd Extends the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word size, or the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword size, by padding with zeros on the left.
EXTS	W/L	Rd (sign extension) → Rd Extends the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word size, or the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword size, by extending the sign bit.
TAS*[2]	B	@ERd – 0, 1 → (<bit 7> of @ERd) Tests memory contents, and sets the most significant bit (bit 7) to 1.

Notes: 1. Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword
2. Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction.

Table 2.5 Logic Operations Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
AND	B/W/L	Rd ∧ Rs → Rd, Rd ∧ #IMM → Rd Performs a logical AND operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
OR	B/W/L	Rd ∨ Rs → Rd, Rd ∨ #IMM → Rd Performs a logical OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
XOR	B/W/L	Rd ⊕ Rs → Rd, Rd ⊕ #IMM → Rd Performs a logical exclusive OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
NOT	B/W/L	~ Rd → Rd Takes the one's complement (logical complement) of general register contents.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2.6 Shift Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
SHAL	B/W/L	Rd (shift) → Rd
SHAR		Performs an arithmetic shift on general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit shift is possible.
SHLL	B/W/L	Rd (shift) → Rd
SHLR		Performs an logical shift on general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit shift is possible.
ROTL	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) → Rd
ROTR		Rotates general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit rotation is possible.
ROTXL	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) → Rd
ROTXR		Rotates general register contents through the carry flag. 1-bit or 2 bit rotation is possible.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (1)

Instruction	Size*	Function
BSET	B	1 → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Sets a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 1. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
BCLR	B	0 → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Clears a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 0. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
BNOT	B	~ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Inverts a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
BTST	B	~ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → Z Tests a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and sets or clears the Z flag accordingly. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
BAND	B	C ∧ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C ANDs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIAND	B	C ∧ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C ANDs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BOR	B	C ∨ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIOR	B	C ∨ (~ <bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Note:* Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte

Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (2)

Instruction	Size*	Function
BXOR	B	C ⊕ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIXOR	B	C ⊕ ~ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BLD	B	(<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C Transfers a specified bit in a general register or memory to the carry flag.
BILD	B	~ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C Transfers the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BST	B	C → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Transfers the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand.
BIST	B	~ C → (<bit-No.>. of <EAd>) Transfers the inverse of the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Note:* Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte

Table 2.8 Branch Instructions

Instruction	Size	Function
Bcc	–	Branches to a specified address if a specified condition is true. The branching conditions are listed below.

Mnemonic	Description	Condition
BRA (BT)	Always (true)	Always
BRN (BF)	Never (false)	Never
BHI	High	$C \vee Z = 0$
BLS	Low or same	$C \vee Z = 1$
BCC (BHS)	Carry clear (high or same)	$C = 0$
BCS (BLO)	Carry set (low)	$C = 1$
BNE	Not equal	$Z = 0$
BEQ	Equal	$Z = 1$
BVC	Overflow clear	$V = 0$
BVS	Overflow set	$V = 1$
BPL	Plus	$N = 0$
BMI	Minus	$N = 1$
BGE	Greater or equal	$N \oplus V = 0$
BLT	Less than	$N \oplus V = 1$
BGT	Greater than	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$
BLE	Less or equal	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$

JMP	–	Branches unconditionally to a specified address.
BSR	–	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address
JSR	–	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address
RTS	–	Returns from a subroutine

Table 2.9 System Control Instruction

Instruction	Size*	Function
TRAPA	–	Starts trap-instruction exception handling.
RTE	–	Returns from an exception-handling routine.
SLEEP	–	Causes a transition to a power-down state.
LDC	B/W	(EAs) → CCR, (EAs) → EXR Moves the source operand contents or immediate data to CCR or EXR. Although CCR and EXR are 8-bit registers, word-size transfers are performed between them and memory. The upper 8 bits are valid.
STC	B/W	CCR → (EAd), EXR → (EAd) Transfers CCR or EXR contents to a general register or memory. Although CCR and EXR are 8-bit registers, word-size transfers are performed between them and memory. The upper 8 bits are valid.
ANDC	B	CCR ∧ #IMM → CCR, EXR ∧ #IMM → EXR Logically ANDs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data.
ORC	B	CCR ∨ #IMM → CCR, EXR ∨ #IMM → EXR Logically ORs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data.
XORC	B	CCR ⊕ #IMM → CCR, EXR ⊕ #IMM → EXR Logically exclusive-ORs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data.
NOP	–	PC + 2 → PC Only increments the program counter.

Note:* Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word

Table 2.10 Block Data Transfer Instruction

Instruction	Size*	Function

EEPMOV.B	–	if R4L ≠ 0 then
		Repeat @ER5+ → @ER6+
		R4L–1 → R4L
		Until R4L = 0
		else next:

EEPMOV.W	–	if R4 ≠ 0 then
		Repeat @ER5+ → @ER6+
		R4–1 → R4
		Until R4 = 0
		else next:
		Transfer a data block. Starting from the address set in ER5, transfers data for the number of bytes set in R4L or R4 to the address location set in ER6.
		Execution of the next instruction begins as soon as the transfer is completed.

2.6.2 Basic Instruction Formats

The H8S/2000 CPU instructions consist of 2-byte (1-word) units. An instruction consists of an operation field (op), a register field (r), an effective address extension (EA), and a condition field (cc).

Figure 2.11 shows examples of instruction formats.

- Operation Field

  Indicates the function of the instruction, the addressing mode, and the operation to be carried out on the operand. The operation field always includes the first four bits of the instruction. Some instructions have two operation fields.
- Register Field

  Specifies a general register. Address registers are specified by 3 bits, data registers by 3 bits or 4 bits. Some instructions have two register fields. Some have no register field.
- Effective Address Extension

  8, 16, or 32 bits specifying immediate data, an absolute address, or a displacement.
- Condition Field

  Specifies the branching condition of Bcc instructions.

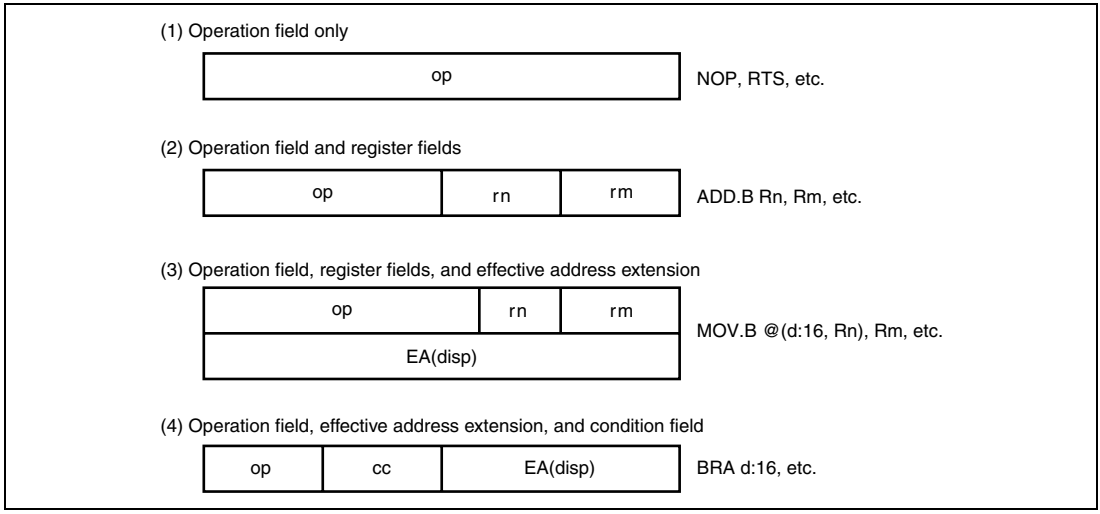


Figure 2.11 Instruction Formats (Examples)

2.7 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation

The H8S/2000 CPU supports the eight addressing modes listed in table 2.11. Each instruction uses a subset of these addressing modes. Arithmetic and logic instructions can use the register direct and immediate modes. Data transfer instructions can use all addressing modes except program-counter relative and memory indirect. Bit manipulation instructions use register direct, register indirect, or absolute addressing mode to specify an operand, and register direct (BSET, BCLR, BNOT, and BTST instructions) or immediate (3-bit) addressing mode to specify a bit number in the operand.

Table 2.11 Addressing Modes

No.	Addressing Mode	Symbol
1	Register direct	Rn
2	Register indirect	@ERn
3	Register indirect with displacement	@(d:16,ERn)/@(d:32,ERn)
4	Register indirect with post-increment	@ERn+
	Register indirect with pre-decrement	@–ERn
5	Absolute address	@aa:8/@aa:16/@aa:24/@aa:32
6	Immediate	#xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32
7	Program-counter relative	@(d:8,PC)/@(d:16,PC)
8	Memory indirect	@@aa:8

2.7.1 Register Direct—Rn

The register field of the instruction specifies an 8-, 16-, or 32-bit general register containing the operand. R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L can be specified as 8-bit registers. R0 to R7 and E0 to E7 can be specified as 16-bit registers. ER0 to ER7 can be specified as 32-bit registers.

2.7.2 Register Indirect—@ERn

The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn) which contains the address of the operand on memory. If the address is a program instruction address, the lower 24 bits are valid and the upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00).

2.7.3 Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:32, ERn)

A 16-bit or 32-bit displacement contained in the instruction is added to an address register (ERn) specified by the register field of the instruction, and the sum gives the address of a memory operand. A 16-bit displacement is sign-extended when added.

2.7.4 Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @-ERn

Register indirect with post-increment—@ERn+: The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn) which contains the address of a memory operand. After the operand is accessed, 1, 2, or 4 is added to the address register contents and the sum is stored in the address register. The value added is 1 for byte access, 2 for word transfer instruction, or 4 for longword transfer instruction. For word or longword transfer instruction, the register value should be even.

Register indirect with pre-decrement—@-ERn: The value 1, 2, or 4 is subtracted from an address register (ERn) specified by the register field in the instruction code, and the result becomes the address of a memory operand. The result is also stored in the address register. The value subtracted is 1 for byte access, 2 for word transfer instruction, or 4 for longword transfer instruction. For word or longword transfer instruction, the register value should be even.

2.7.5 Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32

The instruction code contains the absolute address of a memory operand. The absolute address may be 8 bits long (@aa:8), 16 bits long (@aa:16), 24 bits long (@aa:24), or 32 bits long (@aa:32). Table 2.12 indicates the accessible absolute address ranges.

To access data, the absolute address should be 8 bits (@aa:8), 16 bits (@aa:16), or 32 bits (@aa:32) long. For an 8-bit absolute address, the upper 24 bits are all assumed to be 1 (H'FFFF). For a 16-bit absolute address the upper 16 bits are a sign extension. A 32-bit absolute address can access the entire address space.

A 24-bit absolute address (@aa:24) indicates the address of a program instruction. The upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00).

Table 2.12 Absolute Address Access Ranges

Absolute Address		Normal Mode*	Advanced Mode
Data address	8 bits (@aa:8)	H'FF00 to H'FFFF	H'FFFF00 to H'FFFFFF
	16 bits (@aa:16)	H'0000 to H'FFFF	H'000000 to H'007FFF, H'FF8000 to H'FFFFFF
	32 bits (@aa:32)		H'000000 to H'FFFFFF
Program instruction address	24 bits (@aa:24)		

Note: * Not available in this LSI.

2.7.6 Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32

The instruction contains 8-bit (#xx:8), 16-bit (#xx:16), or 32-bit (#xx:32) immediate data as an operand.

The ADDS, SUBS, INC, and DEC instructions contain immediate data implicitly. Some bit manipulation instructions contain 3-bit immediate data in the instruction code, specifying a bit number. The TRAPA instruction contains 2-bit immediate data in its instruction code, specifying a vector address.

2.7.7 Program-Counter Relative—@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC)

This mode is used in the Bcc and BSR instructions. An 8-bit or 16-bit displacement contained in the instruction is sign-extended and added to the 24-bit PC contents to generate a branch address.

Only the lower 24 bits of this branch address are valid; the upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00). The PC value to which the displacement is added is the address of the first byte of the next instruction, so the possible branching range is –126 to +128 bytes (–63 to +64 words) or –32766 to +32768 bytes (–16383 to +16384 words) from the branch instruction. The resulting value should be an even number.

2.7.8 Memory Indirect—@@aa:8

This mode can be used by the JMP and JSR instructions. The instruction code contains an 8-bit absolute address specifying a memory operand. This memory operand contains a branch address.

The upper bits of the absolute address are all assumed to be 0, so the address range is 0 to 255 (H'0000 to H'00FF in normal mode*, H'000000 to H'0000FF in advanced mode). In normal mode the memory operand is a word operand and the branch address is 16 bits long. In advanced mode the memory operand is a longword operand, the first byte of which is assumed to be H'00.

Note that the first part of the address range is also the exception vector area. For further details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

If an odd address is specified in word or longword memory access, or as a branch address, the least significant bit is regarded as 0, causing data to be accessed or instruction code to be fetched at the address preceding the specified address. (For further information, see section 2.5.2, Memory Data Formats.)

Note: * Not available in this LSI.

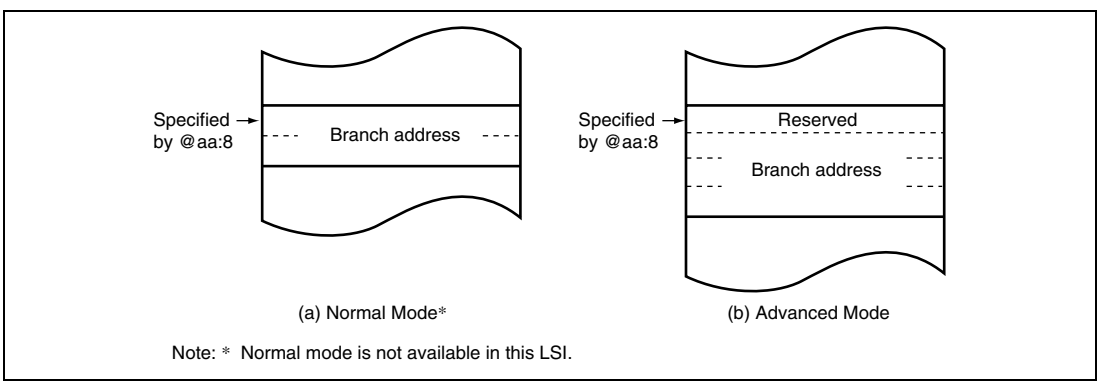


Figure 2.12 Branch Address Specification in Memory Indirect Mode

2.7.9 Effective Address Calculation

Table 2.13 indicates how effective addresses are calculated in each addressing mode. In normal mode the upper 8 bits of the effective address are ignored in order to generate a 16-bit address.

Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (1)

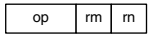
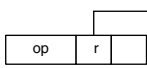
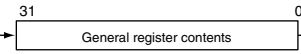
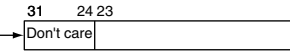
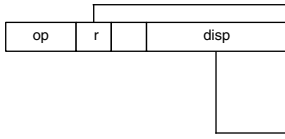
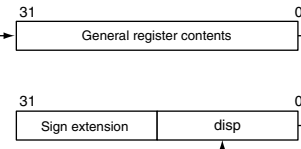
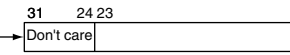
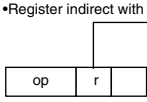
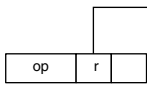
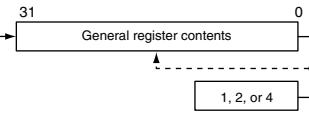
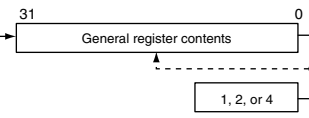
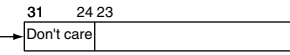
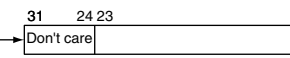
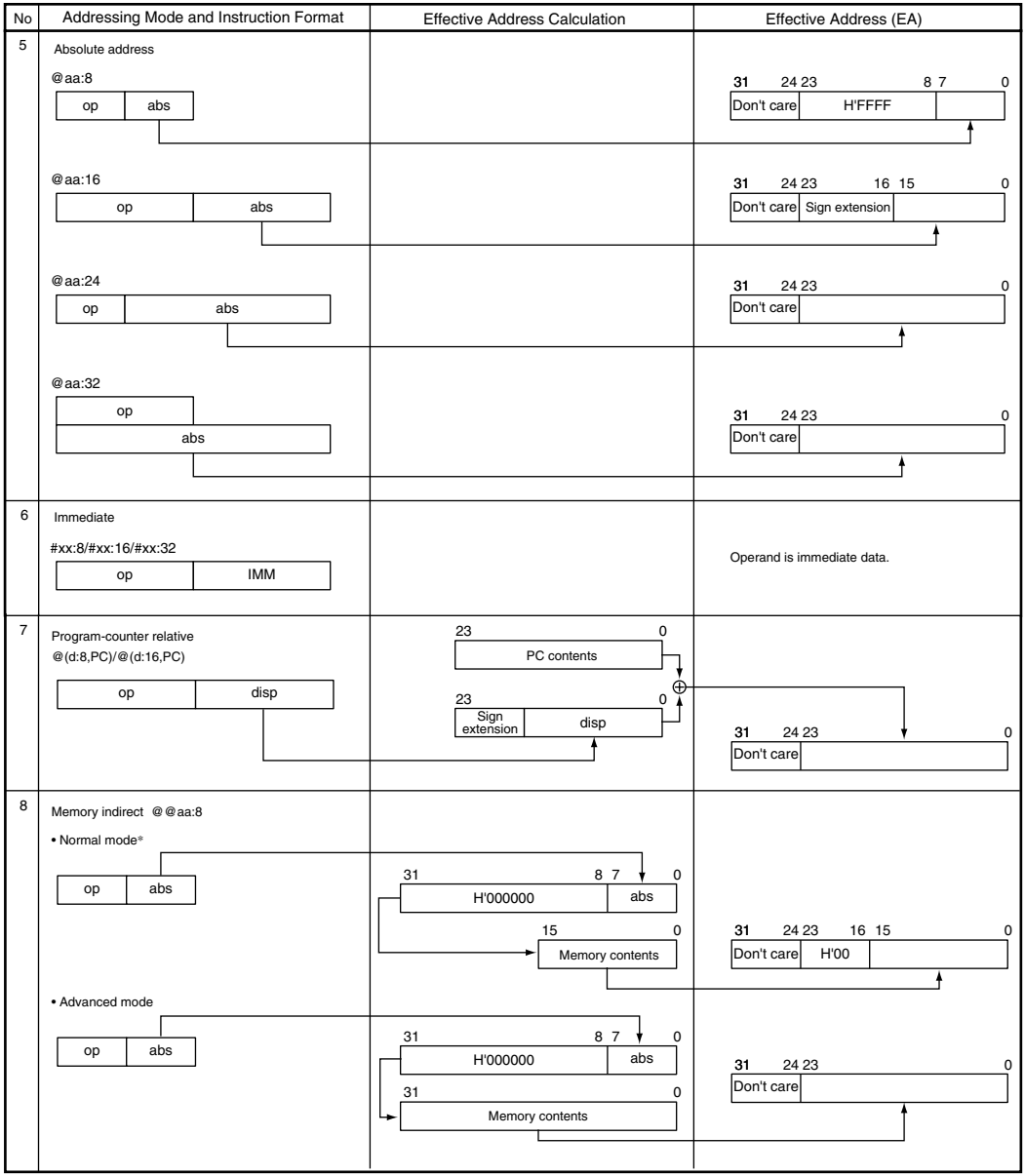
No	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address (EA)
1	Register direct (Rn) 		Operand is general register contents.
2	Register indirect (@ERn) 		
3	Register indirect with displacement @(d:16,ERn) or @(d:32,ERn) 		
4	Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement •Register indirect with post-increment @ERn+  •Register indirect with pre-decrement @-ERn 	  Operand Size / Offset Byte: 1 Word: 2 Longword: 4	 

Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (2)



Note: * Normal mode is not available in this LSI.

2.8 Processing States

The H8S/2000 CPU has five main processing states: the reset state, exception handling state, program execution state, bus-released state, and program stop state. Figure 2.13 indicates the state transitions.

- Reset State

  In this state the CPU and internal peripheral modules are all initialized and stop. When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input goes low all current processing stops and the CPU enters the reset state. All interrupts are masked in the reset state. Reset exception handling starts when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal changes from low to high. For details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

  The reset state can also be entered by a watchdog timer overflow.

- Exception-Handling State

  The exception-handling state is a transient state that occurs when the CPU alters the normal processing flow due to an exception source, such as, a reset, trace, interrupt, or trap instruction. The CPU fetches a start address (vector) from the exception vector table and branches to that address. For further details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

- Program Execution State

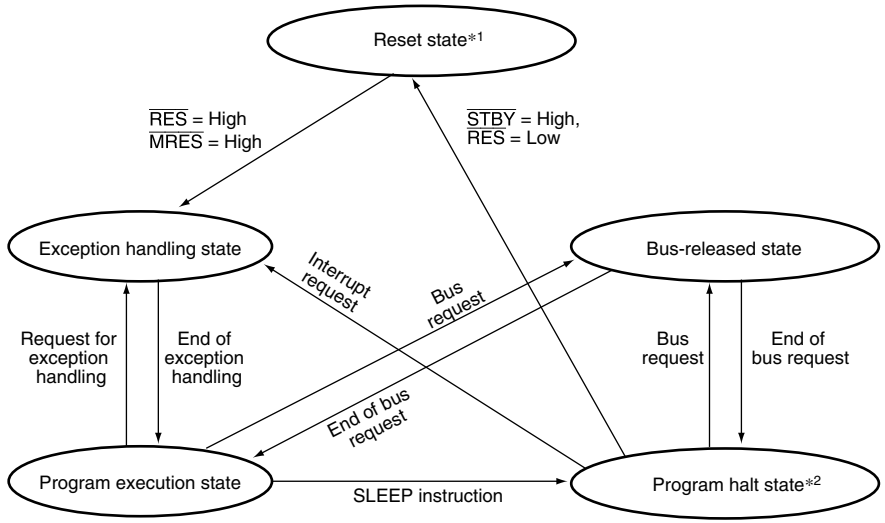
  In this state the CPU executes program instructions in sequence.

- Bus-Released State

  In a product which has a bus master other than the CPU, such as a direct memory access controller (DMAC) and a data transfer controller (DTC), the bus-released state occurs when the bus has been released in response to a bus request from a bus master other than the CPU. While the bus is released, the CPU halts operations.

- Program Stop State

  This is a power-down state in which the CPU stops operating. The program stop state occurs when a SLEEP instruction is executed or the CPU enters hardware standby mode. For details, refer to section 20, Power-Down Modes.



Notes: 1. From any state except hardware standby mode, a transition to the power-on reset state occurs whenever $\overline{RES}$ goes low. From any state except hardware standby more or power-on reset state, a transition to the manual reset state occurs whenever $\overline{MRES}$ goes low. A transition can also be made to the reset state when the watchdog timer overflows.

2. From any state, a transition to hardware standby mode occurs when $\overline{STBY}$ goes low.

Figure 2.13 State Transitions

2.9 Usage Notes

2.9.1 Note on TAS Instruction Usage

Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction. The TAS instruction is not generated by the Hitachi H8S and H8/300 series C/C++ compilers. If the TAS instruction is used as a user-defined intrinsic function, ensure that only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 is used.

2.9.2 STM/LTM Instruction Usage

With the STM or LDM instruction, the ER7 register is used as the stack pointer, and thus cannot be used as a register that allows save (STM) or restore (LDM) operation.

With a single STM or LDM instruction, two to four registers can be saved or restored. The available registers are as follows:

For two registers: ER0 and ER1, ER2 and ER3, or ER4 and ER5

For three registers: ER0 to ER2, or ER4 to ER6

For four registers: ER0 to ER3

For the Hitachi H8S or H8/300 Series C/C++ Compiler, the STM/LDM instruction including ER7 is not created.

2.9.3 Note on Bit Manipulation Instructions

Bit manipulation instructions such as BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BST, and BIST read data in byte units, perform bit manipulation, and write data in byte units. Thus, care must be taken when these bit manipulation instruction are executed for a register or port including write-only bits.

In addition, the BCLR instruction can be used to clear the flag of the internal I/O register. In this case, if the flag to be cleared has been set by an interrupt processing routine, the flag need not be read before executing the BCLR instruction.

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes

3.1 Operating Mode Selection

This LSI supports four operating modes (modes 4 to 7). These modes enable selection of the CPU operating mode, enabling/disabling of on-chip ROM, and the initial bus width setting, by setting the mode pins (MD2 to MD0) as show in table 3.1. Do not change the mode pin settings during operation. Only mode 7 is available in the H8S/2212 Series.

Table 3.1 MCU Operating Mode Selection

MCU Operating Mode	MD2	MD1	MD0	CPU Operating Mode	Description	On-chip ROM	External Data Bus	
							Initial Value	Maximum Value
4	1	0	0	Advanced mode	On-chip ROM disabled, extended mode	Disabled	16 bits	16 bits
5	1	0	1	Advanced mode	On-chip ROM disabled, extended mode	Disabled	8 bits	16 bits
6	1	1	0	Advanced mode	On-chip ROM enabled, extended mode	Enabled	8 bits	16 bits
7	1	1	1	Advanced mode	Single-chip mode	Enabled	–	–

Notes: When using the E6000 emulator

1. Mode 7 is not available in the H8S/2218 Series. (The E6000 emulator does not support mode 7.)
2. Note following restrictions to use the RTC and USB in mode 6.
   Specify PFCR so that A9 and A8 are output on the PB1 and PB0 pins.
   Set H'FF in PCDDR so that A7 to A0 are output on the PC7 to PC0 pins.

3.2 Register Descriptions

The following registers are related to the operating mode.

- Mode control register (MDCR)
- System control register (SYSCR)

3.2.1 Mode Control Register (MDCR)

MDCR is used to monitor the current operating mode of this LSI. MDCR should not be modified.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 3	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are always read as undefined value and cannot be modified.
2	MDS2	—*[1]	R	Mode Select 2 to 0 These bits indicate the input levels at pins MD2 to MD0 (the current operating mode). Bits MDS2 to MDS0 correspond to MD2 to MD0. MDS2 to MDS0 are read-only bits and they cannot be written to. The mode pin (MD2 to MD0) input levels are latched into these bits when MDCR is read. These latches are canceled by a power-on reset, but maintained at manual reset*[2].
1	MDS1	—*[1]	R	
0	MDS0	—*[1]	R	

Notes: 1. Determined by the MD2 to MD0 pin settings.
2. Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

3.2.2 System Control Register (SYSCR)

SYSCR is used to select the interrupt control mode and the detected edge for NMI, select the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ input pin* enable or disable, and enables or disables on-chip RAM.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	–	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
6	–	0	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	INTM1	0	R/W	These bits select the control mode of the interrupt controller. For details of the interrupt control modes, see section 5.6, Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation. 00: Interrupt control mode 0 01: Setting prohibited 10: Interrupt control mode 2 11: Setting prohibited
4	INTM0	0	R/W	
3	NMIEG	0	R/W	NMI Edge Select Selects the valid edge of the NMI interrupt input. 0: An interrupt is requested at the falling edge of NMI input 1: An interrupt is requested at the rising edge of NMI input
2	MRESE	0	R/W	Manual Reset Select Enables or disables the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin* input. 0: Manual reset is disabled 1: Manual reset is enabled The $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ input pin* can be used.
1	–	0	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
0	RAME	1	R/W	RAM Enable Enables or disables the on-chip RAM. The RAME bit is initialized when the reset status is released. 0: On-chip RAM is disabled 1: On-chip RAM is enabled

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

3.3 Operating Mode Descriptions

3.3.1 Mode 4 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series)

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is disabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B, and C function as an address bus, ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries bus control signals.

Pins P13 to P11 function as input ports immediately after a reset. Pin 10 and ports A and B function as address (A20 to A8) outputs immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A21) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C always has an address (A7 to A0) output function.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 16 bits, with 16-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 8-bit access is designated by the bus controller for all areas, the bus mode switches to 8 bits.

3.3.2 Mode 5 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series)

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is disabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B, and C function as an address bus, ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries bus control signals.

Pins P13 to P11 function as input ports immediately after a reset. Pin 10 and ports A and B function as address (A20 to A8) outputs immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A21) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C always has an address (A7 to A0) output function.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 16-bit access is designated by the bus controller for any area, the bus mode switches to 16 bits and port E becomes a data bus.

3.3.3 Mode 6 (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series)

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is enabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B and C function as input ports immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A8) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C is an input port immediately after a reset. Addresses A7 to A0 are output by setting the corresponding DDR bits to 1.

Ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries data bus signals.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 16-bit access is designated by the bus controller for any area, the bus mode switches to 16 bits and port E becomes a data bus.

3.3.4 Mode 7

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is enabled, but external addresses cannot be accessed.

All I/O ports are available for use as input-output ports.

3.3.5 Pin Functions

The pin functions of ports 1, and A to F vary depending on the operating mode. Table 3.2 shows their functions in each operating mode.

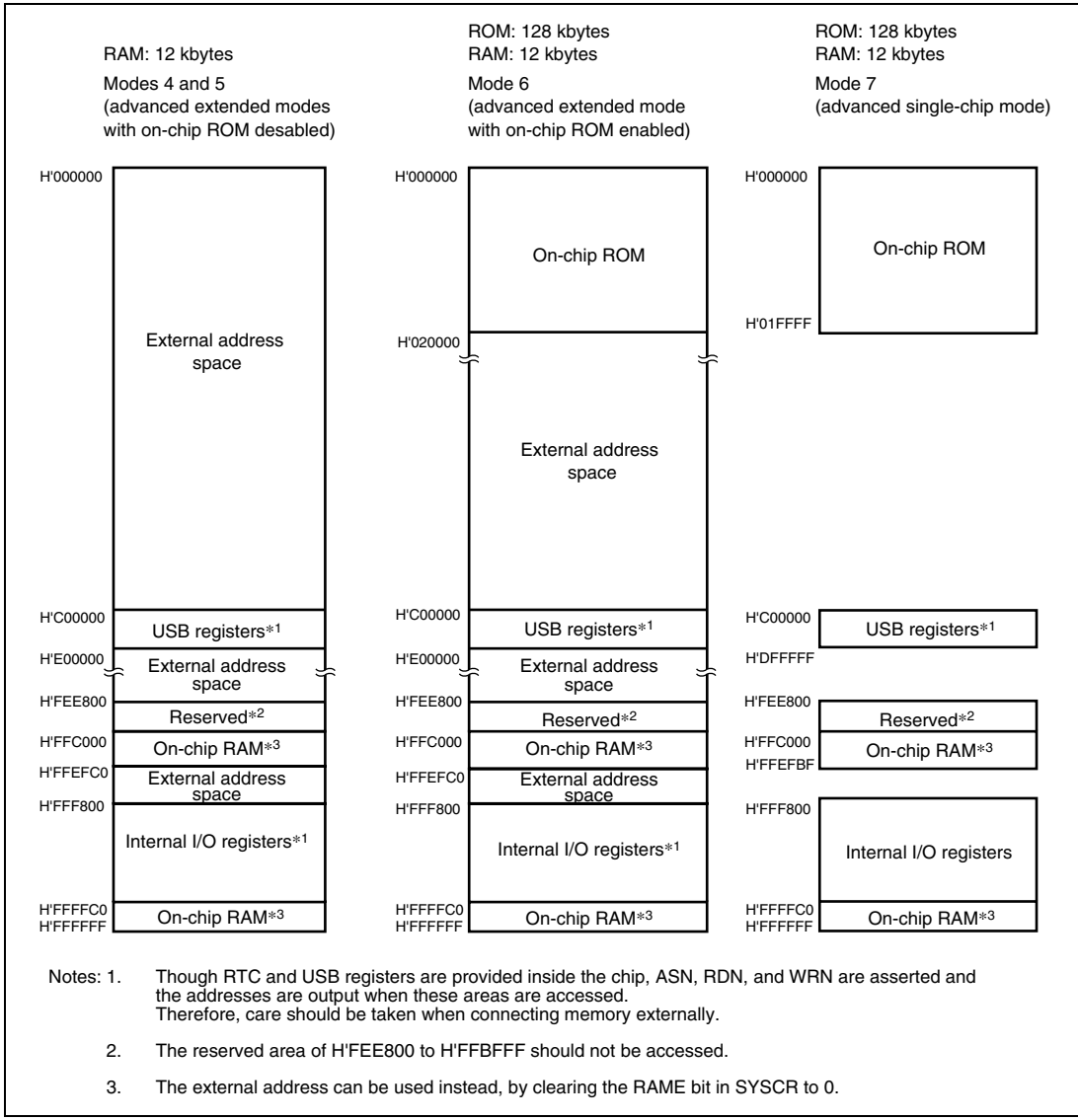
Table 3.2 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode

Port		Mode 4	Mode 5	Mode 6	Mode 7
Port 1	P13 to P11	P*/A	P*/A	P*/A	P
	P10	P/A*	P/A*	P*/A	P
Port A	PA3 to PA0	P/A*	P/A*	P*/A	P
Port B		P/A*	P/A*	P*/A	P
Port C		A	A	P*/A	P
Port D		D	D	D	P
Port E		P/D*	P*/D	P*/D	P
Port F	PF7	P/C*	P/C*	P/C*	P*/C
	PF6 to PF4	C	C	C	P
	PF3	P/C*	P*/C	P*/C	
	PF2 to PF0	P*/C	P*/C	P*/C	

Legend
P: I/O port
A: Address bus output
D: Data bus I/O
C: Control signals, clock I/O
*: After reset

3.4 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode

Figures 3.1 to 3.3 show the memory map in each operation mode, respectively.

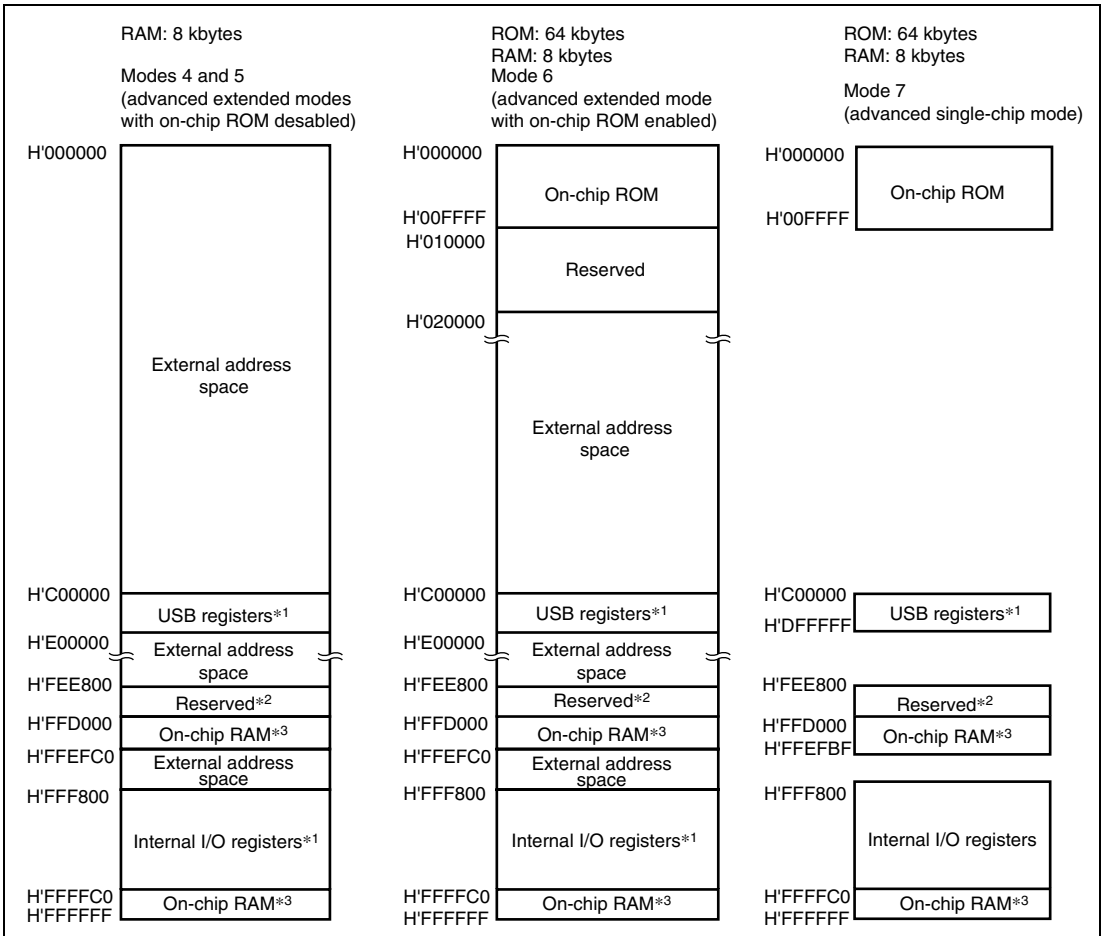


Notes: 1. Though RTC and USB registers are provided inside the chip, ASN, RDN, and WRN are asserted and the addresses are output when these areas are accessed.
Therefore, care should be taken when connecting memory externally.

2. The reserved area of H'FEE800 to H'FFBFFF should not be accessed.

3. The external address can be used instead, by clearing the RAME bit in SYSCR to 0.

Figure 3.1 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2218 and HD64F2218U

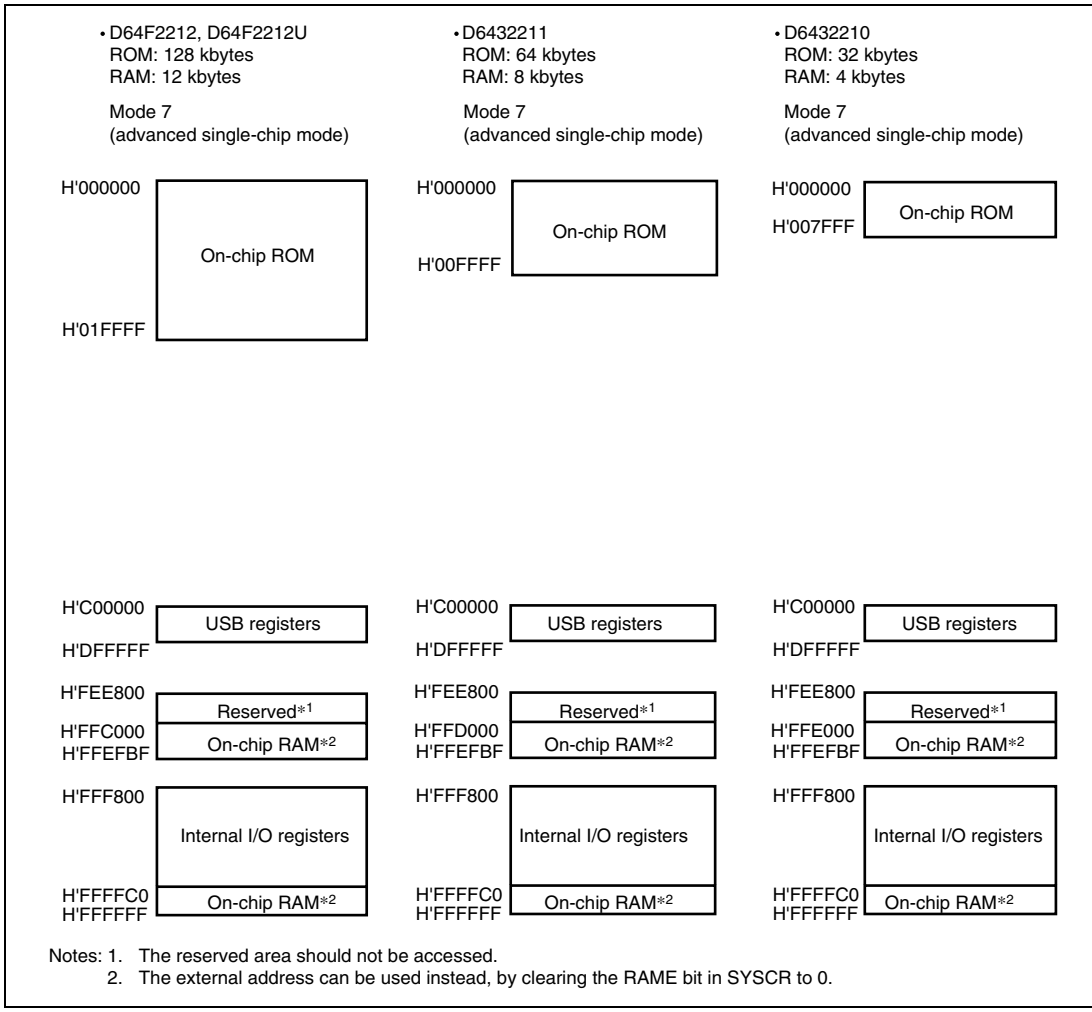


Notes: 1. Though RTC and USB registers are provided inside the chip, ASN, RDN, and WRN are asserted and the addresses are output when these areas are accessed.
Therefore, care should be taken when connecting memory externally.

2. The reserved area of H'FEE800 to H'FFCFFF should not be accessed.

3. The external address can be used instead, by clearing the RAME bit in SYSCR to 0.

Figure 3.2 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432217



Notes: 1. The reserved area should not be accessed.
2. The external address can be used instead, by clearing the RAME bit in SYSCR to 0.

Figure 3.3 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2212, HD64F2212U, HD6432211, and HD6432210

Section 4 Exception Handling

4.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority

As table 4.1 indicates, exception handling may be caused by a reset, trace, trap instruction, or interrupt. Exception handling is prioritized as shown in table 4.1. If two or more exceptions occur simultaneously, they are accepted and processed in order of priority. Exception sources, the stack structure, and operation of the CPU vary depending on the interrupt control mode. For details on the interrupt control mode, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.

Table 4.1 Exception Types and Priority

Priority	Exception Type	Start of Exception Handling
High ▲	Reset	Starts immediately after a low-to-high transition at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin, or when the watchdog timer overflows. The CPU enters the reset state when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is low. The CPU enters the manual reset state when the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin* is low.
	Trace	Starts when execution of the current instruction or exception handling ends, if the trace (T) bit in the EXR is set to 1. This is enabled only in trace interrupt control mode 2. Trace exception processing is not performed after RTE instruction execution.
	Interrupt	Starts when execution of the current instruction or exception handling ends, if an interrupt request has been issued. Note that after executing the ANDC, ORC, XORC, or LDC instruction or at the completion of reset exception processing, no interrupt is detected.
Low ▼	Trap instruction (TRAPA)	Started by execution of a trap instruction (TRAPA). Trap exception processing is always accepted in program execution state.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

4.2 Exception Sources and Exception Vector Table

Different vector addresses are assigned to different exception sources. Table 4.2 lists the exception sources and their vector addresses. Since the usable modes differ depending on the product, for details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

Table 4.2 Exception Handling Vector Table

Exception Source		Vector Number	Vector Address*[1] Normal Mode*[4]	Vector Address*[1] Advanced Mode
Power-on reset		0	H'0000 to H'0001	H'0000 to H'0003
Manual reset		1	H'0002 to H'0003	H'0004 to H'0007
Reserved for system use		2	H'0004 to H'0005	H'0008 to H'000B
		3	H'0006 to H'0007	H'000C to H'000F
		4	H'0008 to H'0019	H'0010 to H'0013
Trace		5	H'000A to H000B	H'0014 to H0017
Direct transitions*[2]		6	H'000C to H000D	H'0018 to H001B
External interrupt (NMI)		7	H'000E to H'000F	H'001C to H'001F
Trap instruction	#0	8	H'0010 to H'0011	H'0020 to H'0023
	#1	9	H'0012 to H'0013	H'0024 to H'0027
	#2	10	H'0014 to H'0015	H'0028 to H'002B
	#3	11	H'0016 to H'0017	H'002C to H'002F
Reserved for system use		12	H'0018 to H'0019	H'0030 to H'0033
		13	H'001A to H'001B	H'0034 to H'0037
		14	H'001C to H'001D	H'0038 to H'003B
		15	H'001E to H'001F	H'003C to H'003F
External interrupt	IRQ0	16	H'0020 to H'0021	H'0040 to H'0043
External interrupt	IRQ1	17	H'0022 to H'0023	H'0044 to H'0047
External interrupt	IRQ2	18	H'0024 to H'0025	H'0048 to H'004B
External interrupt	IRQ3	19	H'0026 to H'0027	H'004C to H'004F
External interrupt	IRQ4	20	H'0028 to H'0029	H'0050 to H'0053
RTC interrupt	IRQ5	21	H'002A to H'002B	H'0054 to H'0057
USB interrupt	IRQ6	22	H'002C to H'002D	H'0058 to H'005B
External interrupt	IRQ7	23	H'002E to H'002F	H'005C to H'005F
Internal interrupt*[3]		24	H'0030 to H'0031	H'0060 to H'0063
		⎪	⎪	⎪
		127	H'00FE to H'00FF	H'01FC to H'01FF

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.
2. For direct transfer, see section 20.10, Direct Transitions.
3. For details of internal interrupt vectors, see section 5.5, Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table.
4. Not available in this LSI.

4.3 Reset

A reset has the highest exception priority.

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin goes low, all processing halts and this LSI enters the reset state. To ensure that this LSI is reset, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin low for at least 20 ms at power-up or hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin low for at least 20 states during operation.

A reset initializes the internal state of the CPU and the registers of on-chip peripheral modules.

This LSI can also be reset by overflow of the watchdog timer. For details, see section 10, Watchdog Timer.

Immediately after a reset, interrupt control mode 0 is set.

4.3.1 Reset Types

A reset can be of either of two types for the H8S/ 2218 Series: a power-on reset or a manual reset. A reset for the H8S/2212 Series is power-on reset. Reset types are shown in table 4.3. A power-on reset should be used when powering on.

The internal state of the CPU is initialized by either type of reset. A power-on reset also initializes all the registers in the on-chip peripheral modules, while a manual reset initializes all the registers in the on-chip peripheral modules except for the bus controller and I/O ports, which retain their previous states.

With a manual reset, since the on-chip peripheral modules are initialized, ports used as on-chip peripheral module I/O pins are switched to I/O ports controlled by DDR and DR.

Table 4.3 Reset Types

	Reset Transition Condition		Internal State	
Type	**$\overline{\text{MRES}}$**	**$\overline{\text{RES}}$**	**CPU**	**On-Chip Peripheral Modules**
Power-on reset	*	Low	Initialized	Initialized
Manual reset	Low	High	Initialized	Initialized, except for bus controller and I/O ports

Note: * Don't care

A reset caused by the watchdog timer can also be of either of two types: a power-on reset or a manual reset.

When the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin* is used, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin* input must be enabled by setting the MRESE bit to 1 in SYSCR.

Note:* Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

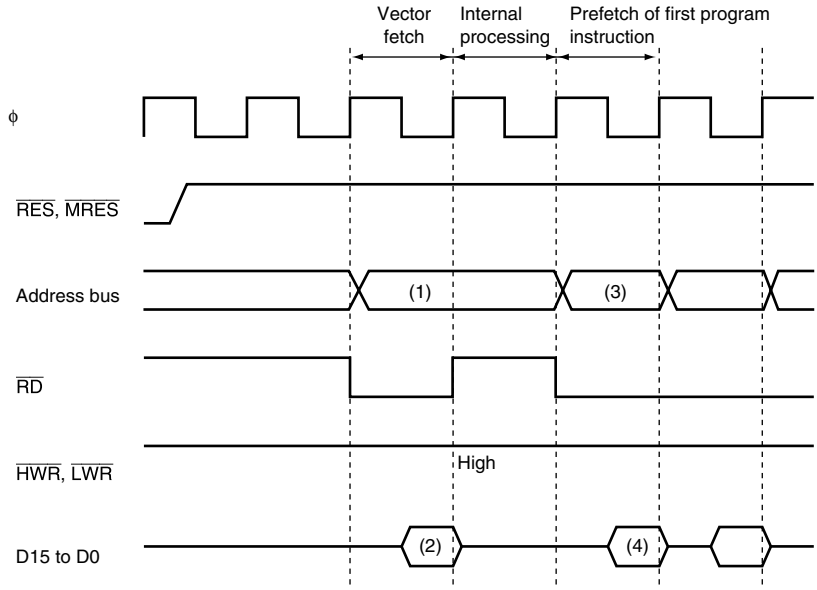
4.3.2 Reset Exception Handling

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin goes high after being held low for the necessary time, this LSI starts reset exception handling as follows:

1. The internal state of the CPU and the registers of the on-chip peripheral modules are initialized, the T bit is cleared to 0 in EXR, and the I bit is set to 1 in EXR and CCR.
2. The reset exception handling vector address is read and transferred to the PC, and program execution starts from the address indicated by the PC.

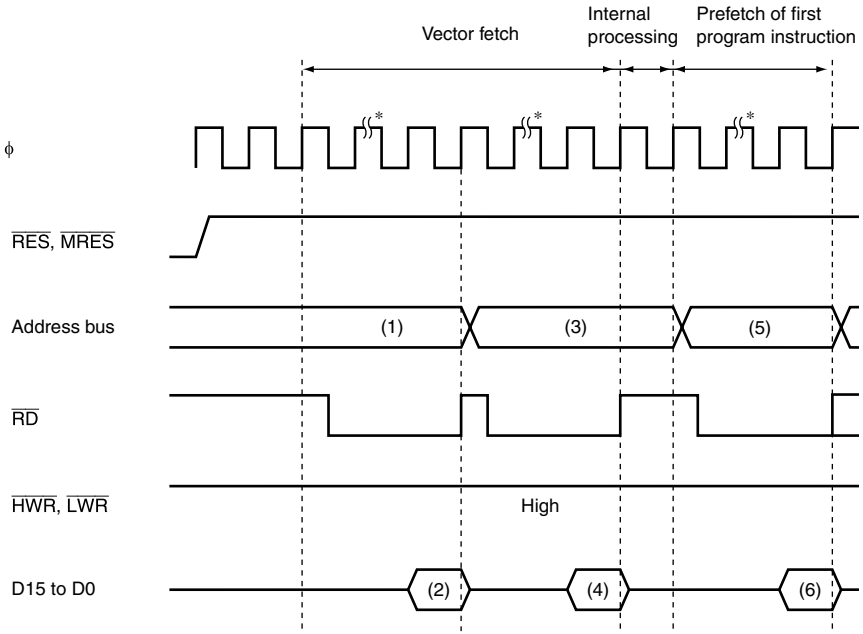
Note:* Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

Figures 4.1 and 4.2 show examples of the reset sequence.



(1) : Reset exception handling vector address (for a power-on reset, (1) = H'000000 for a manual reset, (1) = H'000002)
(2) : Start address (contents of reset exceptiion handling vector address)
(3) : Start address ((3) = (2))
(4) : First program instruction

Figure 4.1 Reset Sequence (Modes 2 and 3: Not available in this LSI)



(1) (3) Reset exception handling vector address (for power-on reset, (1) = H'000000, (3) = H'000002; for manual reset, (1) = H'000004, (3) = H'000006)
(2) (4) Start address (contents of reset exception handling vector address)
(5) Start address ((5) = (2) (4))
(6) First program instruction

Note: * Three program wait states are inserted.

Figure 4.2 Reset Sequence (Mode 4)

4.3.3 Interrupts after Reset

If an interrupt is accepted after a reset but before the stack pointer (SP) is initialized, the PC and CCR will not be saved correctly, leading to a program crash. To prevent this, all interrupt requests, including NMI, are disabled immediately after a reset. Since the first instruction of a program is always executed immediately after the reset state ends, make sure that this instruction initializes the stack pointer (example: MOV.L #xx SP).

4.3.4 State of On-Chip Peripheral Modules after Reset Release

After reset release, MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC are initialized to H'3F, H'FF, and H'FF, respectively, and all modules except the DMAC enter module stop mode. Consequently, on-chip peripheral module registers cannot be read from or written to. Register reading and writing is enabled when module stop mode is exited.

4.4 Traces

Traces are enabled in interrupt control mode 2. Trace mode is not activated in interrupt control mode 0, irrespective of the state of the T bit. For details of interrupt control modes, see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

If the T bit in EXR is set to 1, trace mode is activated. In trace mode, a trace exception occurs on completion of each instruction. Trace mode is not affected by interrupt masking. Table 4.4 shows the state of CCR and EXR after execution of trace exception handling. Trace mode is canceled by clearing the T bit in EXR to 0. The T bit saved on the stack retains its value of 1, and when control is returned from the trace exception handling routine by the RTE instruction, trace mode resumes.

Trace exception handling is not carried out after execution of the RTE instruction.

Interrupts are accepted even within the trace exception handling routine.

Table 4.4 Status of CCR and EXR after Trace Exception Handling

	CCR		EXR	
Interrupt Control Mode	**I**	**UI**	**I2 to I0**	**T**
0	Trace exception handling cannot be used.			
2	1	–	–	0

Legend:

1: Set to 1

0: Cleared to 0

–: Retains value prior to execution.

4.5 Interrupts

Interrupts are controlled by the interrupt controller. The interrupt controller has two interrupt control modes and can assign interrupts other than NMI to eight priority/mask levels to enable multiplexed interrupt control. The source to start interrupt exception handling and the vector address differ depending on the product. For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.

The interrupt exception handling is as follows:

1. The values in the program counter (PC), condition code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are saved in the stack.
2. The interrupt mask bit is updated and the T bit is cleared.
3. A vector address corresponding to the interrupt source is generated, the start address is loaded from the vector table to the PC, and program execution starts from that address.

4.6 Trap Instruction

Trap instruction exception handling starts when a TRAPA instruction is executed. Trap instruction exception handling can be executed at all times in the program execution state.

The trap instruction exception handling is as follows:

1. The values in the program counter (PC), condition code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are saved in the stack.
2. The interrupt mask bit is updated and the T bit is cleared.
3. A vector address corresponding to the interrupt source is generated, the start address is loaded from the vector table to the PC, and program execution starts from that address.

The TRAPA instruction fetches a start address from a vector table entry corresponding to a vector number from 0 to 3, as specified in the instruction code.

Table 4.5 shows the status of CCR and EXR after execution of trap instruction exception handling.

Table 4.5 Status of CCR and EXR after Trap Instruction Exception Handling

	CCR		EXR	
Interrupt Control Mode	**I**	**UI**	**I2 to I0**	**T**
0	1	–	–	–
2	1	–	–	0

Legend

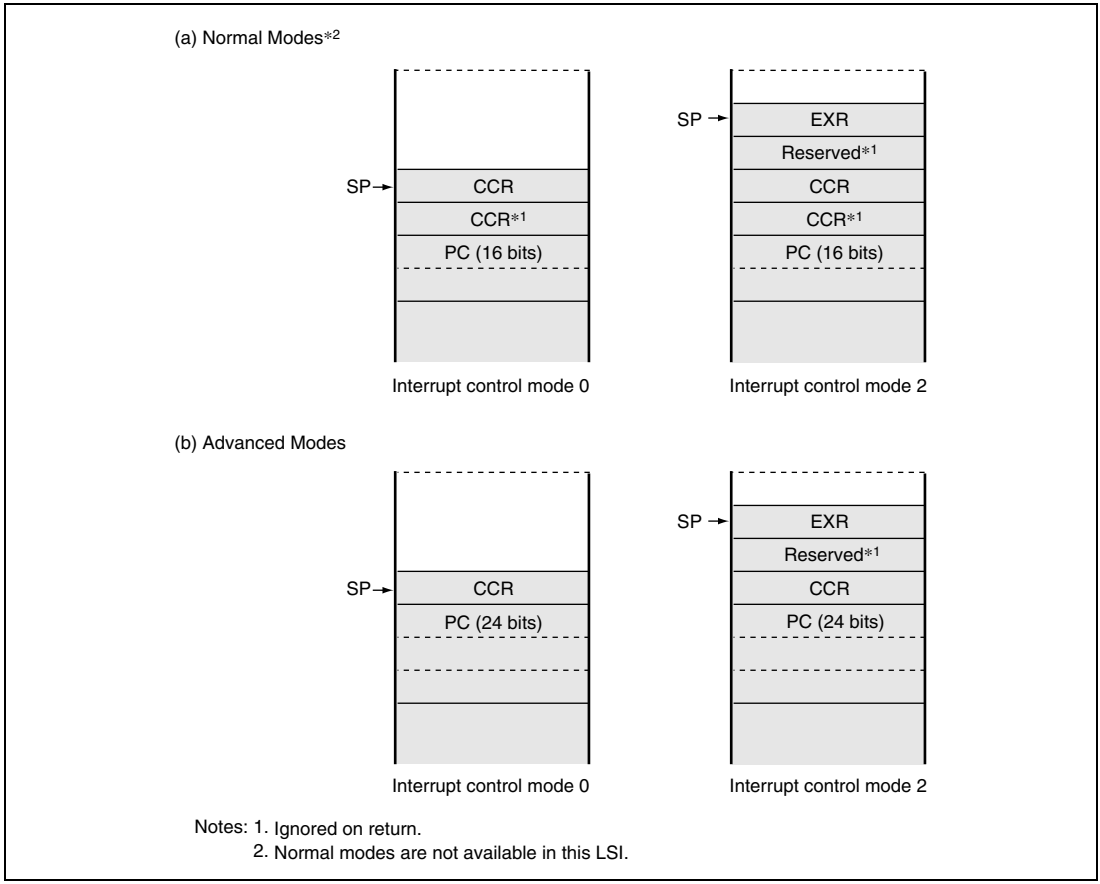
1: Set to 1

0: Cleared to 0

–: Retains value prior to execution.

4.7 Stack Status after Exception Handling

Figure 4.3 shows the stack after completion of trap instruction exception handling and interrupt exception handling.



Notes: 1. Ignored on return.
2. Normal modes are not available in this LSI.

Figure 4.3 Stack Status after Exception Handling

4.8 Notes on Use of the Stack

When accessing word data or longword data, this LSI assumes that the lowest address bit is 0. The stack should always be accessed by word transfer instruction or longword transfer instruction, and the value of the stack pointer (SP, ER7) should always be kept even. Use the following instructions to save registers:

PUSH.W Rn (or MOV.W Rn, @-SP)

PUSH.L ERn (or MOV.L ERn, @-SP)

Use the following instructions to restore registers:

POP.W Rn (or MOV.W @SP+, Rn)

POP.L ERn (or MOV.L @SP+, ERn)

Setting SP to an odd value may lead to a malfunction. Figure 4.4 shows an example of what happens when the SP value is odd.

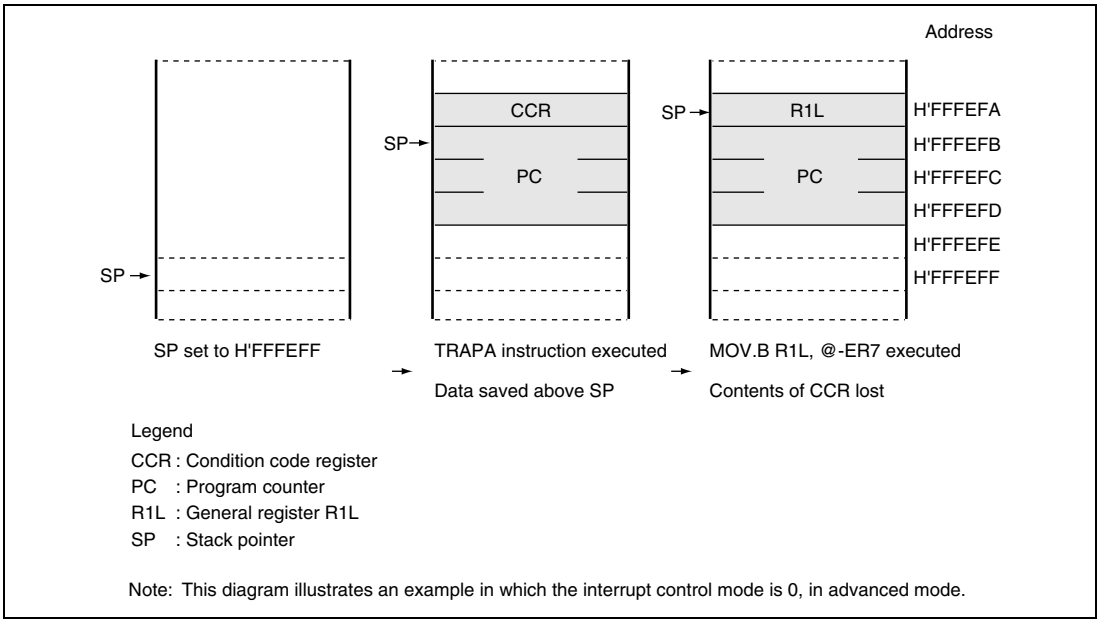


Figure 4.4 Operation when SP Value Is Odd

Section 5 Interrupt Controller

5.1 Features

- Two interrupt control modes
  - Any of two interrupt control modes can be set by means of the INTM1 and INTM0 bits in the system control register (SYSCR).
- Priorities settable with IPR
  - An interrupt priority register (IPR) is provided for setting interrupt priorities. Eight priority levels can be set for each module for all interrupts except NMI. NMI is assigned the highest priority level of 8, and can be accepted at all times.
- Independent vector addresses
  - All interrupt sources are assigned independent vector addresses, making it unnecessary for the source to be identified in the interrupt handling routine.
- Seven external interrupts (NMI, $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$, and $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$)
  - NMI is the highest-priority interrupt, and is accepted at all times. Rising edge or falling edge can be selected for NMI. Falling edge, rising edge, or both edge detection, or level sensing, can be selected for $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$. $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB. $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ is an interrupt only for the on-chip RTC.
- DMAC control
  - DMAC activation is performed by means of interrupts.

A block diagram of the interrupt controller is shown in figure 5.1.

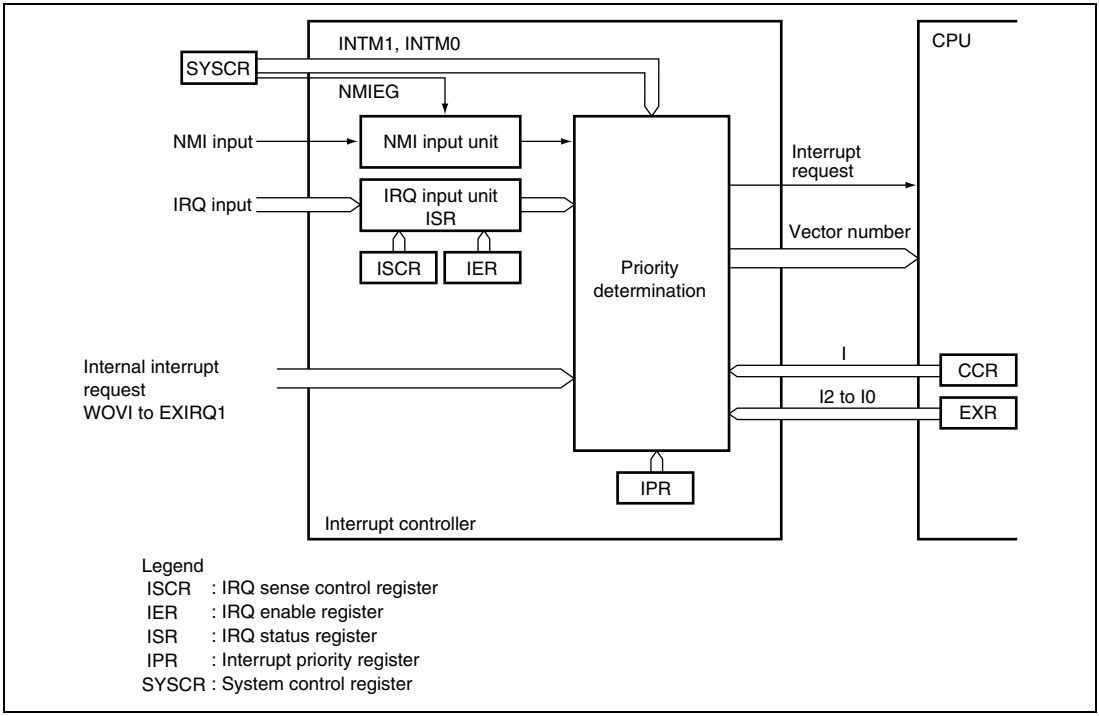


Figure 5.1 Block Diagram of Interrupt Controller

5.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 5.1 summarizes the pins of the interrupt controller.

Table 5.1 Pin Configuration

Name	I/O	Function
NMI	Input	Nonmaskable external interrupt; rising or falling edge can be selected
$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	Input	Maskable external interrupts; rising, falling, or both edges, or level sensing can be selected ($\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ is an interrupt signal only for the on-chip USB. $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ is an interrupt signal only for the on-chip RTC.)
$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	Input	
$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$	Input	
$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	Input	
$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	Input	
$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	Input	

5.3 Register Descriptions

The interrupt controller has the following registers. For details on the system control register, refer to section 3.2.2, System Control Register (SYSCR).

- The interrupt controller has the following registers.
- System control register (SYSCR)
- IRQ sense control register H (ISCRH)
- IRQ sense control register L (ISCRL)
- IRQ enable register (IER)
- IRQ status register (ISR)
- Interrupt priority register A (IPRA)
- Interrupt priority register B (IPRB)
- Interrupt priority register C (IPRC)
- Interrupt priority register D (IPRD)
- Interrupt priority register E (IPRE)
- Interrupt priority register F (IPRF)
- Interrupt priority register G (IPRG)
- Interrupt priority register J (IPRJ)
- Interrupt priority register K (IPRK)
- Interrupt priority register M (IPRM)

5.3.1 Interrupt Priority Registers A to G, J, K, M (IPRA to IPRG, IPRJ, IPRK, IPRM)

The IPR registers set priorities (levels 7 to 0) for interrupts other than NMI.

The correspondence between interrupt sources and IPR settings is shown in table 5.2 (Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Interrupt Priorities). Setting a value in the range from H'0 to H'7 in the 3-bit groups of bits 6 to 4 and 2 to 0 sets the priority of the corresponding interrupt.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	–	0	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
6	IPR6	1	R/W	These bits set the priority of the corresponding interrupt source. 000: Priority level 0 (Lowest) 001: Priority level 1 010: Priority level 2 011: Priority level 3 100: Priority level 4 101: Priority level 5 110: Priority level 6 111: Priority level 7 (Highest)
5	IPR5	1	R/W	
4	IPR4	1	R/W	
3	–	0	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
2	IPR2	1	R/W	These bits set the priority of the corresponding interrupt source. 000: Priority level 0 (Lowest) 001: Priority level 1 010: Priority level 2 011: Priority level 3 100: Priority level 4 101: Priority level 5 110: Priority level 6 111: Priority level 7 (Highest)
1	IPR1	1	R/W	
0	IPR0	1	R/W	

5.3.2 IRQ Enable Register (IER)

IER controls enabling and disabling of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	IRQ7E	0	R/W	IRQ7 Enable The IRQ7 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
6	IRQ6E	0	R/W	IRQ6 Enable*[1] The IRQ6 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
5	IRQ5E	0	R/W	IRQ5 Enable*[2] The IRQ5 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
4	IRQ4E	0	R/W	IRQ4 Enable The IRQ4 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
3	IRQ3E	0	R/W	IRQ3 Enable The IRQ3 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
2	IRQ2E	0	R/W	IRQ2 Enable The IRQ2 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
1	IRQ1E	0	R/W	IRQ1 Enable The IRQ1 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.
0	IRQ0E	0	R/W	IRQ0 Enable The IRQ0 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1.

Notes: 1. IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB.
2. IRQ5 is an interrupt only for the on-chip RTC.

5.3.3 IRQ Sense Control Registers H and L (ISCRH, ISCRL)

The ISCR registers select the source that generates an interrupt request at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
15	IRQ7SCB	0	R/W	IRQ7 Sense Control B
14	IRQ7SCA	0	R/W	IRQ7 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input
13	IRQ6SCB	0	R/W	IRQ6*[1] Sense Control B
12	IRQ6SCA	0	R/W	IRQ6*[1] Sense Control A 00: Setting prohibited when using on-chip USB suspend or resume interrupt 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ input 1x: Setting prohibited
11	IRQ5SCB	0	R/W	IRQ5*[2] Sense Control B
10	IRQ5SCA	0	R/W	IRQ5*[2] Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input
9	IRQ4SCB	0	R/W	IRQ4 Sense Control B
8	IRQ4SCA	0	R/W	IRQ4 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	IRQ3SCB	0	R/W	IRQ3 Sense Control B
6	IRQ3SCA	0	R/W	IRQ3 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input
5	IRQ2SCB	0	R/W	IRQ2 Sense Control B
4	IRQ2SCA	0	R/W	IRQ2 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input
3	IRQ1SCB	0	R/W	IRQ1 Sense Control B
2	IRQ1SCA	0	R/W	IRQ1 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input
1	IRQ0SCB	0	R/W	IRQ0 Sense Control B
0	IRQ0SCA	0	R/W	IRQ0 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input

Notes: 1. IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB.
2. IRQ5 is an interrupt only for the on-chip RTC.
X: Don't care

5.3.4 IRQ Status Register (ISR)

ISR indicates the status of IRQ7 to IRQ0 interrupt requests. Only 0 should be written to these bits for clearing the flag.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	IRQ7F	0	R/(W)*	[Setting condition] When the interrupt source selected by the ISCR registers occurs [Clearing conditions] • Cleared by reading IRQnF flag when IRQnF = 1, then writing 0 to IRQnF flag • When interrupt exception handling is executed when low-level detection is set and , $\overline{\text{IRQn}}$ input is high • When IRQn interrupt exception handling is executed when falling, rising, or both-edge detection is set
6	IRQ6F	0	R/(W)*	
5	IRQ5F	0	R/(W)*	
4	IRQ4F	0	R/(W)*	
3	IRQ3F	0	R/(W)*	
2	IRQ2F	0	R/(W)*	
1	IRQ1F	0	R/(W)*	
0	IRQ0F	0	R/(W)*	

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

5.4 Interrupt Sources

5.4.1 External Interrupts

There are seven external interrupts: NMI, IRQ7, and IRQ4 to IRQ0. These interrupts can be used to restore this LSI from software standby mode. IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB. However, IRQ6 is functionally same as IRQ7 restore this LSI from software standby mode. Both IRQ5 and IRQ6 are functionally same as IRQ7 and IRQ4 to IRQ0.

NMI Interrupt: NMI is the highest-priority interrupt, and is always accepted by the CPU regardless of the interrupt control mode or the status of the CPU interrupt mask bits. The NMIEG bit in SYSCR can be used to select whether an interrupt is requested at a rising edge or a falling edge on the NMI pin.

IRQ7 to IRQ0 Interrupts: Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 are requested by an input signal at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$. Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 have the following features:

- Using ISCR, it is possible to select whether an interrupt is generated by a low level, falling edge, rising edge, or both edges, at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$
- Enabling or disabling of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0 can be selected with IER.
- The interrupt priority level can be set with IPR.
- The status of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0 is indicated in ISR. ISR flags can be cleared to 0 by software.

Detection of IRQ7 to IRQ0 interrupts does not depend on whether the relevant pin has been set for input or output. However, when a pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, do not clear the corresponding DDR to 0 and use the pin as an I/O pin for another function. Since interrupt request flags IRQ7F to IRQ0F are set when the setting condition is satisfied, regardless of the IER setting, only the necessary flags should be referenced.

A block diagram of interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 is shown in figure 5.2.

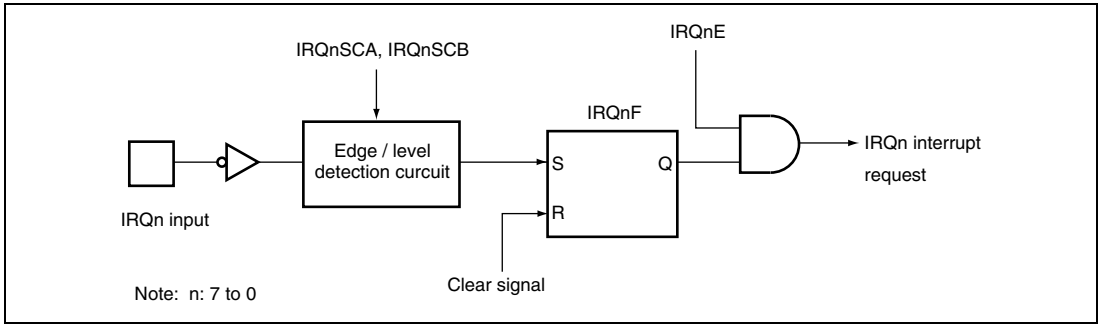


Figure 5.2 Block Diagram of Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0

5.4.2 Internal Interrupts

The sources for internal interrupts from on—chip peripheral modules have the following features:

- For each on—chip peripheral module there are flags that indicate the interrupt request status, and enable bits that select enabling or disabling of these interrupts. If both of these are set to 1 for a particular interrupt source, an interrupt request is issued to the interrupt controller.
- The interrupt priority level can be set by means of IPR.
- The DMAC can be activated by a TPU, SCI, or other interrupt request.
- When the DMAC is activated by an interrupt request, it is not affected by the interrupt control mode or CPU interrupt mask bit.

5.5 Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table

Table 5.2 shows interrupt exception handling sources, vector addresses, and interrupt priorities.

For default priorities, the lower the vector number, the higher the priority. Priorities among modules can be set by means of the IPR. Modules set at the same priority will conform to their default priorities. Priorities within a module are fixed.

Table 5.2 Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Interrupt Priorities

Interrupt Source	Origin of Interrupt Source	Vector Number	Vector Address*		
			Advanced Mode	IPR	Priority
External pins	NMI	7	H'001C		High
	IRQ0	16	H'0040	IPRA6 to IPRA4	
	IRQ1	17	H'0044	IPRA2 to IPRA0	
	IRQ2	18	H'0048	IPRB6 to IPRB4	
	IRQ3	19	H'004C		
	IRQ4	20	H'0050	IPRB2 to IPRB0	
RTC	IRQ5	21	H'0054		
USB	IRQ6	22	H'0058	IPRC6 to IPRC4	
External pins	IRQ7	23	H'005C		
Watchdog Timer	WOVI	25	H'0064	IPRD6 to IPRD4	
A/D	ADI	28	H'0070	IPRE2 to IPRE0	Low

Interrupt Source	Origin of Interrupt Source	Vector Number	Vector Address*	IPR	Priority
TPU channel 0	TGI0A	32	H'0080	IPRF6 to IPRF4	High
	TGI0B	33	H'0084		
	TGI0C	34	H'0088		
	TGI0D	35	H'008C		
	TGI0V	36	H'0090		
TPU channel 1	TGI1A	40	H'00A0	IPRF2 to IPRF0	
	TGI1B	41	H'00A4		
	TGI1V	42	H'00A8		
	TGI1U	43	H'00AC		
TPU channel 2	TGI2A	44	H'00B0	IPRG6 to IPRG4	
	TGI2B	45	H'00B4		
	TGI2V	46	H'00B8		
	TGI2U	47	H'00BC		
DMAC	DEND0A	72	H'0120	IPRJ6 to IPRJ4	
	DEND0B	73	H'0124		
	DEND1A	74	H'0128		
	DEND1B	75	H'012C		
SIC channel 0	ERI0	80	H'0140	IPRJ2 to IPRJ0	
	RXI0	81	H'0144		
	TXI0	82	H'0148		
	TEI0	83	H'014C		
SIC channel 2	ERI2	88	H'0160	IPRK2 to IPRK0	
	RXI2	89	H'0164		
	TXI2	90	H'0168		
	TEI2	91	H'016C		
USB	EXIRQ0	104	H'01A0	IPRM6 to IPRM4	
	EXIRQ1	105	H'01A4		Low

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the start address.

5.6 Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation

The interrupt controller has two modes: interrupt control mode 0 and interrupt control mode 2.

Interrupt operations differ depending on the interrupt control mode. The interrupt control mode is selected by SYSCR. Table 5.3 shows the differences between interrupt control mode 0 and interrupt control mode 2.

Table 5.3 Interrupt Control Modes

Interrupt Control Mode	Priority Setting Register	Interrupt Mask Bits	Description
0	Default	I	The priority of interrupt sources are fixed at the default settings. Interrupt sources except for NMI is marked by the I bit.
2	IPR	I2 to I0	8-level interrupt mask control is performed by bits I2 to I0. 8 priority levels other than NMI can be set with IPR.

5.6.1 Interrupt Control Mode 0

In interrupt control mode 0, interrupt requests except for NMI is masked by the I bit of CCR in the CPU. Figure 5.3 shows a flowchart of the interrupt acceptance operation in this case.

1. If an interrupt source occurs when the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
2. If the I bit is set to 1, only an NMI interrupt is accepted, and other interrupt requests are held pending. If the I bit is cleared, an interrupt request is accepted.
3. Interrupt requests are sent to the interrupt controller, the highest-ranked interrupt according to the priority system is accepted, and other interrupt requests are held pending.
4. When the CPU accepts an interrupt request, it starts interrupt exception handling after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
5. The PC and CCR are saved to the stack area by interrupt exception handling. The PC saved on the stack shows the address of the first instruction to be executed after returning from the interrupt handling routine.
6. Next, the I bit in CCR is set to 1. This masks all interrupts except NMI.
7. The CPU generates a vector address for the accepted interrupt and starts execution of the interrupt handling routine at the address indicated by the contents of the vector address in the vector table.

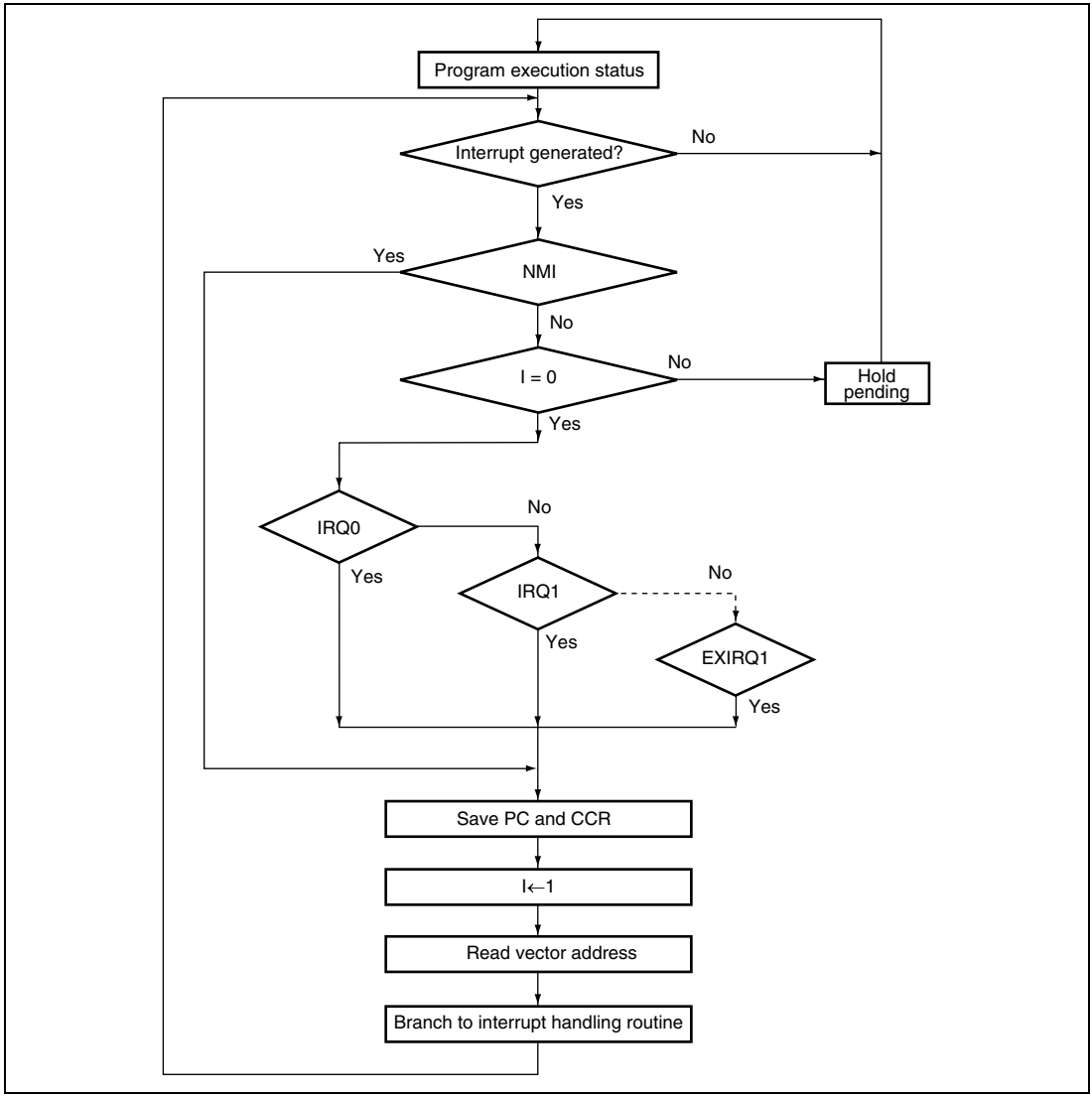


Figure 5.3 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 0

5.6.2 Interrupt Control Mode 2

In interrupt control mode 2, mask control is done in eight levels for interrupt requests except for NMI by comparing the EXR interrupt mask level (I2 to I0 bits) in the CPU and the IPR setting.

Figure 5.4 shows a flowchart of the interrupt acceptance operation in this case.

1. If an interrupt source occurs when the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
2. When interrupt requests are sent to the interrupt controller, the interrupt with the highest priority according to the interrupt priority levels set in IPR is selected, and lower-priority interrupt requests are held pending. If a number of interrupt requests with the same priority are generated at the same time, the interrupt request with the highest priority according to the priority system shown in table 5.2 is selected.
3. Next, the priority of the selected interrupt request is compared with the interrupt mask level set in EXR. An interrupt request with a priority no higher than the mask level set at that time is held pending, and only an interrupt request with a priority higher than the interrupt mask level is accepted.
4. When the CPU accepts an interrupt request, it starts interrupt exception handling after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
5. The PC, CCR, and EXR are saved to the stack area by interrupt exception handling. The PC saved on the stack shows the address of the first instruction to be executed after returning from the interrupt handling routine.
6. The T bit in EXR is cleared to 0. The interrupt mask level is rewritten with the priority level of the accepted interrupt.

   If the accepted interrupt is NMI, the interrupt mask level is set to H'7.
7. The CPU generates a vector address for the accepted interrupt and starts execution of the interrupt handling routine at the address indicated by the contents of the vector address in the vector table.

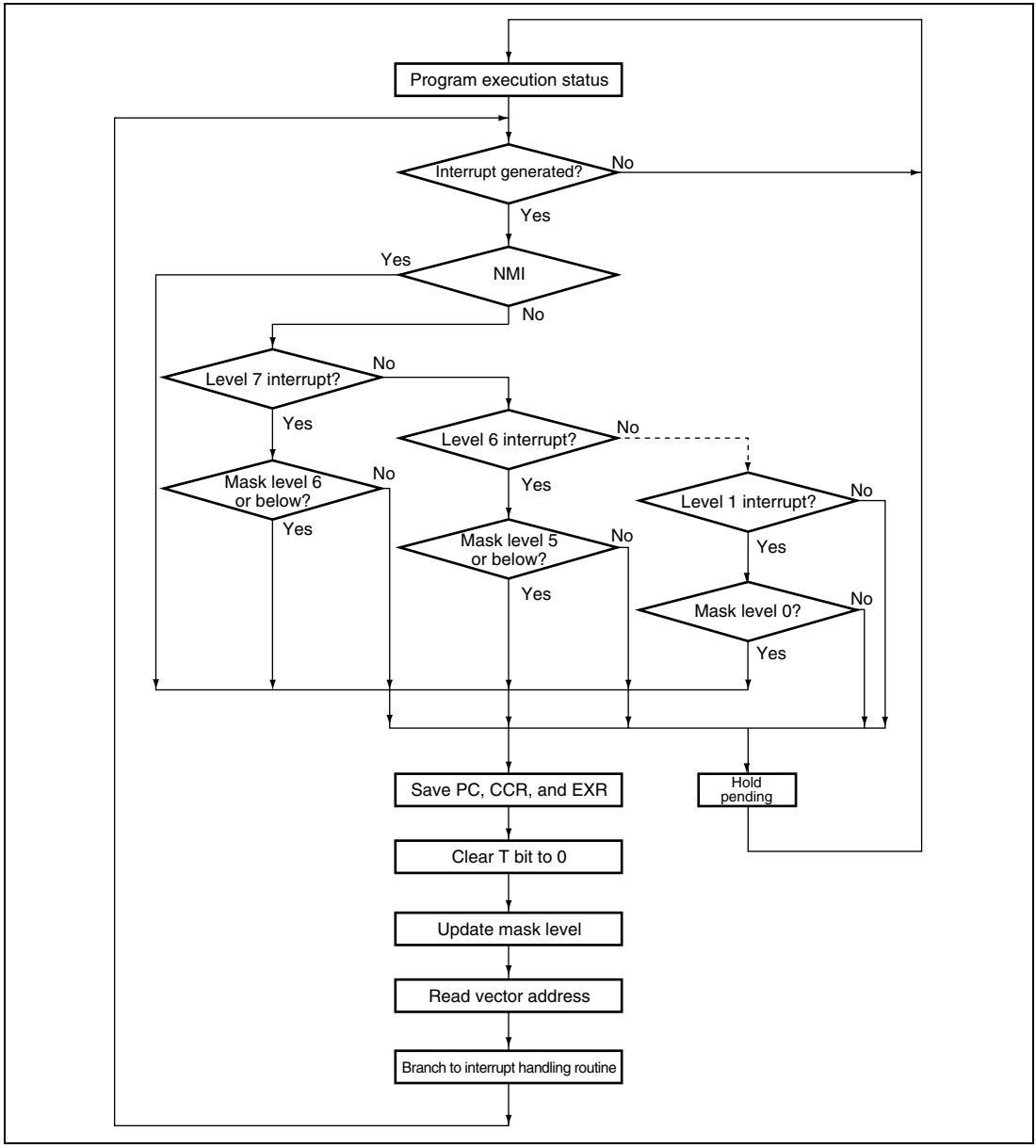


Figure 5.4 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 2

5.6.3 Interrupt Exception Handling Sequence

Figure 5.5 shows the interrupt exception handling sequence. The example shown is for the case where interrupt control mode 0 is set in advanced mode, and the program area and stack area are in on-chip memory.

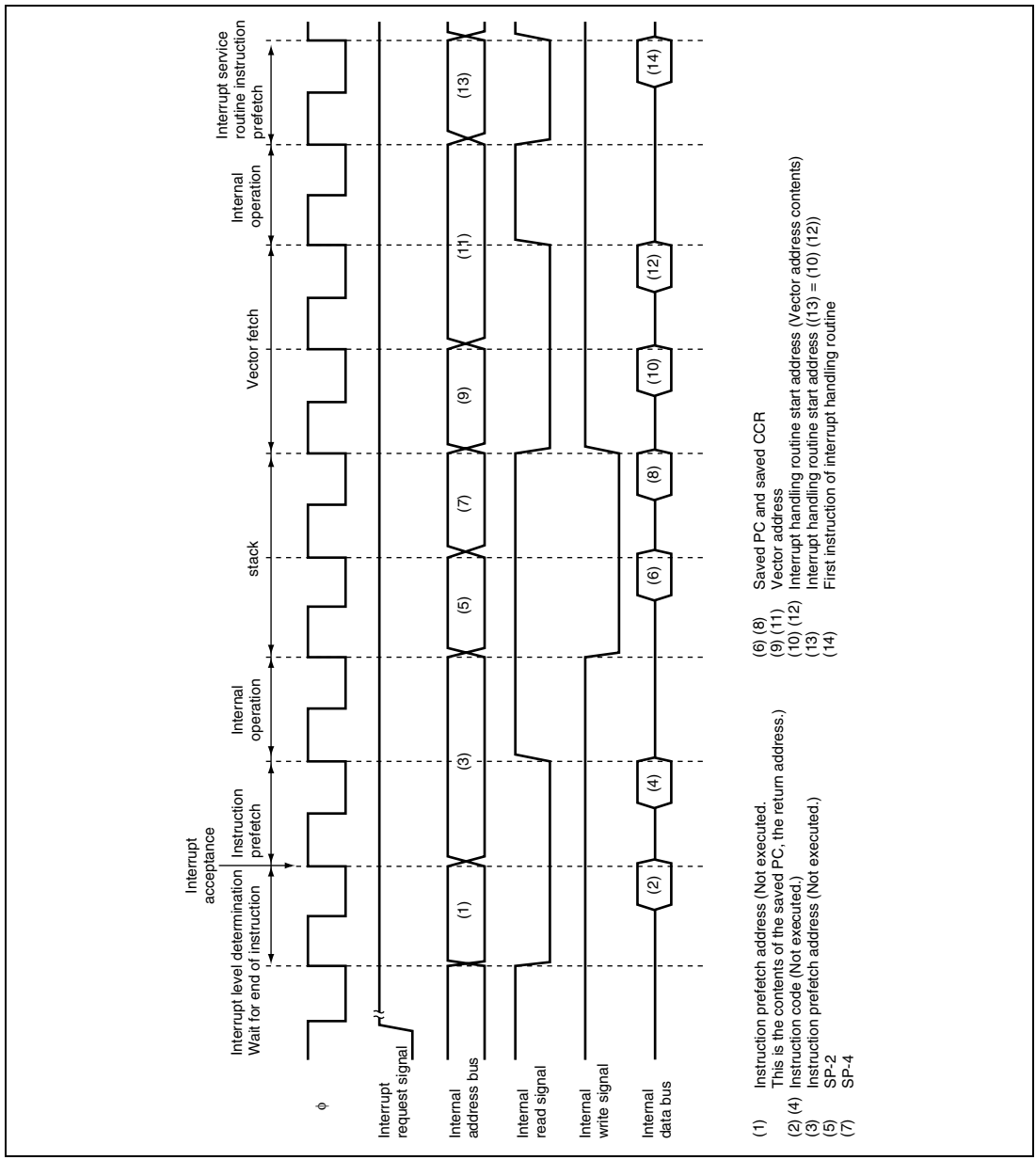


Figure 5.5 Interrupt Exception Handling

5.6.4 Interrupt Response Times

Table 5.4 shows interrupt response times — the interval between generation of an interrupt request and execution of the first instruction in the interrupt handling routine. The execution status symbols used in table 5.4 are explained in table 5.5.

This LSI is capable of fast word transfer to on-chip memory, and have the program area in on-chip ROM and the stack area in on-chip RAM, enabling high-speed processing.

Table 5.4 Interrupt Response Times

		Normal Mode*[5]		Advanced Mode	
No.	Execution State	Interrupt Control Mode 0	Interrupt Control Mode 2	Interrupt Control Mode 0	Interrupt Control Mode 2
1	Interrupt priority determination*[1]	3	3	3	3
2	Number of wait states until executing instruction ends*[2]	1 to 19+2,S_I	1 to 19+2·S_I	1 to 19+2·S_I	1 to 19+2·S_I
3	PC, CCR, EXR stack save	2·S_K	3·S_K	2·S_K	3·S_K
4	Vector fetch	S_I	S_I	2·S_I	2·S_I
5	Instruction fetch*[3]	2·S_I	2·S_I	2·S_I	2·S_I
6	Internal processing*[4]	2	2	2	2
Total	(using on-chip memory)	11 to 31	12 to 32	12 to 32	13 to 33

Notes: 1. Two states in case of internal interrupt.
2. Refers to MULXS and DIVXS instructions.
3. Prefetch after interrupt acceptance and interrupt handling routine prefetch.
4. Internal processing after interrupt acceptance and internal processing after vector fetch.
5. Not available in this LSI.

Table 5.5 Number of States in Interrupt Handling Routine Execution Statuses

		Object of Access				
			External Device			
			8-Bit Bus		16-Bit Bus	
Symbol		Internal Memory	2-State Access	3-State Access	2-State Access	3-State Access
Instruction fetch	S_I	1	4	6 + 2m	2	3 + m
Branch address read	S_J					
Stack manipulation	S_K					

Legend:
m: Number of wait states in an external device access.

5.6.5 DMAC Activation by Interrupt

The DMAC can be activated by an interrupt. In this case, the following options are available:

- Interrupt request to CPU
- Activation request to DMAC
- Selection of a number of the above

For details of interrupt requests that can be used with to activate the DMAC, see section 7, DMA Controller.

Figure 5.6 shows a block diagram of the interrupt controller of DMAC.

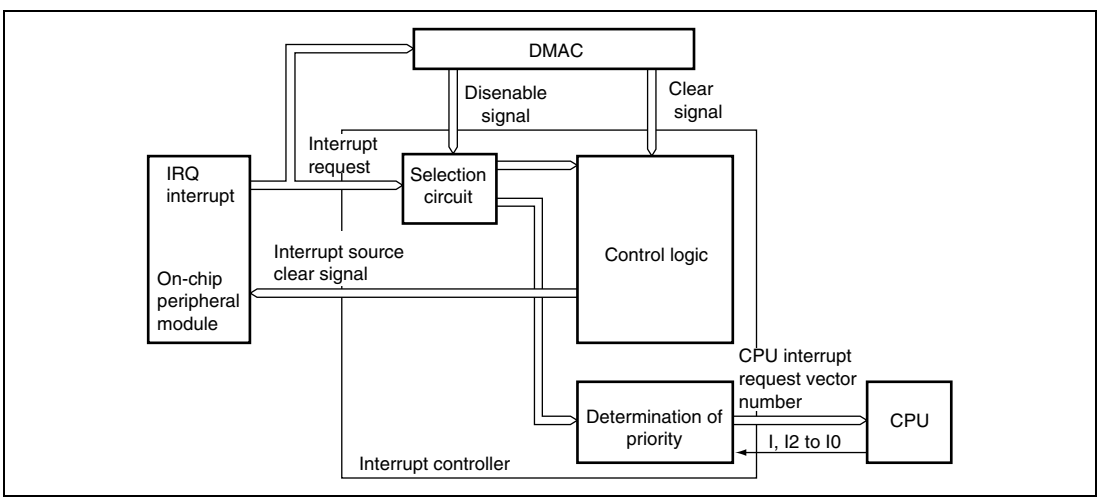


Figure 5.6 Interrupt Control for DMAC

Selection of Interrupt Source: An activation factor is directly input to each channel of the DMAC. The activation factors for each channel of the DMAC are selected by the DTF3 to DTF0 bits of DMACR. The DTA bit of DMABCR can be used to select whether the selected activation factors are managed by the DMAC. By setting the DTA bit to 1, the interrupt factor which was the activation factor for that DMAC cannot act as the CPU interrupt factor.

Interrupt factors other than the interrupts managed by the DMAC is CPU interrupt request.

Determination of Priority: The activation source is directly input to each channel of DMAC.

Operation Order: If the same interrupt is selected as the DMAC activation factor or CPU interrupt factor, these operate independently. They operate in accordance with the respective operating states and bus priorities.

Table 5.6 shows the interrupt factor clear control and selection of interrupt factors by specification of the DTA bit of DMAC's DMABCR.

Table 5.6 Interrupt Source Selection and Clearing Control

Settings		
DMAC	**Interrupt Sources Selection/Clearing Control**	
DTA	**DMAC**	**CPU**
0	Δ	O
1	O	X

Legend

O: The relevant interrupt is used. Interrupt source clearing is performed.
(The CPU should clear the source flag in the interrupt handling routine.)

Δ: The relevant interrupt is used. The interrupt source is not cleared.

X: The relevant bit cannot be used.

Notes on Use: The SCI interrupt source is cleared when the DMAC reads or writes to the prescribed register, and is not dependent upon the DTA bit.

5.7 Usage Notes

5.7.1 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling

When an interrupt enable bit is cleared to 0 to disable interrupts, the disabling becomes effective after execution of the instruction.

When an interrupt enable bit is cleared to 0 by an instruction such as BCLR or MOV, if an interrupt is generated during execution of the instruction, the interrupt concerned will still be enabled on completion of the instruction, and so interrupt exception handling for that interrupt will be executed on completion of the instruction. However, if there is an interrupt request of higher priority than that interrupt, interrupt exception handling will be executed for the higher-priority interrupt, and the lower-priority interrupt will be ignored.

The same also applies when an interrupt source flag is cleared to 0.

Figure 5.7 shows an example in which the TGIEA bit in the TPU's TIER_0 is cleared to 0.

The above contention will not occur if an enable bit or interrupt source flag is cleared to 0 while the interrupt is masked.

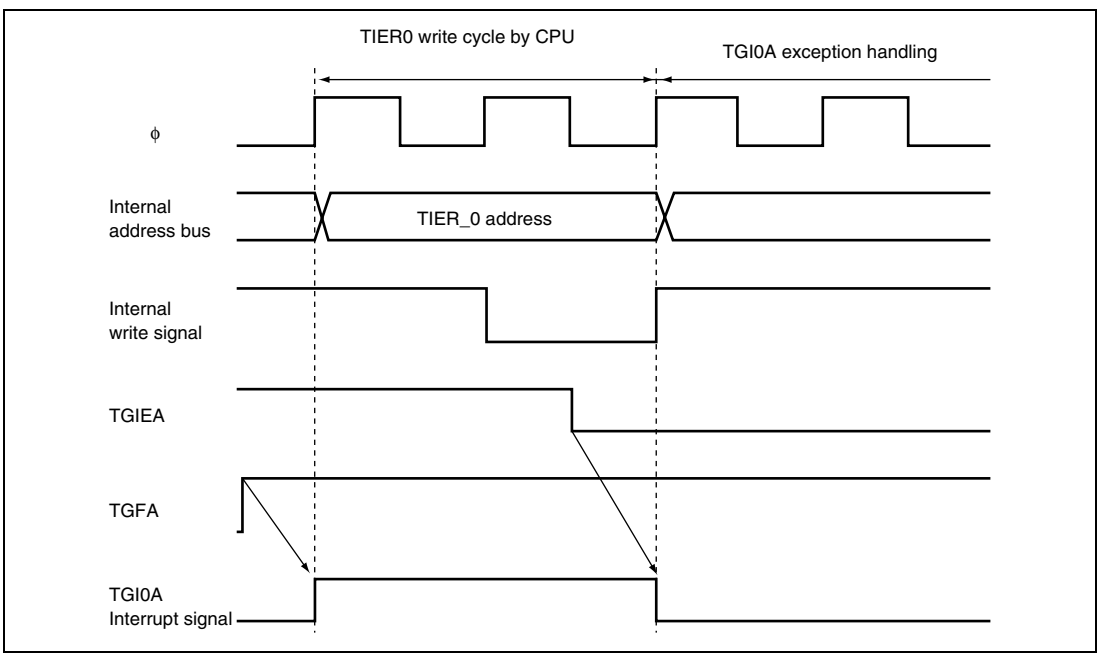


Figure 5.7 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling

5.7.2 Instructions that Disable Interrupts

Instructions that disable interrupts are LDC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC. After any of these instructions is executed, all interrupts including NMI are disabled and the next instruction is always executed. When the I bit is set by one of these instructions, the new value becomes valid two states after execution of the instruction ends.

5.7.3 Times when Interrupts are Disabled

There are times when interrupt acceptance is disabled by the interrupt controller.

The interrupt controller disables interrupt acceptance for a 3-state period after the CPU has updated the mask level with an LDC, ANDC, ORC, or XORC instruction.

5.7.4 Interrupts during Execution of EEPMOV Instruction

Interrupt operation differs between the EEPMOV.B instruction and the EEPMOV.W instruction.

With the EEPMOV.B instruction, an interrupt request (including NMI) issued during the transfer is not accepted until the move is completed.

With the EEPMOV.W instruction, if an interrupt request is issued during the transfer, interrupt exception handling starts at a break in the transfer cycle. The PC value saved on the stack in this case is the address of the next instruction.

Therefore, if an interrupt is generated during execution of an EEPMOV.W instruction, the following coding should be used.

```
L1: EEPMOV.W
    MOV.W R4, R4
    BNE L1
```

Section 6 Bus Controller

This LSI has a built-in bus controller (BSC) that manages the external address space divided into eight areas. The bus controller also has a bus arbitration function, and controls the operation of the internal bus masters: the CPU and DMA controller (DMAC).

6.1 Features

- Manages external address space in area units
  - Manages the external space as 8 areas of 2-Mbytes
  - Bus specifications can be set independently for each area
  - Burst ROM interface can be set
- Basic bus interface*[1]
  - Chip select (CS0 to CS5) can be output for areas 0 to 5*[2]
  - 8-bit access or 16-bit access can be selected for each area
  - 2-state access or 3-state access can be selected for each area
  - Program wait states can be inserted for each area
- Burst ROM interface*[2]
  - Burst ROM interface can be selected for area 0
  - One or two states can be selected for the burst cycle
- Idle cycle insertion
  - Idle cycle can be inserted between consecutive read accesses to different areas
  - Idle cycle can be inserted before a write access to an external area immediately after a read access to an external area
- Bus arbitration
  - The on-chip bus arbiter arbitrates bus mastership among CPU and DMAC.
- Other features
  - External bus release function*[2]

Notes: 1. Chip select $\overline{CS6}$ in area 6 is for the on-chip USB. Therefore it cannot be used as an external area. 8-bit bus mode, 3-state access, and no program wait state should be set for area 6. Access to the RTC related registers (address: H'FFFF40 to H'FFFF5F) follows the specification of area 7. 8-bit access, 3-state access, and no program wait state should be set for area 7.

2. These functions are not available in the H8S/2212 Series.

Figure 6.1 shows a block diagram of the bus controller.

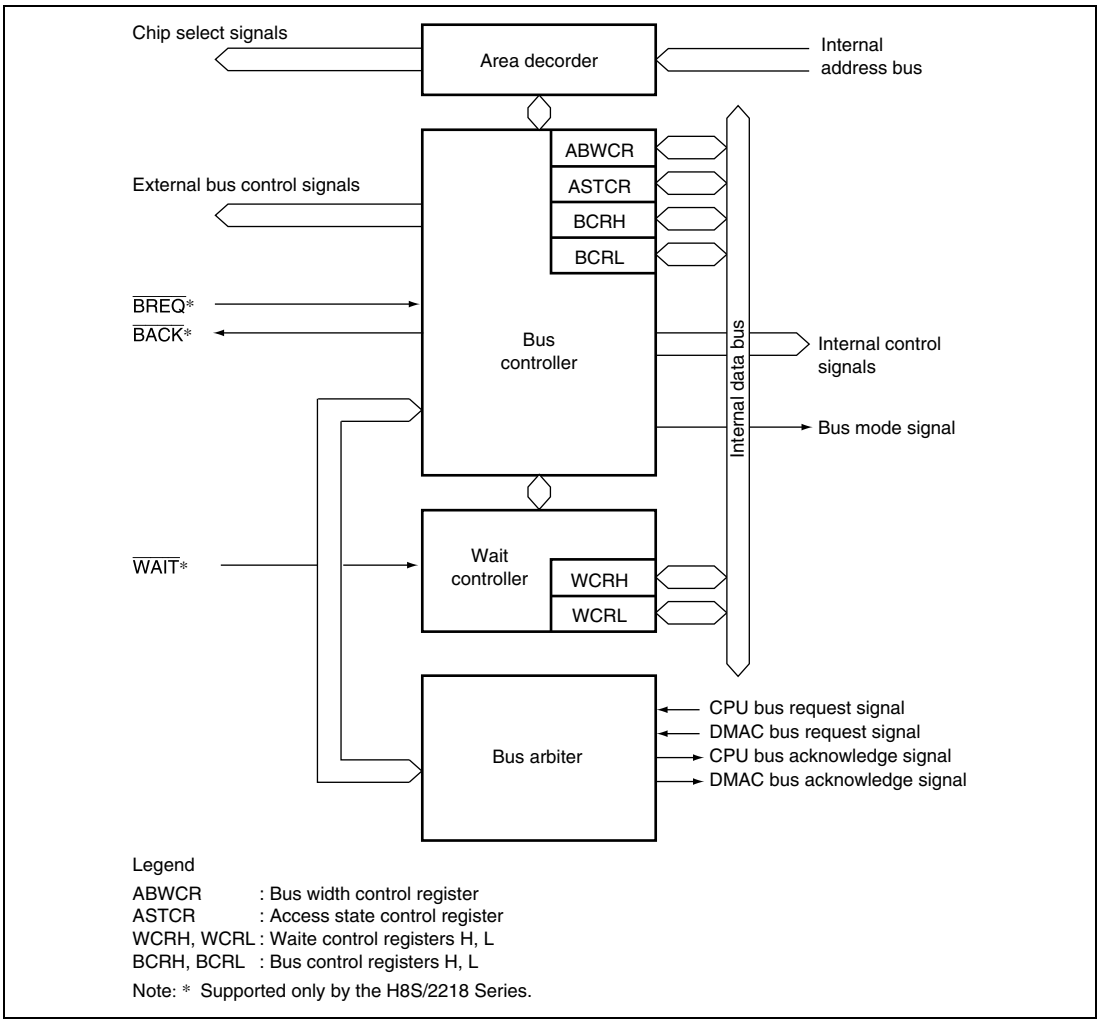


Figure 6.1 Block Diagram of Bus Controller

6.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 6.1 summarizes the pins of the bus controller.

These pins are supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

Table 6.1 Pin Configuration

Name	Symbol	I/O	Function
Address strove	$\overline{AS}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating that address output on address bus is enabled.
Read	$\overline{RD}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating that external space is being read.
High write	$\overline{HWR}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating that external space is to be written, and upper half (D15 to D8) of data bus is enabled.
Low write	$\overline{LWR}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating that external space is to be written, and lower half (D7 to D0) of data bus is enabled.
Chip select 0 to 5	$\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS5}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating that areas 0 to 5 are selected.
Wait	$\overline{WAIT}$	Input	Wait request signal when accessing external 3-state access space.
Bus request	$\overline{BREQ}$	Input	Request signal that releases bus to external device.
Bus request acknowledge	$\overline{BACK}$	Output	Acknowledge signal indicating that bus has been released.

6.3 Register Descriptions

The following shows the registers of the bus controller.

- Bus width control register (ABWCR)
- Access state control register (ASTCR)
- Wait control register H (WCRH)
- Wait control register L (WCRL)
- Bus control register H (BCRH)
- Bus control register L (BCRL)
- Pin function control register (PFCR)

6.3.1 Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR)

ABWCR designates each area for either 8-bit access or 16-bit access.

ABWCR sets the data bus width for the external memory space. The bus width for on-chip memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB and RTC is fixed regardless of the settings in ABWCR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	ABW7*2	1/0*1	R/W	Area 7 to 0 Bus Width Control:
6	ABW6*2	1/0*1	R/W	These bits select whether the corresponding area is to be designated for 8-bit access or 16-bit access.
5	ABW5	1/0*1	R/W	
4	ABW4	1/0*1	R/W	0: Area n is designated for 16-bit access
3	ABW3	1/0*1	R/W	1: Area n is designated for 8-bit access
2	ABW2	1/0*1	R/W	Legend:
1	ABW1	1/0*1	R/W	n: 7 to 0
0	ABW0	1/0*1	R/W	

Notes: 1. In modes 5 to 7, initial value of each bit is 1. In mode 4, initial value of each bit is 0. These bits should be set to 1 in the H8S/2212 Series.
2. The on-chip USB and on-chip RTC are allocated to area 6 and area 7, respectively. Therefore, these bits should be set to 1.

6.3.2 Access State Control Register (ASTCR)

ASTCR designates each area as either a 2-state access space or a 3-state access space.

ASTCR sets the number of access states for the external memory space. The number of access states for on-chip memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB is fixed regardless of the settings in ASTCR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	AST7*	1	R/W	Area 7 to 0 Access State Control:
6	AST6*	1	R/W	These bits select whether the corresponding area is to be designated as a 2-state access space or a 3-state access space. Wait state insertion is enabled or disabled at the same time.
5	AST5	1	R/W	
4	AST4	1	R/W	
3	AST3	1	R/W	0: Area n is designated for 2-state access
2	AST2	1	R/W	Wait state insertion in area n external space is disabled
1	AST1	1	R/W	
0	AST0	1	R/W	1: Area n is designated for 3-state access
				Wait state insertion in area n external space is enabled
				Legend:
				n: 7 to 0

Note: * The on-chip USB and on-chip RTC are allocated to area 6 and area 7, respectively. Therefore, these bits should be set to 1.

6.3.3 Wait Control Registers H and L (WCRH, WCRL)

WCRH and WCRL select the number of program wait states for each area.

Program waits are not inserted in the case of on-chip memory or internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB.

- WCRH

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	W71*	1	R/W	Area 7 Wait Control 1 and 0
6	W70*	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 7 in external space is accessed while the AST7 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 7 is accessed
5	W61*	1	R/W	Area 6 Wait Control 1 and 0
4	W60*	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 6 in external space is accessed while the AST6 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 6 is accessed

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	W51	1	R/W	Area 5 Wait Control 1 and 0
2	W50	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 5 in external space is accessed while the AST5 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 5 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 5 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 5 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 5 is accessed
1	W41	1	R/W	Area 4 Wait Control 1 and 0
0	W40	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 4 in external space is accessed while the AST4 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 4 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 4 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 4 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 4 is accessed

Note: * The on-chip USB and on-chip RTC are allocated to area 6 and area 7, respectively. Therefore, these bits should be set to 0.

- WCRL

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	W31	1	R/W	Area 3 Wait Control 1 and 0
6	W30	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 3 in external space is accessed while the AST3 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 3 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 3 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 3 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 3 is accessed
5	W21	1	R/W	Area 2 Wait Control 1 and 0
4	W20	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 2 in external space is accessed while the AST2 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 2 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 2 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 2 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 2 is accessed

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	W11	1	R/W	Area 1 Wait Control 1 and 0
2	W10	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 1 in external space is accessed while the AST1 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 1 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 1 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 1 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 1 is accessed
1	W01	1	R/W	Area 0 Wait Control 1 and 0
0	W00	1	R/W	These bits select the number of program wait states when area 0 in external space is accessed while the AST0 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 0 is accessed

6.3.4 Bus Control Register H (BCRH)

BCRH selects enabling or disabling of idle cycle insertion, and the memory interface for area 0. This register should be set initial value and not be modified in the H8S/2212 Series.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	ICIS1	1	R/W	Idle Cycle Insert 1: Selects whether or not one idle cycle state is to be inserted between bus cycles when successive external read cycles are performed in different areas. 0: Idle cycle not inserted in case of successive external read cycles in different areas 1: Idle cycle inserted in case of successive external read cycles in different areas
6	ICIS0	1	R/W	Idle Cycle Insert 0: Selects whether or not one idle cycle state is to be inserted between bus cycles when successive external read and write cycles are performed. 0: Idle cycle not inserted in case of successive external read and write cycles 1: Idle cycle inserted in case of successive external read and write cycles
5	BRSTRM	0	R/W	Burst ROM enable: Selects whether area 0 is used as a burst ROM interface. 0: Area 0 is basic bus interface 1: Area 0 is burst ROM interface
4	BRSTS1	1	R/W	Burst Cycle Select 1: Selects the number of burst cycles for the burst ROM interface. 0: Burst cycle comprises 1 state 1: Burst cycle comprises 2 states
3	BRSTS0	0	R/W	Burst Cycle Select 0: Selects the number of words that can be accessed in a burst ROM interface burst access. 0: Max. 4 words in burst access 1: Max. 8 words in burst access
2 to 0	–	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.

6.3.5 Bus Control Register L (BCRL)

BCRL performs selection of the external bus-released state protocol, and enabling or disabling of $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin input.

The functions selected by this register are available only in the H8S/2218 Series. This register should not be modified in the H8S/2212 Series.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	BRLE*	0	R/W	Bus Release Enable Enables or disables external bus release. 0: External bus release is disabled. $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ can be used as I/O ports. 1: External bus release is enabled.
6	–	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
5	–	0	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
4	–	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
3	–	1	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 1.
2	–	0	R/W	Reserved
1	–	0	R/W	The write value should always be 0.
0	WAITE*	0	R/W	WAIT Pin Enable Selects enabling or disabling of wait input by the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin. 0: Wait input by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin disabled. $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin can be used as I/O port. 1: Wait input by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin enabled.

Note: * These bits should be set to 0 in the H8S/2212 Series.

6.3.6 Pin Function Control Register (PFCR)

PFCR performs address output control in external extended mode. The AE3 to AE0 are set to 0010 in the H8S/2212 Series. When using the emulator (E6000), USB can not be used without enabling the A8 and A9 output.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
3	AE3	1/0*	R/W	Address Output Enable 3 to 0 These bits select enabling or disabling of address outputs A8 to A23 in ROMless extended mode and modes with ROM. When a pin is enabled for address output, the address is output regardless of the corresponding DDR setting. When a pin is disabled for address output, it becomes an output port when the corresponding DDR bit is set to 1. 0000: A8 to A23 output disabled (initial value of mode 6 and 7) 0001: A8 output enabled; A9 to A23 output disabled 0010: A8, A9 output enabled; A10 to A23 output disabled 0011: A8 to A10 output enabled; A11 to A23 output disabled 0100: A8 to A11 output enabled; A12 to A23 output disabled 0101: A8 to A12 output enabled; A13 to A23 output disabled 0110: A8 to A13 output enabled; A14 to A23 output disabled 0111: A8 to A14 output enabled; A15 to A23 output disabled 1000: A8 t o A15 output enabled; A16 to A23 output disabled 1001: A8 to A16 output enabled; A17 to A23 output disabled 1010: A8 to A17 output enabled; A18 to A23 output disabled 1011: A8 to A18 output enabled; A19 to A23 output disabled 1100: A8 to A19 output enabled; A20 to A23 output disabled 1101: A8 to A20 output enabled; A21 to A23 output disabled (initial value of mode 4 and 5) 1110: A8 to A21 output enabled; A22, A23 output disabled 1111: A8 to A23 output enabled
2	AE2	1/0*	R/W	
1	AE1	0	R/W	
0	AE0	1/0*	R/W	

Note: * In modes 4 and 5, initial value of each bit is 1. In modes 6 and 7, initial value of each bit is 0.

6.4 Bus Control

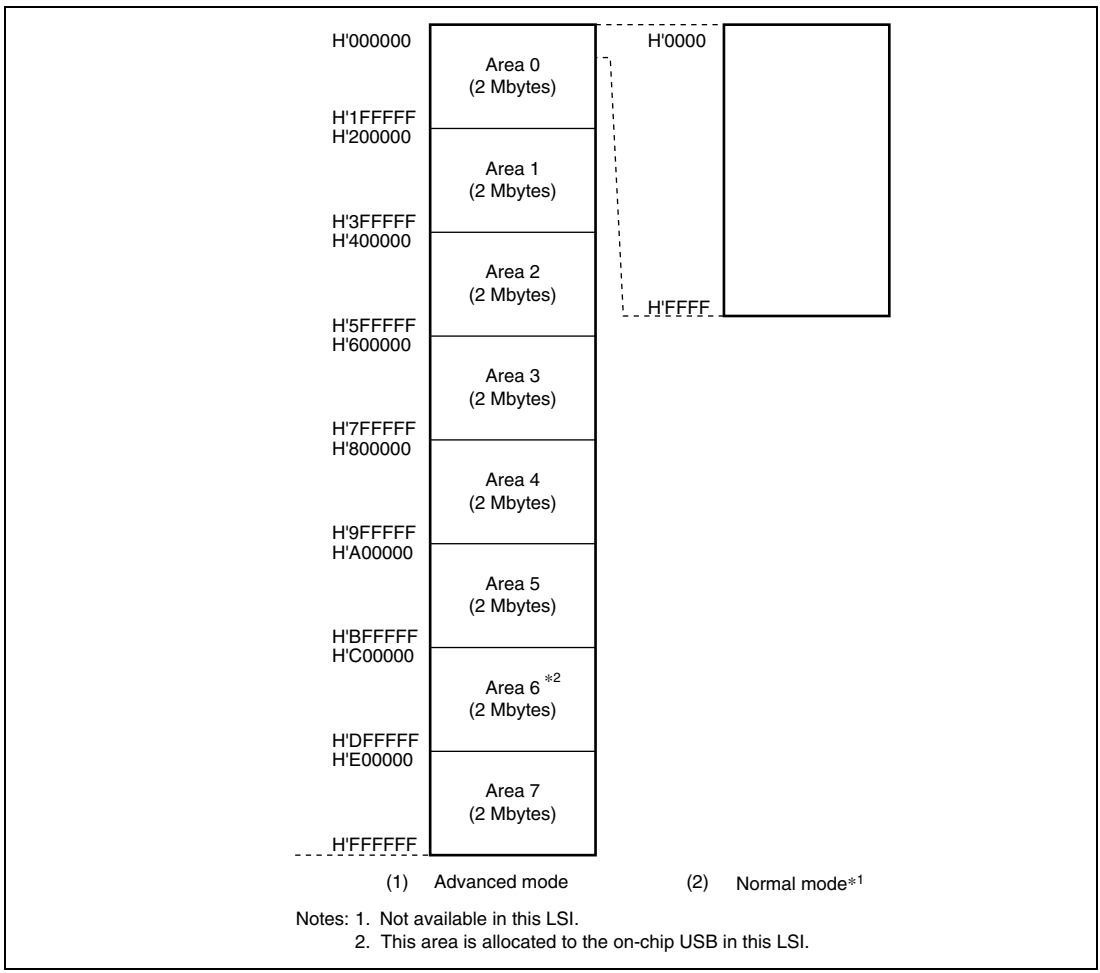
6.4.1 Area Divisions

In advanced mode, the bus controller partitions the 16 Mbytes address space into eight areas, 0 to 7, in 2-Mbyte units, and performs bus control for external space in area units. In normal mode*, it controls a 64-kbyte address space comprising part of area 0.

Figure 6.2 shows an outline of the memory map.

Chip select signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS5}$) can be output for areas 0 to 5.

Note: * Not available in this LSI.



Notes: 1. Not available in this LSI.
2. This area is allocated to the on-chip USB in this LSI.

Figure 6.2 Overview of Area Divisions

6.4.2 Bus Specifications

The external space bus specifications consist of three elements: bus width, number of access states, and number of program wait states.

The bus width and number of access states for memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB and RTC are fixed, and are not affected by the bus controller.

- Bus Width

  A bus width of 8 or 16 bits can be selected with ABWCR. An area for which an 8-bit bus is selected functions as an 8-bit access space, and an area for which a 16-bit bus is selected functions as a16-bit access space.

  If all areas are designated for 8-bit access, 8-bit bus mode is set; if any area is designated for 16-bit access, 16-bit bus mode is set. When the burst ROM interface is designated, 16-bit bus mode is always set. 8-bit bus mode should be set for area 6 and area 7 in this LSI.

- Number of Access States

  Two or three access states can be selected with ASTCR.

  An area for which 2-state access is selected functions as a 2-state access space, and an area for which 3-state access is selected functions as a 3-state access space.

  With the burst ROM interface, the number of access states may be determined without regard to ASTCR.

  When 2-state access space is designated, wait insertion is disabled.

  Area 6 and area 7 should be set to function as a 3-state access space in this LSI.

- Number of Program Wait States

  When 3-state access space is designated by ASTCR, the number of program wait states to be inserted automatically is selected with WCRH and WCRL.

  From 0 to 3 program wait states can be selected.

  The number of program wait states in area 6 and area 7 should be set to 0 in this LSI.

Table 6.2 Bus Specifications for Each Area (Basic Bus Interface)

ABWCR	ASTCR	WCRH, WCRL		Bus Specifications (Basic Bus Interface)		
ABWn	ASTn	Wn1	Wn0	Bus Width	Number of Access States	Number of Program Wait States
0	0	—	—	16	2	0
	1	0	0		3	0
			1			1
		1	0			2
			1			3
1	0	—	—	8	2	0
	1	0	0		3	0
			1			1
		1	0			2
			1			3

6.4.3 Bus Interface for Each Area

The initial state of each area is basic bus interface, 3-state access space. The initial bus width is selected according to the operating mode. The bus specifications described here cover basic items only, and the sections on each memory interface (6.6 and 6.7) should be referred to for further details. Note that the ROM is always enabled and no external extended mode in the H8S/2212 Series.

- Area 0

  Area 0 includes on-chip ROM, and in ROM-disabled extended mode, all of area 0 is external space. In ROM-enabled extended mode, the space excluding on-chip ROM is external space.

  When area 0 external space is accessed, the $\overline{CS0}$ signal can be output.

  Either basic bus interface or burst ROM interface can be selected for area 0.

- Areas 1 to 6

  In external extended mode, all of areas 1 to 6 is external space. When area 1 to 5 external space is accessed, the $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS5}$ pin signals respectively can be output. Only the basic bus interface can be used for areas 1 to 5. Area 6 is only for the on-chip USB. For details, see section 14, Universal Serial Bus (USB).

- Area 7

  Area 7 includes the on-chip RAM and internal l/O registers. In external extended mode, the space excluding the reserved area (for details, see section3.4, Memory Map in Each Operating Mode) the on-chip RAM and internal l/O registers except on-chip RTC, is external space. The on-chip RAM is enabled when the RAME bit in the system control register (SYSCR) is set to 1; when the RAME bit is cleared to 0, the on-chip RAM is disabled and the corresponding space becomes external space.

  Only the basic bus interface can be used for the area 7.

6.4.4 Chip Select Signals

In the H8S/2218 Series chip select signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS5}$) can be output to areas 0 to 5, the signal being driven low when the corresponding external space area is accessed. Figure 6.3 shows an example of $\overline{CSn}$ (n = 0 to 5) output timing. Enabling or disabling of the $\overline{CSn}$ signal is performed by setting the data direction register (DDR) for the port corresponding to the particular $\overline{CSn}$ pin.

In ROM-disabled extended mode, the $\overline{CS0}$ pin is placed in the output state after a power-on reset. Pins $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS5}$ are placed in the input state after a power-on reset, and so the corresponding DDR should be set to 1 when outputting signals $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS5}$.

In ROM-enabled extended mode, pins $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS5}$ are all placed in the input state after a power-on reset, and so the corresponding DDR should be set to 1 when outputting signals $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS5}$. For details, see section 8, I/O Ports.

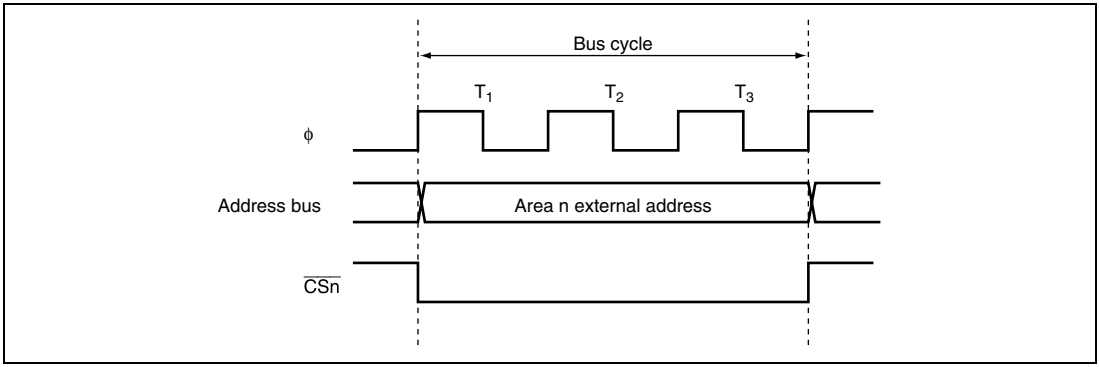


Figure 6.3 $\overline{CSn}$ Signal Output Timing (n = 0 to 5)

6.5 Basic Timing

The CPU is driven by a system clock (ϕ), denoted by the symbol ϕ. The period from one rising edge of ϕ to the next is referred to as a "state." The memory cycle or bus cycle consists of one, two, or three states. Different methods are used to access on-chip memory, on-chip peripheral modules, and the external address space.

6.5.1 On-Chip Memory (ROM, RAM) Access Timing

On-chip memory is accessed in one state. The data bus is 16 bits wide, permitting both byte and word transfer instruction. Figure 6.4 shows the on-chip memory access cycle. Figure 6.5 shows the pin states.

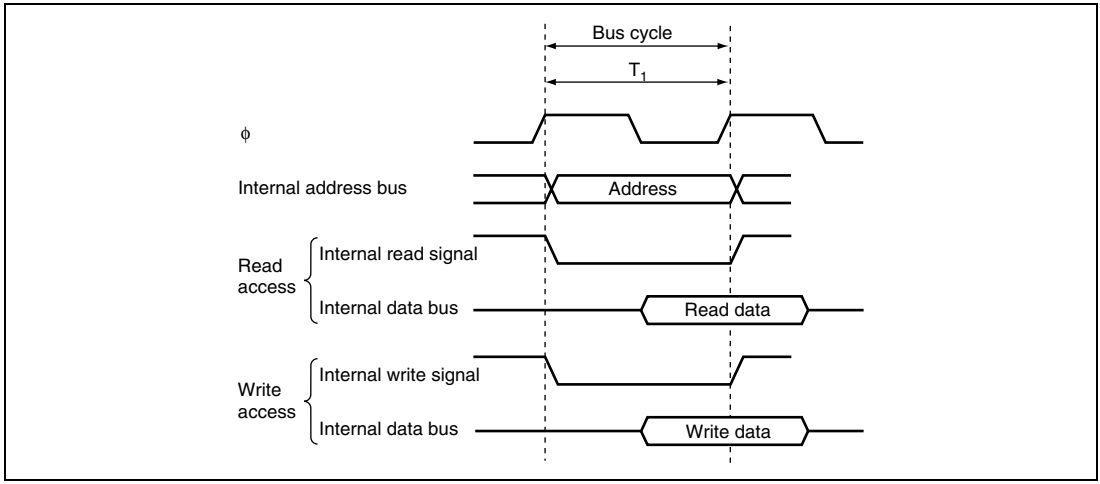


Figure 6.4 On-Chip Memory Access Cycle

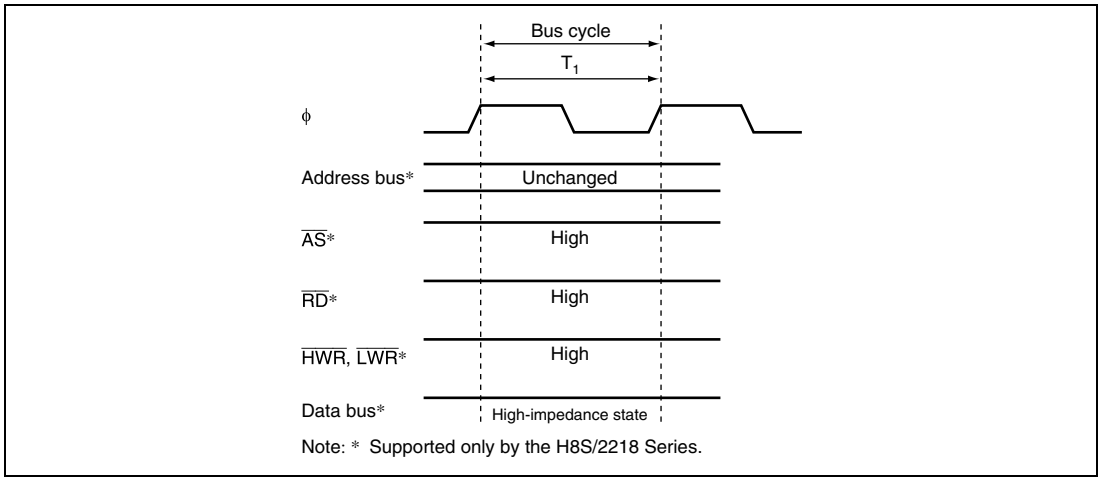


Figure 6.5 Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access

6.5.2 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Timing

The on-chip peripheral modules are accessed in two states except on-chip USB and RTC. The data bus is either 8 bits or 16 bits wide, depending on the particular internal I/O register being accessed. Figure 6.6 shows the access timing for the on-chip peripheral modules. Figure 6.7 shows the pin states.

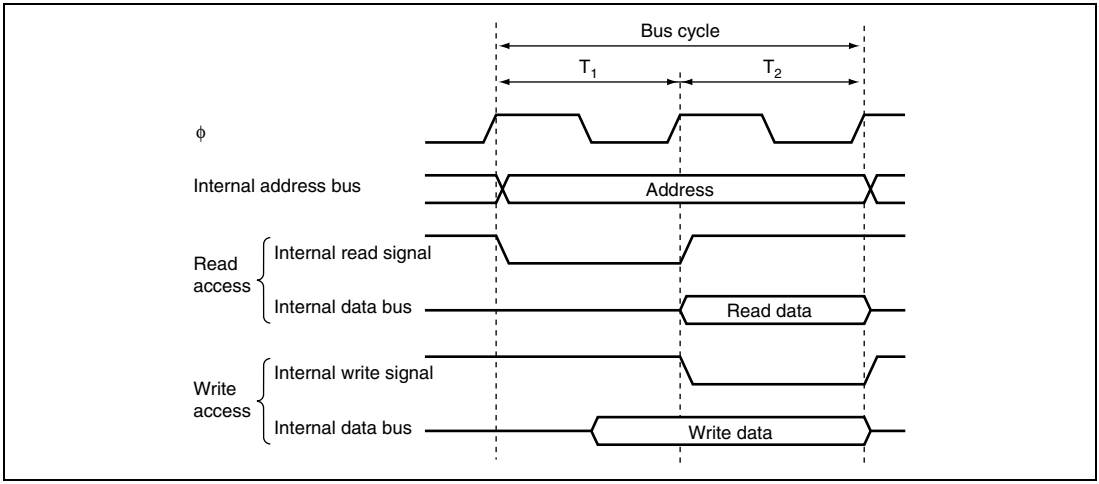


Figure 6.6 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Cycle

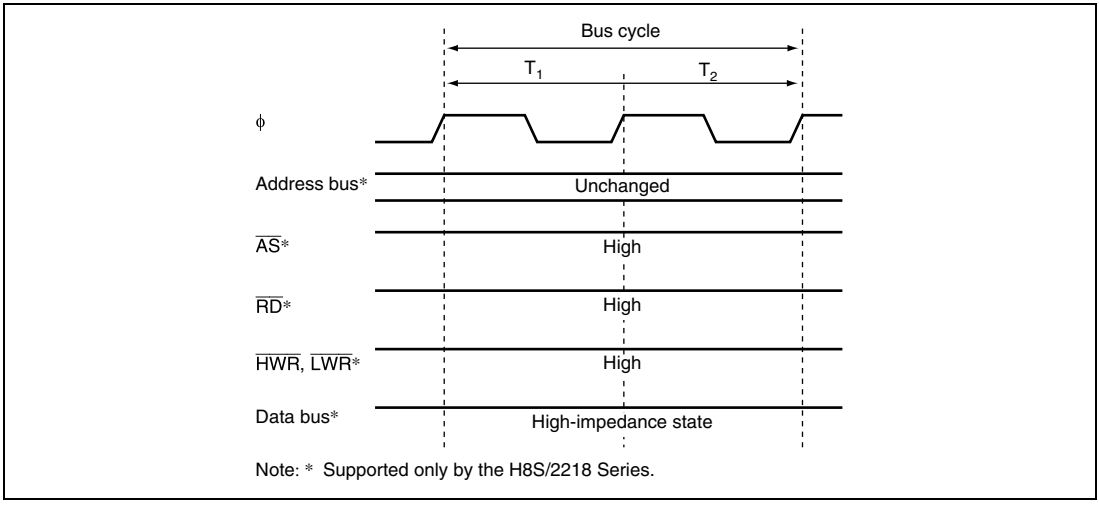


Figure 6.7 Pin States during On-Chip Peripheral Module Access

6.5.3 External Address Space Access Timing

The external address space is accessed with an 8-bit or 16-bit data bus width in a two-state or three-state bus cycle. In three-state access, wait states can be inserted. For further details, refer to section 6.6.3, Basic Timing.

6.6 Basic Bus Interface

The basic bus interface enables direct connection of ROM, SRAM, and so on.

6.6.1 Data Size and Data Alignment (Supported Only by the H8S/2218 Series)

Data sizes for the CPU and other internal bus masters are byte, word, and longword. The bus controller has a data alignment function, and when accessing external space, controls whether the upper data bus (D15 to D8) or lower data bus (D7 to D0) is used according to the bus specifications for the area being accessed (8-bit access space or 16-bit access space) and the data size.

8-Bit Access Space: Figure 6.8 illustrates data alignment control for the 8-bit access space. With the 8-bit access space, the upper data bus (D15 to D8) is always used for accesses. The amount of data that can be accessed at one time is one byte: a word transfer instruction is performed as two-byte accesses, and a longword transfer instruction, as four-byte accesses.

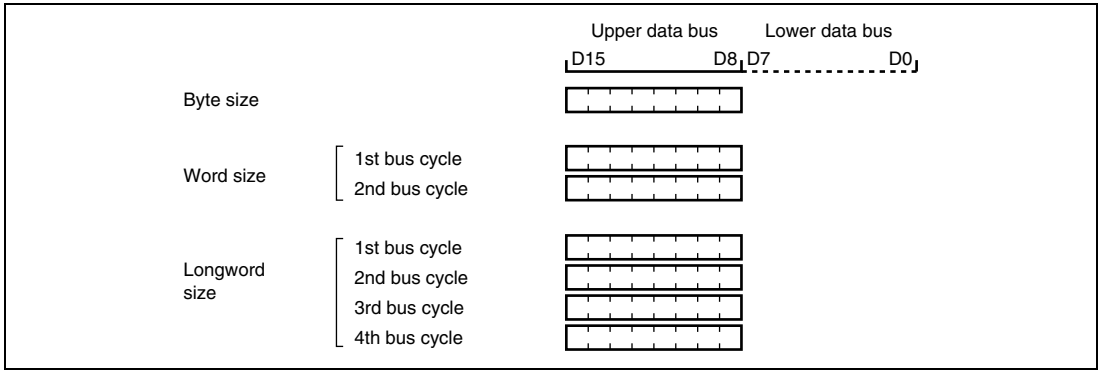


Figure 6.8 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (8-Bit Access Space)

16-Bit Access Space: Figure 6.9 illustrates data alignment control for the 16-bit access space. With the 16-bit access space, the upper data bus (D15 to D8) and lower data bus (D7 to D0) are used for accesses. The amount of data that can be accessed at one time is one byte or one word, and a longword transfer instruction is executed as two word transfer instructions.

In byte access, whether the upper or lower data bus is used is determined by whether the address is even or odd. The upper data bus is used for an even address, and the lower data bus for an odd address.

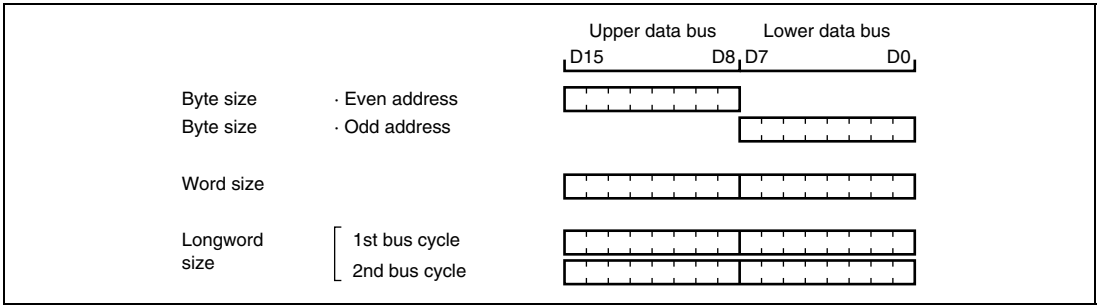


Figure 6.9 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (16-Bit Access Space)

6.6.2 Valid Strobes

Table 6.3 shows the data buses used and valid strobes for the access spaces in the H8S/2218 Series.

In a read, the $\overline{RD}$ signal is valid without discrimination between the upper and lower halves of the data bus.

In a write, the $\overline{HWR}$ signal is valid for the upper half of the data bus, and the $\overline{LWR}$ signal for the lower half.

The $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{HWR}$, and $\overline{LWR}$ signals are not available in the H8S/2212 Series.

Table 6.3 Data Buses Used and Valid Strobes

Area	Access Size	Read/ Write	Address	Valid Strobe	Upper Data Bus (D15 to D8)	Lower Data Bus (D7 to D0)
8-bit access space	Byte	Read	–	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Invalid
		Write	–	$\overline{HWR}$		Hi-Z
16-bit access space	Byte	Read	Even	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Invalid
			Odd		Invalid	Valid
		Write	Even	$\overline{HWR}$	Valid	Hi-Z
			Odd	$\overline{LWR}$	Hi-Z	Valid
	Word	Read	–	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Valid
		Write	–	$\overline{HWR}$, $\overline{LWR}$		

Legend
Hi-Z: High impedance.
Invalid: Input state: input value is ignored.

6.6.3 Basic Timing

8-Bit 2-State Access Space: Figure 6.10 shows the bus timing for an 8-bit 2-state access space in the H8S/2218 Series. When an 8-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

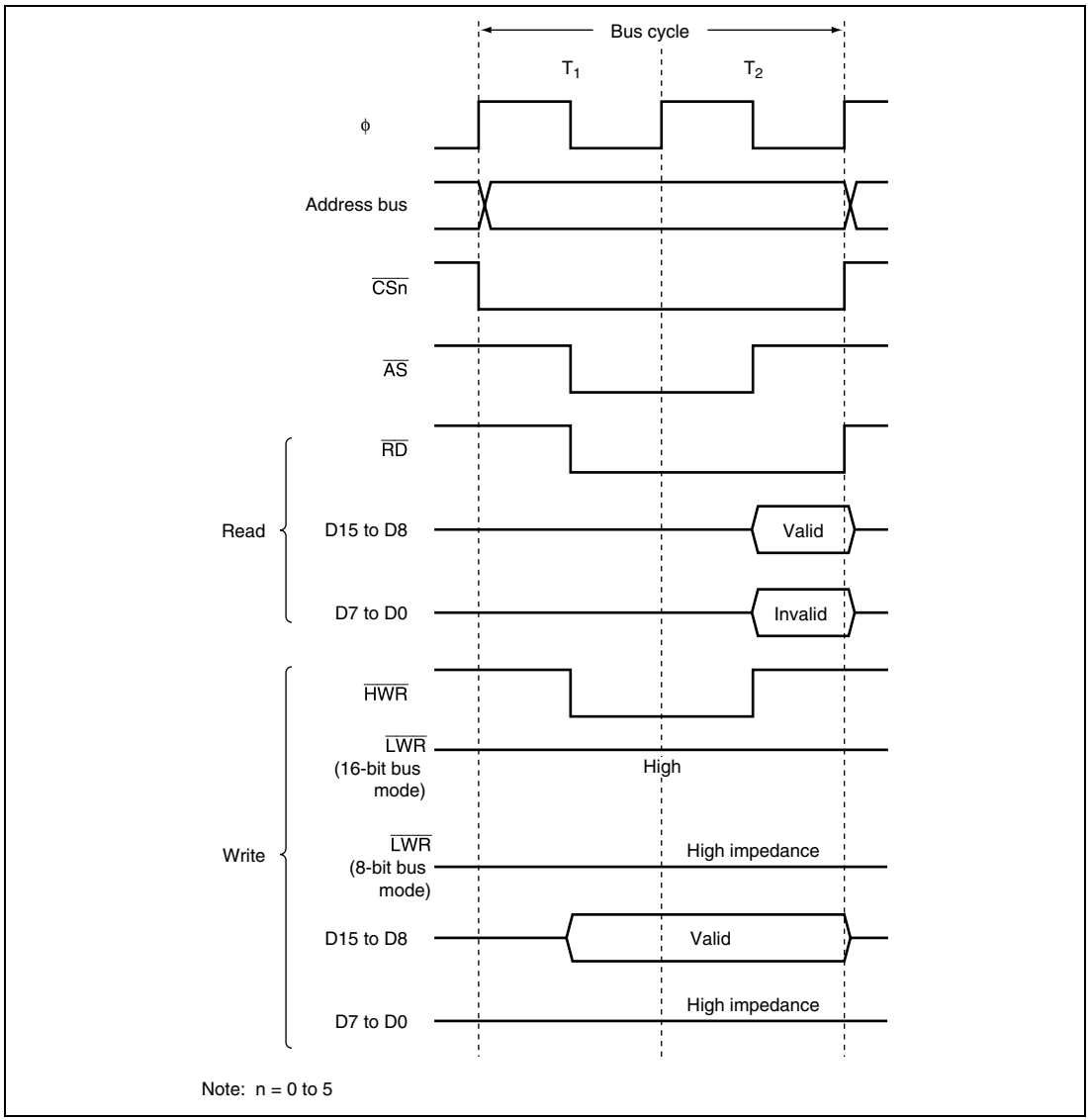


Figure 6.10 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 2-State Access Space in the H8S/2218 Series

8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6): Figure 6.11 shows the bus timing for an 8-bit 3-state access space in the H8S/2218 Series. When an 8-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used.

Wait states can be inserted.

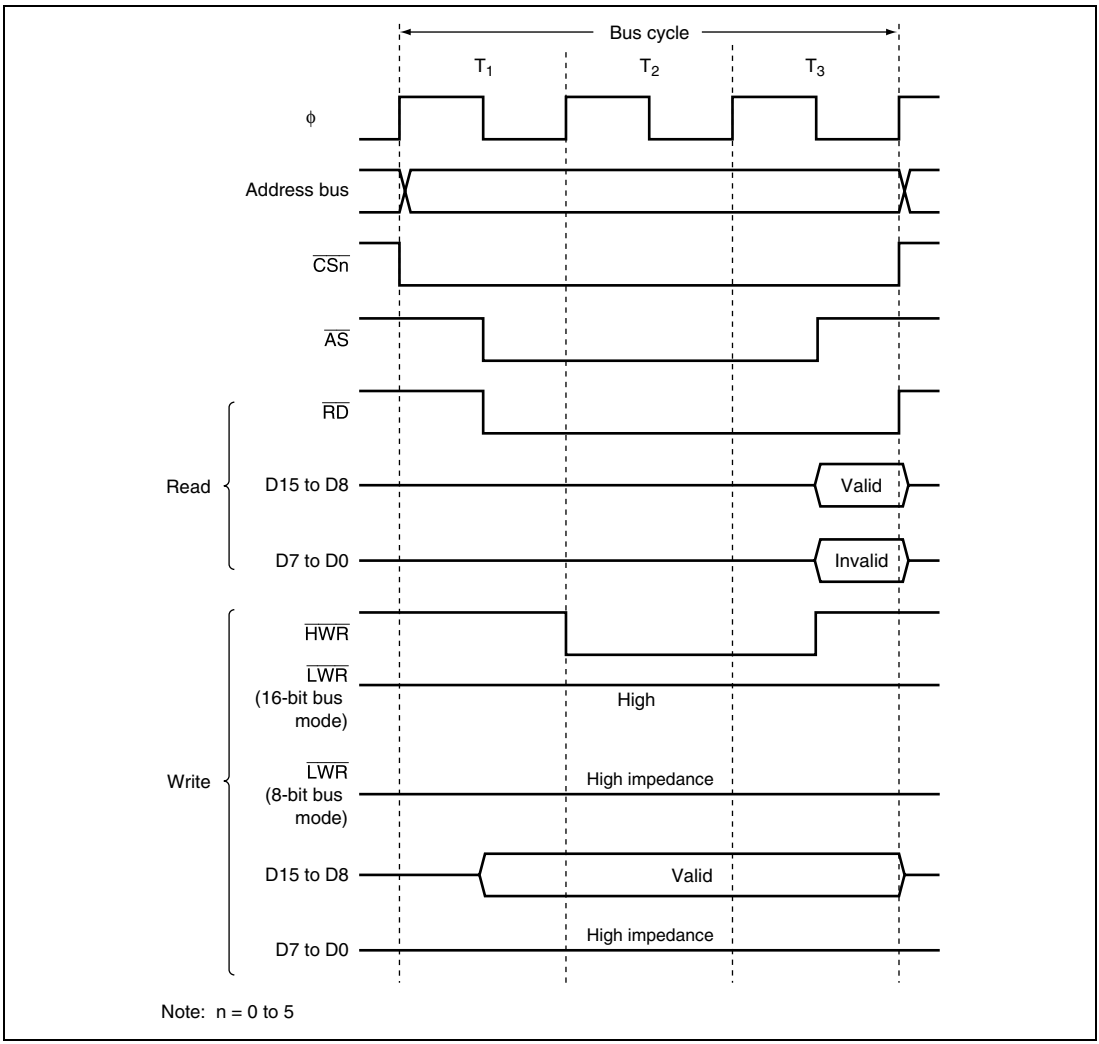


Figure 6.11 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6)

8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Area 6): Figure 6.12 shows the bus timing for area 6 and RTC area (address = H'FFFF40 to H'FFFF5F). When the areas are accessed, the data bus cannot be used.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

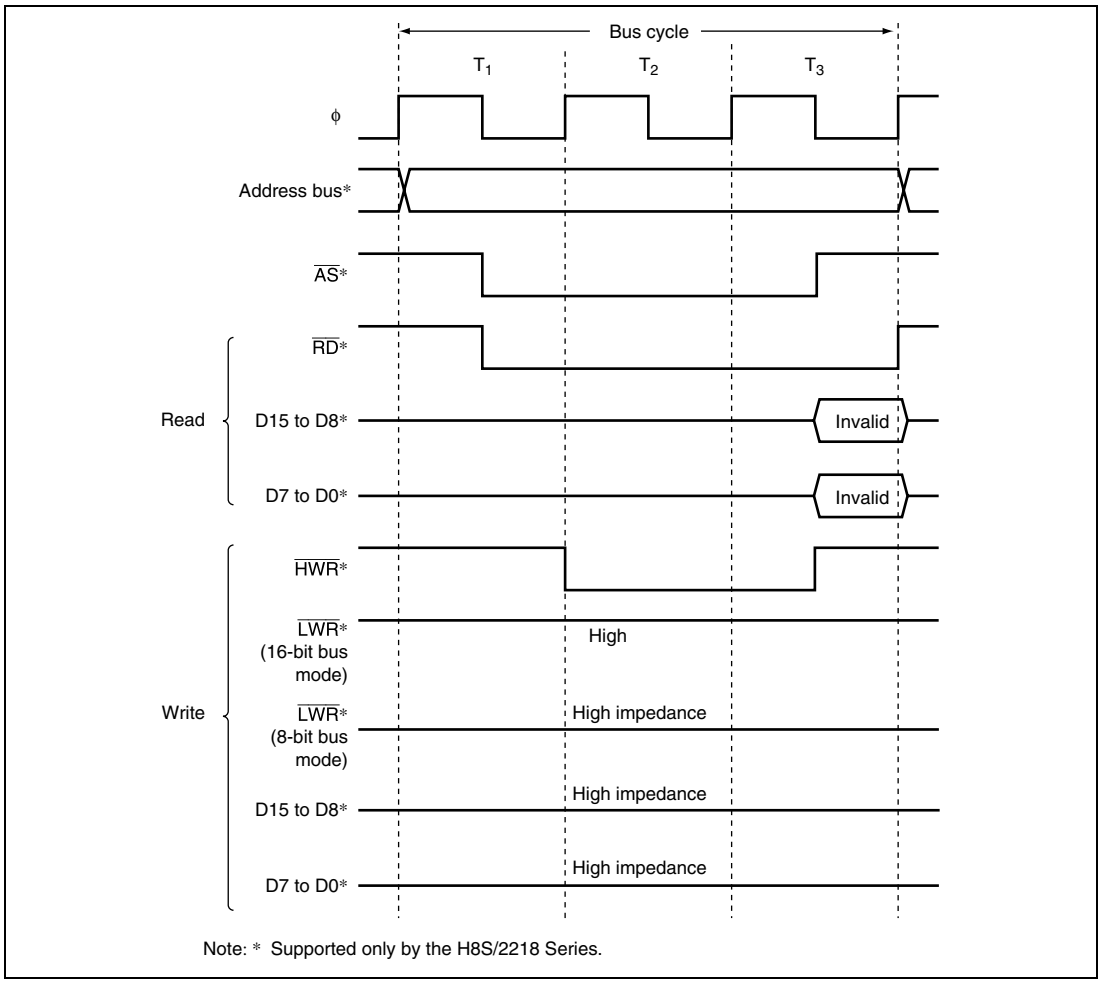


Figure 6.12 Bus Timing for Area 6 and RTC

16-Bit 2-State Access Space: Figures 6.13 to 6.15 show bus timings for a 16-bit 2-state access space in the H8S/2218 Series. When a 16-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used for the even address, and the lower half (D7 to D0) for the odd address.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

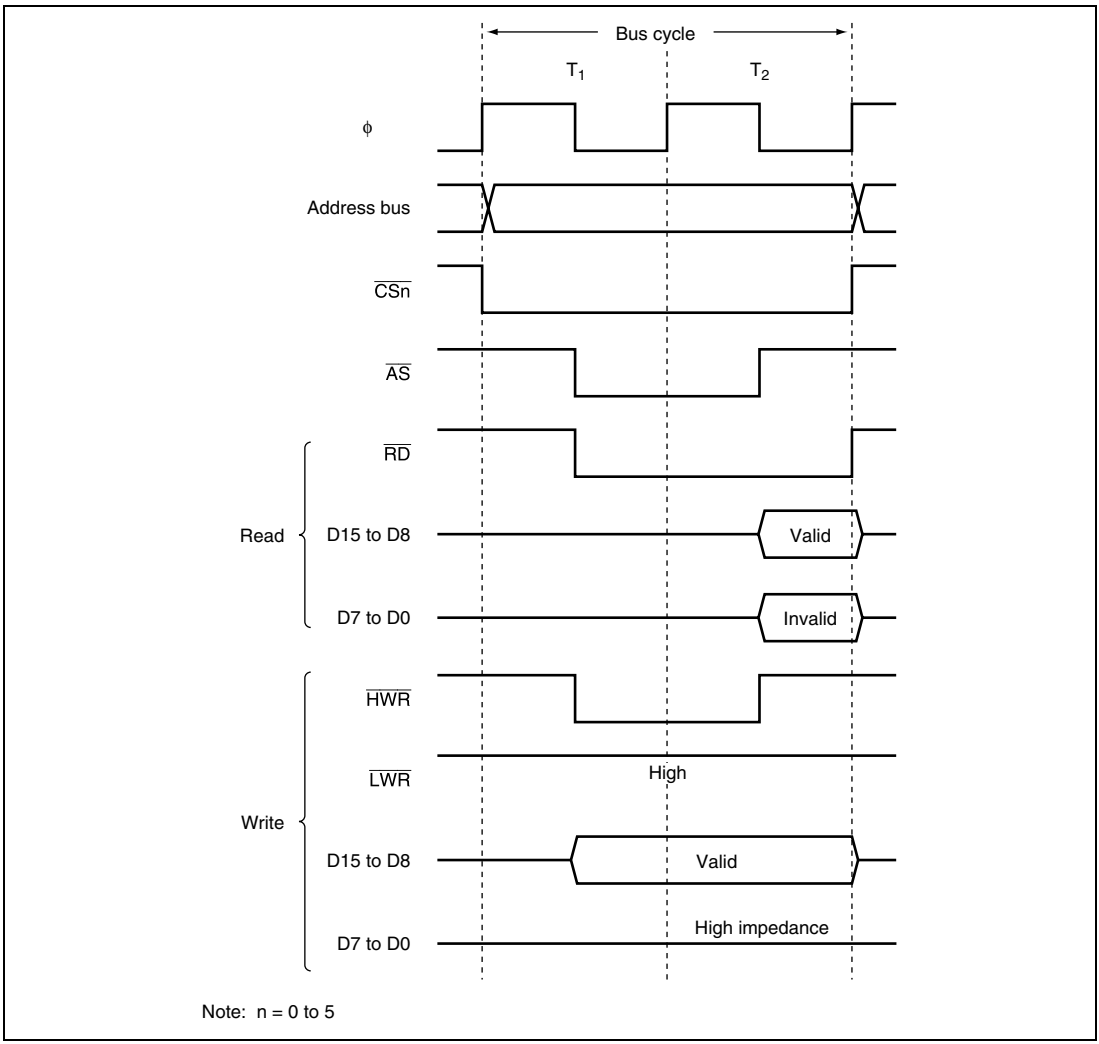


Figure 6.13 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access)

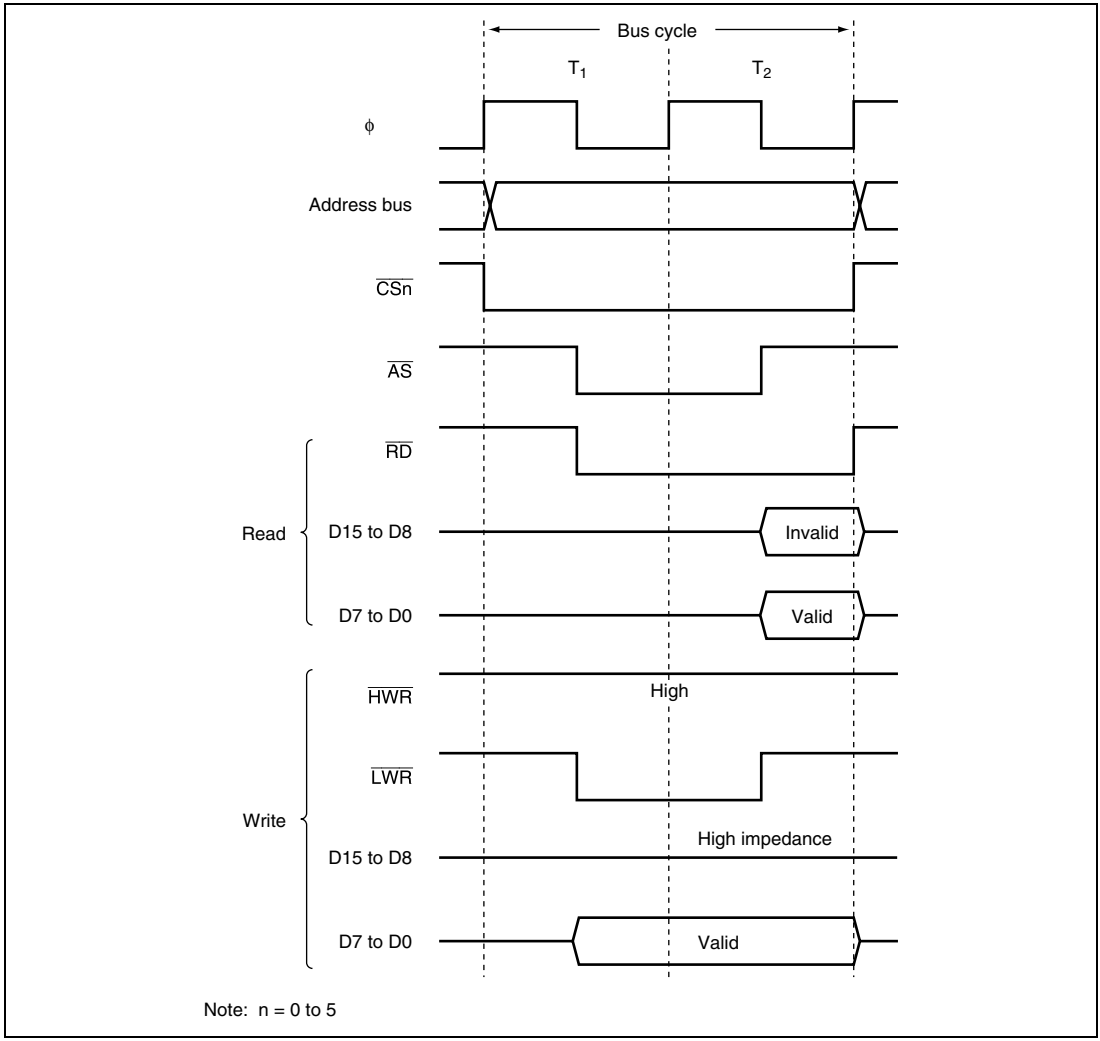


Figure 6.14 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access)

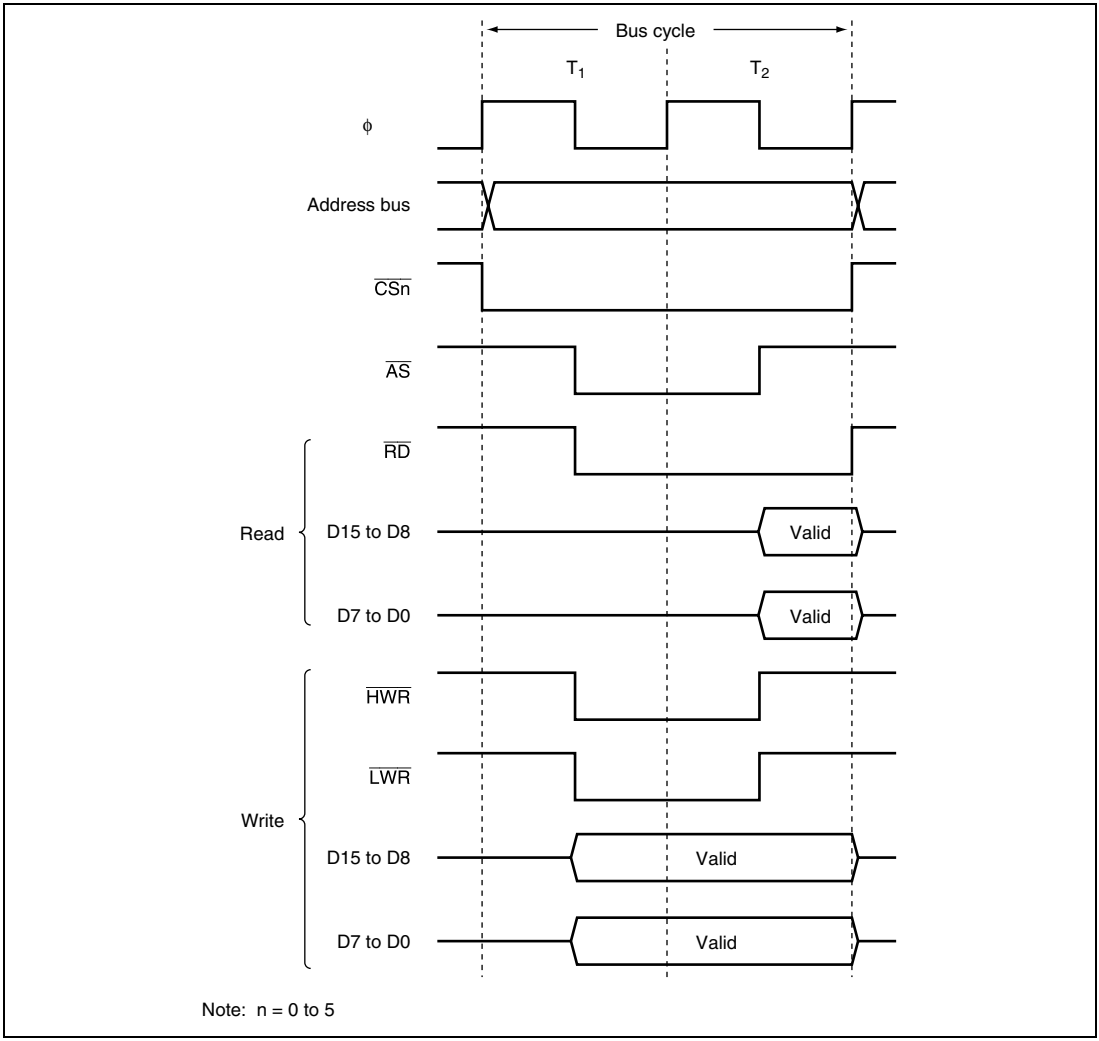


Figure 6.15 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)

16-Bit 3-State Access Space: Figures 6.16 to 6.18 show bus timings for a 16-bit 3-state access space in the H8S/2218 Series. When a 16-bit access space is accessed , the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used for the even address, and the lower half (D7 to D0) for the odd address.

Wait states can be inserted.

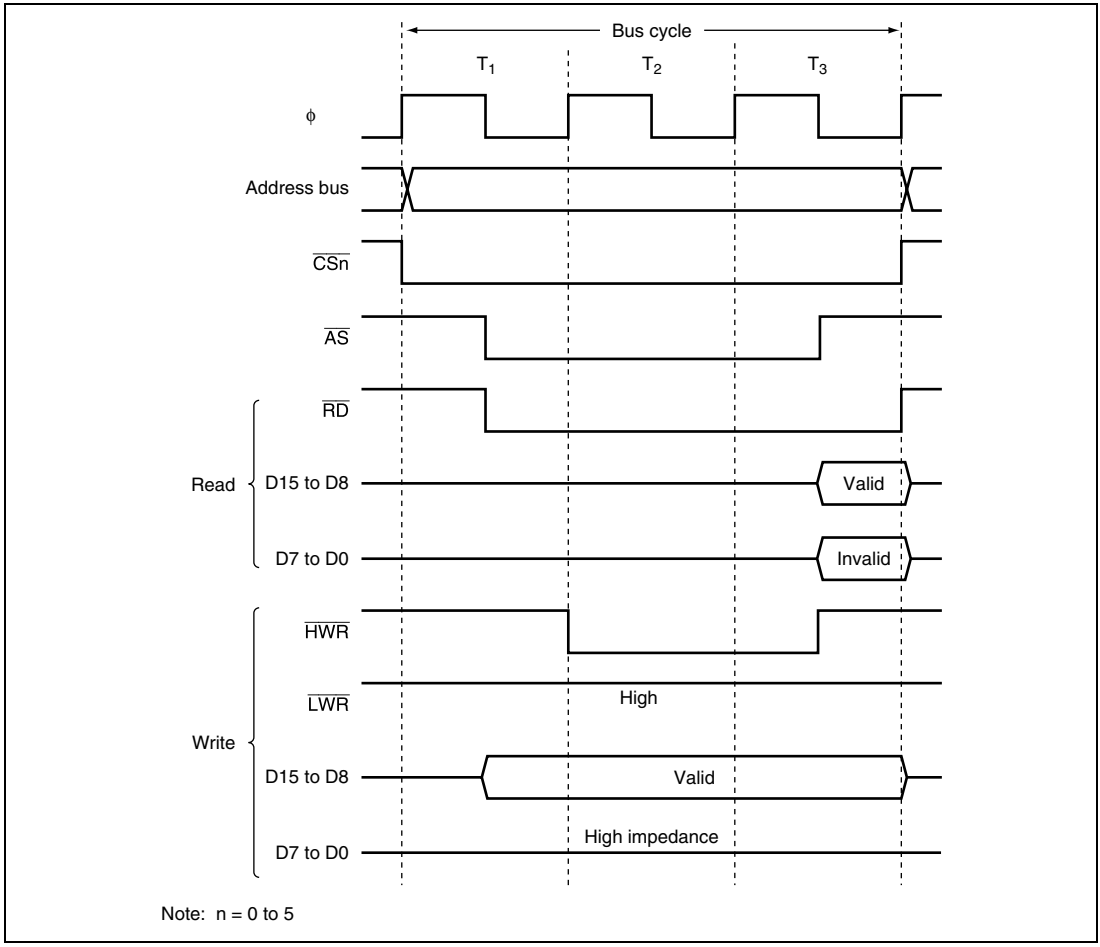


Figure 6.16 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access)

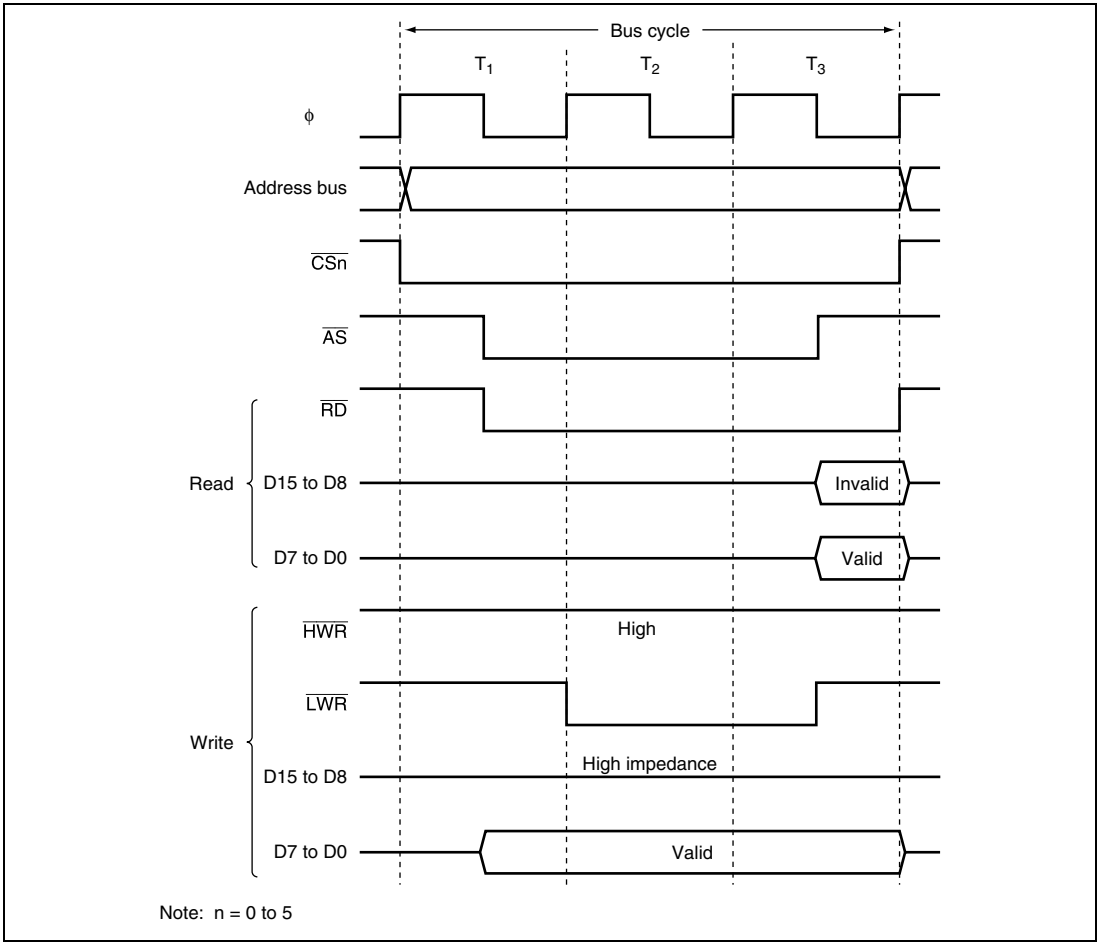


Figure 6.17 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access)

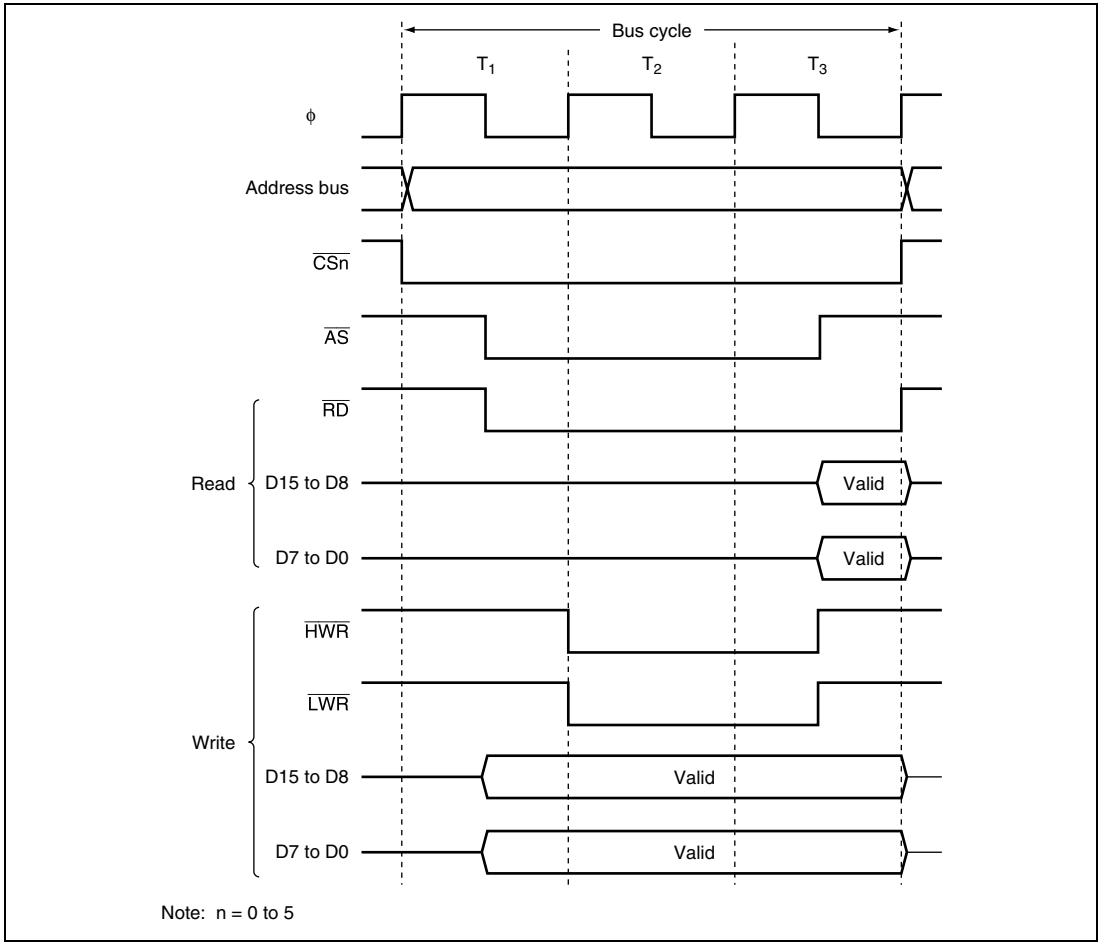


Figure 6.18 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)

6.6.4 Wait Control

When accessing external space, this LSI can extend the bus cycle by inserting one or more wait states (Tw). There are two ways of inserting wait states: program wait insertion and pin wait insertion using the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin.

1. **Program Wait Insertion**

   From 0 to 3 wait states can be inserted automatically between the T_2 state and T_3 state on an individual area basis in 3-state access space, according to the settings of WCRH and WCRL.

2. **Pin Wait Insertion**

   Setting the WAITE bit in BCRH to 1 enables wait insertion by means of the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin in the H8S/2218 Series. When external space is accessed in this state, program wait insertion is first carried out according to the settings in WCRH and WCRL. Then, if the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low at the falling edge of ϕ in the last T_2 or T_w state, a T_w state is inserted. If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is held low, T_w states are inserted until it goes high.

Figure 6.19 shows an example of wait state insertion timing.

In the H8S/2212 Series, the WAITE bit in BCRH should not be set to 1.

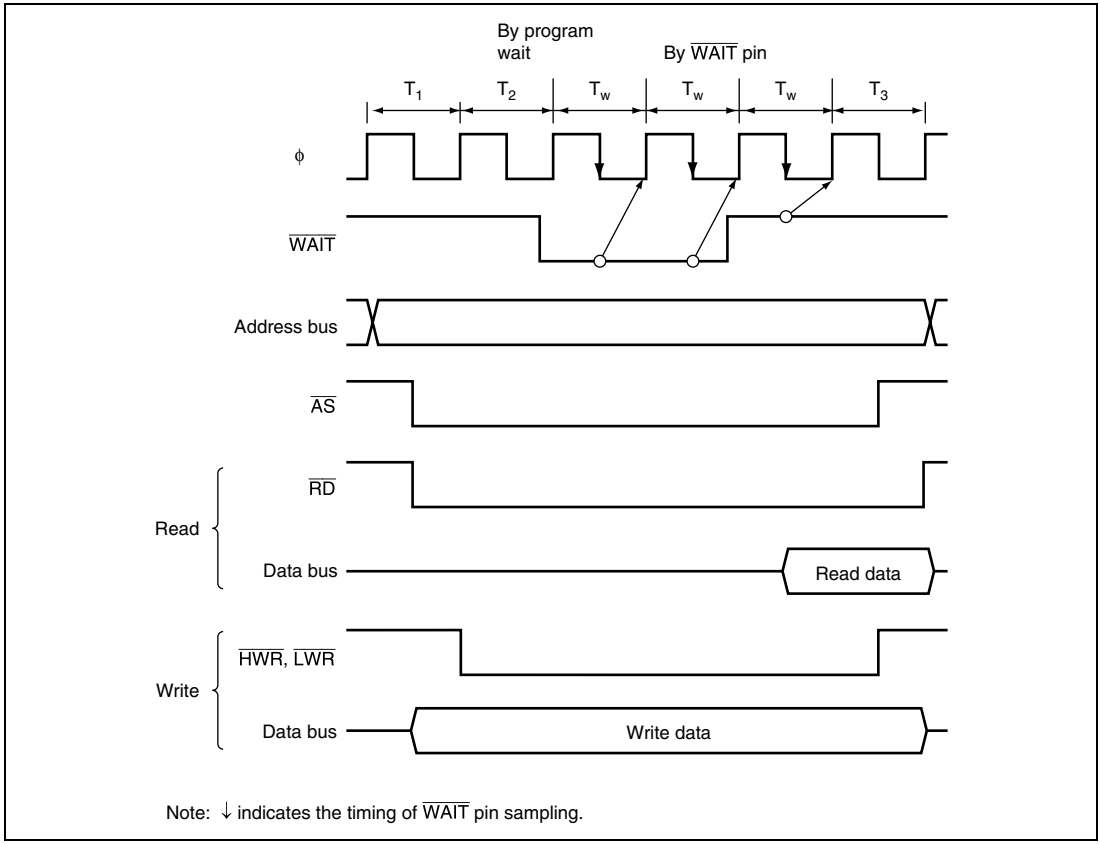


Figure 6.19 Example of Wait State Insertion Timing

6.7 Burst ROM Interface

With the H8S/2218 Series, external space area 0 can be designated as burst ROM space, and burst ROM interfacing can be performed. The burst ROM space interface enables 16-bit configuration ROM with burst access capability to be accessed at high speed.

Area 0 can be designated as burst ROM space by means of the BRSTRM bit in BCRH.

Consecutive burst accesses of a maximum of 4 words or 8 words can be performed for CPU instruction fetches only. One or two states can be selected for burst access.

6.7.1 Basic Timing

The number of states in the initial cycle (full access) of the burst ROM interface is in accordance with the setting of the AST0 bit in ASTCR. Also, when the AST0 bit is set to 1, wait state insertion is possible. One or two states can be selected for the burst cycle, according to the setting of the BRSTS1 bit in BCRH. Wait states cannot be inserted. When area 0 is designated as burst ROM space, it becomes 16-bit access space regardless of the setting of the ABW0 bit in ABWCR.

When the BRSTS0 bit in BCRH is cleared to 0, burst access of up to 4 words is performed; when the BRSTS0 bit is set to 1, burst access of up to 8 words is performed.

The basic access timing for burst ROM space is shown in figures 6.20 and 6.21. The timing shown in figure 6.20 is for the case where the AST0 and BRSTS1 bits are both set to 1, and that in figure 6.21 is for the case where both these bits are cleared to 0.

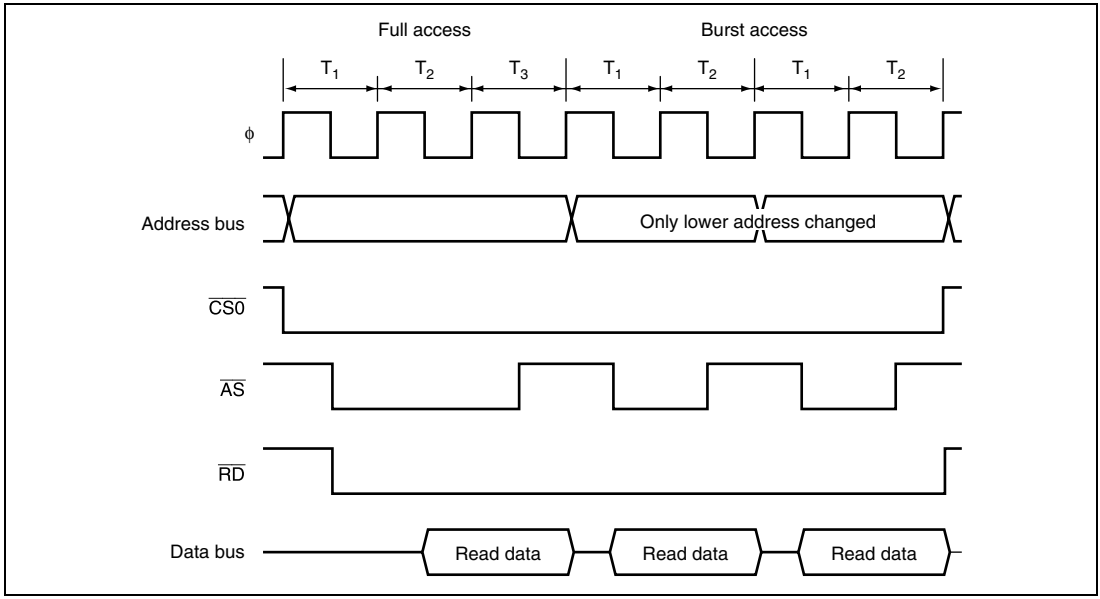


Figure 6.20 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When AST0 = BRSTS1 = 1)

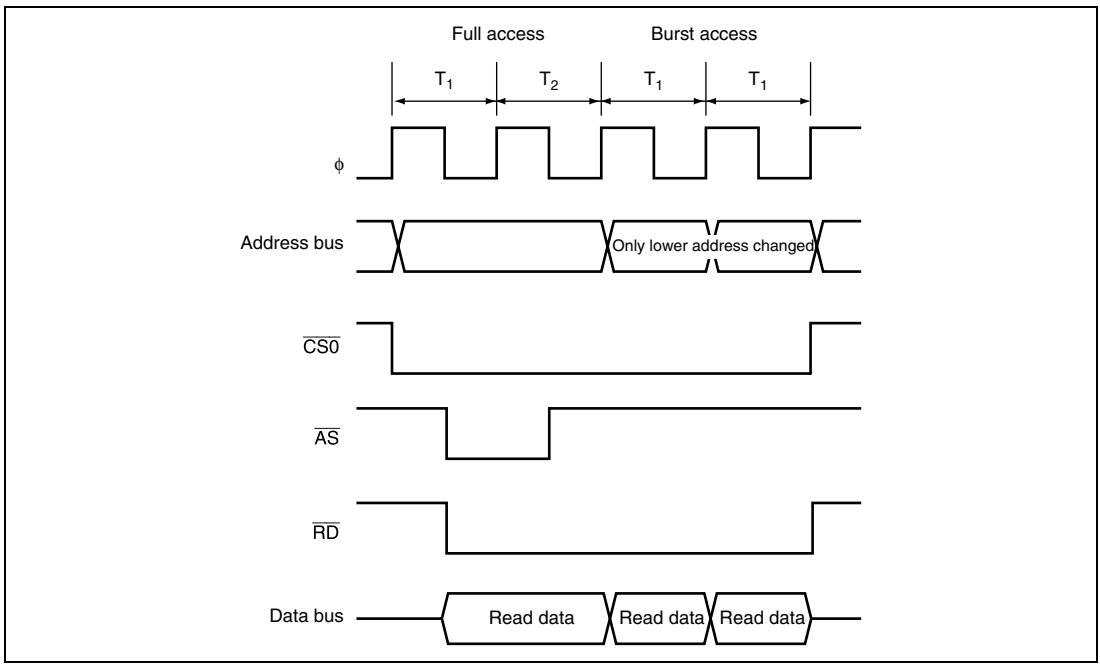


Figure 6.21 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When AST0 = BRSTS1 = 0)

6.7.2 Wait Control

As with the basic bus interface, either program wait insertion or pin wait insertion using the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin can be used in the initial cycle (full access) of the burst ROM interface. See section 6.6.4, Wait Control.

Wait states cannot be inserted in a burst cycle.

6.8 Idle Cycle

When the H8S/2218 Series accesses external space, it can insert a 1-state idle cycle (T_I) between bus cycles in the following two cases: (1) when read accesses between different areas occur consecutively, and (2) when a write cycle occurs immediately after a read cycle. By inserting an idle cycle it is possible, for example, to avoid data collisions between ROM, with a long output floating time, and high-speed memory, I/O interfaces, and so on.

1. Consecutive Reads between Different Areas

If consecutive reads between different areas occur while the ICIS1 bit in BCRH is set to 1, an idle cycle is inserted at the start of the second read cycle.

Figure 6.22 shows an example of the operation in this case. In this example, bus cycle A is a read cycle from ROM with a long output floating time, and bus cycle B is a read cycle from SRAM, each being located in a different area. In (a), an idle cycle is not inserted, and a collision occurs in cycle B between the read data from ROM and that from SRAM. In (b), an idle cycle is inserted, and a data collision is prevented.

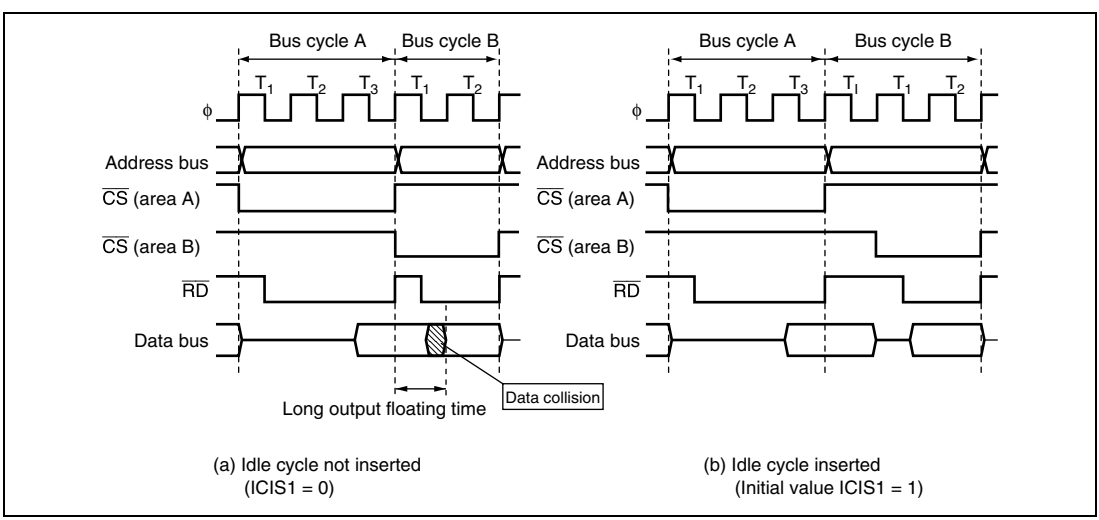


Figure 6.22 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (1)

2. Write after Read

If an external write occurs after an external read while the ICIS0 bit in BCRH is set to 1, an idle cycle is inserted at the start of the write cycle.

Figure 6.23 shows an example of the operation in this case. In this example, bus cycle A is a read cycle from ROM with a long output floating time, and bus cycle B is a CPU write cycle. In (a), an idle cycle is not inserted, and a collision occurs in cycle B between the read data from ROM and the CPU write data. In (b), an idle cycle is inserted, and a data collision is prevented.

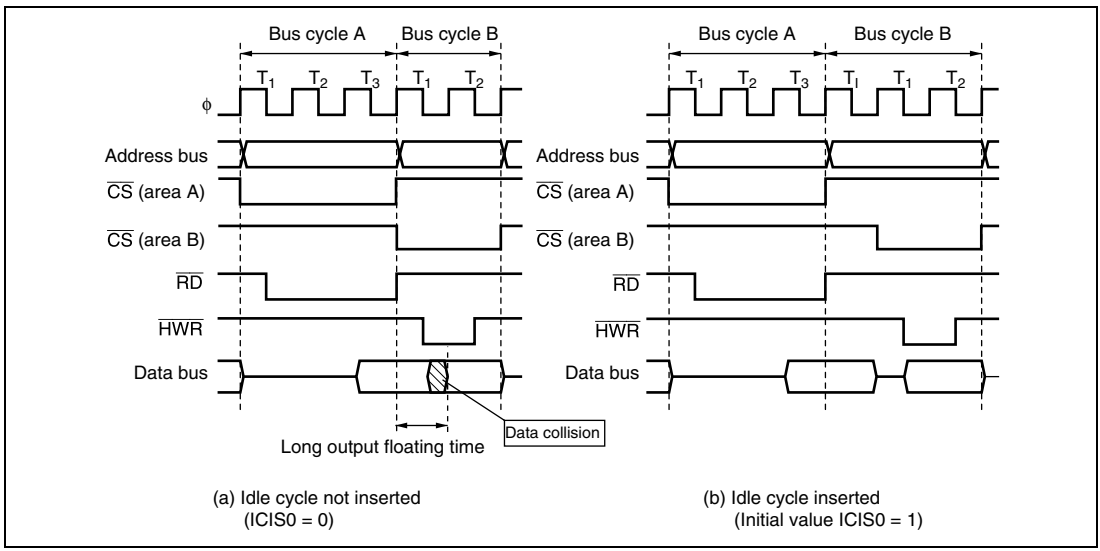


Figure 6.23 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (2)

3. Relationship between Chip Select ($\overline{CS}$) Signal and Read ($\overline{RD}$) Signal

Depending on the system's load conditions, the $\overline{RD}$ signal may lag behind the $\overline{CS}$ signal. An example is shown in figure 6.24.

In this case, with the setting for no idle cycle insertion (a), there may be a period of overlap between the bus cycle A $\overline{RD}$ signal and the bus cycle B $\overline{CS}$ signal.

Setting idle cycle insertion, as in (b), however, will prevent any overlap between the $\overline{RD}$ and $\overline{CS}$ signals.

In the initial state after reset release, idle cycle insertion (b) is set.

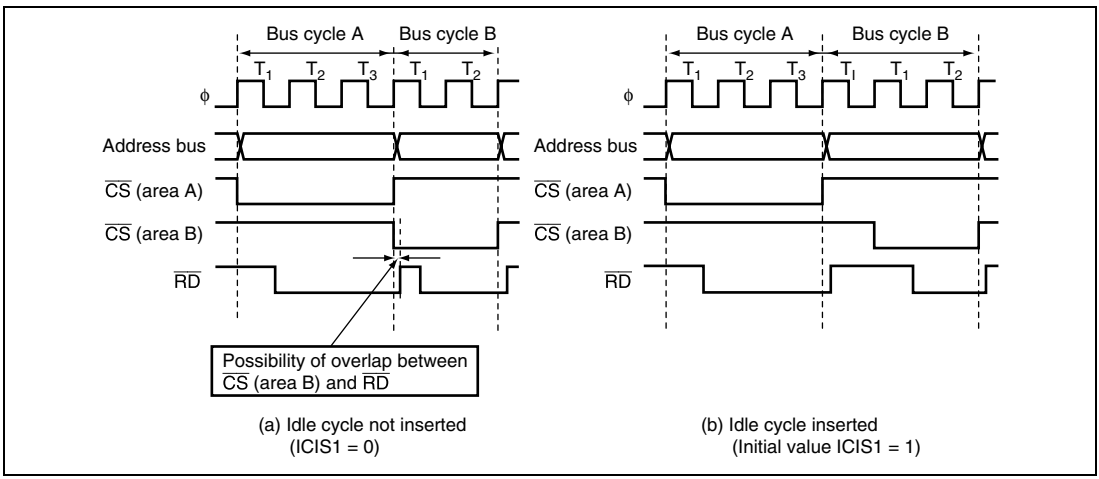


Figure 6.24 Relationship between Chip Select ($\overline{CS}$) and Read ($\overline{RD}$)

Table 6.4 shows pin states in an idle cycle.

Table 6.4 Pin States in Idle Cycle

Pins	Pin State
A23 to A0	Contents of next bus cycle
D15 to D0	High impedance
$\overline{CSn}$	High
$\overline{AS}$	High
$\overline{RD}$	High
$\overline{HWR}$	High
$\overline{LWR}$	High

6.9 Bus Release

The H8S/2218 Series can release the external bus in response to a bus request from an external device. In the external bus released state, the internal bus master continues to operate as long as there is no external access.

In external extended mode, the bus can be released to an external device by setting the BRLE bit in BCRL to 1. Driving the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin low issues an external bus request to this LSI. When the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is sampled, at the prescribed timing the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven low, and the address bus, data bus, and bus control signals are placed in the high-impedance state, establishing the external bus-released state.

In the external bus released state, an internal bus master can perform accesses using the internal bus. When an internal bus master wants to make an external access, it temporarily defers activation of the bus cycle, and waits for the bus request from the external bus master to be dropped.

When the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is driven high, the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven high at the prescribed timing and the external bus released state is terminated.

In the event of simultaneous external bus release request and external access request generation, the order of priority is as follows:

(High) External bus release > Internal bus master external access (Low)

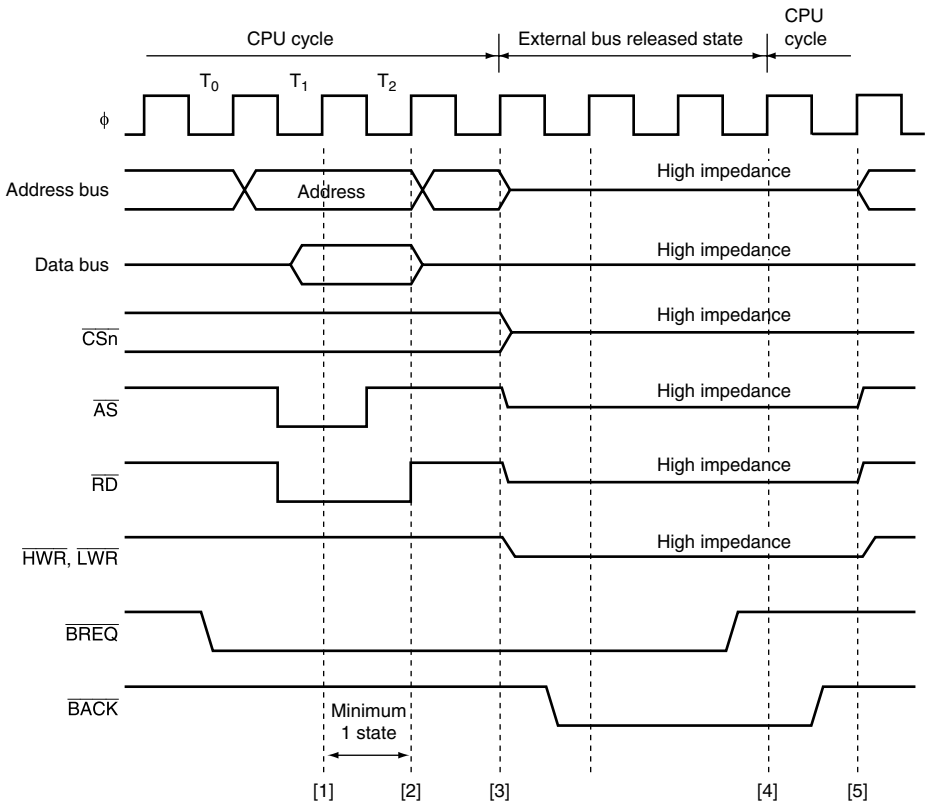
Table 6.5 shows pin states in the external bus released state.

In the H8S/2212 Series, the BRLE bit in BCRL should not be set to 1.

Table 6.5 Pin States in Bus Released State

Pins	Pin State
A23 to A0	High impedance
D15 to D0	High impedance
$\overline{\text{CSn}}$	High impedance
$\overline{\text{AS}}$	High impedance
$\overline{\text{RD}}$	High impedance
$\overline{\text{HWR}}$	High impedance
$\overline{\text{LWR}}$	High impedance

Figure 6.25 shows the timing for transition to the bus-released state.



[1] Low level of $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is sampled at rise of T_2 state.
[2] $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven low at end of CPU read cycle, releasing bus to external bus master.
[3] $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin state is still sampled in external bus released state.
[4] High level of $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is sampled.
[5] $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven high, ending bus release cycle.

Note : n = 0 to 5

Figure 6.25 Bus-Released State Transition Timing

6.10 Bus Arbitration

This LSI has a bus arbiter that arbitrates bus master operations.

There are two bus masters, the CPU and DMAC, which perform read/write operations when they have possession of the bus. Each bus master requests the bus by means of a bus request signal. The bus arbiter determines priorities at the prescribed timing, and permits use of the bus by means of a bus request acknowledge signal. The selected bus master then takes possession of the bus and begins its operation.

6.10.1 Operation

The bus arbiter detects the bus masters' bus request signals, and if the bus is requested, sends a bus request acknowledge signal to the bus master making the request. If there are bus requests from more than one bus master, the bus request acknowledge signal is sent to the one with the highest priority. When a bus master receives the bus request acknowledge signal, it takes possession of the bus until that signal is canceled.

The order of priority of the bus masters is as follows:

(High) DMAC > CPU (Low)

An internal bus access by an internal bus master, and external bus release, can be executed in parallel in the H8S/2218 Series.

In the event of simultaneous external bus release request, and internal bus master external access request generation, the order of priority is as follows:

(High) External bus release > Internal bus master external access (Low)

The H8S/2212 Series does not have the external bus release function.

6.10.2 Bus Transfer Timing

Even if a bus request is received from a bus master with a higher priority than that of the bus master that has acquired the bus and is currently operating, the bus is not necessarily transferred immediately. There are specific times at which each bus master can relinquish the bus.

CPU: The CPU is the lowest-priority bus master, and if a bus request is received from the DMAC, the bus arbiter transfers the bus to the bus master that issued the request. The timing for transfer of the bus is as follows:

- The bus is transferred at a break between bus cycles. However, if a bus cycle is executed in discrete operations, as in the case of a longword-size access, the bus is not transferred between the operations.
- If the CPU is in sleep mode, it transfers the bus immediately.

DMAC: The DMAC sends the bus arbiter a request for the bus when an activation request is generated.

In the case of a USB request in short address mode or normal mode, and in cycle steal mode, the DMAC releases the bus after a single transfer.

In block transfer mode, it releases the bus after transfer of one block, and in burst mode, after completion of the transfer.

6.10.3 External Bus Release Usage Note

External bus release can be performed on completion of an external bus cycle in the H8S/2218 Series. The $\overline{CS}$ signal remains low until the end of the external bus cycle. Therefore, when external bus release is performed, the $\overline{CS}$ signal may change from the low level to the high-impedance state.

6.11 Resets and the Bus Controller

In a power-on reset, this LSI, including the bus controller, enters the reset state at that point, and an executing bus cycle is discontinued.

In a manual reset*, the bus controller's registers and internal state are maintained, and an executing external bus cycle is completed. In this case, $\overline{WAIT}$ input is ignored and write data is not guaranteed.

Note:* Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

Section 7 DMA Controller

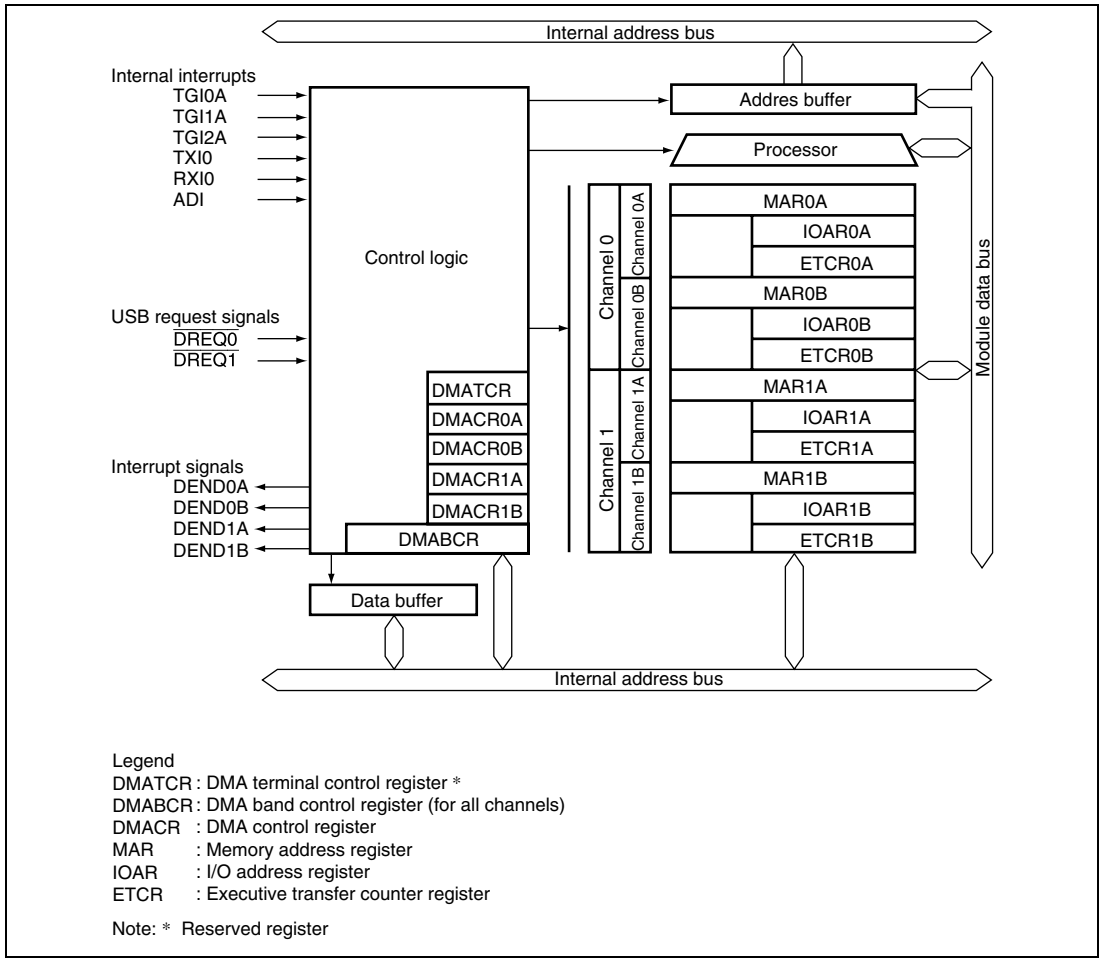
This LSI has a built-in DMA controller (DMAC) which can carry out data transfer on up to 4 channels.

7.1 Features

The features of the DMAC are listed below.

- Choice of short address mode or full address mode
- Short address mode
  - Maximum of 4 channels can be used
  - Choice of dual address mode
  - In dual address mode, one of the two addresses, transfer source and transfer destination, is specified as 24 bits and the other as16 bits
  - Choice of sequential mode, idle mode, or repeat mode for dual address mode
- Full address mode
  - Maximum of 2 channels can be used
  - Transfer source and transfer destination address specified as 24 bits
  - Choice of normal mode or block transfer mode
- 16-Mbyte address space can be specified directly
- Byte or word can be set as the transfer unit
- Activation sources: internal interrupt, USB request, auto-request (depending on transfer mode)
  - 16-bit timer-pulse unit (TPU) compare match/input capture interrupts
  - Serial communication interface (SCI_0) transmission complete interrupt, reception complete interrupt
  - A/D conversion end Interrupt
  - USB request
  - Auto-request
- Module stop mode can be set

A block diagram of the DMAC is shown in figure 7.1.



Legend
DMATCR : DMA terminal control register *
DMABCR : DMA band control register (for all channels)
DMACR : DMA control register
MAR : Memory address register
IOAR : I/O address register
ETCR : Executive transfer counter register

Note: * Reserved register

Figure 7.1 Block Diagram of DMAC

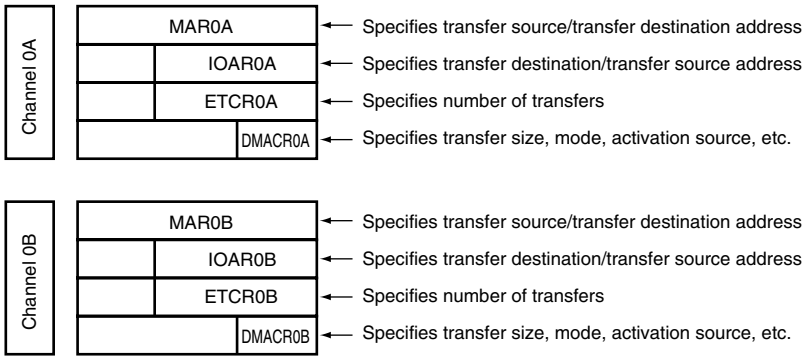
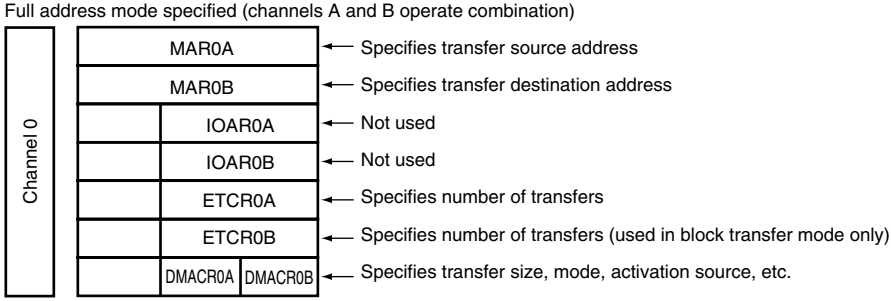
7.2 Register Configuration

The DMAC registers are listed below.

- Memory address register 0A (MAR0A)
- I/O address register 0A (IOAR0A)
- Transfer count register 0A (ETCR0A)
- Memory address register 0B (MAR0B)
- I/O address register 0B (IOAR0B)
- Transfer count register 0B (ETCR0B)
- Memory address register 1A (MAR1A)
- I/O address register 1A (IOAR1A)
- Transfer count register 1A (ETCR1A)
- Memory address register 1B (MAR1B)
- I/O address register 1B (IOAR1B)
- Transfer count register 1B (ETCR1B)
- DMA control register 0A (DMACR0A)
- DMA control register 0B (DMACR0B)
- DMA control register 1A (DMACR1A)
- DMA control register 1B (DMACR1B)
- DMA band control register (DMABCR)

The DMAC register functions differs depending on the address modes: short address mode and full address mode. The DMAC register functions are described in each address mode. Short address mode or full address mode can be selected for channels 1 and 0 independently by means of bits FAE1 and FAE0.

Table7.1 Short Address Mode and Full Address Mode (For 1 Channel: Example of Channel 0)

FAE0	Description
0	Short address mode specified (channels A and B operate independently) 
1	Full address mode specified (channels A and B operate combination) 

7.3 Register Descriptions

7.3.1 Memory Address Registers (MAR)

Short Address Mode:

MAR is a 32-bit readable/writable register that specifies the transfer source address or destination address. The upper 8 bits of MAR are reserved: they are always read as 0, and cannot be modified. Whether MAR functions as the source address register or as the destination address register can be selected by means of the DTDIR bit in DMACR.

MAR is incremented or decremented each time a byte or word transfer is executed, so that the address specified by MAR is constantly updated. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). MAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

Full Address Mode:

MAR is a 32-bit readable/writable register; MARA functions as the transfer source address register, and MARB as the destination address register.

MAR is composed of two 16-bit registers, MARH and MARL. The upper 8 bits of MARH are reserved: they are always read as 0, and cannot be modified. MAR is incremented or decremented each time a byte or word transfer is executed, so that the source or destination memory address can be updated automatically. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). MAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

7.3.2 I/O Address Register (IOAR)

Short Address Mode:

IOAR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the lower 16 bits of the transfer source address or destination address. The upper 8 bits of the transfer address are automatically set to H'FF. Whether IOAR functions as the source address register or as the destination address register can be selected by means of the DTDIR bit in DMACR.

IOAR is not incremented or decremented each time a transfer is executed, so that the address specified by IOAR is fixed. IOAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

Full Address Mode:

IOAR is not used in full address mode transfer.

7.3.3 Execute Transfer Count Register (ETCR)

Short Address Mode:

ETCR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the number of transfers. The setting of this register is different for sequential mode and idle mode on the one hand, and for repeat mode on the other.

1. Sequential Mode and Idle Mode

   In sequential mode and idle mode, ETCR functions as a 16-bit transfer counter (with a count range of 1 to 65536). ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'0000, the DTE bit in DMABCR is cleared, and transfer ends.
2. Repeat Mode

   In repeat mode, ETCR functions as transfer counter ETCRL (with a count range of 1 to 256) and transfer number storage register ETCRH. ETCRL is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'00, ETCRL is loaded with the value in ETCRH. At this point, MAR is automatically restored to the value it had when the count was started. The DTE bit in DMABCR is not cleared, and so transfers can be performed repeatedly until the DTE bit is cleared by the user.

   ETCR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

Full Address Mode:

ETCR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the number of transfers. The function of this register is different in normal mode and in block transfer mode. ETCR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

1. Normal Mode
   A. ETCRA

      In normal mode, ETCRA functions as a 16-bit transfer counter. ETCRA is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000.

   B. ETCRB

      ETCRB is not used in normal mode.
2. Block Transfer Mode
   A. ETCRA

      In block transfer mode, ETCRAL functions as an 8-bit block size counter and ETCRAH holds the block size. ETCRAL is decremented each time a 1-byte or 1-word transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'00, ETCRAL is loaded with the value in ETCRAH. So by setting the block size in ETCRAH and ETCRAL, it is possible to repeatedly transfer blocks consisting of any desired number of bytes or words.

B. ETCRB

ETCRB functions in block transfer mode, as a 16-bit block transfer counter. ETCRB is decremented by 1 each time a block is transferred, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000.

7.3.4 DMA Control Register (DMACR)

DMACR controls the operation of each DMAC channel.

- Short Address Mode (common to DMACRA and DMACRB)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	DTSZ	0	R/W	Data Transfer Size Selects the size of data to be transferred at one time. 0: Byte-size transfer 1: Word-size transfer
6	DTID	0	R/W	Data Transfer Increment/Decrement Selects incrementing or decrementing of MAR every data transfer in sequential mode or repeat mode. In idle mode, MAR is neither incremented nor decremented. 0: MAR is incremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MAR is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MAR is incremented by 2 after a transfer 1: MAR is decremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MAR is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MAR is decremented by 2 after a transfer

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	RPE	0	R/W	Repeat Enable Used in combination with the DTIE bit in DMABCR to select the mode (sequential, idle, or repeat) in which transfer is to be performed. RPE DTIE 0 0: Transfer in sequential mode (no transfer end interrupt) 0 1: Transfer in sequential mode (with transfer end interrupt) 1 0: Transfer in repeat mode (no transfer end interrupt) 1 1: Transfer in idle mode (with transfer end interrupt) Note: For details of operation in sequential, idle, and repeat mode, see section 7.4.2, Sequential Mode, section 7.4.3, Idle Mode, and section 7.4.4, Repeat Mode.
4	DTDIR	0	R/W	Data Transfer Direction Specifies the data transfer direction (source or destination). 0: Transfer with MAR as source address and IOAR as destination address 1: Transfer with IOAR as source address and MAR as destination address

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	DTF3	0	R/W	Data Transfer Factor
2	DTF2	0	R/W	These bits select the data transfer factor (activation source).
1	DTF1	0	R/W	0000: —
0	DTF0	0	R/W	0001: Activated by A/D conversion end interrupt
				0010: —
				0011: —
				0100: Activated by SCI channel 0 transmission complete interrupt
				0101: Activated by SCI channel 0 reception complete interrupt
				0110: —
				0111: —
				1000: Activated by TPU channel 0 compare match/input capture A interrupt
				1001: Activated by TPU channel 1 compare match/input capture A interrupt
				1010: Activated by TPU channel 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt
				1011: —
				1100: —
				1101: —
				1110: —
				1111: —

The same factor can be selected for more than one channel. In this case, activation starts with the highest-priority channel according to the relative channel priorities. For relative channel priorities, see section 7.4.10, DMAC Multi-Channel Operation.

- Full Address Mode (DMACRA)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
15	DTSZ	0	R/W	Data Transfer Size Selects the size of data to be transferred at one time. 0: Byte-size transfer 1: Word-size transfer
14	SAID	0	R/W	Source Address Increment/Decrement
13	SAIDE	0	R/W	Source Address Increment/Decrement Enable These bits specify whether source address register MARA is to be incremented, decremented, or left unchanged, when data transfer is performed. 00: MARA is fixed 01: MARA is incremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MARA is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARA is incremented by 2 after a transfer 10: MARA is fixed 11: MARA is decremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MARA is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARA is decremented by 2 after a transfer
12	BLKDIR	0	R/W	Block Direction
11	BLKE	0	R/W	Block Enable These bits specify whether normal mode or block transfer mode is to be used. If block transfer mode is specified, the BLKDIR bit specifies whether the source side or the destination side is to be the block area. 00: Transfer in normal mode 01: Transfer in block transfer mode, destination side is block area 10: Transfer in normal mode 11: Transfer in block transfer mode, source side is block area For operation in normal mode and block transfer mode, see section 7.4, Operation.
10 to 8	—	0	R/W	Reserved These bits can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.

- Full Address Mode (DMACRB)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.
6	DAID	0	R/W	Destination Address Increment/Decrement
5	DAIDE	0	R/W	Destination Address Increment/Decrement Enable These bits specify whether destination address register MARB is to be incremented, decremented, or left unchanged, when data transfer is performed. 00: MARB is fixed 01: MARB is incremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MARB is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARB is incremented by 2 after a transfer 10: MARB is fixed 11: MARB is decremented after a data transfer • When DTSZ = 0, MARB is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARB is decremented by 2 after a transfer
4	—	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	DTF3	0	R/W	Data Transfer Factor
2	DTF2	0	R/W	These bits select the data transfer factor (activation source).
1	DTF1	0	R/W	In normal mode:
0	DTF0	0	R/W	0000: — 0001: — 0010: — 0011: Activated by $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal's low level input from USB (USB request) 010*: — 0110: Auto-request (cycle steal) 0111: Auto-request (burst) 1***: — In block transfer mode: 0000: — 0001: Activated by A/D conversion end interrupt 0010: — 0011: Activated by $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal's low level input from USB (USB request) 0100: Activated by SCI channel 0 transmission complete interrupt 0101: Activated by SCI channel 0 reception complete interrupt 0110: — 0111: — 1000: Activated by TPU channel 0 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1001: Activated by TPU channel 1 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1010: Activated by TPU channel 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1011: — 11**: — The same factor can be selected for more than one channel. In this case, activation starts with the highest-priority channel according to the relative channel priorities. For relative channel priorities, see section 7.4.10, DMAC Multi-Channel Operation. Note: *: Don't care

7.3.5 DMA Band Control Register (DMABCR)

DMABCR controls the operation of each DMAC channel.

- Short Address Mode

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
15	FAE1	0	R/W	Full Address Enable 1 Specifies whether channel 1 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode. 0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode In short address mode, channels 1A and 1B are used as independent channels.
14	FAE0	0	R/W	Full Address Enable 0 Specifies whether channel 0 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode. 0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode In short address mode, channels 0A and 0B are used as independent channels.
13	—	—	R/W	Reserved This bit is invalid in full address mode.
12	—	—	R/W	Reserved This bit is invalid in full address mode.
11	DTA1B	0	R/W	Data Transfer Acknowledge These bits enable or disable clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is cleared automatically by DMA transfer. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting does not issue an interrupt request to the CPU. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is not cleared when a transfer is performed, and can issue an interrupt request to the CPU in parallel. In this case, the interrupt source should be cleared by the CPU. When DTE = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting issues an interrupt request to the CPU regardless of the DTA bit setting. 0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled 1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled
10	DTA1A	0	R/W	
9	DTA0B	0	R/W	
8	DTA0A	0	R/W	

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	DTE1B	0	R/W	Data Transfer Enable
6	DTE1A	0	R/W	When DTE = 0, data transfer is disabled and the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting is ignored. If the activation source is an internal interrupt, an interrupt request is issued to the CPU. If the DTIE bit is set to 1when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU. The conditions for the DTE bit being cleared to 0 are as follows: • When initialization is performed • When the specified number of transfers have been completed in a transfer mode other than repeat mode • When 0 is written to the DTE bit to forcibly abort the transfer, or for a similar reason When DTE = 1, data transfer is enabled and the DMAC waits for a request by the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When a request is issued by the activation source, DMA transfer is executed. The condition for the DTE bit being set to 1 is as follows: • When 1 is written to the DTE bit after the DTE bit is read as 0 0: Data transfer disabled 1: Data transfer enabled
5	DTE0B	0	R/W	
4	DTE0A	0	R/W	
3	DTIE1B	0	R/W	Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable
2	DTIE1A	0	R/W	These bits enable or disable an interrupt to the CPU when transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU. A transfer end interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIE bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the transfer counter and address register again, and then setting the DTE bit to 1. 0: Transfer end interrupt disabled 1: Transfer end interrupt enabled
1	DTIE0B	0	R/W	
0	DTIE0A	0	R/W	

- Full Address Mode

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
15	FAE1	0	R/W	Full Address Enable 1 Specifies whether channel 1 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode. In full address mode, channels 1A and 1B are used together as a single channel. 0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode
14	FAE0	0	R/W	Full Address Enable 0 Specifies whether channel 0 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode. In full address mode, channels 0A and 0B are used together as a single channel. 0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode
13,12	—	All 0	R/W	Reserved These bits can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
11	DTA1	0	R/W	Data Transfer Acknowledge Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is cleared automatically by DMA transfer. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting does not issue an interrupt request to the CPU. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is not cleared when a transfer is performed, and can issue an interrupt request to the CPU in parallel. In this case, the interrupt source should be cleared by the CPU transfer. When DTE = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting issues an interrupt request to the CPU regardless of the DTA bit setting. The state of the DTME bit does not affect the above operations. Data transfer acknowledge 1: Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the channel 1 data transfer factor setting. 0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled 1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled
10	–	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.
9	DTA0	0	R/W	Data Transfer Acknowledge 0 Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the channel 0 data transfer factor setting. 0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled 1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled
8	–	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	DTME1	0	R/W	Data Transfer Master Enable Together with the DTE bit, this bit controls enabling or disabling of data transfer on the relevant channel. When both the DTME bit and the DTE bit are set to 1, transfer is enabled for the channel. If the relevant channel is in the middle of a burst mode transfer when an NMI interrupt is generated, the DTME bit is cleared, the transfer is interrupted, and bus mastership passes to the CPU. When the DTME bit is subsequently set to 1 again, the interrupted transfer is resumed. In block transfer mode, however, the DTME bit is not cleared by an NMI interrupt, and transfer is not interrupted. The conditions for the DTME bit being cleared to 0 are as follows • When initialization is performed • When NMI is input in burst mode • When 0 is written to the DTME bit The condition for DTME being set to 1 is as follows: • When 1 is written to DTME after DTME is read as 0 Data Transfer Master Enable 1: Enables or disables data transfer on channel 1 0: Data transfer disabled. In burst mode, cleared to 0 by an NMI interrupt 1: Data transfer enabled

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
6	DTE1	0	R/W	Data Transfer Enable When DTE = 0, data transfer is disabled and the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting is ignored. If the activation source is an internal interrupt, an interrupt request is issued to the CPU. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU. The conditions for the DTE bit being cleared to 0 are as follows: • When initialization is performed • When the specified number of transfers have been completed • When 0 is written to the DTE bit to forcibly abort the transfer, or for a similar reason When DTE = 1 and DTME = 1, data transfer is enabled and the DMAC waits for a request by the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When a request is issued by the activation source, DMA transfer is executed. The condition for the DTE bit being set to 1 is as follows: • When 1 is written to the DTE bit after the DTE bit is read as 0 Data Transfer Enable 1: Enables or disables data transfer on channel 1. 0: Data transfer disabled 1: Data transfer enabled
5	DTME0	0	R/W	Data Transfer Master Enable 0 Enables or disables data transfer on channel 0. 0: Data transfer disabled. In burst mode, cleared to 0 by an NMI interrupt 1: Data transfer enabled
4	DTE0	0	R/W	Data Transfer Enable 0 Enables or disables data transfer on channel 0. 0: Data transfer disabled 1: Data transfer enabled

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	DTIE1B	0	R/W	Data Transfer Interrupt Enable B: Enables or disables an interrupt to the CPU when transfer is interrupted. If the DTIEB bit is set to 1 when DTME = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating a break in the transfer, and issues a transfer break interrupt request to the CPU. A transfer break interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIEB bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the DTME bit to 1. Data Transfer Interrupt Enable 1B: Enables or disables the channel 1 transfer break interrupt. 0: Transfer break interrupt disabled 1: Transfer break interrupt enabled
2	DTIE1A	0	R/W	Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable A: Enables or disables an interrupt to the CPU when transfer ends. If the DTIEA bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU. A transfer end interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIEA bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the DTE bit to 1. Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable 1A: Enables or disables the channel 1 transfer end interrupt. 0: Transfer end interrupt disabled 1: Transfer end interrupt enabled
1	DTIE0B	0	R/W	Data Transfer Interrupt Enable 0B Enables or disables the channel 0 transfer break interrupt. 0: Transfer break interrupt disabled 1: Transfer break interrupt enabled
0	DTIE0A	0	R/W	Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable 0A Enables or disables the channel 0 transfer end interrupt. 0: Transfer end interrupt disabled 1: Transfer end interrupt enabled

7.4 Operation

7.4.1 Transfer Modes

Table 7.2 lists the DMAC modes.

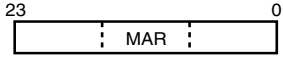
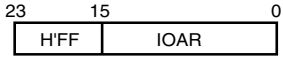
Table 7.2 DMAC Transfer Modes

Transfer Mode			Transfer Source	Remarks
Short address mode	Dual address mode	(1) Sequential mode (2) Idle mode (3) Repeat Mode	• TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt • SCI transmission complete interrupt • SCI reception complete interrupt • A/D conversion end interrupt	• Up to 4 channels can operate independently
Full address mode		(4) Normal mode	• USB request • Auto-request	• Max. 2-channel operation, combining channels A and B • With auto-request, burst mode transfer or cycle steal transfer can be selected
		(5) Block transfer mode	• TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt • SCI transmission complete interrupt • SCI reception complete interrupt • A/D conversion end interrupt • USB request	

7.4.2 Sequential Mode

Sequential mode can be specified by clearing the RPE bit in DMACR to 0. In sequential mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.3 summarizes register functions in sequential mode.

Table 7.3 Register Functions in Sequential Mode

	Function			
Register	**DTDIR = 0**	**DTDIR = 1**	**Initial Setting**	**Operation**
	Source address register	Destination address register	Start address of transfer destination or transfer source	Incremented/decremented every transfer
	Destination address register	Source address register	Start address of transfer source or transfer destination	Fixed
	Transfer counter		Number of transfers	Decremented every transfer, transfer ends when cunt reaches H'0000

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. Figure 7.2 illustrates operation in sequential mode.

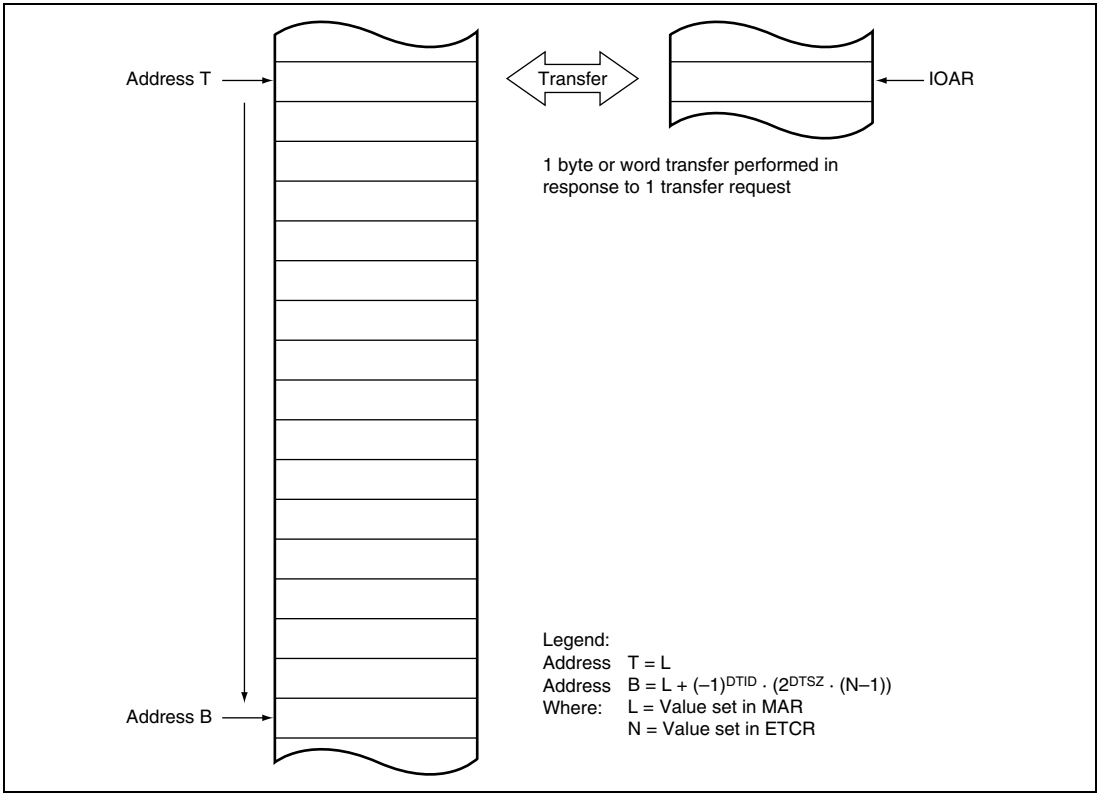
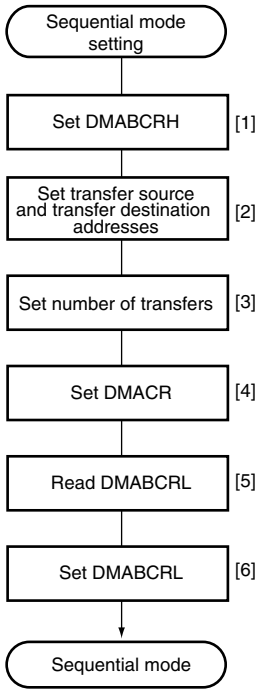


Figure 7.2 Operation in Sequential Mode

The number of transfers is specified as 16 bits in ETCR. ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'0000, the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCR, is 65,536. Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. Figure 7.3 shows an example of the setting procedure for sequential mode.



[1] Set each bit in DMABCRH.
- Clear the FAE bit to 0 to select short address mode.
- Specify enabling or disabling of internal interrupt clearing with the DTA bit.

[2] Set the transfer source address and transfer destination address in MAR and IOAR.

[3] Set the number of transfers in ETCR.

[4] Set each bit in DMACR.
- Set the transfer data size with the DTSZ bit.
- Specify whether MAR is to be incremented or decremented with the DTID bit.
- Clear the RPE bit to 0 to select sequential mode.
- Specify the transfer direction with the DTDIR bit.
- Select the activation source with bits DTF3 to DTF0.

[5] Read the DTE bit in DMABCRL as 0.

[6] Set each bit in DMABCRL.
- Specify enabling or disabling of transfer andinterrupts with the DTIE bit.
- Set the DTE bit to 1 to enable transfer.

Figure 7.3 Example of Sequential Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.3 Idle Mode

Idle mode can be specified by setting the RPE bit and DTIE bit in DMACR to 1. In idle mode, one byte or word is transferred in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.4 summarizes register functions in idle mode.

Table 7.4 Register Functions in Idle Mode

	Function			
Register	**DTDIR = 0**	**DTDIR = 1**	**Initial Setting**	**Operation**
23 MAR 0	Source address register	Destination address register	Start address of transfer destination or transfer source	Fixed
23 H'FF 15 IOAR 0	Destination address register	Source address register	Start address of transfer source or transfer destination	Fixed
15 ETCR 0	Transfer counter		Number of transfers	Decremented every transfer, transfer ends when cunt reaches H'0000

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is neither incremented nor decremented each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. Figure 7.4 illustrates operation in idle mode.

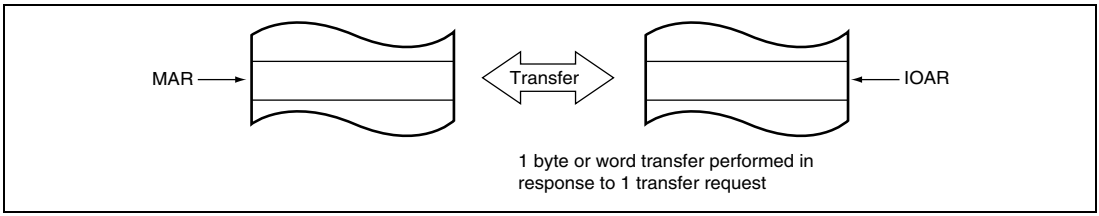


Figure 7.4 Operation in Idle Mode

The number of transfers is specified as 16 bits in ETCR. ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'0000, the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCR, is 65,536.

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. Figure 7.5 shows an example of the setting procedure for idle mode.

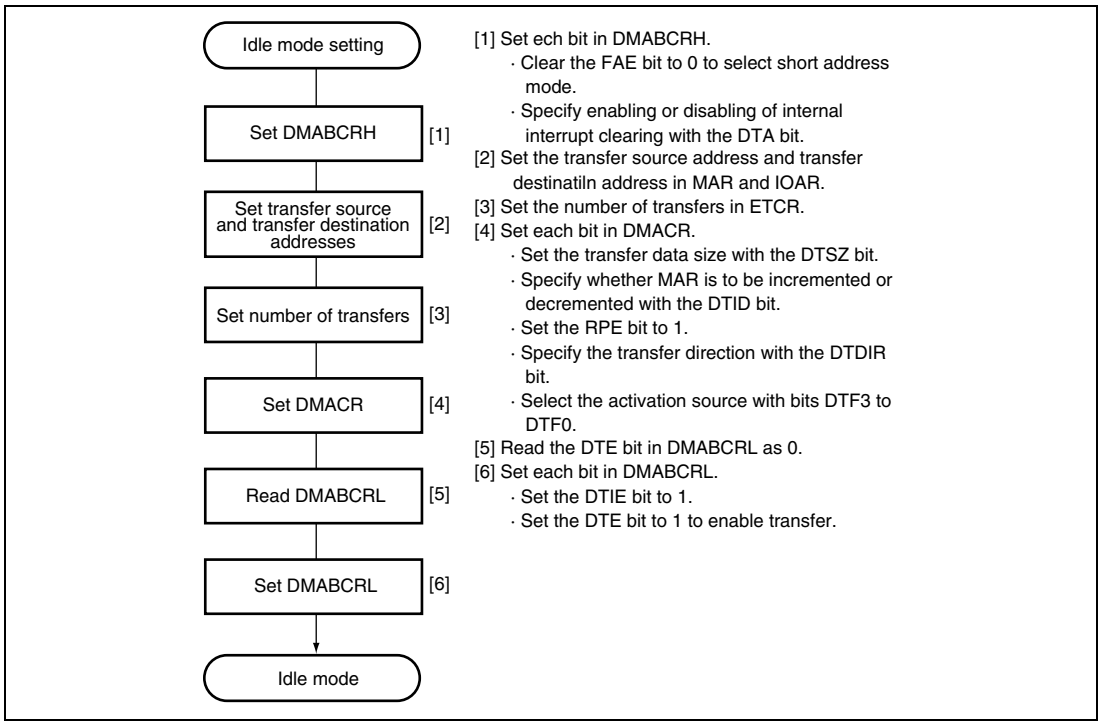
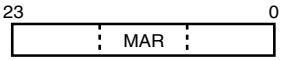
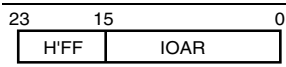
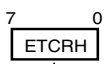
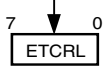


Figure 7.5 Example of Idle Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.4 Repeat Mode

Repeat mode can be specified by setting the RPE bit in DMACR to 1, and clearing the DTIE bit to 0. In repeat mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. On completion of the specified number of transfers, MAR and ETCRL are automatically restored to their original settings and operation continues. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.5 summarizes register functions in repeat mode.

Table 7.5 Register Functions in Repeat Mode

	Function			
Register	**DTDIR = 0**	**DTDIR = 1**	**Initial Setting**	**Operation**
	Source address register	Destination address register	Start address of transfer destination or transfer source	Incremented/decremented every transfer. Initial setting is restored when value reaches H'0000
	Destination address register	Source address register	Start address of transfer source or transfer destination	Fixed
	Holds number of transfers		Number of transfers	Fixed
	Transfer counter		Number of transfers	Decremented every transfer. Loaded with ETCRH value when count reaches H'00

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. The number of transfers is specified as 8 bits by ETCRH and ETCRL. The maximum number of transfers, when H'00 is set in both ETCRH and ETCRL, is 256.

In repeat mode, ETCRL functions as the transfer counter, and ETCRH is used to hold the number of transfers. ETCRL is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'00, it is loaded with the value in ETCRH. At the same time, the value set in MAR is restored in accordance with the values of the DTSZ and DTID bits in DMACR. The MAR restoration operation is as shown below.

$$MAR = MAR - (-1)^{DTID} \cdot 2^{DTSZ} \cdot ETCRH$$

The same value should be set in ETCRH and ETCRL.

In repeat mode, operation continues until the DTE bit is cleared. To end the transfer operation, therefore, you should clear the DTE bit to 0. A transfer end interrupt request is not sent to the CPU. By setting the DTE bit to 1 again after it has been cleared, the operation can be restarted from the transfer after that terminated when the DTE bit was cleared. Figure 7.6 illustrates operation in repeat mode.

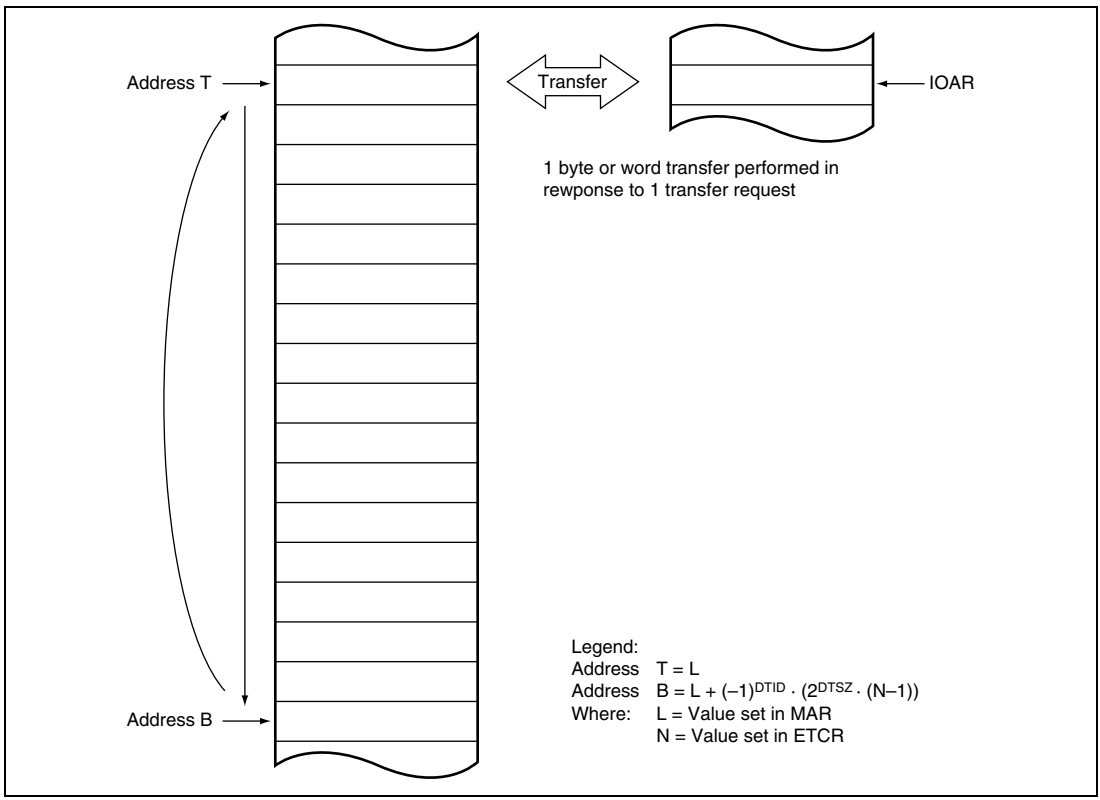


Figure 7.6 Operation in Repeat mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. Figure 7.7 shows an example of the setting procedure for repeat mode.

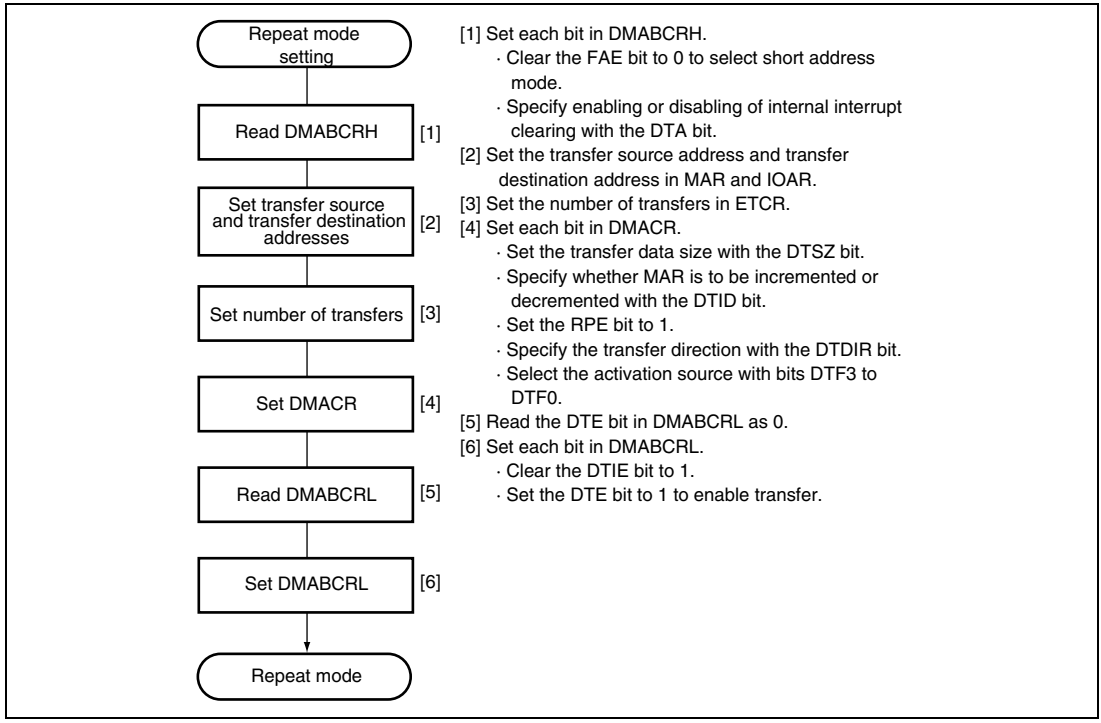


Figure 7.7 Example of Repeat Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.5 Normal Mode

In normal mode, transfer is performed with channels A and B used in combination. Normal mode can be specified by setting the FAE bit in DMABCR to 1 and clearing the BLKE bit in DMACRA to 0. In normal mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCRA. The transfer source is specified by MARA, and the transfer destination by MARB. Table 7.6 summarizes register functions in normal mode.

Table 7.6 Register Functions in Normal Mode

Register	Function	Initial Setting	Operation
	Source address register	Start address of transfer source	Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed
	Destination address register	Start address of transfer destination	Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed
	Transfer counter	Number of transfers	Decremented every transfer; transfer ends when count reaches H'0000

MARA and MARB specify the start addresses of the transfer source and transfer destination, respectively, as 24 bits. MAR can be incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred, or can be fixed. Incrementing, decrementing, or holding a fixed value can be set separately for MARA and MARB.

The number of transfers is specified by ETCRA as 16 bits. ETCRA is decremented each time a transfer is performed, and when its value reaches H'0000 the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCRA, is 65,536.

Figure 7.8 illustrates operation in normal mode.

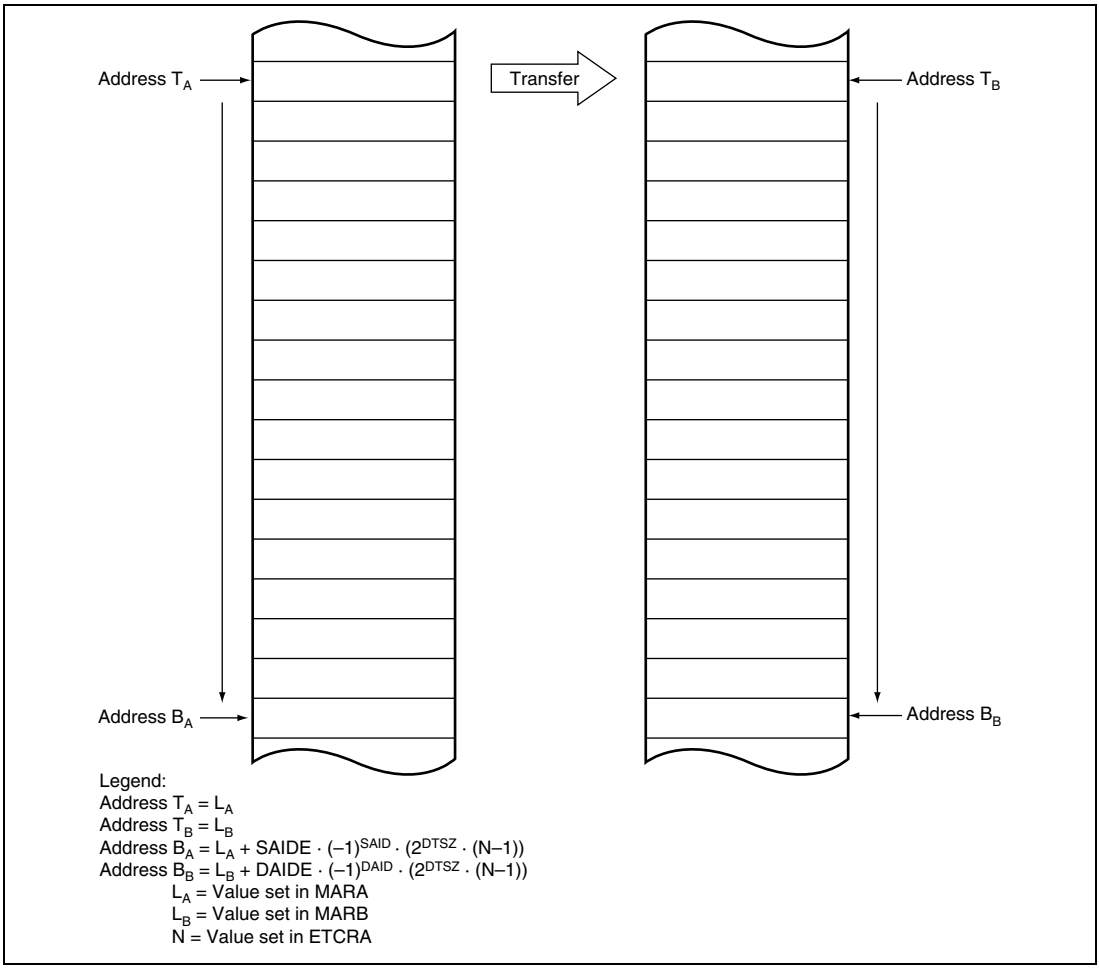


Figure 7.8 Operation in Normal Mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) are external requests and auto-requests. With auto-request, the DMAC is only activated by register setting, and the specified number of transfers are performed automatically. With auto-request, cycle steal mode or burst mode can be selected. In cycle steal mode, the bus is released to another bus master each time a transfer is performed. In burst mode, the bus is held continuously until transfer ends. For setting details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Controller Register (DMACR).

Figure 7.9 shows an example of the setting procedure for normal mode.

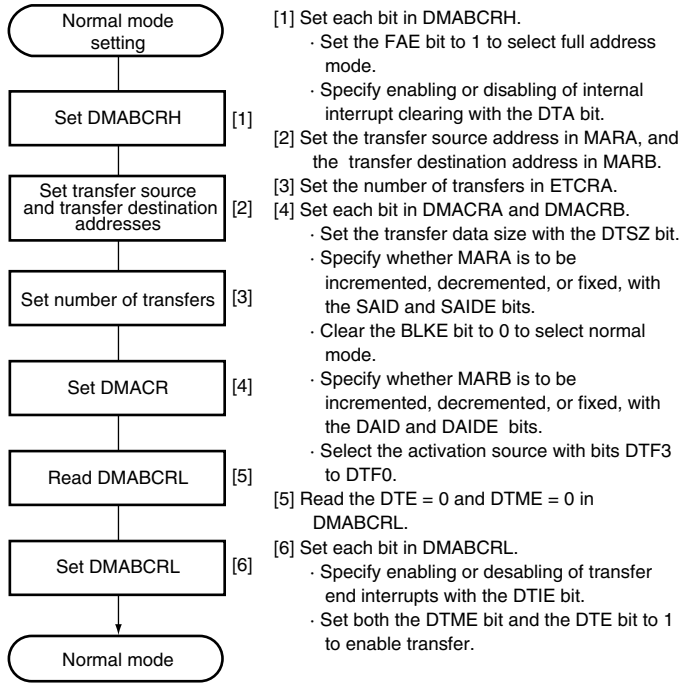
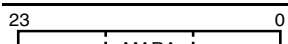
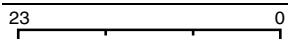
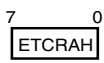
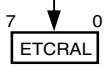
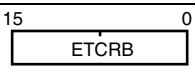


Figure 7.9 Example of Normal Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.6 Block Transfer Mode

In block transfer mode, transfer is performed with channels A and B used in combination. Block transfer mode can be specified by setting the FAE bit in DMABCR and the BLKE bit in DMACRA to 1. In block transfer mode, a transfer of the specified block size is carried out in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the specified number of times. The transfer source is specified by MARA, and the transfer destination by MARB. Either the transfer source or the transfer destination can be selected as a block area (an area composed of a number of bytes or words). Table 7.7 summarizes register functions in block transfer mode.

Table 7.7 Register Functions in Block Transfer Mode

Register	Function	Initial Setting	Operation
	Source address register	Start address of transfer source	Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed
	Description address register	Start address of transfer destination	Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed
	Holds block size	Block size	Fixed
	Block size counter	Block size	decremented every transfer; ETCRH value copied when count reaches H'00
	Block transfer counter	Number of block transfers	Decremented every block transfer; transfer ends when count reaches H'0000

MARA and MARB specify the start addresses of the transfer source and transfer destination, respectively, as 24 bits. MAR can be incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred, or can be fixed. Incrementing, decrementing, or holding a fixed value can be set separately for MARA and MARB. Whether a block is to be designated for MARA or for MARB is specified by the BLKDIR bit in DMACRA.

To specify the number of transfers, if M is the size of one block (where M = 1 to 256) and N transfers are to be performed (where N = 1 to 65,536), M is set in both ETCRAH and ETCRAL, and N in ETCRB.

Figure 7.10 illustrates operation in block transfer mode when MARB is designated as a block area.

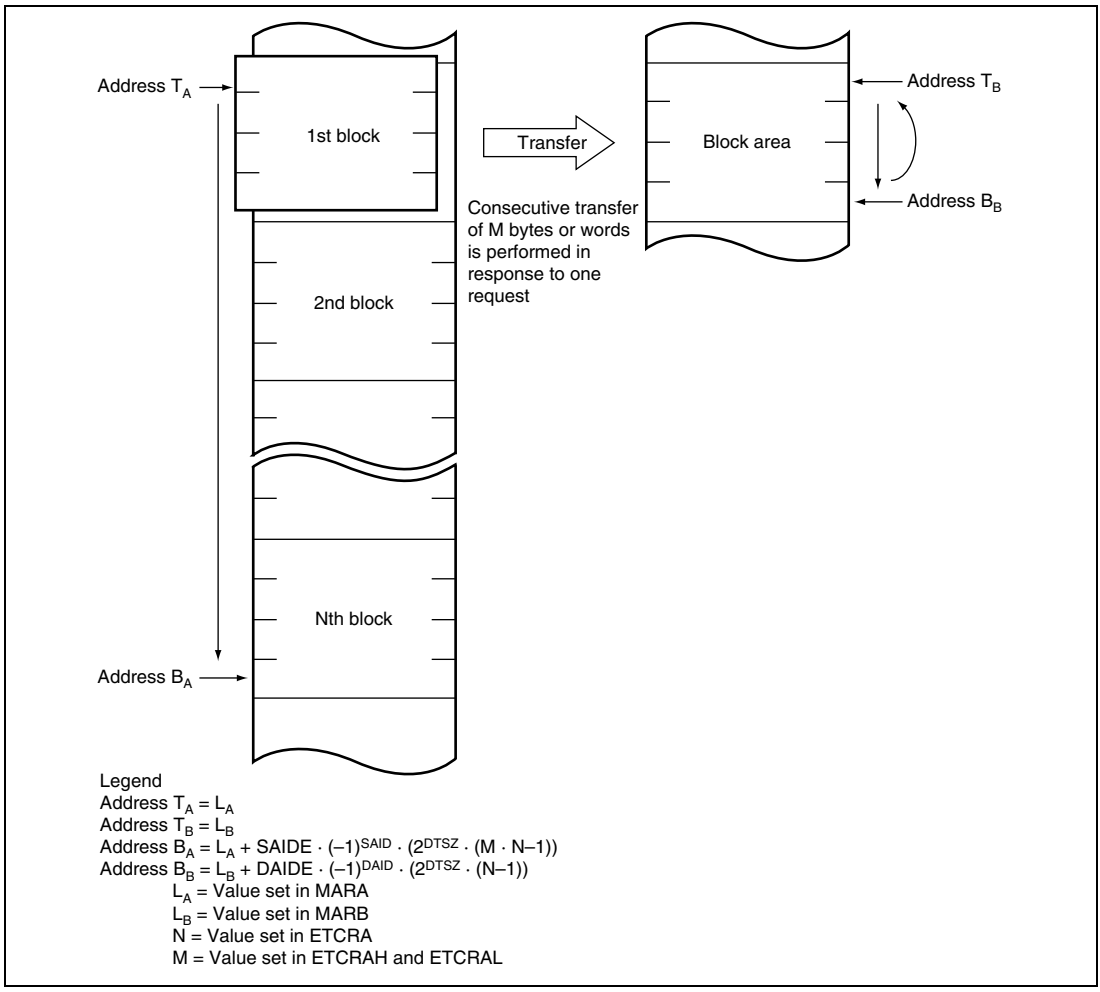


Figure 7.10 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 0)

Figure 7.11 illustrates operation in block transfer mode when MARA is designated as a block area.

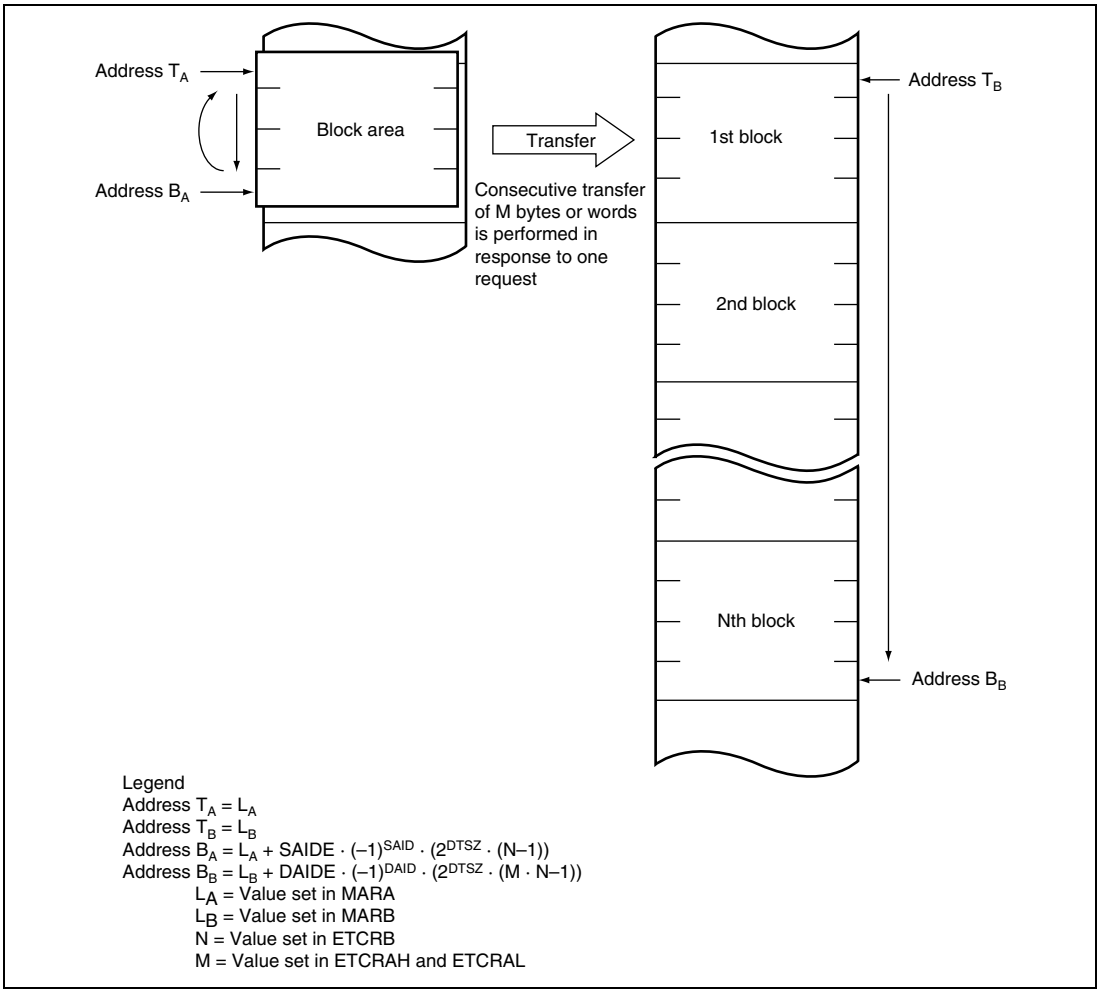


Figure 7.11 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 1)

ETCRAL is decremented by 1 each time a byte or word transfer is performed. In response to a single transfer request, burst transfer is performed until the value in ETCRAL reaches H'00. ETCRAL is then loaded with the value in ETCRAH. At this time, the value in the MAR register for which a block designation has been given by the BLKDIR bit in DMACRA is restored in accordance with the DTSZ, SAID/DAID, and SAIDE/DAIDE bits in DMACR.

ETCRB is decremented by 1 every block transfer, and when the count reaches H'0000 the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this point, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU. Figure 7.12 shows the operation flow in block transfer mode.

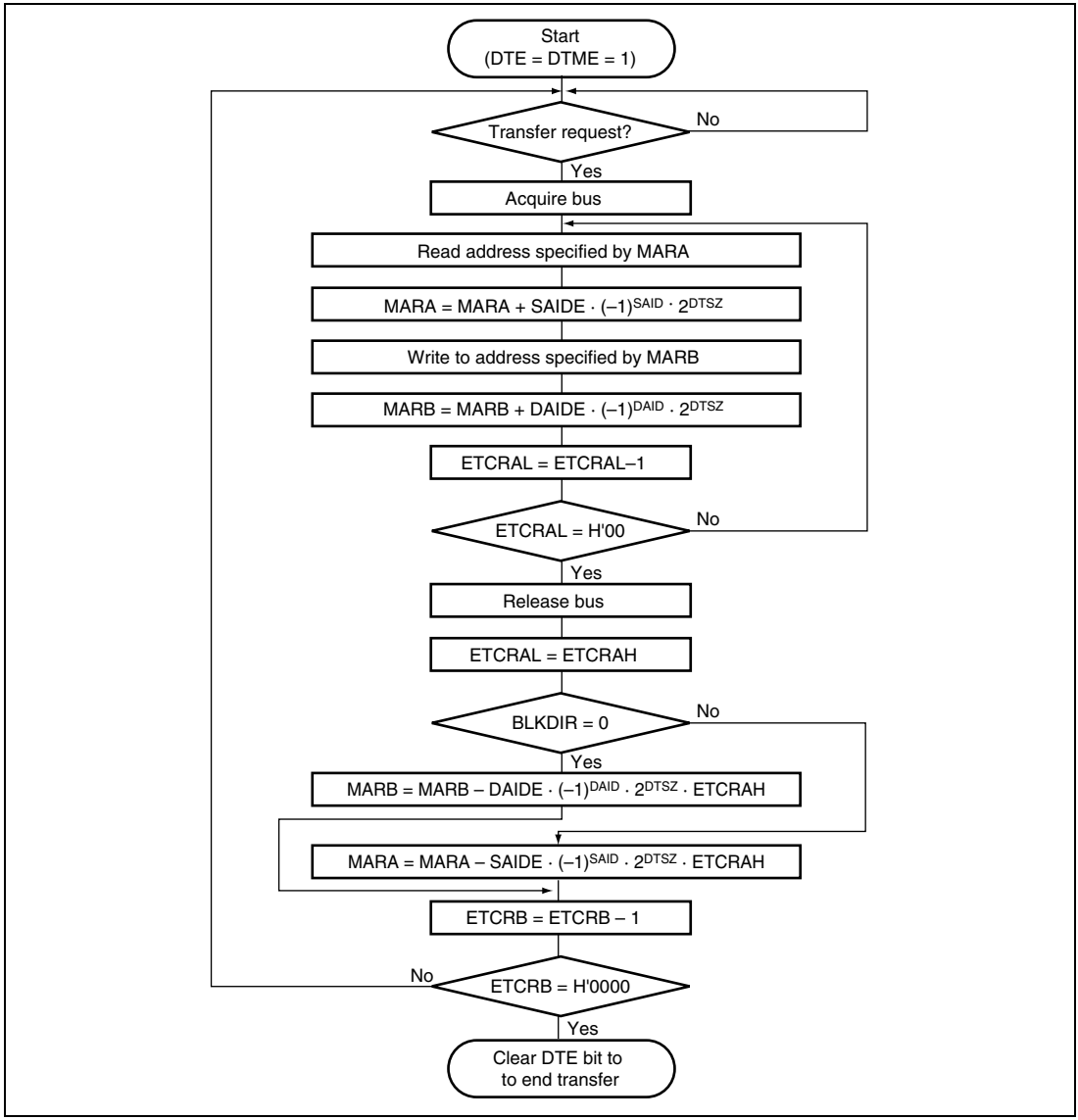
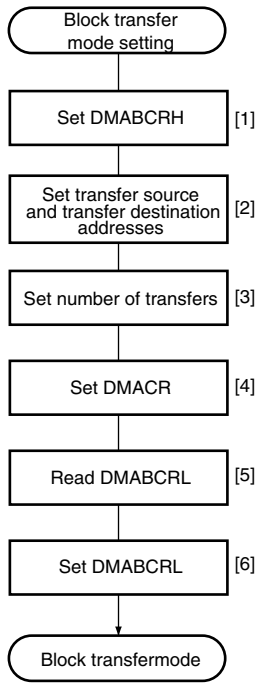


Figure 7.12 Operation Flow in Block Transfer Mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). Figure 7.13 shows an example of the setting procedure for block transfer mode.



[1] Set each bit in DMABCRH.
- Set the FAE bit to 1 to select full address mode.
- Specify enabling or disabling of internal interrupt clearing with the DTA bit.

[2] Set the transfer source address in MARA, and the transfer destination address in MARB.

[3] Set the transfer source address in ETCRAH and ETCRAL. Set the number of transfers in ETCRB.

[4] Set each bit in DMACRA and DMACRB.
- Set the transfer data size with the DTSZ bit.
- Specify whether MARA is to be incremented, decremented, or fixed, with the SAID and SAIDE bits.
- Set the BLKE bit to 1 to select block transfer mode.
- Specify whether the transfer source or the transfer destination is a block area with the BLKDIR bit.
- Select the activation source with bits DTF3 to DTF0.

[5] Read the DTE = 0 and DTME = 0 in DMABCRL.

[6] Set each bit in DMABCRL.
- Specify enabling or desabling of transfer end interrupts to the CPU with the DTIE bit.

Figure 7.13 Example of Block Transfer Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.7 DMAC Activation Sources

DMAC activation sources consist of internal interrupts, external requests, and auto-requests. The activation sources that can be specified depend on the transfer mode, as shown in table 7.8.

Table 7.8 DMAC Activation Sources

Activation Source		Short Address Mode	Full Address Mode	
			Normal Mode	Block Transfer Mode
Internal Interrupt	ADI	O	x	O
	TXI0	O	x	O
	RXI0	O	x	O
	TGI0A	O	x	O
	TGI1A	O	x	O
	TGI2A	O	x	O
USB request	Low level input of the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal	x	O	O
Auto-request		x	O	x

Legend
O: Can be specified
X: Cannot be specified

Activation by Internal Interrupt: An interrupt request selected as a DMAC activation source can be sent simultaneously to the CPU. For details, see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

With activation by an internal interrupt, the DMAC accepts the request independently of the interrupt controller. Consequently, interrupt controller priority settings are not accepted.

If the DMAC is activated by an interrupt request that is not used as a CPU interrupt source (DTA = 1), the interrupt source flag is cleared automatically by the DMA transfer. With ADI, TXI, and RXI interrupts, however, the interrupt source flag is not cleared unless the prescribed register is accessed in a DMA transfer. If the same interrupt is used as an activation source for more than one channel, the interrupt request flag is cleared when the highest-priority channel is activated first. Transfer requests for other channels are held pending in the DMAC, and activation is carried out in order of priority.

When DTE = 0, such as after completion of a transfer, a request from the selected activation source is not sent to the DMAC, regardless of the DTA bit. In this case, the relevant interrupt request is sent to the CPU. In case of overlap with a CPU interrupt source (DTA = 0), the interrupt request flag is not cleared by the DMAC.

Activation by USB Request: The USB request ($\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal) is specified as a DMAC activation source. The USB request is generated by the level sense. In full-address normal mode, the USB request is carried out as follows.

While the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is kept high, the DMAC waits for the transfer request. While the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is kept low, the DMAC releases the bus each time a byte or word is transferred and the transfer is performed continuously. When the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven high during the transfer, the transfer is halted and the DMAC waits for the transfer request.

Activation by Auto-Request: Auto-request activation is performed by register setting only, and transfer continues to the end. With auto-request activation, cycle steal mode or burst mode can be selected.

In cycle steal mode, the DMAC releases the bus to another bus master each time a byte or word is transferred. DMA and CPU cycles usually alternate. In burst mode, the DMAC keeps possession of the bus until the end of the transfer, and transfer is performed continuously.

7.4.8 Basic DMAC Bus Cycles

An example of the basic DMAC bus cycle timing is shown in figure 7.14. In this example, word-size transfer is performed from 16-bit, 2-state access space to 8-bit, 3-state access space. When the bus is transferred from the CPU to the DMAC, a source address read and destination address write are performed. The bus is not released in response to another bus request, etc., between these read and write operations. As with CPU cycles, DMA cycles conform to the bus controller settings.

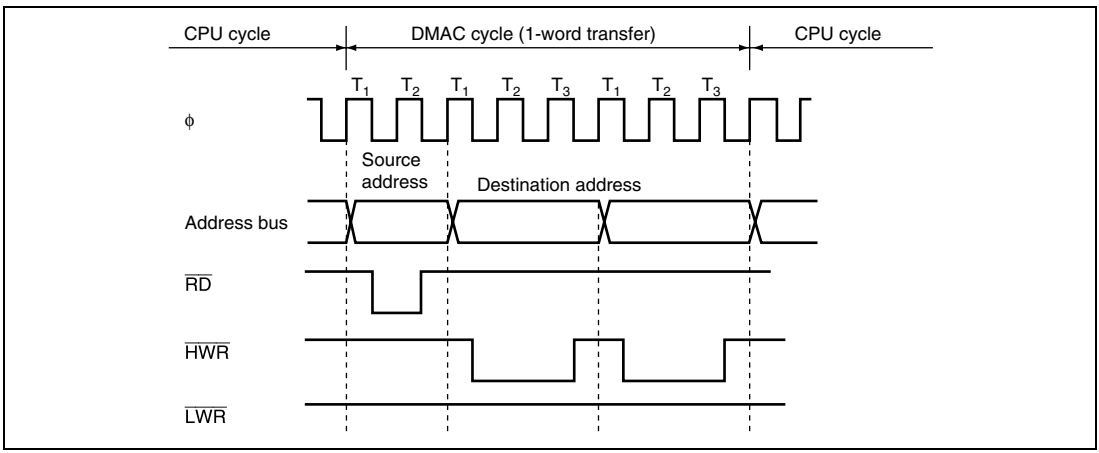


Figure 7.14 Example of DMA Transfer Bus Timing

The address is not output to the external address bus in an access to on-chip memory or an internal I/O register.

7.4.9 DMAC Bus Cycles (Dual Address Mode)

Short Address Mode: Figure 7.15 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output is enabled and byte-size short address mode transfer (sequential/idle/repeat mode) is performed from external 8-bit, 2-state access space to internal I/O space.

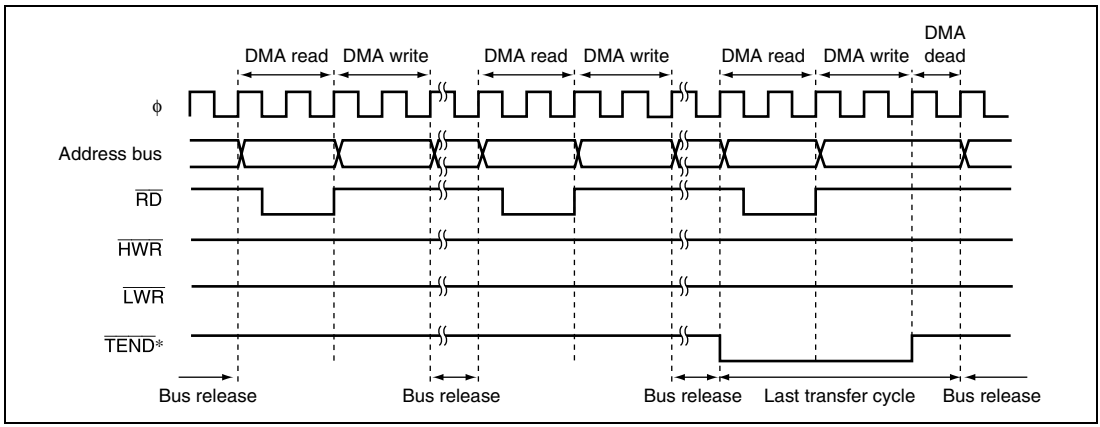


Figure 7.15 Example of Short Address Mode Transfer

A one-byte or one-word transfer is performed for one transfer request, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released one or more bus cycles are inserted by the CPU.

In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

In repeat mode, when $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output is enabled, $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output goes low in the transfer cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0.

Note: * This LSI does not support $\overline{\text{TEND}}$ output.

Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal Mode): Figure 7.16 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (cycle steal mode) is performed from external 16-bit, 2-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

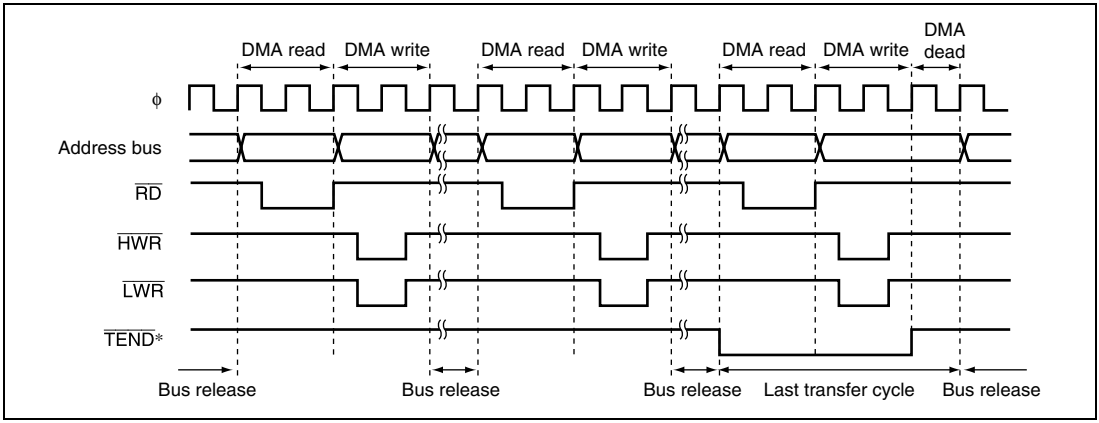


Figure 7.16 Example of Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal) Transfer

A one-byte or one-word transfer is performed, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released one bus cycle is inserted by the CPU.

In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

Full Address Mode (Burst Mode): Figure 7.17 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (burst mode) is performed from external 16- bit, 2-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

Note: * This LSI does not support $\overline{\text{TEND}}$ output.

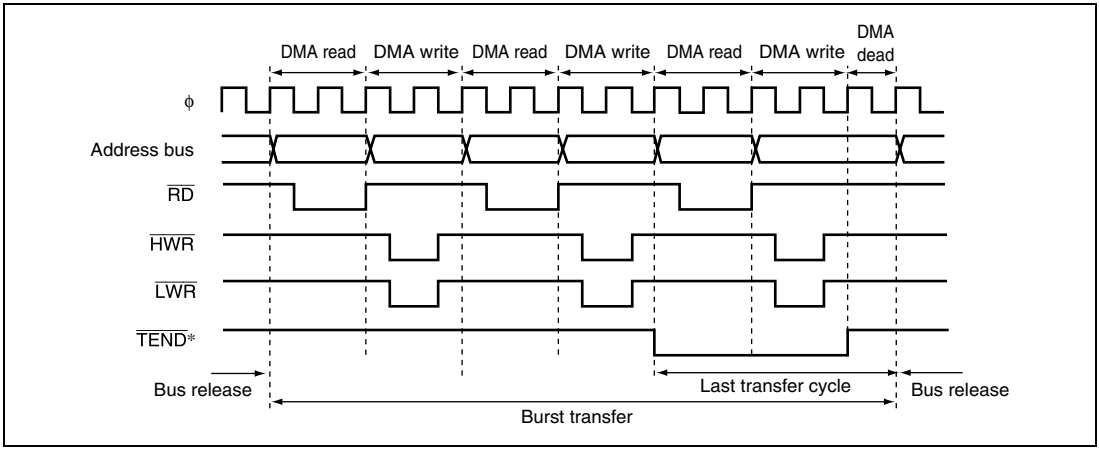


Figure 7.17 Example of Full Address Mode (Burst Mode) Transfer

In burst mode, one-byte or one-word transfers are executed consecutively until transfer ends. In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

If a request from another higher-priority channel is generated after burst transfer starts, that channel has to wait until the burst transfer ends.

If an NMI is generated while a channel designated for burst transfer is in the transfer enabled state, the DTME bit is cleared and the channel is placed in the transfer disabled state. If burst transfer has already been activated inside the DMAC, the bus is released on completion of a one-byte or one-word transfer within the burst transfer, and burst transfer is suspended. If the last transfer cycle of the burst transfer has already been activated inside the DMAC, execution continues to the end of the transfer even if the DTME bit is cleared.

Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode): Figure 7.18 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}$* output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (block transfer mode) is performed from internal 16-bit, 1-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

Note: * This LSI does not support $\overline{\text{TEND}}$ output.

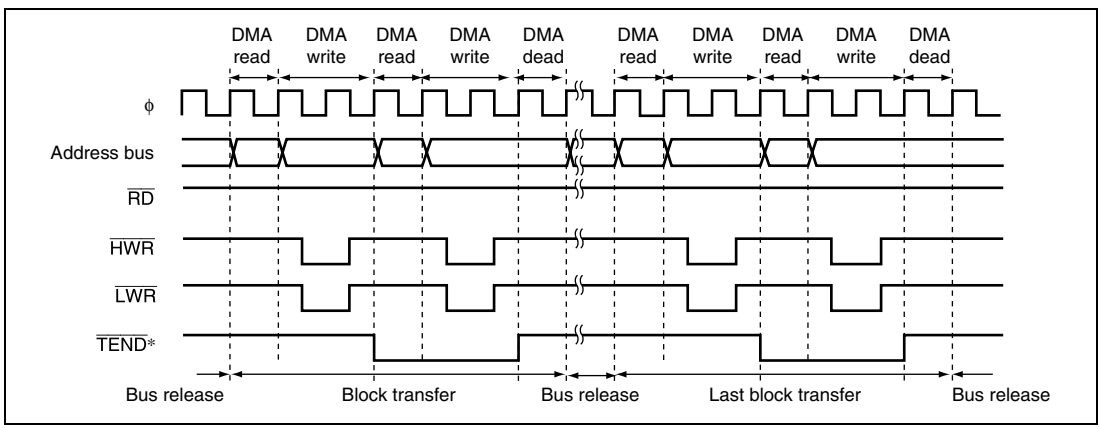


Figure 7.18 Example of Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode) Transfer

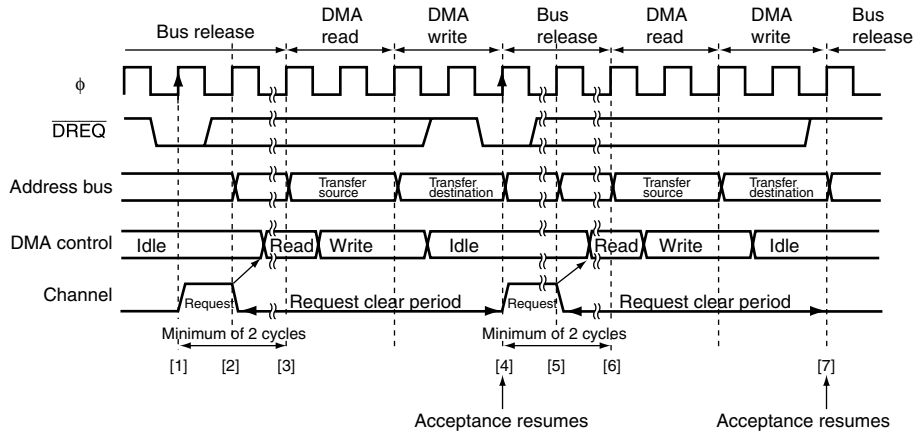
A one-block transfer is performed for one transfer request, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released, one or more bus cycles are inserted by the CPU.

In the transfer end cycle of each block (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

One block is transmitted without interruption. NMI generation does not affect block transfer operation.

$\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ Signal Level Activation Timing (Normal Mode): Set the DTA bit for the channel for which the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is selected to 1.

Figure 7.19 shows an example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ level activated normal mode transfer.



[1] Acceptance after transfer enabling; the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled on the rising edge of f, and the request is held.
[2] [5] The request is cleared at the next bus break, and activation is started in the DMAC.
[3] [6] Start of DMA cycle.
[4] [7] Acceptance is resumed after the write cycle is completed.
(As in [1], the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled on the rising edge of f, and the request is held.)

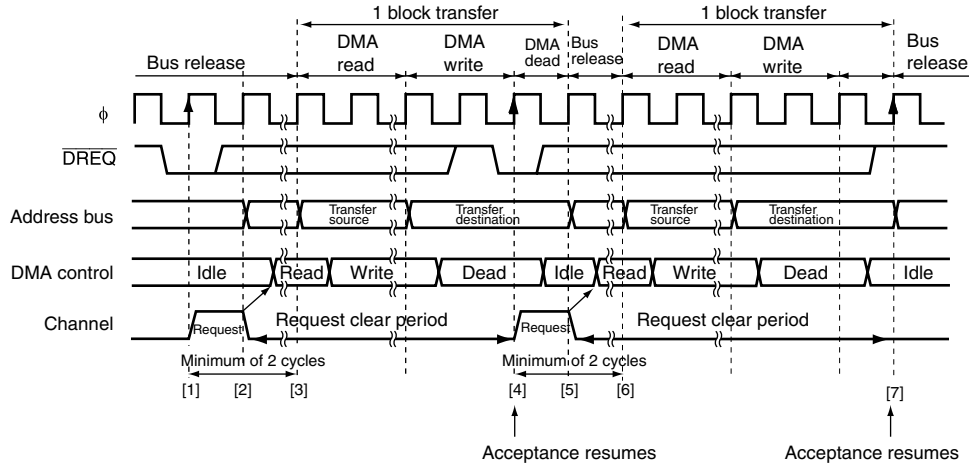
Figure 7.19 Example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ Level Activated Normal Mode Transfer

$\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal sampling is performed every cycle, with the rising edge of the next φ cycle after the end of the DMABCR write cycle for setting the transfer enabled state as the starting point.

When the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled while acceptance by means of the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is possible, the request is held in the DMAC. Then, when activation is initiated in the DMAC, the request is cleared. Acceptance resumes after the end of the write cycle, $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level sampling is performed again, and this operation is repeated until the transfer ends.

Note: The $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal of this chip is an internal signal of chip, so it is not output from the pin.

Figure 7.20 shows an example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ level activated block transfer mode transfer.



[1] Acceptance after transfer enabling; the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled on the rising edge of φ, and the request is held.

[2] [5] The request is cleared at the next bus break, and activation is started in the DMAC.

[3] [6] Start of DMA cycle.

[4] [7] Acceptance is resumed after the dead cycle is completed. (As in [1], the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled on the rising edge of φ, and the request is held.)

Figure 7.20 Example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ Level Activated Block Transfer Mode Transfer

$\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal sampling is performed every cycle, with the rising edge of the next φ cycle after the end of the DMABCR write cycle for setting the transfer enabled state as the starting point.

When the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled while acceptance by means of the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is possible, the request is held in the DMAC. Then, when activation is initiated in the DMAC, the request is cleared. Acceptance resumes after the end of the dead cycle, $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level sampling is performed again, and this operation is repeated until the transfer ends.

Note: The $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal of this chip is an internal signal of chip, so it is not output from the pin.

7.4.10 DMAC Multi-Channel Operation

The DMAC channel priority order is: channel 0 > channel 1, and channel A > channel B. Table 7.9 summarizes the priority order for DMAC channels.

Table 7.9 DMAC Channel Priority Order

Short Address Mode	Full Address Mode	Priority
Channel 0A	Channel 0	High
Channel 0B		↑
Channel 1A	Channel 1	
Channel 1B		Low

If transfer requests are issued simultaneously for more than one channel, or if a transfer request for another channel is issued during a transfer, when the bus is released the DMAC selects the highest-priority channel from among those issuing a request according to the priority order shown in table 7.14. During burst transfer, or when one block is being transferred in block transfer, the channel will not be changed until the end of the transfer. Figure 7.21 shows a transfer example in which transfer requests are issued simultaneously for channels 0A, 0B, and 1.

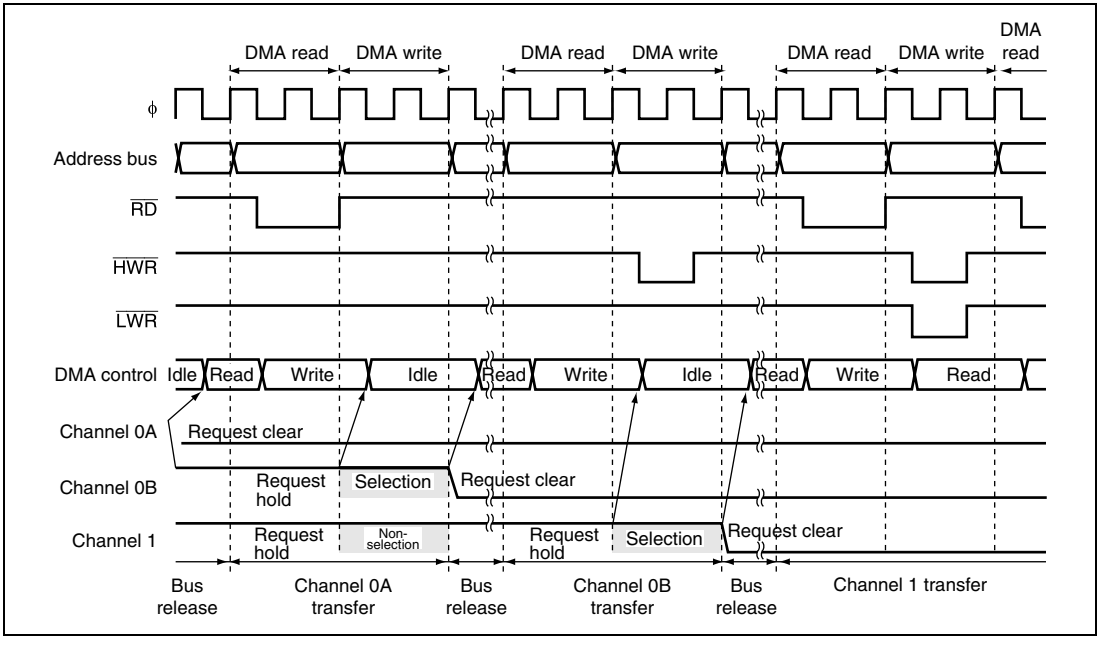


Figure 7.21 Example of Multi-Channel Transfer

7.4.11 Relation between the DMAC and External Bus Requests

There can be no break between a DMA cycle read and a DMA cycle write. This means that an external bus release cycle is not generated between the external read and external write in a DMA cycle.

In the case of successive read and write cycles, such as in burst transfer or block transfer, an external bus released state may be inserted after a write cycle.

When DMA cycle reads or writes are accesses to on-chip memory or internal I/O registers, these DMA cycles can be executed at the same time as refresh cycles or external bus release. However, simultaneous operation may not be possible when a write buffer is used.

7.4.12 NMI Interrupts and DMAC

When an NMI interrupt is requested, burst mode transfer in full address mode is interrupted. An NMI interrupt does not affect the operation of the DMAC in other modes.

In full address mode, transfer is enabled for a channel when both the DTE bit and the DTME bit are set to 1. With burst mode setting, the DTME bit is cleared when an NMI interrupt is requested.

If the DTME bit is cleared during burst mode transfer, the DMAC discontinues transfer on completion of the 1-byte or 1-word transfer in progress, then releases the bus, which passes to the CPU.

The channel on which transfer was interrupted can be restarted by setting the DTME bit to 1 again. Figure 7.22 shows the procedure for continuing transfer when it has been interrupted by an NMI interrupt on a channel designated for burst mode transfer.

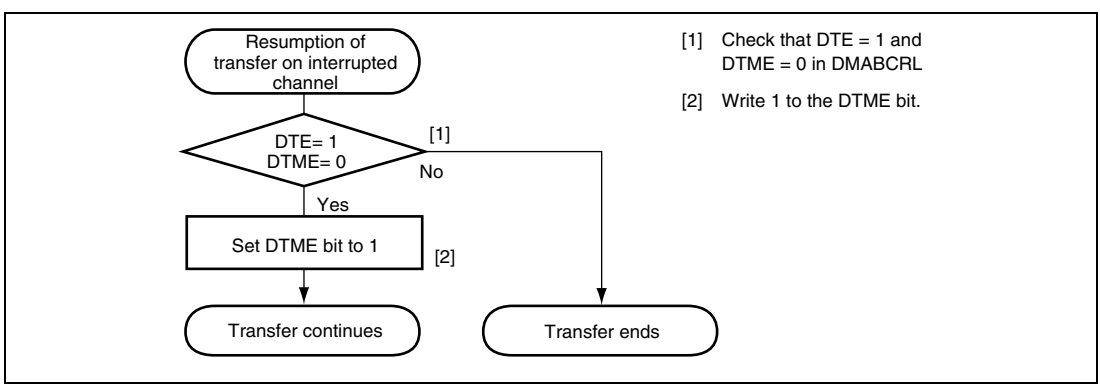


Figure 7.22 Example of Procedure for Continuing Transfer on Channel Interrupted by NMI Interrupt

7.4.13 Forced Termination of DMAC Operation

If the DTE bit for the channel currently operating is cleared to 0, the DMAC stops on completion of the 1-byte or 1-word transfer in progress. DMAC operation resumes when the DTE bit is set to 1 again. In full address mode, the same applies to the DTME bit. Figure 7.23 shows the procedure for forcibly terminating DMAC operation by software.

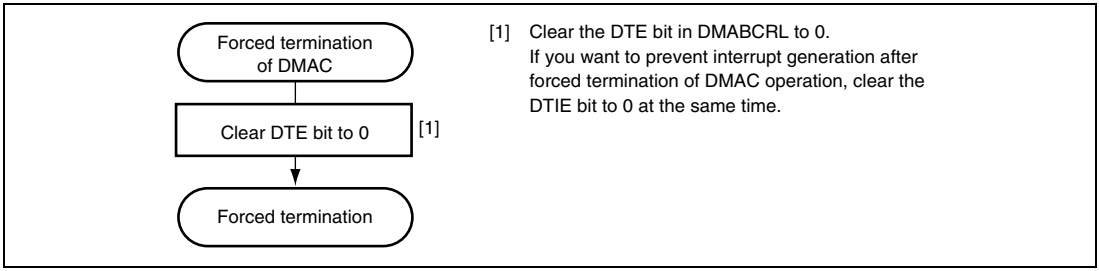


Figure 7.23 Example of Procedure for Forcibly Terminating DMAC Operation

7.4.14 Clearing Full Address Mode

Figure 7.24 shows the procedure for releasing and initializing a channel designated for full address mode. After full address mode has been cleared, the channel can be set to another transfer mode using the appropriate setting procedure.

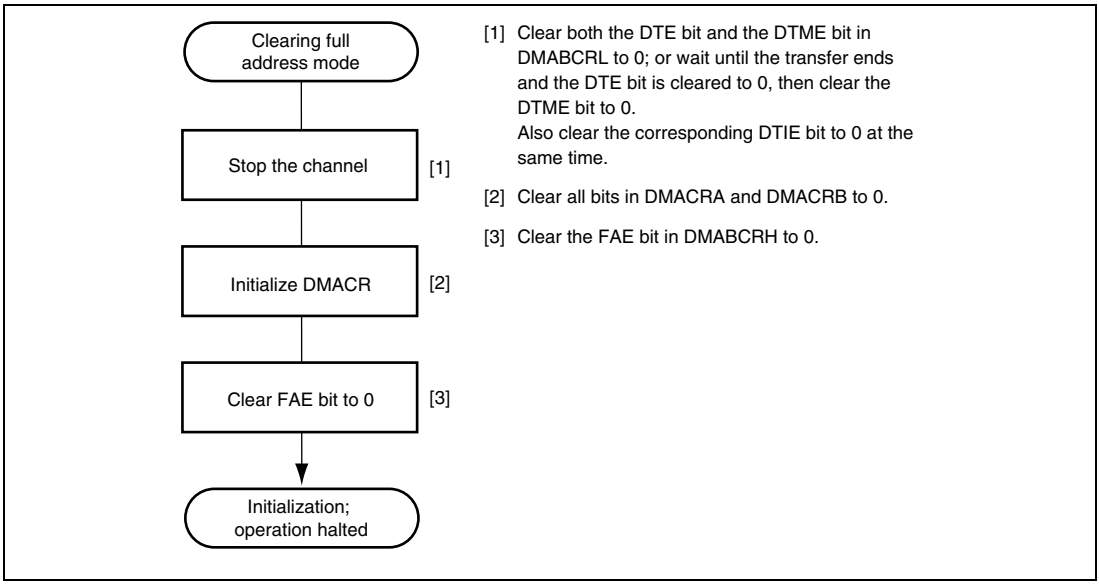


Figure 7.24 Example of Procedure for Clearing Full Address Mode

7.5 Interrupts

The sources of interrupts generated by the DMAC are transfer end and transfer break. Table 7.10 shows the interrupt sources and their priority order.

Table 7.10 Interrupt Source Priority Order

Interrupt Name	Interrupt Source		Interrupt Priority Order
	Short Address Mode	Full Address Mode	
DEND0A	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0A	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0	High
DEND0B	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0B	Interrupt due to break in transfer on channel 0	
DEND1A	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1A	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1	
DEND1B	Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1B	Interrupt due to break in transfer on channel 1	Low

Enabling or disabling of each interrupt source is set by means of the DTIE bit for the corresponding channel in DMABCR, and interrupts from each source are sent to the interrupt controller independently. The relative priority of transfer end interrupts on each channel is decided by the interrupt controller, as shown in table 7.10.

Figure 7.25 shows a block diagram of a transfer end/transfer break interrupt. An interrupt is always generated when the DTIE bit is set to 1 while DTE bit is cleared to 0.

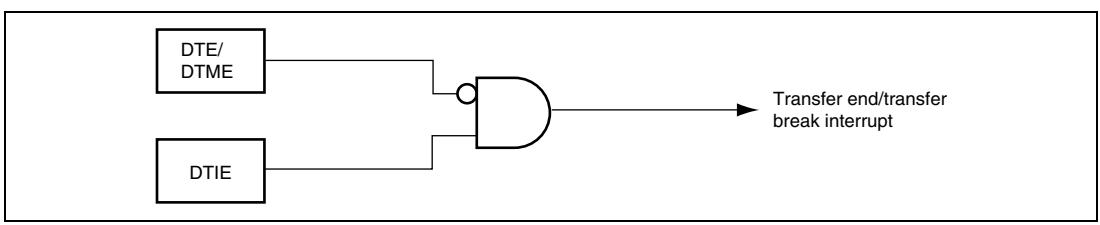


Figure 7.25 Block Diagram of Transfer End/Transfer Break Interrupt

In full address mode, a transfer break interrupt is generated when the DTME bit is cleared to 0 while DTIEB bit is set to 1. In both short address mode and full address mode, DMABCR should be set so as to prevent the occurrence of a combination that constitutes a condition for interrupt generation during setting.

7.6 Usage Notes

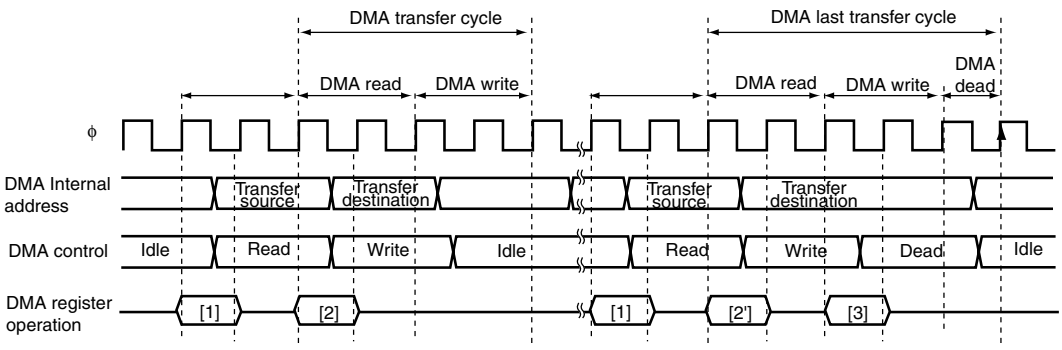
7.6.1 DMAC Register Access during Operation

Except for forced termination, the operating (including transfer waiting state) channel setting should not be changed. The operating channel setting should only be changed when transfer is disabled. Also, the DMAC register should not be written to in a DMA transfer.

DMAC register reads during operation (including the transfer waiting state) are described below.

1. DMAC control starts one cycle before the bus cycle, with output of the internal address. Consequently, MAR is updated in the bus cycle before DMAC transfer.

   Figure 7.26 shows an example of the update timing for DMAC registers in dual address transfer mode.



[1] Transfer source address register MAR operation (incremented/decremented/fixed)
Transfer counter ETCR operation (decremented)
Block size counter ETCR operation (decremented in block transfer mode)

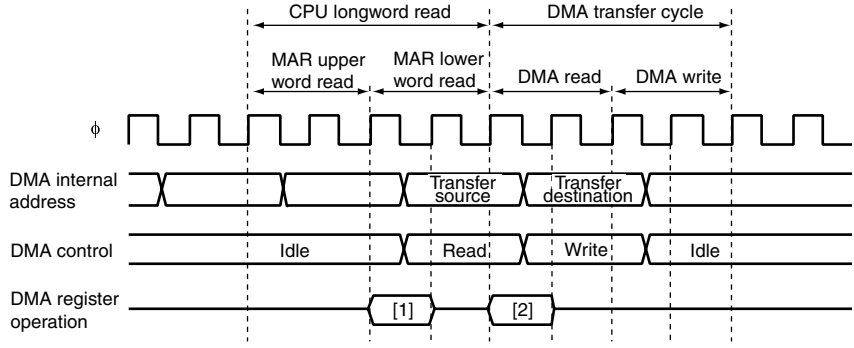
[2] Transfer destination address register MAR operation (incremented/decremented/fixed)

[2'] Transfer destination address register MAR operation (incremented/decremented/fixed)
Block transfer counter ETCR operation (decremented, in last transfer cycle of a block in block transfer mode)

[3] Transfer address register MAR restore operation (in block or repeat transfer mode)
Transfer counter ETCR restore (in repeat transfer mode)
Block size counter ETCR restore (in block transfer mode)

Figure 7.26 DMAC Register Update Timing

2. If a DMAC transfer cycle occurs immediately after a DMAC register read cycle, the DMAC register is read as shown in figure 7.27.



Note: The lower word of MAR is the updated value after the operation in [1].

Figure 7.27 Contention between DMAC Register Update and CPU Read

7.6.2 Module Stop

When the MSTPA7 bit in MSTPCR is set to 1, the DMAC clock stops, and the module stop state is entered. However, 1 cannot be written to the MSTPA7 bit if any of the DMAC channels is enabled. This setting should therefore be made when DMAC operation is stopped.

When the DMAC clock stops, DMAC register accesses can no longer be made. Since the following DMAC register settings are valid even in the module stop state, they should be invalidated, if necessary, before a module stop.

- Transfer end/suspend interrupt (DTE = 0 and DTIE = 1)

7.6.3 Medium-Speed Mode

When the DTA bit is 0, internal interrupt signals specified as DMAC transfer sources are edge-detected. In medium-speed mode, the DMAC operates on a medium-speed clock, while on-chip peripheral modules operate on a high-speed clock.

Consequently, if the period in which the relevant interrupt source is cleared by the CPU or another DMAC channel, and the next interrupt is generated, is less than one state with respect to the DMAC clock (bus master clock), edge detection may not be possible and the interrupt may be ignored.

7.6.4 Activation Source Acceptance

At the start of activation source acceptance, a low level is detected in both $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal falling edge sensing and low level sensing. Similarly, in the case of an internal interrupt, the interrupt request is detected. Therefore, a request is accepted from an internal interrupt or $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ pin low level that occurs before execution of the DMABCRL write to enable transfer.

When the DMAC is activated, take any necessary steps to prevent an internal interrupt or DREQ signal low level remaining from the end of the previous transfer, etc.

7.6.5 Internal Interrupt after End of Transfer:

When the DTE bit is cleared to 0 by the end of transfer or an abort, the selected internal interrupt request will be sent to the CPU even if DTA is set to 1.

Also, if internal DMAC activation has already been initiated when operation is aborted, the transfer is executed but flag clearing is not performed for the selected internal interrupt even if DTA is set to 1.

An internal interrupt request following the end of transfer or an abort should be handled by the CPU as necessary.

7.6.6 Channel Re-Setting

To reactivate a number of channels when multiple channels are enabled, use exclusive handling of transfer end interrupts, and perform DMABCR control bit operations exclusively. Note, in particular, that in cases where multiple interrupts are generated between reading and writing of DMABCR, and a DMABCR operation is performed during new interrupt handling, the DMABCR write data in the original interrupt handling routine will be incorrect, and the write may invalidate the results of the operations by the multiple interrupts. Ensure that overlapping DMABCR operations are not performed by multiple interrupts, and that there is no separation between read and write operations by the use of a bit-manipulation instruction. Also, when the DTE and DTME bits are cleared by the DMAC or are written with 0, they must first be read while cleared to 0 before the CPU can write a 1 to them.

Section 8 I/O Ports

Table 8.1 and table 8.2 summarize the port functions of the H8S/2218 Series and H8S/2212 Series respectively. The pins of each port also have other functions such as input/output or external interrupt input pins of on-chip peripheral modules. Each I/O port includes a data direction register (DDR) that controls input/output, a data register (DR) that stores output data, and a port register (PORT) used to read the pin states. The input-only ports do not have DR and DDR.

Ports A to E have an on-chip input pull-up MOS and a input pull-up MOS control register (PCR) to control the on/off state of the input pull-up MOS. Ports 3 and A to C include an open-drain control register (ODR) that controls the on/off state of the output buffer PMOS.

All the I/O ports can drive a single TTL load and 30-pF capacitive load.

Table 8.1 Port Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port	Description	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port 1	General I/O port also functioning as TPU I/O pins, interrupt input pins, and address bus output pins	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD			Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$)
		P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$			
		P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC			
		P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$			
		P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23		P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB	
		P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22		P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA	
		P11/TIOCB0/A21		P11/TIOCB0	
		P10/TIOCA0/A20		P10/TIOCA0	
Port 3	General I/O port also functioning as SCI_0 I/O pins and interrupt input pins	P36			Open-drain output Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$)
		P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$			
		P31/RxD0			
		P30/TxD0			
Port 4	General input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins	P43/AN3			
		P42/AN2			
		P41/AN1			
		P40/AN0			
Port 7	General I/O port also functioning as bus control output pins and manual reset input pins	P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$		P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	
		P71/$\overline{\text{CS5}}$		P71	
		P70/$\overline{\text{CS4}}$		P70	

Port	Description	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port 9	General input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins	P97/AN15 P96/AN14			
Port A	General I/O port also functioning as SCI_2 I/O pins and address bus output pins	PA3/A19/SCK2 PA2/A18/RxD2 PA1/A17/TxD2 PA0/A16		PA3/SCK2 PA2/RxD2 PA1/TxD2 PA0	On-chip input pull-up MOS Open-drain output
Port B	General I/O port also functioning as address bus output pins	PB7/A15 PB6/A14 PB5/A13 PB4/A12 PB3/A11 PB2/A10 PB1/A9 PB0/A8		PB7 PB6 PB5 PB4 PB3 PB2 PB1 PB0	On-chip input pull-up MOS Open-drain output
Port C	General I/O port also functioning as address bus output pins	A7	When DDR = 0: PC7 When DDR = 1: A7	PC7	On-chip input pull-up MOS Open-drain output
		A6	When DDR = 0: PC6 When DDR = 1: A6	PC6	
		A5	When DDR = 0: PC5 When DDR = 1: A5	PC5	
		A4	When DDR = 0: PC4 When DDR = 1: A4	PC4	
		A3	When DDR = 0: PC73 When DDR = 1: A3	PC3	
		A2	When DDR = 0: PC2 When DDR = 1: A2	PC2	
		A1	When DDR = 0: PC1 When DDR = 1: A1	PC1	
		A0	When DDR = 0: PC0 When DDR = 1: A0	PC0	
Port D	General I/O port also functioning as data bus I/O pins	D15 D14 D13 D12 D11 D10 D9 D8		PD7 PD6 PD5 PD4 PD3 PD2 PD1 PD0	On-chip input pull-up MOS

Port	Description	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port E	General I/O port also functioning as data bus I/O pins	8-bit bus mode: PE7 16-bit bus mode: D7		PE7	On-chip input pull-up MOS
		8-bit bus mode: PE6 16-bit bus mode: D6		PE6	
		8-bit bus mode: PE5 16-bit bus mode: D5		PE5	
		8-bit bus mode: PE4 16-bit bus mode: D4		PE4	
		8-bit bus mode: PE3 16-bit bus mode: D3		PE3	
		8-bit bus mode: PE2 16-bit bus mode: D2		PE2	
		8-bit bus mode: PE1 16-bit bus mode: D1		PE1	
		8-bit bus mode: PE0 16-bit bus mode: D0		PE0	
Port F	General I/O port also functioning as bus control signal I/O pins and interrupt input pins	When DDR = 0: PF7 When DDR = 1 (after reset): ϕ		When DDR = 0 (after reset): PF7 When DDR = 1: ϕ	Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{IRQ3}$, $\overline{IRQ2}$)
		$\overline{AS}$		PF6	
		$\overline{RD}$		PF5	
		$\overline{HWR}$		PF4	
		8-bit bus mode: PF3/$\overline{ADTRG}$/$\overline{IRQ3}$ 16-bit bus mode: $\overline{LWR}$		PF3/$\overline{ADTRG}$/$\overline{IRQ3}$	
		When WAITE = 0 (after reset): PF2 When WAITE = 1: $\overline{WAIT}$		PF2	
		When BRLE = 0 (after reset): PF1 When BRLE = 1: $\overline{BACK}$		PF1	
		When BRLE = 0 (after reset): PF0/$\overline{IRQ2}$ When BRLE = 1: $\overline{BREQ}$/$\overline{IRQ2}$		PF0/$\overline{IRQ2}$	

Port	Description	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port G	General I/O port also functioning as bus control output pins and interrupt Input pins	When DDR = 0 (after reset in mode 6): PG4 When DDR = 1 (after reset in mode 4, 5): $\overline{CS0}$		PG4	Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{IRQ7}$)
		When DDR = 0: PG3 When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS1}$		PG3	
		When DDR = 0: PG2 When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS2}$		PG2	
		When DDR = 0: PG1/$\overline{IRQ7}$ When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS3}$/$\overline{IRQ7}$		PG1/$\overline{IRQ7}$	

Table 8.2 Port Functions of H8S/2212 Series

Port	Description	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port 1	General I/O port also functioning as TPU I/O pins and interrupt input pins	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{IRQ1}$ P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{IRQ0}$ P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA P11/TIOCB0 P10/TIOCA0	Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{IRQ1}$, $\overline{IRQ0}$)
Port3	General I/O port also functioning as SCI_0 I/O pins and interrupt input pins	P36 P32/SCK0/$\overline{IRQ4}$ P31/RxD0 P30/TxD0	Open-drain output Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{IRQ4}$)
Port 4	General input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins	P43/AN3 P42/AN2 P41/AN1 P40/AN0	
Port 7	General I/O port	P77* P76* P75*	
Port 9	General input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins	P97/AN15 P96/AN14	

Port	Description	Mode 7	Input/Output Type
Port A	General I/O port also functioning as SCI_2 I/O pins	PA3/SCK2 PA2/RxD2 PA1/TxD2	On-chip input pull-up MOS Open-drain output
Port E	General I/O port	PE7 PE6 PE5 PE4 PE3 PE2 PE1 PE0	On-chip input pull-up MOS
Port F	General I/O port also functioning as interrupt input pins	When DDR = 0 (after reset): PF7 When DDR = 1: ϕ PF3/$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ PF0/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$)
Port G	General I/O port also functioning as interrupt input pins	PG1/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ PG0*	Schmitt trigger input ($\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$)

Note: * These pins are available only when EMLE = 0. These pins are not available when the H-UDI is used.

8.1 Port 1

In the H8S/2218 Series, the port 1 is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as address bus pins, TPU I/O pins, and external interrupt input pins. In the H8S/2212 Series, the port 1 is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as TPU I/O pins and external interrupt input pins. The port 1 has the following registers.

- Port 1 data direction register (P1DDR)
- Port 1 data register (P1DR)
- Port 1 register (PORT1)

8.1.1 Port 1 Data Direction Register (P1DDR)

P1DDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port 1.

Since P1DDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write P1DDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P17DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series)
6	P16DDR	0	W	Modes 4 to 6: If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, pins P13 to P10 are address outputs. Pins P17 to P14, and pins P13 to P10 when address output is disabled, are output ports when the corresponding P1DDR bits are set to 1, and input ports when the corresponding P1DDR bits are cleared to 0. Mode 7: Setting a P1DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 1 pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. (H8S/2212 Series) Setting a P1DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 1 pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
5	P15DDR	0	W	
4	P14DDR	0	W	
3	P13DDR	0	W	
2	P12DDR	0	W	
1	P11DDR	0	W	
0	P10DDR	0	W	

8.1.2 Port 1 Data Register (P1DR)

P1DR stores output data for the port 1 pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P17DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	P16DR	0	R/W	
5	P15DR	0	R/W	
4	P14DR	0	R/W	
3	P13DR	0	R/W	
2	P12DR	0	R/W	
1	P11DR	0	R/W	
0	P10DR	0	R/W	

8.1.3 Port 1 Register (PORT1)

PORT1 indicates the pin states of the port 1.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P17	—*	R	If the port 1 is read while P1DDR bits are set to 1, the P1DR value is read. If the port 1 is read while P1DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	P16	—*	R	
5	P15	—*	R	
4	P14	—*	R	
3	P13	—*	R	
2	P12	—*	R	
1	P11	—*	R	
0	P10	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P17 to P10.

8.1.4 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port 1 pins also function as address bus (A23 to A20) output pins, TPU I/O pins, and external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ0}$ and $\overline{IRQ1}$) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.3 P17 Pin Function

TPU Channel 2 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P17DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCB2 output pin	P17 input pin	P17 output pin
		TIOCB2 input pin	
	TCLKD input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.4 P16 Pin Function

TPU Channel 2 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P16DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCA2 output pin	P16 input pin	P16 output pin
		TIOCA2 input pin	
	$\overline{IRQ1}$ input pin*[2]		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt pin, this pin must not be used for another function.

Table 8.5 P15 Pin Function

TPU Channel 1 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P15DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCB1 output pin	P15 input pin	P15 output pin
		TIOCB1 input pin	
	TCLKC input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.6 P14 Pin Function

TPU Channel 1 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P14DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCA1 output pin	P14 input pin	P14 output pin
		TIOCA1 input pin	
	$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input pin*[2]		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt pin, this pin must not be used for another function.

Table 8.7 P13 Pin Function

AE3 to AE0*[2]	Other than B'1111			B'1111
TPU Channel 0 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value		—
P13DDR	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	TIOCD0 output pin	P13 input pin	P13 output pin	A23 output pin*[2]
		TIOCD0 input pin		
	TCLKB input pin			

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. Valid in modes 4, 5, and 6.

Table 8.8 P12 Pin Function

AE3 to AE0*[2]	Other than B'1111			B'1111
TPU Channel 0 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value		—
P12DDR	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	TIOCC0 output pin	P12 input pin	P12 output pin	A22 output pin*[2]
		TIOCC0 input pin		
	TCLKA input pin			

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. Valid in modes 4, 5, and 6.

Table 8.9 P11 Pin Function

AE3 to AE0*2	Other than B'1110 to B'1111			B'1110 to B'1111
TPU Channel 0 Setting*1	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value		—
P11DDR	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	TIOCB0 output pin	P11 input pin	P11 output pin	A21 output pin*2
		TIOCB0 input pin		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. Valid in modes 4, 5, and 6.

Table 8.10 P10 Pin Function

AE3 to AE0*2	Other than B'1101 to B'1111			B'1101 to B'1111
TPU Channel 0 Setting*1	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value		—
P10DDR	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	TIOCA0 output pin	P10 input pin	P10 output pin	A21 output pin*2
		TIOCA0 input pin		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. Valid in modes 4, 5, and 6.

Pin Functions of H8S/2212 Series

Port 1 pins also function as TPU I/O pins and external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.11 P17 Pin Function

TPU Channel 2 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P17DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCB2 output pin	P17 input pin	P17 output pin
		TIOCB2 input pin	
	TCLKD input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.12 P16 Pin Function

TPU Channel 2 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P16DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCA2 output pin	P16 input pin	P16 output pin
		TIOCA2 input pin	
	$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input pin*[2]		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt pin, this pin must not be used for another function.

Table 8.13 P15 Pin Function

TPU Channel 1 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P15DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCB1 output pin	P15 input pin	P15 output pin
		TIOCB1 input pin	
	TCLKC input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.14 P14 Pin Function

TPU Channel 1 Setting*[1]	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P14DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCA1 output pin	P14 input pin	P14 output pin
		TIOCA1 input pin	
	$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input pin*[2]		

Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt pin, this pin must not be used for another function.

Table 8.15 P13 Pin Function

TPU Channel 0 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P13DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCD0 output pin	P13 input pin	P13 output pin
		TIOCD0 input pin	
	TCLKB input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.16 P12 Pin Function

TPU Channel 0 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P12DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCC0 output pin	P12 input pin	P12 output pin
		TIOCC0 input pin	
	TCLKA input pin		

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.17 P11 Pin Function

TPU Channel 0 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P11DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCB0 output pin	P11 input pin	P11 output pin
		TIOCB0 input pin	

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

Table 8.18 P10 Pin Function

TPU Channel 0 Setting*	Output Setting	Input Setting or Initial Value	
P10DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	TIOCA0 output pin	P10 input pin	P10 output pin
		TIOCA0 input pin	

Note: * For details on the TPU channel setting, refer to section 9, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).

8.2 Port 3

The port 3 is a 4-bit I/O port also functioning as the SCI I/O pins and external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$) pins. The port 3 of the H8S/2218 Series has the same function as that of the H8S/2212 Series. The port 3 has the following registers.

- Port 3 data direction register (P3DDR)
- Port 3 data register (P3DR)
- Port 3 register (PORT3)
- Port 3 open-drain control register (P3ODR)

8.2.1 Port 3 Data Direction Register (P3DDR)

P3DDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port 3.

Since P3DDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write P3DDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	Undefined	—	Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
6	P36DDR	0	W	Setting a P3DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin.
5 to 3	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
2	P32DDR	0	W	Setting a P3DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin.
1	P31DDR	0	W	
0	P30DDR	0	W	

8.2.2 Port 3 Data Register (P3DR)

P3DR stores output data for the port 3 pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	Undefined	—	Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
6	P36DR	0	R/W	Stores output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
5 to 3	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.
2	P32DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
1	P31DR	0	R/W	
0	P30DR	0	R/W	

8.2.3 Port 3 Register (PORT3)

PORT3 indicates the pin states of the port 3.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	Undefined	—	Reserved This bit is undefined.
6	P36	—*	R	If the port 3 is read while P3DDR bits are set to 1, the P3DR value is read. If the port 3 is read while P3DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
5 to 3	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.
2	P32	—*	R	If the port 3 is read while P3DDR bits are set to 1, the P3DR value is read. If the port 3 is read while P3DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
1	P31	—*	R	
0	P30	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P36 and P32 to P30.

8.2.4 Port 3 Open-Drain Control Register (P3ODR)

P3ODR controls the PMOS on/off state for each port 3 pin.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	Undefined	—	Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
6	P36ODR	0	R/W	Setting a P3ODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin.
5 to 3	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
2	P32ODR	0	R/W	Setting a P3ODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin.
1	P31ODR	0	R/W	
0	P30ODR	0	R/W	

8.2.5 Pin Functions

Port 3 pins also function as SCI I/O pins and external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below. The P36 pin must be used as the D+ pull-up control output pin of the USB. For details, refer to section 14, Universal Serial Bus (USB).

Table 8.19 P36 Pin Function

P36DDR	0	1
Pin Function	P36 input pin	P36 output pin (D+ pull-up control output pin of USB)

Table 8.20 P32 Pin Function

CKE1 in SCR_0	0				1
C/$\overline{\text{A}}$ in SMR_0	0			1	—
CKE0 in SCR_0	0		1	—	—
P32DDR	0	1	—	—	—
Pin Function	P32 input pin	P32 output pin	SCK0 output pin	SCK0 output pin	SCK0 input pin
	$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input pin*				

Note: * When this pin is used as an external interrupt pin, this pin must not be used for another function.

Table 8.21 P31 Pin Function

RE in SCR_0	0		1
P31DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P31 input pin	P31 output pin	RxD0 input pin

Table 8.22 P30 Pin Function

TE in SCR_0	0		1
P30DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P30 input pin	P30 output pin	TxD0 output pin

8.3 Port 4

The port 4 is a 4-bit input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins. The port 4 of the H8S/2218 Series has the same function as that of the H8S/2212 Series. The port 4 has the following register.

- Port 4 register (PORT4)

8.3.1 Port 4 Register (PORT4)

PORT4 indicates the pin states of the port 4.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.
3	P43	—*	R	The pin states are always read when these bits are read.
2	P42	—*	R	
1	P41	—*	R	
0	P40	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P43 to P40.

8.3.2 Pin Function

The port 4 also functions as A/D converter analog input (AN3 to AN0) pins.

8.4 Port 7

In the H8S/2218 Series, the port 7 is a 3-bit I/O port also functioning as bus control output pins and manual reset input pins. In the H8S/2212 Series, the port 7 is a 3-bit I/O port also functioning as H-UDI pins. The port 7 has the following registers.

- Port 7 data direction register (P7DDR)
- Port 7 data register (P7DR)
- Port 7 register (PORT7)

8.4.1 Port 7 Data Direction Register (P7DDR)

P7DDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port 7.

Since P7DDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write P7DDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P77DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series) Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. (H8S/2212 Series) When EMLE = 1: Pins P77 to P75 function as the H-UDI pins. When EMLE = 0: If a P7DDR bit is set to 1, pins P77 to P75 function as output ports. If a P7DDR bit is cleared to 0, pins P77 to P75 function as input ports.
6	P76DDR	0	W	
5	P75DDR	0	W	
4	P74DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series) Setting a P7DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 7 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin. (H8S/2212 Series) Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
3, 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
1	P71DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series)
0	P70DDR	0	W	Setting a P7DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 7 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin.
				(H8S/2212 Series)
				Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.

8.4.2 Port 7 Data Register (P7DR)

P7DR stores output data for the port 7 pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P77DR	0	R/W	(H8S/2218 Series)
6	P76DR	0	R/W	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
5	P75DR	0	R/W	(H8S/2212 Series)
				Store output data for the port 7 pins.
4	P74DR	0	R/W	(H8S/2218 Series)
				Stores output data for the port 7 pins.
				(H8S/2212 Series)
				Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
3, 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved
				These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
1	P71DR	0	R/W	(H8S/2218 Series)
0	P70DR	0	R/W	Store output data for the port 7 pins.
				(H8S/2212 Series)
				Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.

8.4.3 Port 7 Register (PORT7)

PORT7 indicates the pin states of the port 7.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P77	—*	—	(H8S/2218 Series)
6	P76	—*	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
5	P75	—*	—	(H8S/2212 Series) If P7DDR bits are set to 1, the P7DR value is read. If P7DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
4	P74	—*	R	(H8S/2218 Series) If the port 7 is read while P7DDR bits are set to 1, the P7DR value is read. If the port 7 is read while P7DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. (H8S/2212 Series) Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified.
3, 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
1	P71	—*	R	(H8S/2218 Series)
0	P70	—*	R	If the port 7 is read while P7DDR bits are set to 1, the P7DR value is read. If the port 7 is read while P7DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. (H8S/2212 Series) Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P77 to P74, P71, and P70.

8.4.4 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port 7 pins also function as bus control output pins and manual reset input pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.23 P74 Pin Function

MRESE	0		1
P74DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P74 input pin	P74 output pin	$\overline{\text{MRES}}$ input pin

Table 8.24 P71 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
P71DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	P71 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS5}}$ output pin	P71 input pin	P71 output pin

Table 8.25 P70 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
P70DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	P70 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS4}}$ output pin	P70 input pin	P70 output pin

Pin Functions of H8S/2212 Series

Port 7 pins also function as H-UDI pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.26 P77 Pin Function

EMLE	0		1
P77DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P77 input pin	P77 output pin	TDO output pin

Table 8.27 P76 Pin Function

EMLE	0		1
P76DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P76 input pin	P76 output pin	TCK input pin

Table 8.28 P75 Pin Function

EMLE	0		1
P75DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	P75 input pin	P75 output pin	TMS input pin

8.5 Port 9

The port 9 is a 2-bit input port also functioning as A/D converter analog input pins. The port 9 of the H8S/2218 Series has the same function as that of the H8S/2212 Series.

- Port 9 register (PORT9)

8.5.1 Port 9 Register (PORT9)

PORT9 indicates the pin states of the port 9.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	P97	—*	R	The pin states are always read when these bits are read.
6	P96	—*	R	
5 to 0	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P97 and P96.

8.5.2 Pin Function

The port 9 also functions as A/D converter analog input (AN15 and AN14) pins.

8.6 Port A

In the H8S/2218 Series, the port A is a 4-bit I/O port also functioning as address bus (A19 to A16) output pins and SCI I/O pins. In the H8S/2212 Series, the port A is a 3-bit I/O port also functioning as SCI I/O pins. The port A has the following registers.

- Port A data direction register (PADDR)
- Port A data register (PADR)
- Port A register (PORTA)
- Port A pull-up MOS control register (PAPCR)
- Port A open-drain control register (PAODR)

8.6.1 Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR)

PADDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port A.

Since PADDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PADDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
3	PA3DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series) Mode 7: Setting a PADDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. Modes 4 to 6: If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, the corresponding port A pins are address outputs. When address output is disabled, setting a PADDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
2	PA2DDR	0	W	
1	PA1DDR	0	W	
0	PA0DDR*	0	W	
				(H8S/2212 Series) Setting a PADDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.

Note: * Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.6.2 Port A Data Register (PADR)

PADR stores output data for the port A pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
3	PA3DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
2	PA2DR	0	R/W	
1	PA1DR	0	R/W	
0	PA0DR*	0	R/W	

Note: * Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.6.3 Port A Register (PORTA)

PORTA indicates the pin states of the port A.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.
3	PA3	—*[1]	R	If the port A is read while PADDR bits are set to 1, the PADR value is read. If the port A is read while PADDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
2	PA2	—*[1]	R	
1	PA1	—*[1]	R	
0	PA0*[2]	—*[1]	R	

Notes: 1. Determined by the states of pins PA3 to PA0.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read.

8.6.4 Port A Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PAPCR)

PAPCR controls the on/off state of the port A input pull-up MOS. PAPCR is valid for port input and SCI input pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
3	PA3PCR	0	R/W	When a pin functions as an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin.
2	PA2PCR	0	R/W	
1	PA1PCR	0	R/W	
0	PA0PCR*	0	R/W	

Note: * Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.6.5 Port A Open-Drain Control Register (PAODR)

PAODR specifies an output type of the port A. PAODR is valid for port output and SCI output pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
3	PA3ODR	0	R/W	Setting a PAODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin.
2	PA2ODR	0	R/W	
1	PA1ODR	0	R/W	
0	PA0ODR*	0	R/W	

Note: * Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.6.6 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port A pins also function as address bus (A19 to A16) output pins and SCI_2 I/O pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.29 PA3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6						Mode 7					
AE3 to AE0	B'11xx	Other than B'11xx					—					
CKE1	—	0				1	0					1
C/$\overline{A}$	—	0			1	—	0			1		—
CKE0	—	0		1	—	—	0		1	—		—
PA3DDR	—	0	1	—	—	—	0	1	—	—		—
Pin Function	A19 output pin	PA3 input pin	PA3 output pin	SCK2 output pin	SCK2 output pin	SCK2 input pin	PA3 input pin	PA3 output pin	SCK2 output pin	SCK2 output pin		SCK2 input pin

Table 8.30 PA2 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6				Mode 7		
AE3 to AE0	B'1011 or B'11xx	Other than B'1011 or B'11xx			—		
RE in SCR2	—	0		1	0		1
PA2DDR	—	0	1	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	A18 output pin	PA2 input pin	PA2 output pin	RxD2 input pin	PA2 input pin	PA2 output pin	RxD2 input pin

Legend x: Don't care.

Table 8.31 PA1 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6				Mode 7		
AE3 to AE0	B'101x or B'11xx	Other than B'101x or B'11xx			—		
TE in SCR2	—	0		1	0		1
PA1DDR	—	0	1	—	0	1	—
Pin Function	A17 output pin	PA1 input pin	PA1 output pin	TxD2 output pin	PA1 input pin	PA1 output pin	TxD2 output pin

Table 8.32 PA0 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'0xxx or B'1000	B'0xxx or B'1000		—	
PA0DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A16 output pin	PA0 input pin	PA0 output pin	PA0 input pin	PA0 output pin

Legend x: Don't care.

Pin Functions of H8S/2212 Series

Port A pins also function as SCI_2 I/O pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.33 PA3 Pin Function

CKE1	0				1
C/$\overline{A}$	0			1	—
CKE0	0		1	—	—
PA3DDR	0	1	—	—	—
Pin Function	PA3 input pin	PA3 output pin	SCK2 output pin	SCK2 output pin	SCK2 input pin

Table 8.34 PA2 Pin Function

RE in SCR2	0		1
PA2DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	PA2 input pin	PA2 output pin	RxD2 input pin

Table 8.35 PA1 Pin Function

TE in SCR2	0		1
PA1DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	PA1 input pin	PA1 output pin	TxD2 output pin

8.6.7 Port A Input Pull-Up MOS States

The port A has an on-chip input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. The input pull-up MOS can be specified as the on or off state for individual bits.

Table 8.36 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 8.36 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port A)

Pins	Power-On Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Manual Reset	Software Standby Mode	In Other Operations
Address output, port output, SCI output	Off		Off		
Port input, SCI input			On/Off		

Legend

Off: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

On/Off: On when PADDR = 0 and PAPCR = 1; otherwise off.

8.7 Port B (H8S/2218 Series Only)

The port B is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as address bus (A15 to A8) output pins. The port B has the following registers.

Note: When the USB is used while the E6000 emulator is used, the AE3 to AE0 bits in PFCR must be set so that the PB1 and PB0 pins output addresses A9 and A8. This note applies to both the H8S/2218 and H8S/2212 Series.

- Port B data direction register (PBDDR)
- Port B data register (PBDR)
- Port B register (PORTB)
- Port B pull-up MOS control register (PBPCR)
- Port B open-drain control register (PBODR)

8.7.1 Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR)

PBDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port B.

Since PBDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PBDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PB7DDR	0	W	Modes 4 to 6: If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, the corresponding port B pins are address outputs. When address output is disabled, setting a PBDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port B pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. Mode 7: Setting a PBDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port B pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
6	PB6DDR	0	W	
5	PB5DDR	0	W	
4	PB4DDR	0	W	
3	PB3DDR	0	W	
2	PB2DDR	0	W	
1	PB1DDR	0	W	
0	PB0DDR	0	W	

8.7.2 Port B Data Register (PBDR)

PBDR stores output data for the port B pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PB7DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	PB6DR	0	R/W	
5	PB5DR	0	R/W	
4	PB4DR	0	R/W	
3	PB3DR	0	R/W	
2	PB2DR	0	R/W	
1	PB1DR	0	R/W	
0	PB0DR	0	R/W	

8.7.3 Port B Register (PORTB)

PORTB indicates the pin states of the port B.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PB7	—*	R	If the port B is read while PBDDR bits are set to 1, the PBDR value is read. If the port B is read while PBDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	PB6	—*	R	
5	PB5	—*	R	
4	PB4	—*	R	
3	PB3	—*	R	
2	PB2	—*	R	
1	PB1	—*	R	
0	PB0	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PB7 to PB0.

8.7.4 Port B Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PBPCR)

PBPCR controls the on/off state of the port B input pull-up MOS. PBPCR is valid for port input pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PB7PCR	0	R/W	When a pin functions as an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin.
6	PB6PCR	0	R/W	
5	PB5PCR	0	R/W	
4	PB4PCR	0	R/W	
3	PB3PCR	0	R/W	
2	PB2PCR	0	R/W	
1	PB1PCR	0	R/W	
0	PB0PCR	0	R/W	

8.7.5 Port B Open-Drain Control Register (PBODR)

PBODR specifies an output type of the port B. PBODR is valid for port output pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PB7ODR	0	R/W	Setting a PBODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port B pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin.
6	PB6ODR	0	R/W	
5	PB5ODR	0	R/W	
4	PB4ODR	0	R/W	
3	PB3ODR	0	R/W	
2	PB2ODR	0	R/W	
1	PB1ODR	0	R/W	
0	PB0ODR	0	R/W	

8.7.6 Pin Functions

Port B pins also function as address bus (A15 to A9) output pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.37 PB7 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	B'1xxx	Other than B'1xxx		—	
PB7DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A15 output pin	PB7 input pin	PB7 output pin	PB7 input pin	PB7 output pin

Table 8.38 PB6 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	B'0111 or B'1xxx	Other than B'0111 or B'1xxx		—	
PB6DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A14 output pin	PB6 input pin	PB6 output pin	PB6 input pin	PB6 output pin

Table 8.39 PB5 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	B'011x or B'1xxx	Other than B'011x or B'1xxx		—	
PB5DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A13 output pin	PB5 input pin	PB5 output pin	PB5 input pin	PB5 output pin

Table 8.40 PB4 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'0100 or B'00xx	B'0100 or B'00xx		—	
PB4DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A12 output pin	PB4 input pin	PB4 output pin	PB4 input pin	PB4 output pin

Table 8.41 PB3 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'00xx	B'00xx		—	
PB3DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A11 output pin	PB3 input pin	PB3 output pin	PB3 input pin	PB3 output pin

Table 8.42 PB2 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'0010 or B'000x	B'0010 or B'000x		—	
PB2DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A10 output pin	PB2 input pin	PB2 output pin	PB2 input pin	PB2 output pin

Table 8.43 PB1 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'000x	B'000x		—	
PB1DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A9 output pin	PB1 input pin	PB1 output pin	PB1 input pin	PB1 output pin

Note: When the E6000 emulator is used, this pin must be set as an A9 output pin in order to access the USB.

Table 8.44 PB0 Pin Function

Operating mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
AE3 to AE0	Other than B'0000	B'0000		—	
PB0DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	A8 output pin	PB0 input pin	PB0 output pin	PB0 input pin	PB0 output pin

Note: When the E6000 emulator is used, this pin must be set as an A8 output pin in order to access the USB.

Legend x: Don't care.

8.7.7 Port B Input Pull-Up MOS States

The port B has an on-chip input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. The input pull-up MOS can be specified as the on or off state for individual bits.

Table 8.45 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 8.45 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port B)

Pins	Power-On Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Manual Reset	Software Standby Mode	In Other Operations
Address output, port output	Off		Off		
Port input			On/Off		

Legend

Off: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

On/Off: On when PBDDR = 0 and PBPCR = 1; otherwise off.

8.8 Port C (H8S/2218 Series Only)

The port C is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as address bus (A7 to A0) output pins. The port C has the following registers.

Note: When the RTC and USB are used while the E6000 emulator is used, the PC7DDR to PC0DDR bits in PCDDR must be set so that the PC7 to PC0 pins output addresses A7 to A0. This note applies to both the H8S/2218 and H8S/2212 Series.

- Port C data direction register (PCDDR)
- Port C data register (PCDR)
- Port C register (PORTC)
- Port C pull-up MOS control register (PCPCR)
- Port C open-drain control register (PCODR)

8.8.1 Port C Data Direction Register (PCDDR)

PCDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port C.

Since PCDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PCDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PC7DDR	0	W	Modes 4 and 5: Port C pins are address output pins.
6	PC6DDR	0	W	
5	PC5DDR	0	W	Mode 6: Setting a PCDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port C pin an address output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
4	PC4DDR	0	W	
3	PC3DDR	0	W	
2	PC2DDR	0	W	Mode 7: Setting a PCDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port C pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
1	PC1DDR	0	W	
0	PC0DDR	0	W	

8.8.2 Port C Data Register (PCDR)

PCDR stores output data for the port C pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PC7DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	PC6DR	0	R/W	
5	PC5DR	0	R/W	
4	PC4DR	0	R/W	
3	PC3DR	0	R/W	
2	PC2DR	0	R/W	
1	PC1DR	0	R/W	
0	PC0DR	0	R/W	

8.8.3 Port C Register (PORTC)

PORTC indicates the pin states of the port C.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PC7	—*	R	If the port C is read while PCDDR bits are set to 1, the PCDR value is read. If the port C is read while PCDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	PC6	—*	R	
5	PC5	—*	R	
4	PC4	—*	R	
3	PC3	—*	R	
2	PC2	—*	R	
1	PC1	—*	R	
0	PC0	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PC7 to PC0.

8.8.4 Port C Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PCPCR)

PCPCR controls the on/off state of the port C input pull-up MOS.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PC7PCR	0	R/W	When a pin functions as an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin.
6	PC6PCR	0	R/W	
5	PC5PCR	0	R/W	
4	PC4PCR	0	R/W	
3	PC3PCR	0	R/W	
2	PC2PCR	0	R/W	
1	PC1PCR	0	R/W	
0	PC0PCR	0	R/W	

8.8.5 Port C Open-Drain Control Register (PCODR)

PCODR specifies an output type of the port C. PCODR is valid for port output pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PC7ODR	0	R/W	Setting a PCODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port C pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin.
6	PC6ODR	0	R/W	
5	PC5ODR	0	R/W	
4	PC4ODR	0	R/W	
3	PC3ODR	0	R/W	
2	PC2ODR	0	R/W	
1	PC1ODR	0	R/W	
0	PC0ODR	0	R/W	

8.8.6 Pin Functions

Port C pins also function as address bus (A7 to A0) output pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.46 PC7 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC7DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A7 output pin	A7 output pin	PC7 input pin	PC7 output pin	PC7 input pin

Table 8.47 PC6 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC6DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A6 output pin	A6 output pin	PC6 input pin	PC6 output pin	PC6 input pin

Table 8.48 PC5 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC5DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A5 output pin	A5 output pin	PC5 input pin	PC5 output pin	PC5 input pin

Table 8.49 PC4 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC4DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A4 output pin	A4 output pin	PC4 input pin	PC4 output pin	PC4 input pin

Table 8.50 PC3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC3DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A3 output pin	A3 output pin	PC3 input pin	PC3 output pin	PC3 input pin

Table 8.51 PC2 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC2DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A2 output pin	A2 output pin	PC2 input pin	PC2 output pin	PC2 input pin

Table 8.52 PC1 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC1DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A1 output pin	A1 output pin	PC1 input pin	PC1 output pin	PC1 input pin

Table 8.53 PC0 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 and 5	Mode 6*		Mode 7	
PC0DDR	—	1	0	1	0
Pin Function	A0 output pin	A0 output pin	PC0 input pin	PC0 output pin	PC0 input pin

Note: When the on-chip RTC and USB is used in mode 6, bits PC7DDR to PC0DDR should be set to H'FF so that the pins output A7 to A0.

8.8.7 Port C Input Pull-Up MOS States

The port C has an on-chip input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. The input pull-up MOS can be used in modes 6 and 7, and can be specified as the on or off state for individual bits.

Table 8.54 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 8.54 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port C)

Pins	Power-On Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Manual Reset	Software Standby Mode	In Other Operations
Address output (modes 4 and 5), port output (modes 6 and 7)	Off		Off		
Port input (modes 6 and 7)			On/Off		

Legend

Off: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

On/Off: On when PCDDR = 0 and PCPCR = 1; otherwise off.

8.9 Port D (H8S/2218 Series Only)

The port D is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as data bus (D15 to D8) I/O pins. The port D has the following registers.

- Port D data direction register (PDDDR)
- Port D data register (PDDR)
- Port D register (PORTD)
- Port D pull-up MOS control register (PDPCR)

8.9.1 Port D Data Direction Register (PDDDR)

PDDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port D.

Since PDDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PDDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PD7DDR	0	W	Modes 4 to 6: Port D pins automatically function as data input/output pins. Mode 7: Setting a PDDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port D pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
6	PD6DDR	0	W	
5	PD5DDR	0	W	
4	PD4DDR	0	W	
3	PD3DDR	0	W	
2	PD2DDR	0	W	
1	PD1DDR	0	W	
0	PD0DDR	0	W	

8.9.2 Port D Data Register (PDDR)

PDDR stores output data for the port D pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PD7DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	PD6DR	0	R/W	
5	PD5DR	0	R/W	
4	PD4DR	0	R/W	
3	PD3DR	0	R/W	
2	PD2DR	0	R/W	
1	PD1DR	0	R/W	
0	PD0DR	0	R/W	

8.9.3 Port D Register (PORTD)

PORTD indicates the pin states of the port D.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PD7	—*	R	If the port D is read while PDDDR bits are set to 1, the PDDR value is read. If the port D is read while PDDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	PD6	—*	R	
5	PD5	—*	R	
4	PD4	—*	R	
3	PD3	—*	R	
2	PD2	—*	R	
1	PD1	—*	R	
0	PD0	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PD7 to PD0.

8.9.4 Port D Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PDPCR)

PDPCR controls the on/off state of the port D input pull-up MOS.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PD7PCR	0	R/W	When a pin functions as an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin.
6	PD6PCR	0	R/W	
5	PD5PCR	0	R/W	
4	PD4PCR	0	R/W	
3	PD3PCR	0	R/W	
2	PD2PCR	0	R/W	
1	PD1PCR	0	R/W	
0	PD0PCR	0	R/W	

8.9.5 Pin Functions

Port D pins also function as data bus (D15 to D8) I/O pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.55 PD7 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD7DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D15 input/output pin	PD7 input pin	PD7 output pin

Table 8.56 PD6 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD6DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D14 input/output pin	PD6 input pin	PD6 output pin

Table 8.57 PD5 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD5DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D13 input/output pin	PD5 input pin	PD5 output pin

Table 8.58 PD4 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD4DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D12 input/output pin	PD4 input pin	PD4 output pin

Table 8.59 PD3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD3DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D11 input/output pin	PD3 input pin	PD3 output pin

Table 8.60 PD2 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD2DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D10 input/output pin	PD2 input pin	PD2 output pin

Table 8.61 PD1 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD1DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D9 input/output pin	PD1 input pin	PD1 output pin

Table 8.62 PD0 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PD0DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	D8 input/output pin	PD0 input pin	PD0 output pin

8.9.6 Port D Input Pull-Up MOS States

The port D has an on-chip input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. The input pull-up MOS can be used in mode 7, and can be specified as the on or off state for individual bits.

Table 8.63 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 8.63 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port D)

Pins	Power-On Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Manual Reset	Software Standby Mode	In Other Operations
Data input/output (modes 4 to 6), port output (mode 7)	Off		Off		
Port input (mode 7)			On/Off		

Legend

Off: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

On/Off: On when PDDDR = 0 and PDPCR = 1; otherwise off.

8.10 Port E

The port E is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as data bus (D7 to D0) I/O pins. The port E has the following registers.

- Port E data direction register (PEDDR)
- Port E data register (PEDR)
- Port E register (PORTE)
- Port E pull-up MOS control register (PEPCR)

8.10.1 Port E Data Direction Register (PEDDR)

PEDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port E.

Since PEDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PEDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PE7DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series)
6	PE6DDR	0	W	Modes 4 to 6: When 8-bit bus mode is selected, port E functions as an I/O port. Setting a PEDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port E pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. When 16-bit bus mode is selected, the input/output direction settings in PEDDR are ignored, and port E pins automatically function as data input/output pins. For details on 8-bit/16-bit bus mode, refer to section 6, Bus Controller.
5	PE5DDR	0	W	
4	PE4DDR	0	W	
3	PE3DDR	0	W	
2	PE2DDR	0	W	
1	PE1DDR	0	W	
0	PE0DDR	0	W	
				Mode 7: Setting a PEDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port E pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
				(H8S/2212 Series) Setting a PEDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port E pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.

8.10.2 Port E Data Register (PEDR)

PEDR stores output data for the port E pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PE7DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	PE6DR	0	R/W	
5	PE5DR	0	R/W	
4	PE4DR	0	R/W	
3	PE3DR	0	R/W	
2	PE2DR	0	R/W	
1	PE1DR	0	R/W	
0	PE0DR	0	R/W	

8.10.3 Port E Register (PORTE)

PORTE indicates the pin states of the port E.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PE7	—*	R	If the port E is read while PEDDR bits are set to 1, the PEDR value is read. If the port E is read while PEDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	PE6	—*	R	
5	PE5	—*	R	
4	PE4	—*	R	
3	PE3	—*	R	
2	PE2	—*	R	
1	PE1	—*	R	
0	PE0	—*	R	

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PE7 to PE0.

8.10.4 Port E Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PEPCR)

PEPCR controls the on/off state of the port E input pull-up MOS.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PE7PCR	0	R/W	When a pin functions as an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin.
6	PE6PCR	0	R/W	
5	PE5PCR	0	R/W	
4	PE4PCR	0	R/W	
3	PE3PCR	0	R/W	
2	PE2PCR	0	R/W	
1	PE1PCR	0	R/W	
0	PE0PCR	0	R/W	

8.10.5 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port E pins also function as data bus (D7 to D0) I/O pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin function is shown below.

Table 8.64 PE7 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE7DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE7 output pin	PE7 input pin	D7 input/output pin	PE7 output pin	PE7 input pin

Table 8.65 PE6 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE6DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE6 output pin	PE6 input pin	D6 input/output pin	PE6 output pin	PE6 input pin

Table 8.66 PE5 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE5DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE5 output pin	PE5 input pin	D5 input/output pin	PE5 output pin	PE5 input pin

Table 8.67 PE4 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE4DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE4 output pin	PE4 input pin	D4 input/output pin	PE4 output pin	PE4 input pin

Table 8.68 PE3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE3DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE3 output pin	PE3 input pin	D3 input/output pin	PE3 output pin	PE3 input pin

Table 8.69 PE2 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE2DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE2 output pin	PE2 input pin	D2 input/output pin	PE2 output pin	PE2 input pin

Table 8.70 PE1 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE1DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE1 output pin	PE1 input pin	D1 input/output pin	PE1 output pin	PE1 input pin

Table 8.71 PE0 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	8-bit bus mode		16-bit bus mode	—	
PE0DDR	1	0	—	1	0
Pin Function	PE0 output pin	PE0 input pin	D0 input/output pin	PE0 output pin	PE0 input pin

Pin Functions of H8S/2212 Series

The port E function as a general I/O port. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin function is shown below.

Table 8.72 PE7 Pin Function

PE7DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE7 output pin	PE7 input pin

Table 8.73 PE6 Pin Function

PE6DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE6 output pin	PE6 input pin

Table 8.74 PE5 Pin Function

PE5DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE5 output pin	PE5 input pin

Table 8.75 PE4 Pin Function

PE4DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE4 output pin	PE4 input pin

Table 8.76 PE3 Pin Function

PE3DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE3 output pin	PE3 input pin

Table 8.77 PE2 Pin Function

PE2DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE2 output pin	PE2 input pin

Table 8.78 PE1 Pin Function

PE1DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE1 output pin	PE1 input pin

Table 8.79 PE0 Pin Function

PE0DDR	1	0
Pin Function	PE0 output pin	PE0 input pin

8.10.6 Port E Input Pull-Up MOS States

The port E has an on-chip input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. The input pull-up MOS can be used in modes 4 to 6 and in 8-bit bus mode, or in mode 7, and can be specified as the on or off state for individual bits.

Table 8.80 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 8.80 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port E)

Pins	Power-On Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Manual Reset	Software Standby Mode	In Other Operations
Data input/output (16-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6), port output (8-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6, mode 7)	Off		Off		
Port input (8-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6, mode 7)			On/Off		

Legend

Off: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

On/Off: On when PEDDR = 0 and PEPCR = 1; otherwise off.

8.11 Port F

In the H8S/2218 Series, the port F is an 8-bit I/O port also functioning as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ2}$, $\overline{IRQ3}$) pins, bus control signal I/O pins, and system clock output pins. In the H8S/2212 Series, the port F is a 3-bit I/O port also functioning as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ2}$, $\overline{IRQ3}$) pins and system clock output pins. The port F has the following registers.

- Port F data direction register (PFDDR)
- Port F data register (PFDR)
- Port F register (PORTF)

8.11.1 Port F Data Direction Register (PFDDR)

PFDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port F.

Since PFDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PFDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PF7DDR	1/0*[1]	W	(H8S/2218 Series)
6	PF6DDR*[2]	0	W	Modes 4 to 6: Pin PF7 functions as the φ output pin when the PF7DDR bit is set to 1, and as an input port when the bit is cleared to 0. Pins PF6 to PF3 are automatically designated as bus control output pins. Pins PF2 to PF0 are made bus control input/output pins by bus controller settings. Otherwise, setting a PFDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
5	PF5DDR*[2]	0	W	
4	PF4DDR*[2]	0	W	
3	PF3DDR	0	W	
2	PF2DDR*[2]	0	W	
1	PF1DDR*[2]	0	W	
0	PF0DDR	0	W	
				Mode 7 Setting a PFDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port F pin PF6 to PF0 an output port, or in the case of pin PF7, the φ output pin. Clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. (H8S/2212 Series) Setting a PFDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port F pin PF6 to PF0 an output port, or in the case of pin PF7, the φ output pin. Clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.

Notes: 1. The initial value becomes 1 in modes 4 to 6 and 0 in mode 7.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.11.2 Port F Data Register (PFDR)

PFDR stores output data for the port F pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PF7DR	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
6	PF6DR*	0	R/W	
5	PF5DR*	0	R/W	
4	PF4DR*	0	R/W	
3	PF3DR	0	R/W	
2	PF2DR*	0	R/W	
1	PF1DR*	0	R/W	
0	PF0DR	0	R/W	

Note: * Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.11.3 Port F Register (PORTF)

PORTF indicates the pin states of the port F.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PF7	—*[1]	R	If the port F is read while PFDDR bits are set to 1, the PFDR value is read. If the port F is read while PFDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
6	PF6*[2]	—*[1]	R	
5	PF5*[2]	—*[1]	R	
4	PF4*[2]	—*[1]	R	
3	PF3	—*[1]	R	
2	PF2*[2]	—*[1]	R	
1	PF1*[2]	—*[1]	R	
0	PF0	—*[1]	R	

Notes: 1. Determined by the states of pins PF7 to PF0.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read.

8.11.4 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

The port F is an 8-bit I/O port. Port F pins also function as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ2}$, $\overline{IRQ3}$) pins, bus control signal I/O pins, and system clock output (ϕ) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.81 PF7 Pin Function

PF7DDR	0	1
Pin Function	PF7 input pin	ϕ output pin

Table 8.82 PF6 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PF6DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	$\overline{AS}$ output pin	PF6 input pin	PF6 output pin

Table 8.83 PF5 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PF5DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	$\overline{RD}$ output pin	PF5 input pin	PF5 output pin

Table 8.84 PF4 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6	Mode 7	
PF4DDR	—	0	1
Pin Function	$\overline{HWR}$ output pin	PF4 input pin	PF4 output pin

Table 8.85 PF3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
Bus Mode	16-bit bus mode	8-bit bus mode		—	
PF3DDR	—	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	$\overline{\text{LWR}}$ output pin	PF3 input pin	PF3 output pin	PF3 input pin	PF3 output pin
		$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ input pin*[1]			
		$\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input pin*[2]			

Notes: 1 $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ input pin when TRGS0 = TRGS1 = 1.

2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

Table 8.86 PF2 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
WAITE	0		1	—	
PF2DDR	0	1	—	0	1
Pin Function	PF2 input pin	PF2 output pin	$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ input pin	PF2 input pin	PF2 output pin

Table 8.87 PF1 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
BRLE	0		1	—	
PF1DDR	0	1	—	0	1
Pin Function	PF1 input pin	PF1 output pin	$\overline{\text{BACK}}$ output pin	PF1 input pin	PF1 output pin

Table 8.88 PF0 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6			Mode 7	
BRLE	0		1	—	
PF0DDR	0	1	—	0	1
Pin Function	PF0 input pin	PF0 output pin	$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ input pin	PF0 input pin	PF0 output pin
	$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input pin*				

Note: * When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

The port F is a 3-bit I/O port. Port F pins also function as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ2}$, $\overline{IRQ3}$) pins and system clock output (ϕ) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.89 PF7 Pin Function

PF7DDR	0	1
Pin Function	PF7 input pin	ϕ output pin

Table 8.90 PF3 Pin Function

PF3DDR	0	1
Pin Function	PF3 input pin	PF3 output pin
	$\overline{ADTRG}$ input pin*[1]	
	$\overline{IRQ3}$ input pin*[2]	

Notes: 1 $\overline{ADTRG}$ input pin when TRGS0 = TRGS1 = 1.
2. When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

Table 8.91 PF0 Pin Function

PF0DDR	0	1
Pin Function	PF0 input pin	PF0 output pin
	$\overline{IRQ2}$ input pin*	

Note: * When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

8.12 Port G

In the H8S/2218 Series, the port G is a 4-bit I/O port also functioning as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ7}$) pins and bus control output ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$) pins. In the H8S/2212 Series, the port G is a 2-bit I/O port also functioning as external interrupt input ($\overline{IRQ7}$) pins and H-UDI (TDI) pins. The port G has the following registers.

- Port G data direction register (PGDDR)
- Port G data register (PGDR)
- Port G register (PORTG)

8.12.1 Port G Data Direction Register (PGDDR)

PGDDR specifies input or output for the pins of the port G.

Since PGDDR is a write-only register, the bit manipulation instructions must not be used to write PGDDR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 5	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
4	PG4DDR*2	0/1*1	W	(H8S/2218 Series) Modes 4 to 6: Setting a PGDDR bit to 1 makes the PG4 to PG1 pins bus control signal output pins, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pins input ports. Mode 7: Setting a PGDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port G pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. (H8S/2212 Series) Setting a PG1DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port G pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.
3	PG3DDR*2	0	W	
2	PG2DDR*2	0	W	
1	PG1DDR	0	W	
0	PG0DDR	0	W	(H8S/2218 Series) Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified. (H8S/2212 Series) When EMLE = 1: Pin PG0 function as the H-UDI pin. When EMLE = 0: If a PG0DDR bit is set to 1, pin PG0 function as output ports. If a PG0DDR bit is cleared to 0, pin PG0 function as input ports. Setting a PG0DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port G pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port.

Notes: 1. The initial value becomes 1 in modes 4 and 5 and 0 in modes 6 and 7.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read.

8.12.2 Port G Data Register (PGDR)

PGDR stores output data for the port G pins.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 5	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified.
4	PG4DR*[1]	0	R/W	Store output data for a pin that functions as a general output port.
3	PG3DR*[1]	0	R/W	
2	PG2DR*[1]	0	R/W	
1	PG1DR	0	R/W	
0	PG0DR*[2]	0	R/W	

Notes: 1. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2218 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.12.3 Port G Register (PORTG)

PORTG indicates the pin states of the port G.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 5	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are undefined.
4	PG4*[2]	—*[1]	R	If the port G is read while PGDDR bits are set to 1, the PGDR value is read. If the port G is read while PGDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read.
3	PG3*[2]	—*[1]	R	
2	PG2*[2]	—*[1]	R	
1	PG1	—*[1]	R	
0	PG0*[3]	—*[1]	R	

Notes: 1. Determined by the states of pins PG4 to PG0.
2. Reserved in the H8S/2212 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read.
3. Reserved in the H8S/2218 Series. If this bit is read, an undefined value will be read. This bit cannot be modified.

8.12.4 Pin Functions

Pin Functions of H8S/2218 Series

Port G pins also function as external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$) pins and bus control signal output ($\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.92 PG4 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
PG4DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	PG4 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS0}}$ output pin	PG4 input pin	PG4 output pin

Table 8.93 PG3 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
PG3DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	PG3 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS1}}$ output pin	PG3 input pin	PG3 output pin

Table 8.94 PG2 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
PG2DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	PG2 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS2}}$ output pin	PG2 input pin	PG2 output pin

Table 8.95 PG1 Pin Function

Operating Mode	Modes 4 to 6		Mode 7	
PG1DDR	0	1	0	1
Pin Function	PG1 input pin	$\overline{\text{CS3}}$ output pin	PG1 input pin	PG1 output pin
	$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input pin*			

Note: * When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

Port G pins also function as external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$) pins and H-UDI (TDI) pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 8.96 PG1 Pin Function

PG1DDR	0	1
Pin Function	PG1 input pin	PG1 output pin
	$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input pin*	

Note: * When this pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, this pin must not be used as an I/O pin for another function.

Table 8.97 PG0 Pin Function

EMLE	0		1
PG0DDR	0	1	—
Pin Function	PG0 input pin	PG0 output pin	TDI input pin

Section 9 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

This LSI has an on-chip 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU) that comprises three 16-bit timer channels. The function list of the 16-bit timer unit and its block diagram are shown in Table 9.1 and Figure 9.1, respectively.

9.1 Features

- Maximum 8-pulse input/output
- Selection of 8 counter input clocks for each channel
- The following operations can be set for each channel:
  - Waveform output at compare match
  - Input capture function
  - Counter clear operation
  - Synchronous operation:
  - Multiple timer counters (TCNT) can be written to simultaneously
  - Simultaneous clearing by compare match and input capture possible
  - Register simultaneous input/output possible by counter synchronous operation
  - Maximum of 7-phase PWM output possible by combination with synchronous operation
- Buffer operation settable for channel 0
- Phase counting mode settable independently for each of channels 1 and 2
- Fast access via internal 16-bit bus
- 13 interrupt sources
- Automatic transfer of register data
- A/D converter conversion start trigger can be generated
- Module stop mode can be set
- Baud rate clock for the SCI0 can be generated by channels 1 and 2

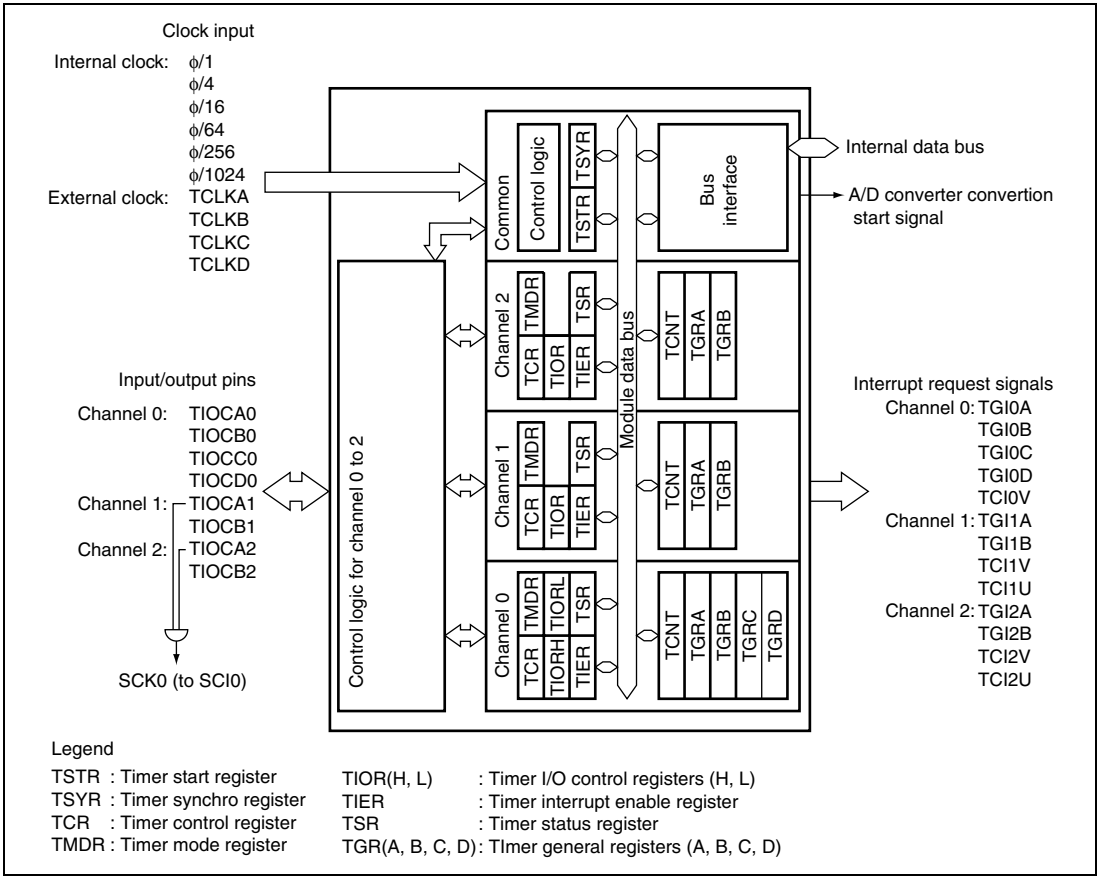


Figure 9.1 Block Diagram of TPU

Table 9.1 TPU Functions

Item		Channel 0	Channel 1	Channel 2
Count clock		φ/1	φ/1	φ/1
		φ/4	φ/4	φ/4
		φ/16	φ/16	φ/16
		φ/64	φ/64	φ/64
		TCLKA	φ/256	φ/1024
		TCLKB	TCLKA	TCLKA
		TCLKC	TCLKB	TCLKB
		TCLKD		TCLKC
General registers		TGRA_0	TGRA_1	TGRA_2
		TGRB_0	TGRB_1	TGRB_2
General registers/buffer registers		TGRC_0	–	–
		TGRC_0		
I/O pins		TIOCA0	TIOCA1	TIOCA2
		TIOCB0	TIOCB1	TIOCB2
		TIOCC0		
		TIOCD0		
Counter clear function		TGR compare match or input capture	TGR compare match or input capture	TGR compare match or input capture
Compare match output	0 output	O	O	O
	1 output	O	O	O
	Toggle output	O	O	O
Input capture function		O	O	O
Synchronous operation		O	O	O
PWM mode		O	O	O
Phase counting mode		–	O	O
Buffer operation		O	–	–

Item	Channel 0	Channel 1	Channel 2
A/D converter trigger	TGRA_0 compare match or input capture	TGRA_1 compare match or input capture	TGRA_2 compare match or input capture
PPG trigger	TGRA_0/TGRB_0 compare match or input capture	TGRA_1/TGRB_1 compare match or input capture	TGRA_2/TGRB_2 compare match or input capture
Interrupt sources	5 sources • Compare match or input capture 0A • Compare match or input capture 0B • Compare match or input capture 0C • Compare match or input capture 0D • Overflow	4 sources • Compare match or input capture 1A • Compare match or input capture 1B • Overflow • Underflow	4 sources • Compare match or input capture 2A • Compare match or input capture 2B • Overflow • Underflow

Legend

O: Possible

–: Not possible

9.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 9.2 Pin Configuration

Channel	Symbol	I/O	Function
All	TCLKA	Input	External clock A input pin (Channel 1 phase counting mode A phase input)
	TCLKB	Input	External clock B input pin (Channel 1 phase counting mode B phase input)
	TCLKC	Input	External clock C input pin (Channel 2 phase counting mode A phase input)
	TCLKD	Input	External clock D input pin (Channel 2 phase counting mode B phase input)
0	TIOCA0	I/O	TGRA_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	TIOCB0	I/O	TGRB_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	TIOCC0	I/O	TGRC_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	TIOCD0	I/O	TGRD_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
1	TIOCA1	I/O	TGRA_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	TIOCB1	I/O	TGRB_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
2	TIOCA2	I/O	TGRA_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	TIOCB2	I/O	TGRA_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin

9.3 Register Descriptions

The TPU has the following registers.

- Timer control register_0 (TCR_0)
- Timer mode register_0 (TMDR_0)
- Timer I/O control register H_0 (TIORH_0)
- Timer I/O control register L_0 (TIORL_0)
- Timer interrupt enable register_0 (TIER_0)
- Timer status register_0 (TSR_0)
- Timer counter_0 (TCNT_0)
- Timer general register A_0 (TGRA_0)
- Timer general register B_0 (TGRB_0)
- Timer general register C_0 (TGRC_0)
- Timer general register D_0 (TGRD_0)
- Timer control register_1 (TCR_1)
- Timer mode register_1 (TMDR_1)
- Timer I/O control register _1 (TIOR_1)
- Timer interrupt enable register_1 (TIER_1)
- Timer status register_1 (TSR_1)
- Timer counter_1 (TCNT_1)
- Timer general register A_1 (TGRA_1)
- Timer general register B_1 (TGRB_1)
- Timer control register_2 (TCR_2)
- Timer mode register_2 (TMDR_2)
- Timer I/O control register_2 (TIOR_2)
- Timer interrupt enable register_2 (TIER_2)
- Timer status register_2 (TSR_2)
- Timer counter_2 (TCNT_2)
- Timer general register A_2 (TGRA_2)
- Timer general register B_2 (TGRB_2)

Common Registers

- Timer start register (TSTR)
- Timer synchro register (TSYR)

9.3.1 Timer Control Register (TCR)

The TCR registers control the TCNT operation for each channel. The TPU has a total of three TCR registers, one for each channel (channel 0 to 2). TCR register settings should be made only when TCNT operation is stopped.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7	CCLR2	0	R/W	Counter Clear 2 to 0
6	CCLR1	0	R/W	These bits select the TCNTcounter clearing source. See tables 9.3 and 9.4 for details.
5	CCLR0	0	R/W	
4	CKEG1	0	R/W	Clock Edge 1 and 0
3	CKEG0	0	R/W	These bits select the input clock edge. When the input clock is counted using both edges, the input clock 1 and 2, ϕ/4 both edges = ϕ/2 rising edge). If phase counting mode is used on channels 1, 2, 4, and 5, this setting is ignored and the phase counting mode setting has priority. Internal clock edge selection is valid when the input clock is ϕ/4 or slower. This setting is ignored if the input clock is ϕ/1, or when overflow/underflow of another channel is selected. 00: Count at rising edge 01: Count at falling edge 1x: Count at both edges Legend x: Don't care
2	TPSC2	0	R/W	Time Prescaler 2 to 0
1	TPSC1	0	R/W	These bits select the TCNT counter clock. The clock source can be selected independently for each channel. See tables 9.5 to 9.7 for details.
0	TPSC0	0	R/W	

Table 9.3 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channel 0)

Channel	Bit 7 CCLR2	Bit 6 CCLR1	Bit 5 CCLR0	Description
0, 3	0	0	0	TCNT clearing disabled (Initial value)
			1	TCNT cleared by TGRA compare match/input capture
		1	0	TCNT cleared by TGRB compare match/input capture
			1	TCNT cleared by counter coearing for another channel performing synchronous/clearing synchronous operation*[1]
	1	0	0	TCNT clearing disabled
			1	TCNT cleared by TGRC compare match/input capture*[2]
		1	0	TCNT cleared by TGRD compare match/input capture*[2]
			1	TCNT cleared by counter clearing for another channel performing synchronous clearing/synchronous operation*[1]

Notes: 1. Synchronous operation setting is performed by setting the SYNC bit in TSYR to 1.
2. When TGRC or TGRD is used as a buffer register. TCNT is not cleared because the buffer register setting has priority, and compare match/input capture dose not occur.

Table 9.4 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channels 1 and 2)

Channel	Bit 7 Reserved*	Bit 6 CCLR1	Bit 5 CCLR0	Description
1, 2	0	0	0	TCNT clearing disabled
			1	TCNT cleared by TGRA compare match/input capture
		1	0	TCNT cleared by TGRB compare match/input capture
			1	TCNT cleared by counter clearing for another channel performing synchronous clearing/synchronous operation*[1]

Notes: 1. Synchronous operation setting is performed by setting the SYNC bit in TSYR to 1.
2. Bit 7 is reserved in channels 1 and 2. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.

Table 9.5 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 0)

Channel	Bit 2 TPSC2	Bit 1 TPSC1	Bit 0 TPSC0	Description
1	0	0	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/1
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/4
		1	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/16
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/64
	1	0	0	External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input
			1	External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input
		1	0	External clock: counts on TCLKC pin input
			1	External clock: counts on TCLKD pin input

Table 9.6 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 1)

Channel	Bit 2 TPSC2	Bit 1 TPSC1	Bit 0 TPSC0	Description
1	0	0	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/1
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/4
		1	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/16
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/64
	1	0	0	External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input
			1	External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input
		1	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/256
			1	Counts on TCNT2 overflow/underflow

Note: This setting is ignored when channel 1 is in phase counting mode.

Table 9.7 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 2)

Channel	Bit 2 TPSC2	Bit 1 TPSC1	Bit 0 TPSC0	Description
2	0	0	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/1
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/4
		1	0	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/16
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/64
	1	0	0	External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input
			1	External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input
		1	0	External clock: counts on TCLKC pin input
			1	Internal clock: counts on ϕ/1024

Note: This setting is ignored when channel 1 is in phase counting mode.

9.3.2 Timer Mode Register (TMDR)

The TMDR registers are used to set the operating mode for each channel. The TPU has three TMDR registers, one for each channel. TMDR register settings should be made only when TCNT operation is stopped.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7, 6	—	All 1	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified.
5	BFB	0	R/W	Buffer Operation B Specifies whether TGRB is to operate in the normal way, or TGRB and TGRD are to be used together for buffer operation. When TGRD is used as a buffer register. TGRD input capture/output compare is not generation. In channels 1 and 2, which have no TGRD, bit 5 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TGRB operates normally 1: TGRB and TGRD used together for buffer operation

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
4	BFA	0	R/W	Buffer Operation A Specifies whether TGRA is to operate in the normal way, or TGRA and TGRC are to be used together for buffer operation. When TGRC is used as a buffer register, TGRC input capture/output compare is not generated. In channels 1 and 2, which have no TGRC, bit 4 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TGRA operates normally 1: TGRA and TGRC used together for buffer operation
3	MD3	0	R/W	Modes 3 to 0 These bits are used to set the timer operating mode. MD3 is a reserved bit. In a write, the write value should always be 0. See table 9.8, MD3 to MD0 for details.
2	MD2	0	R/W	
1	MD1	0	R/W	
0	MD0	0	R/W	

Table 9.8 MD3 to MD0

Bit 3 MD3*[1]	Bit2 MD2*[2]	Bit 1 MD1	Bit 0 MD0	Description
0	0	0	0	Normal operation
			1	Reserved
		1	0	PWM mode 1
			1	PWM mode 2
	1	0	0	Phase counting mode 1
			1	Phase counting mode 2
		1	0	Phase counting mode 3
			1	Phase counting mode 4
1	×	×	×	—

Legend x: Don't care

Notes: 1. MD3 is reserved bit. In a write, it should be written with 0.
2. Phase counting mode cannot be set for channels 0 and 3. In this case, 0 should always be written to MD2.

9.3.3 Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR)

The TIOR registers control the TGR registers. The TPU has eight TIOR registers, two each for channels 0, and one each for channels 1 and 2. Care is required since TIOR is affected by the TMDR setting. The initial output specified by TIOR is valid when the counter is stopped (the CST bit in TSTR is cleared to 0). Note also that, in PWM mode 2, the output at the point at which the counter is cleared to 0 is specified. When TGRC or TGRD is designated for buffer operation, this setting is invalid and the register operates as a buffer register.

- **TIORH_0, TIOR_1, TIOR_2**

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7	IOB3	0	R/W	I/O Control B3 to B0
6	IOB2	0	R/W	Specify the function of TGRB.
5	IOB1	0	R/W	
4	IOB0	0	R/W	
3	IOA3	0	R/W	I/O Control A3 to A0
2	IOA2	0	R/W	Specify the function of TGRA.
1	IOA1	0	R/W	
0	IOA0	0	R/W	

- **TIORL_0**

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7	IOD3	0	R/W	I/O Control D3 to D0
6	IOD2	0	R/W	Specify the function of TGRD.
5	IOD1	0	R/W	
4	IOD0	0	R/W	
3	IOC3	0	R/W	I/O Control C3 to C0
2	IOC2	0	R/W	Specify the function of TGRC.
1	IOC1	0	R/W	
0	IOC0	0	R/W	

Table 9.9 TIORH_0 (channel 0)

				Description	
Bit 7 IOB3	**Bit 6 IOB2**	**Bit 5 IOB1**	**Bit 4 IOB0**	**TGRB_0 Function**	**TIOCB0 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend x : Don't care

Table 9.10 TIORH_0 (channel 0)

				Description	
Bit 3 IOA3	**Bit 2 IOA2**	**Bit 1 IOA1**	**Bit 0 IOA0**	**TGRA_0 Function**	**TIOCA0 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend x : Don't care

Table 9.11 TIORL_0 (channel 0)

				Description	
Bit 7 IOD3	**Bit 6 IOD2**	**Bit 5 IOD1**	**Bit 4 IOD0**	**TGRA_0 Function**	**TIOCD0 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output Compare register*	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register*	Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend x: Don't care

Note: When the BFB bit in TMDR_0 is set to 1 and TGRD_0 is used as a buffer register, this setting is invalid and input capture/output compare is not generated.

Table 9.12 TIORL_0 (channel 0)

				Description	
Bit 3 IOC3	**Bit 2 IOC2**	**Bit 1 IOC1**	**Bit 1 IOC0**	**TGRC_0 Function**	**TIOCA0 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend x : Don't care

Note: * When the BFA bit in TMDR_0 is set to 1and TGRC_0 is used as a buffer register, this setting is invalid and input capture/output compare is not generated.

Table 9.13 TIOR_1 (channel 1)

				Description	
Bit 7 IOB3	**Bit 6 IOB2**	**Bit 5 IOB1**	**Bit 4 IOB0**	**TGRB_1 Function**	**TIOCB1 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend x : Don't care

Table 9.14 TIOR_1 (channel 1)

				Description	
Bit 3 IOA3	**Bit 2 IOA2**	**Bit 1 IOA1**	**Bit 0 IOA0**	**TGRA_1 Function**	**TIOCA0 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	0	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at both edges
	1	×	×		Setting prohibited

Legend × : Don't care

Table 9.15 TIOR_2 (channel 2)

				Description	
Bit 7 IOB3	**Bit 6 IOB2**	**Bit 5 IOB1**	**Bit 4 IOB0**	**TGRB_2 Function**	**TIOCB2 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	×	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at both edges

Legend x : Don't care

Table 9.16 TIOR_2 (channel 2)

				Description	
Bit 3 IOA3	**Bit 2 IOA2**	**Bit 1 IOA1**	**Bit 0 IOA0**	**TGRA_2 Function**	**TIOCA2 Pin Function**
0	0	0	0	Output compare register	Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match
	1	0	0		Output disabled
			1		Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match
		1	0		Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match
			1		Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match
1	×	0	0	Input capture register	Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at rising edge
			1		Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at falling edge
		1	×		Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at both edges

Legend x : Don't care

9.3.4 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER)

The TIER registers control enabling or disabling of interrupt requests for each channel. The TPU has three TIER registers, one for each channel.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7	TTGE	0	R/W	A/D Conversion Start Request Enable Enables or disables generation of A/D conversion start requests by TGRA input capture/compare match. 0: A/D conversion start request generation disabled 1: A/D conversion start request generation enabled
6	–	1	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 1 and cannot be modified.
5	TCIEU	0	R/W	Underflow Interrupt Enable Enables or disables interrupt requests (TCU) by the TCFU flag when the TCFU flag in TSR is set to 1 in channels 1 and 2. In channel 0, bit 5 is reserved. 0: Interrupt requests (TCIU) by TCFU disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TCIU) by TCFU enabled
4	TCIEV	0	R/W	Overflow Interrupt Enable Enables or disables interrupt requests (TCIV) by the TCFV flag when the TCFV flag in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TCIV) by TCFV disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TCIV) by TCFV enabled
3	TGIED	0	R/W	TGR Interrupt Enable D Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGID) by the TGFD bit when the TGFD bit in TSR is set to 1 in channel 0. In channels 1 and 2, bit 3 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: Interrupt requests (TGID) by TGFD disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGID) by TGFD enabled.
2	TGIEC	0	R/W	TGR Interrupt Enable C Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIC) by the TGFC bit when the TGFC bit in TSR is set to 1 in channel 0. In channels 1 and 2, bit 2 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIC) by TGFC disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIC) by TGFC enabled

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
1	TGIEB	0	R/W	TGR Interrupt Enable B Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIB) by the TGFB bit when the TGFB bit in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIB) by TGFB disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIB) by TGFB enabled
0	TGIEA	0	R/W	TGR Interrupt Enable A Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIA) by the TGFA bit when the TGFA bit in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIA) by TGFA disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIA) by TGFA enabled

9.3.5 Timer Status Register (TSR)

The TSR registers indicate the status of each channel. The TPU has three TSR registers, one for each channel.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
7	TCFD	1	R	Count Direction Flag Status flag that shows the direction in which TCNT counts in channel 1 and 2. In channel 0, bit 7 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TCNT counts down 1: TCNT counts up
6	–	1	–	Reserved This bit is always read as 1 and cannot be modified.
5	TCFU	0	R/(W)*	Underflow Flag Status flag that indicates that TCNT underflow has occurred when channels 1 and 2 are set to phase counting mode. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channel 0, bit 5 is reserved. [Setting condition] When the TCNT value underflows (change from H'0000 to H'FFFF) [Clearing condition] When 0 is written to TCFU after reading TCFU = 1

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
4	TCFV	0	R/(W)*	Overflow Flag Status flag that indicates that TCNT overflow has occurred. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. [Setting condition] When the TCNT value overflows (change from H'FFFF to H'0000) [Clearing condition] When 0 is written to TCFV after reading TCFV = 1
3	TGFD	0	R/(W)*	Input Capture/Output Compare Flag D Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRD input capture or compare match in channel 0. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channels 1 and 2, bit 3 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. [Setting conditions] • When TCNT = TGRD while TGRD is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRD by input capture signal while TGRD is functioning as input capture register [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to TGFD after reading TGFD = 1
2	TGFC	0	R/(W)*	Input Capture/Output Compare Flag C Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRC input capture or compare match in channel 0. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channels 1 and 2, bit 2 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. [Setting conditions] • When the TCNT = TGRC while TGRC is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRC by input capture signal while TGRC is functioning as input capture register [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to TGFC after reading TGFC = 1

Bit	Bit Name	Initial value	R/W	Description
1	TGFB	0	R/(W)*	Input Capture/Output Compare Flag B Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRB input capture or compare match. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. [Setting conditions] • When TCNT = TGRB while TGRB is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRB by input capture signal while TGRB is functioning as input capture register [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to TGFB after reading TGFB = 1
0	TGFA	0	R/(W)*	Input Capture/Output Compare Flag A Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRA input capture or compare match. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. [Setting conditions] • When TCNT = TGRA while TGRA is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRA by input capture signal while TGRA is functioning as input capture register [Clearing conditions] • When DMAC is activated by TGIA interrupt while DTA bit of DMABCR in DMAC is 1 • When 0 is written to TGFA after reading TGFA = 1

Note: * Only 0 can be written to clear the flags.

9.3.6 Timer Counter (TCNT)

The TCNT registers are 16-bit counters. The TPU has three TCNT counters, one for each channel. The TCNT counters are initialized to H'0000 by a reset, and in hardware standby mode. The TCNT counters cannot be accessed in 8-bit units; they must always be accessed as a 16-bit unit.

9.3.7 Timer General Register (TGR)

The TGR registers are 16-bit registers with a dual function as output compare and input capture registers. The TPU has 16 TGR registers, four each for channel 0 and two each for channels 1 and 2. TGRC and TGRD for channel 0 can also be designated for operation as buffer registers. The TGR registers cannot be accessed in 8-bit units; they must always be accessed as a 16-bit unit. TGR buffer register combinations are TGRA—TGRC and TGRB—TGRD.

9.3.8 Timer Start Register (TSTR)

TSTR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects operation/stoppage for channels 0 to 2. When setting the operating mode in TMDR or setting the count clock in TCR, first stop the TCNT counter.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 3	–	0	–	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
2	CST2	0	R/W	Counter Start 2 to 0 (CST2 to CST0)
1	CST1	0	R/W	These bits select operation or stoppage for TCNT.
0	CST0	0	R/W	If 0 is written to the CST bit during operation with the TIOC pin designated for output, the counter stops but the TIOC pin output compare output level is retained. If TIOR is written to when the CST bit is cleared to 0, the pin output level will be changed to the set initial output value. 0: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 count operation is stopped 1: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 performs count operation

9.3.9 Timer Synchro Register (TSYR)

TSYR selects independent operation or synchronous operation for the channel 0 to 2 TCNT counters. A channel performs synchronous operation when the corresponding bit in TSYR is set to 1.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 3	–	0	–	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
2	SYNC2	0	R/W	Timer Synchro 2 to 0
1	SYNC 1	0	R/W	These bits select whether operation is independent of or synchronized with other channels. When synchronous operation is selected, synchronous presetting of multiple channels, and synchronous clearing through counter clearing on another channel are possible. To set synchronous operation, the SYNC bits for at least two channels must be set to 1. To set synchronous clearing, in addition to the SYNC bit, the TCNT clearing source must also be set by means of bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR. 0: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 operates independently (TCNT presetting /clearing is unrelated to other channels) 1: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 performs synchronous operation TCNT synchronous presetting/synchronous clearing is possible
0	SYNC 0	0	R/W	

9.4 Interface to Bus Master

9.4.1 16-Bit Registers

TCNT and TGR are 16-bit registers. As the data bus to the bus master is 16 bits wide, these registers can be read and written to in 16-bit units.

These registers cannot be read from or written to in 8-bit units; 16-bit access must always be used.

An example of 16-bit register access operation is shown in figure 9.2.

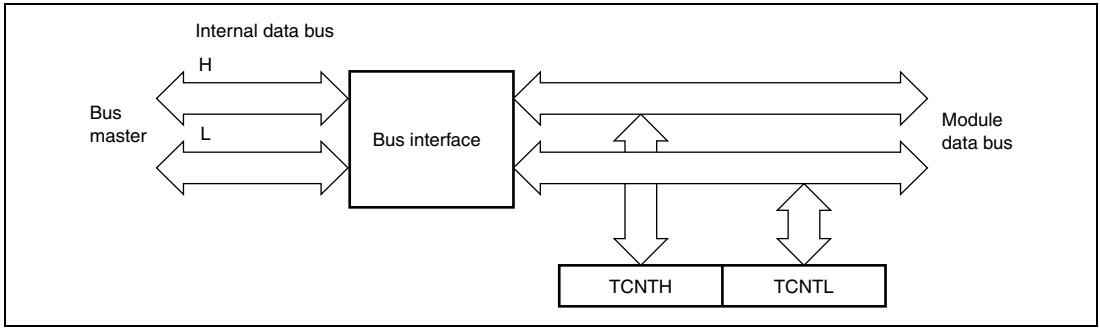


Figure 9.2 16-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCNT (16 Bits)]

9.4.2 8-Bit Registers

Registers other than TCNT and TGR are 8-bit. As the data bus to the CPU is 16 bits wide, these registers can be read and written to in 16-bit units. They can also be read and written to in 8-bit units.

Examples of 8-bit register access operation are shown in figures 9.3, 9.4, and 9.5.

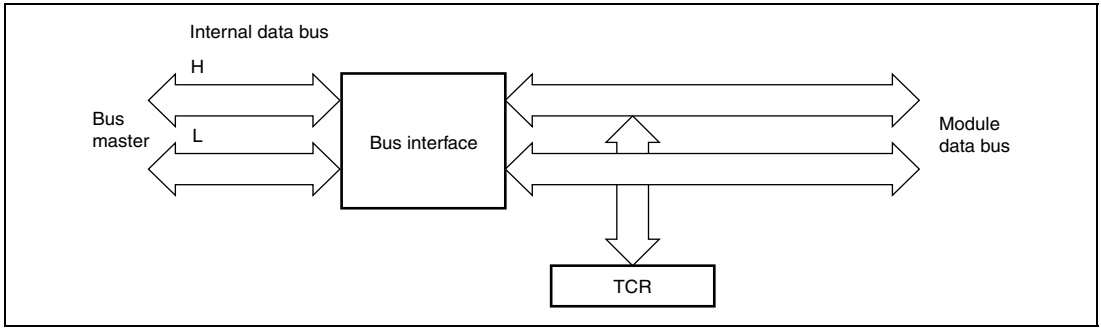


Figure 9.3 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR (Upper 8 Bits)]

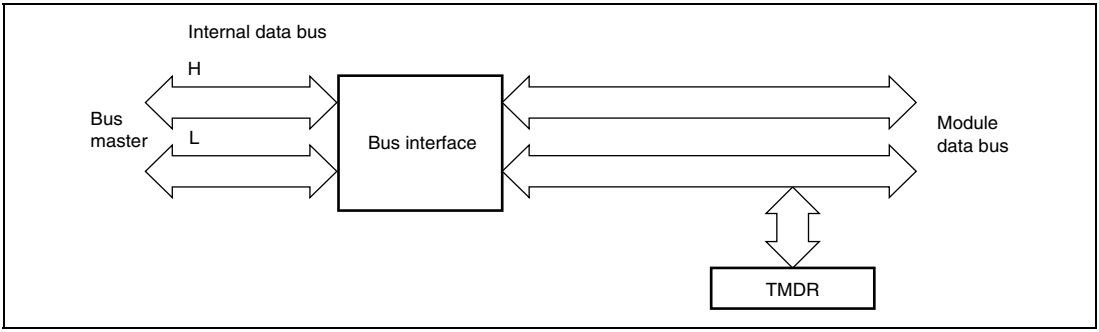


Figure 9.4 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TMDR (Lower 8 Bits)]

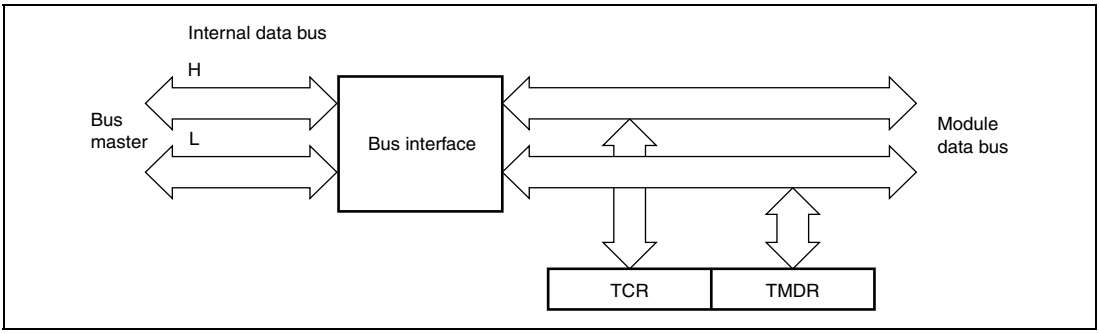


Figure 9.5 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR and TMDR (16 Bits)]

9.5 Operation

9.5.1 Basic Functions

Each channel has a TCNT and TGR. TCNT performs up-counting, and is also capable of free-running operation, synchronous counting, and external event counting. Each TGR can be used as an input capture register or output compare register.

Counter Operation: When one of bits CST0 to CST2 is set to 1 in TSTR, the TCNT counter for the corresponding channel starts counting. TCNT can operate as a free-running counter, periodic counter, and so on.

1. Example of count operation setting procedure Figure 9.6 shows an example of the count operation setting procedure.

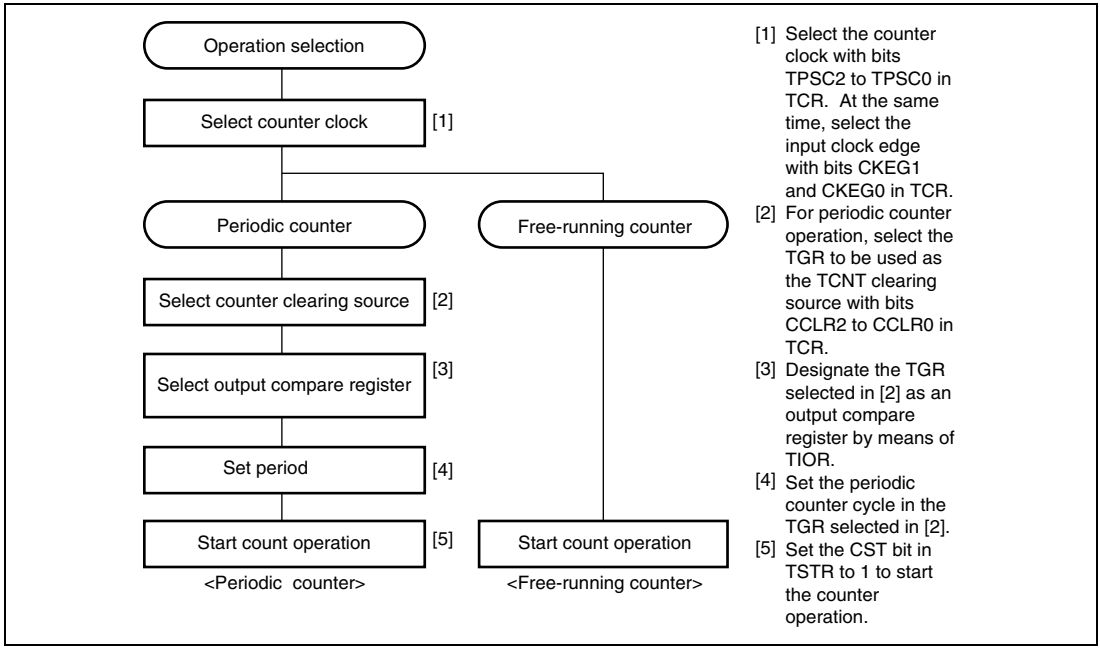


Figure 9.6 Example of Counter Operation Setting Procedure

2. Free-running count operation and periodic count operation

   Immediately after a reset, the TPU's TCNT counters are all designated as free-running counters. When the relevant bit in TSTR is set to 1 the corresponding TCNT counter starts up-count operation as a free-running counter. When TCNT overflows (from H'FFFF to H'0000), the TCFV bit in TSR is set to 1. If the value of the corresponding TCIEV bit in TIER is 1 at this point, the TPU requests an interrupt. After overflow, TCNT starts counting up again from H'0000. Figure 9.7 illustrates free-running counter operation.

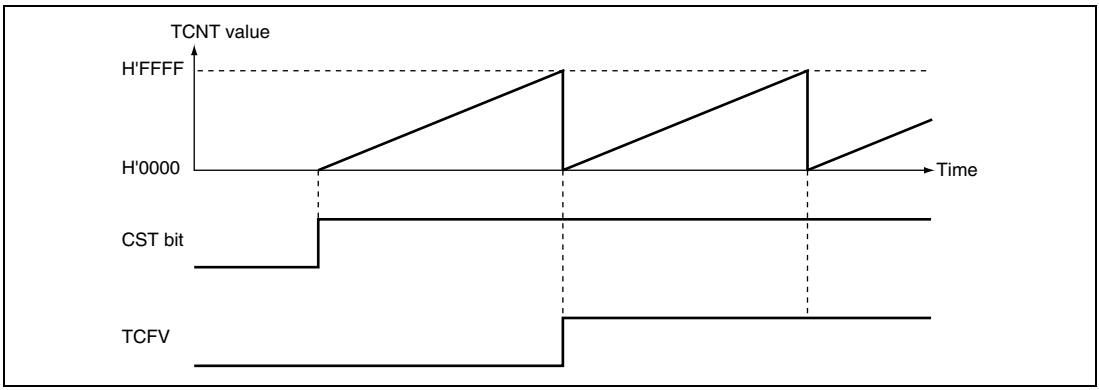


Figure 9.7 Free-Running Counter Operation

When compare match is selected as the TCNT clearing source, the TCNT counter for the relevant channel performs periodic count operation. The TGR register for setting the period is designated as an output compare register, and counter clearing by compare match is selected by means of bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR. After the settings have been made, TCNT starts up-count operation as periodic counter when the corresponding bit in TSTR is set to 1. When the count value matches the value in TGR, the TGF bit in TSR is set to 1 and TCNT is cleared to H'0000. If the value of the corresponding TGIE bit in TIER is 1 at this point, the TPU requests an interrupt. After a compare match, TCNT starts counting up again from H'0000. Figure 9.8 illustrates periodic counter operation.

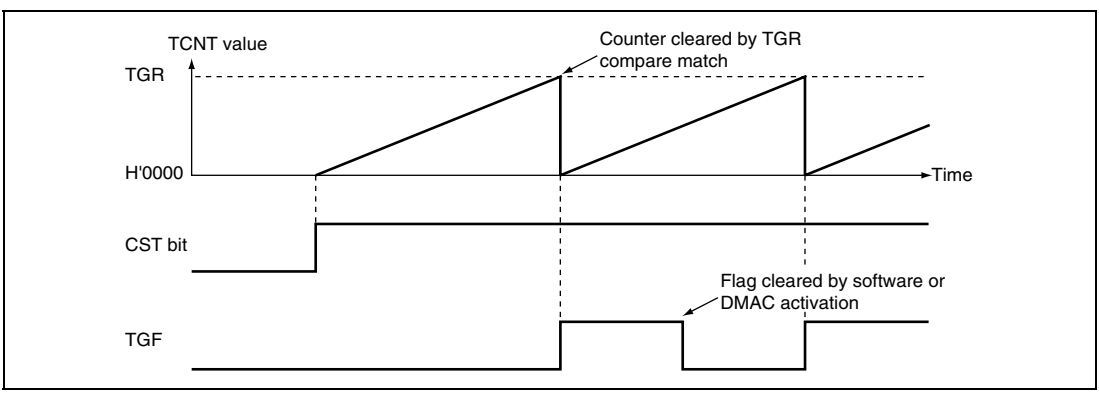


Figure 9.8 Periodic Counter Operation

Waveform Output by Compare Match: The TPU can perform 0, 1, or toggle output from the corresponding output pin using compare match.

1. Example of setting procedure for waveform output by compare match

   Figure 9.9 shows an example of the setting procedure for waveform output by compare match.

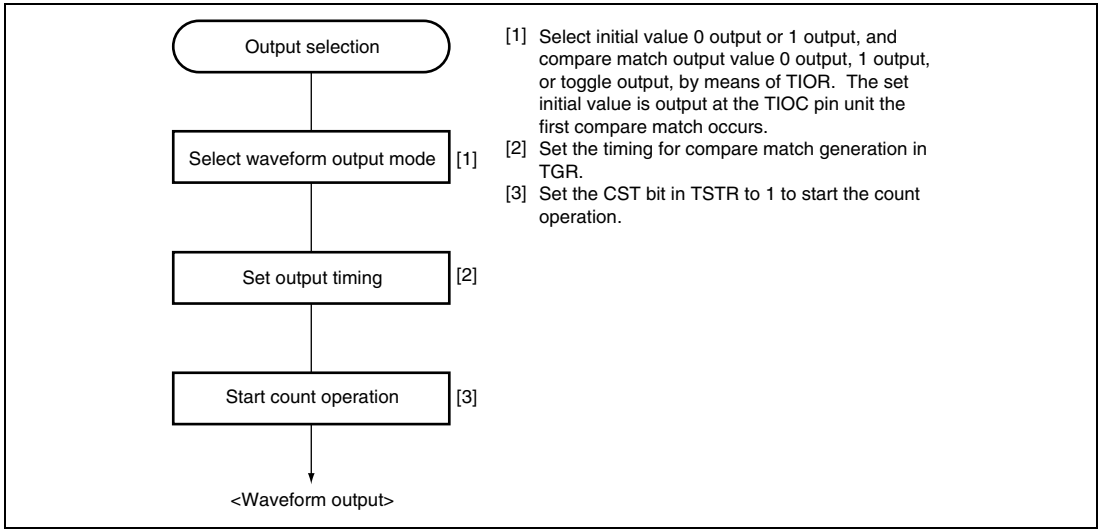


Figure 9.9 Example of Setting Procedure for Waveform Output by Compare Match

2. Examples of waveform output operation Figure 9.10 shows an example of 0 output/1 output. In this example TCNT has been designated as a free-running counter, and settings have been made so that 1 is output by compare match A, and 0 is output by compare match B. When the set level and the pin level coincide, the pin level does not change.

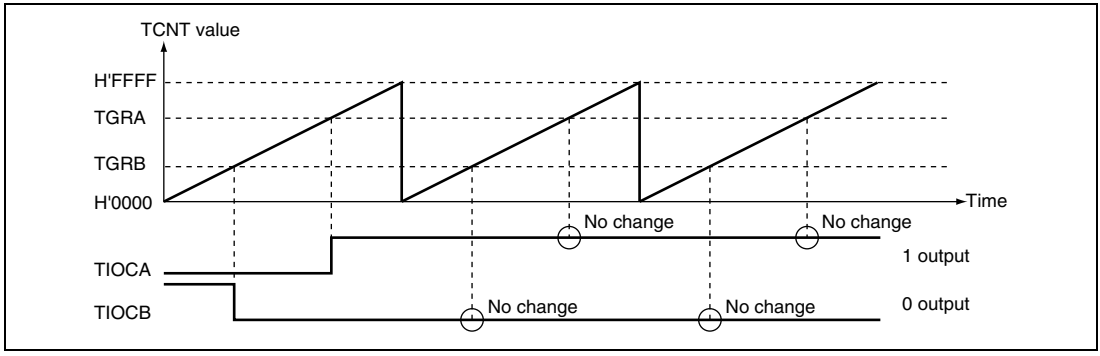


Figure 9.10 Example of 0 Output/1 Output Operation

Figure 9.11 shows an example of toggle output.

In this example TCNT has been designated as a periodic counter (with counter clearing performed by compare match B), and settings have been made so that output is toggled by both compare match A and compare match B.

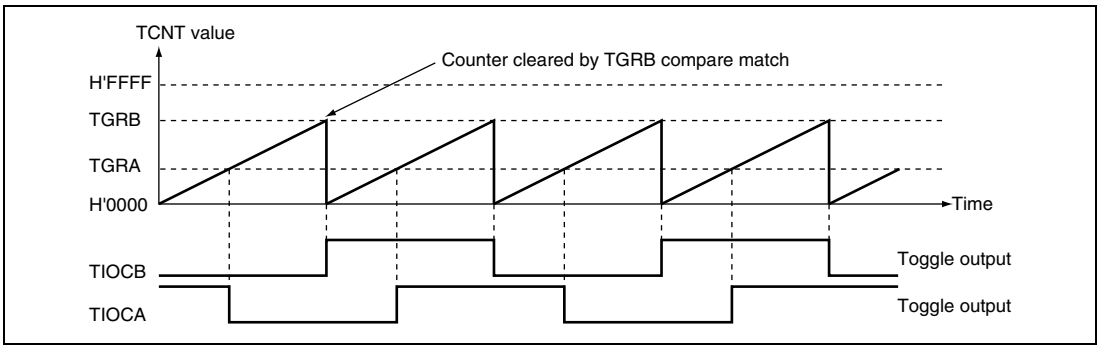


Figure 9.11 Example of Toggle Output Operation

Input Capture Function: The TCNT value can be transferred to TGR on detection of the TIOC pin input edge. Rising edge, falling edge, or both edges can be selected as the detected edge.

1. Example of input capture operation setting procedure Figure 9.12 shows an example of the input capture operation setting procedure.

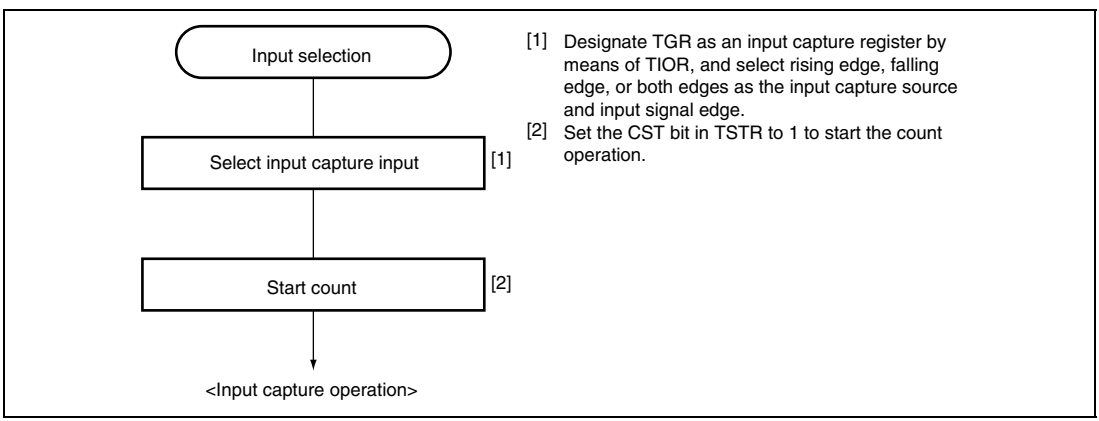


Figure 9.12 Example of Input Capture Operation Setting Procedure

2. Example of input capture operation Figure 9.13 shows an example of input capture operation. In this example both rising and falling edges have been selected as the TIOCA pin input capture input edge, falling edge has been selected as the TIOCB pin input capture input edge, and counter clearing by TGRB input capture has been designated for TCNT.

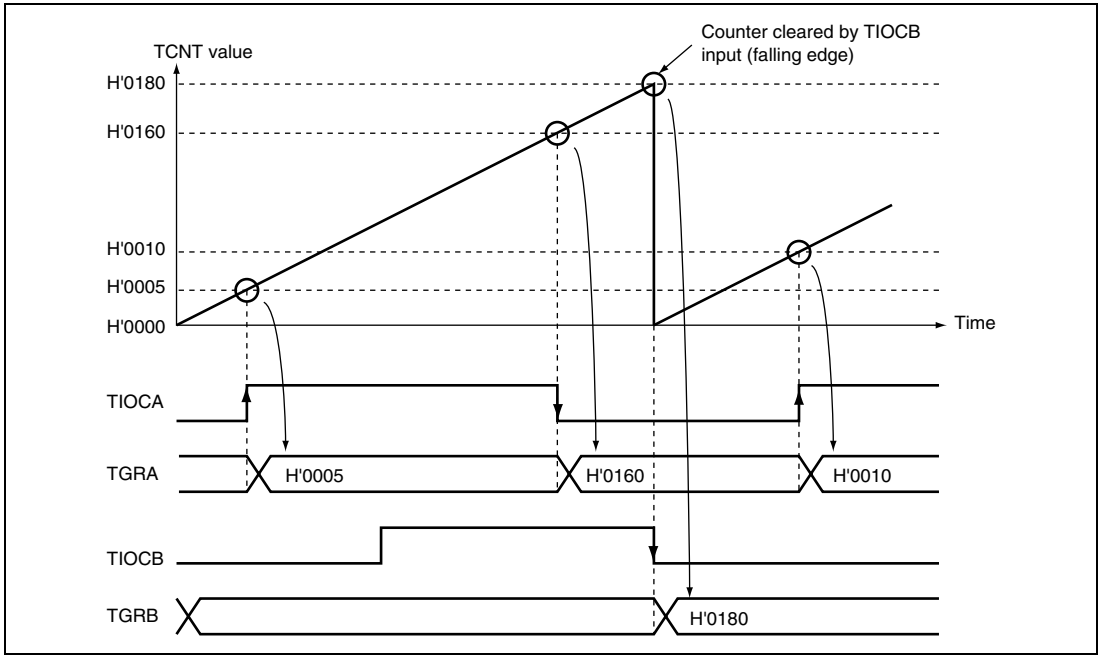
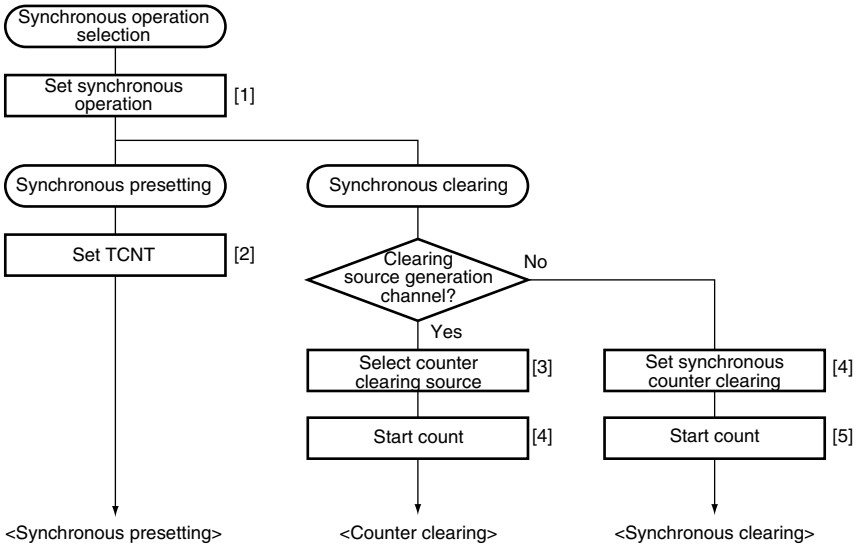


Figure 9.13 Example of Input Capture Operation

9.5.2 Synchronous Operation

In synchronous operation, the values in a number of TCNT counters can be rewritten simultaneously (synchronous presetting). Also, a number of TCNT counters can be cleared simultaneously by making the appropriate setting in TCR (synchronous clearing). Synchronous operation enables TGR to be incremented with respect to a single time base. Channels 0 to 2 can all be designated for synchronous operation.

Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure: Figure 9.14 shows an example of the synchronous operation setting procedure.



[1] Set to 1 the SYNC bits in TSYR corresponding to the channels to be designated for synchronous operation.
[2] When the TCNT counter of any of the channels designated for synchronous operation is written to, the same value is simultaneously written to the other TCNT counters.
[3] Use bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR to specify TCNT clearing by input capture/output compare, etc.
[4] Use bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR to designate synchronous clearing for the counter clearing source.
[5] Set to 1 the CST bits in TSTR for the relevant channels, to start the count operation.

Figure 9.14 Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure

Example of Synchronous Operation: Figure 9.15 shows an example of synchronous operation.

In this example, synchronous operation and PWM mode 1 have been designated for channels 0 to 2, TGRB_0 compare match has been set as the channel 0 counter clearing source, and synchronous clearing has been set for the channel 1 and 2 counter clearing source. Three-phase PWM waveforms are output from pins TIOC0A, TIOC1A, and TIOC2A. At this time, synchronous presetting, and synchronous clearing by TGRB_0 compare match, is performed for channel 0 to 2 TCNT counters, and the data set in TGRB_0 is used as the PWM cycle. For details of PWM modes, see section 9.5.4, PWM Modes.

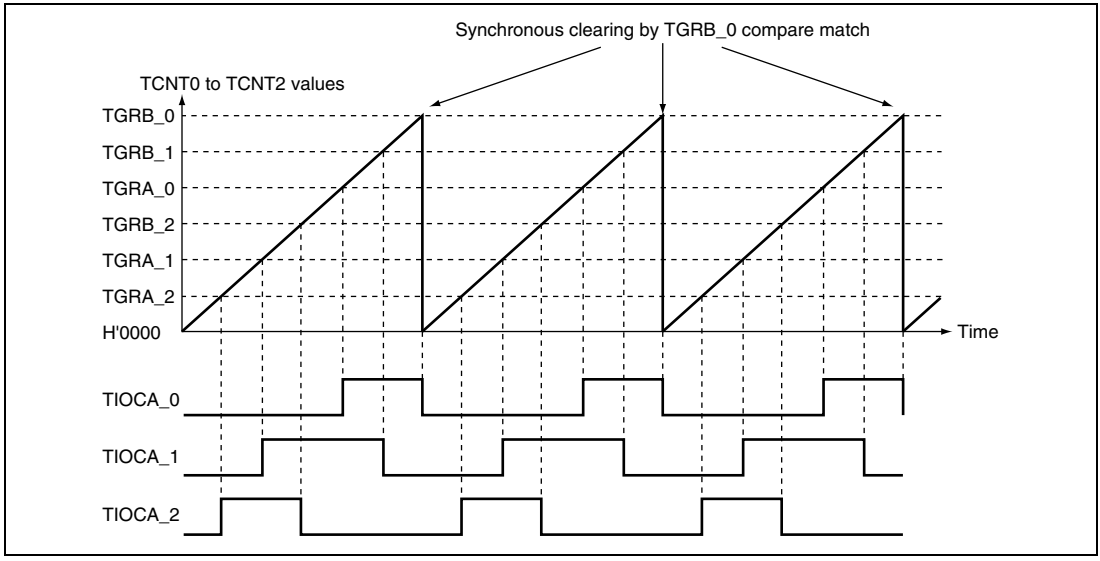


Figure 9.15 Example of Synchronous Operation

9.5.3 Buffer Operation

Buffer operation, provided for channels 0 and 3, enables TGRC and TGRD to be used as buffer registers. Buffer operation differs depending on whether TGR has been designated as an input capture register or as a compare match register. Table 9.17 shows the register combinations used in buffer operation.

Table 9.17 Register Combinations in Buffer Operation

Channel	Timer General Register	Buffer Register
0	TGRA_0	TGRC_0
	TGRB_0	TGRD_0

- When TGR is an output compare register

  When a compare match occurs, the value in the buffer register for the corresponding channel is transferred to the timer general register. This operation is illustrated in figure 9.16.

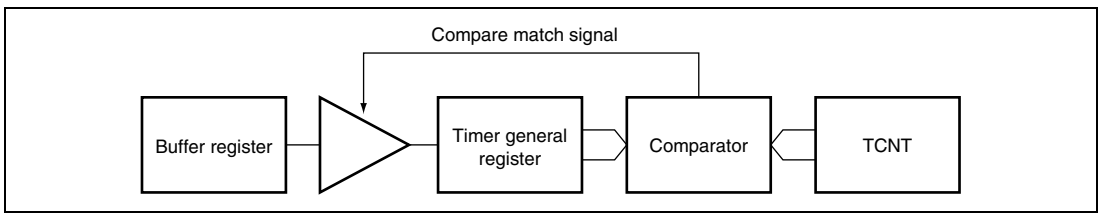


Figure 9.16 Compare Match Buffer Operation

- When TGR is an input capture register

  When input capture occurs, the value in TCNT is transferred to TGR and the value previously held in the timer general register is transferred to the buffer register. This operation is illustrated in figure 9.17.

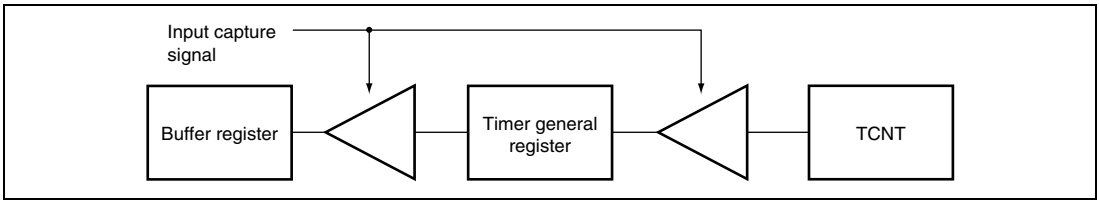


Figure 9.17 Input Capture Buffer Operation

Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure: Figure 9.18 shows an example of the buffer operation setting procedure.

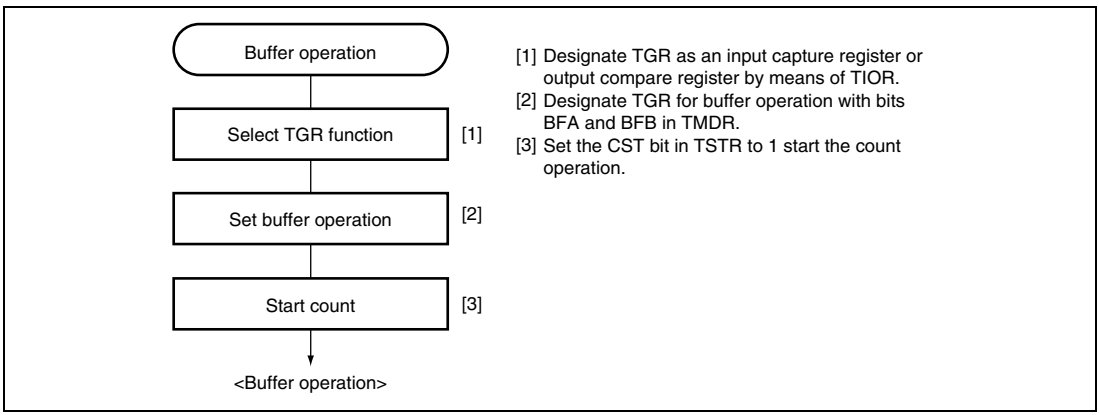


Figure 9.18 Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure

Examples of Buffer Operation

1. When TGR is an output compare register

   Figure 9.19 shows an operation example in which PWM mode 1 has been designated for channel 0, and buffer operation has been designated for TGRA and TGRC. The settings used in this example are TCNT clearing by compare match B, 1 output at compare match A, and 0 output at compare match B. As buffer operation has been set, when compare match A occurs the output changes and the value in buffer register TGRC is simultaneously transferred to timer general register TGRA. This operation is repeated each time compare match A occurs. For details of PWM modes, see section 9.5.4, PWM Modes.

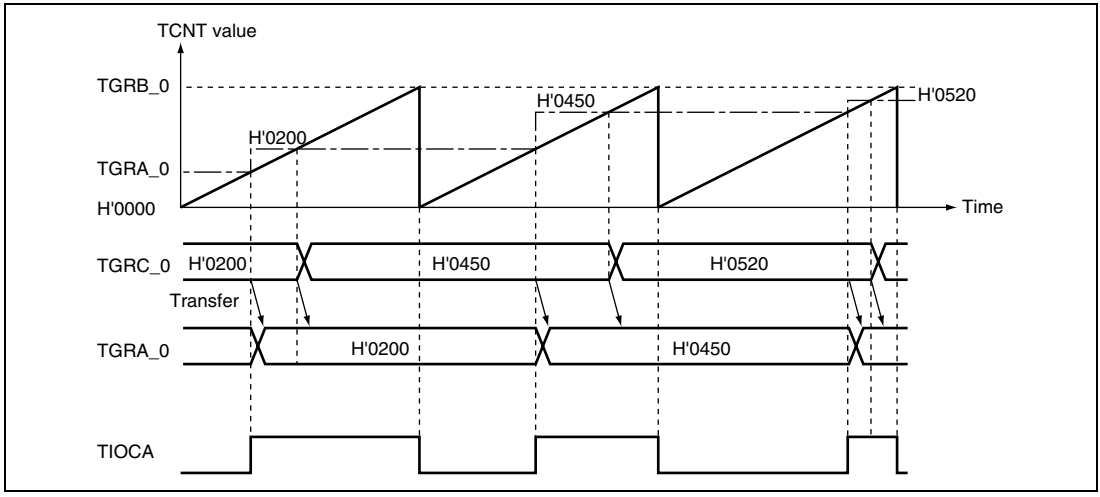


Figure 9.19 Example of Buffer Operation (1)

2. When TGR is an input capture register

   Figure 9.20 shows an operation example in which TGRA has been designated as an input capture register, and buffer operation has been designated for TGRA and TGRC. Counter clearing by TGRA input capture has been set for TCNT, and both rising and falling edges have been selected as the TIOCA pin input capture input edge. As buffer operation has been set, when the TCNT value is stored in TGRA upon occurrence of input capture A, the value previously stored in TGRA is simultaneously transferred to TGRC.

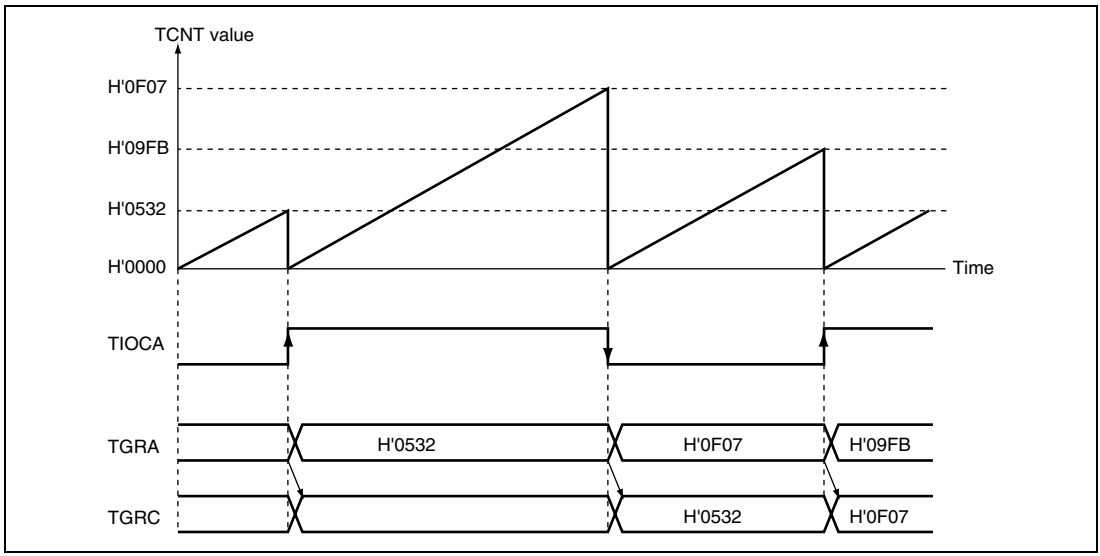


Figure 9.20 Example of Buffer Operation (2)

9.5.4 PWM Modes

In PWM mode, PWM waveforms are output from the output pins. 0, 1, or toggle output can be selected as the output level in response to compare match of each TGR. Settings of TGR registers can output a PWM waveform in the range of 0 % to 100 % duty. Designating TGR compare match as the counter clearing source enables the period to be set in that register. All channels can be designated for PWM mode independently. Synchronous operation is also possible. There are two PWM modes, as described below.

- PWM mode 1

  PWM output is generated from the TIOCA and TIOCC pins by pairing TGRA with TGRB and TGRC with TGRD. The output specified by bits IOA3 to IOA0 and IOC3 to IOC0 in TIOR is output from the TIOCA and TIOCC pins at compare matches A and C, and the output specified by bits IOB3 to IOB0 and IOD3 to IOD0 in TIOR is output at compare matches B and D. The initial output value is the value set in TGRA or TGRC. If the set values of paired TGRs are identical, the output value does not change when a compare match occurs. In PWM mode 1, a maximum 4-phase PWM output is possible.
- PWM mode 2

  PWM output is generated using one TGR as the cycle register and the others as duty registers. The output specified in TIOR is performed by means of compare matches. Upon counter clearing by a synchronization register compare match, the output value of each pin is the initial value set in TIOR. If the set values of the cycle and duty registers are identical, the output value does not change when a compare match occurs. In PWM mode 2, a maximum 7-phase PWM output is possible by combined use with synchronous operation. The correspondence between PWM output pins and registers is shown in table 9.18.

Table 9.18 PWM Output Registers and Output Pins

		Output Pins	
Channel	**Registers**	**PWM Mode 1**	**PWM Mode 2**
0	TGRA_0	TIOCA0	TIOCA0
	TGRB_0		TIOCB0
	TGRC_0	TIOCC0	TIOCC0
	TGRD_0		TIOCD0
1	TGRA_1	TIOCA1	TIOCA1
	TGRB_1		TIOCB1
2	TGRA_2	TIOCA2	TIOCA2
	TGRB_2		TIOCB2

Note: In PWM mode 2, PWM output is not possible for the TGR register in which the period is set.

Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure: Figure 9.21 shows an example of the PWM mode setting procedure.

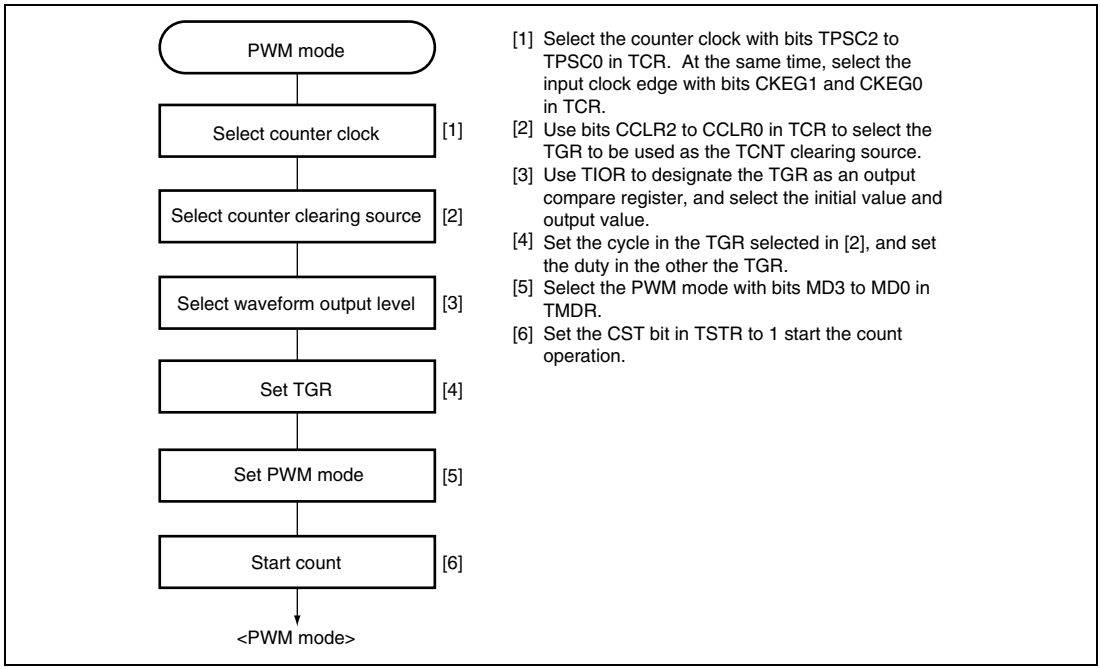


Figure 9.21 Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure

Examples of PWM Mode Operation: Figure 9.22 shows an example of PWM mode 1 operation.

In this example, TGRA compare match is set as the TCNT clearing source, 0 is set for the TGRA initial output value and output value, and 1 is set as the TGRB output value. In this case, the value set in TGRA is used as the period, and the values set in TGRB registers as the duty.

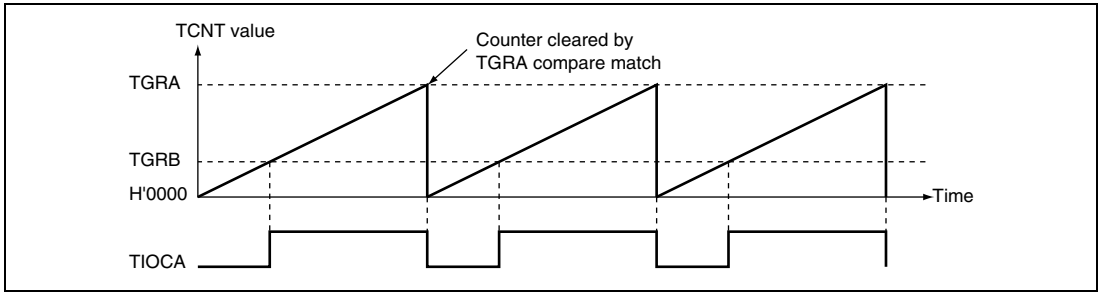


Figure 9.22 Example of PWM Mode Operation (1)

Figure 9.23 shows an example of PWM mode 2 operation. In this example, synchronous operation is designated for channels 0 and 1, TGRB_1 compare match is set as the TCNT clearing source, and 0 is set for the initial output value and 1 for the output value of the other TGR registers (TGRA_0 to TGRD_0, TGRA_1), to output a 5-phase PWM waveform. In this case, the value set in TGRB_1 is used as the cycle, and the values set in the other TGRs as the duty.

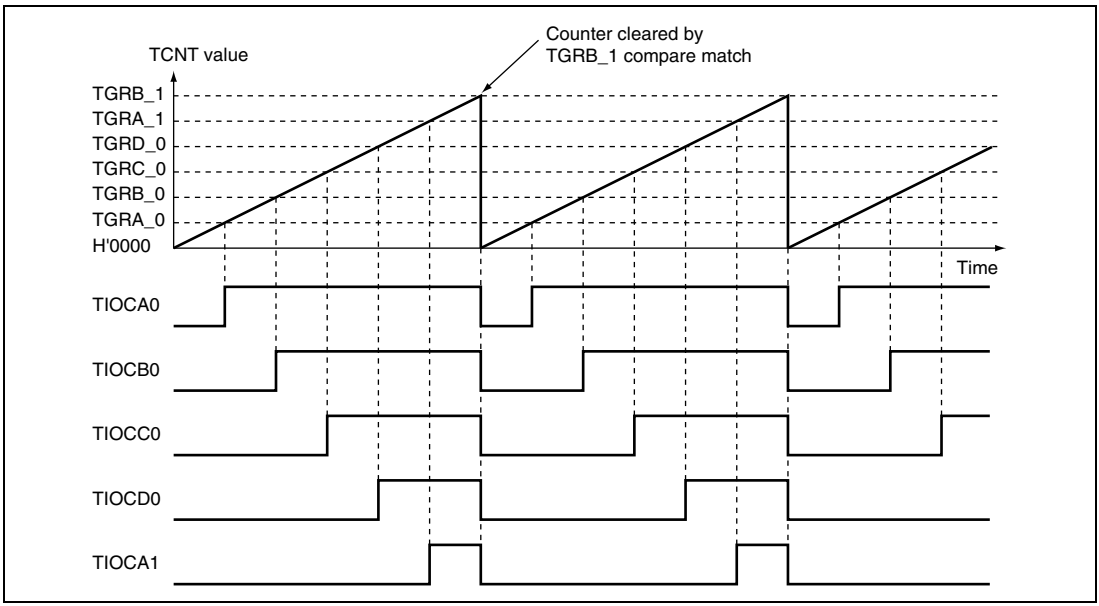


Figure 9.23 Example of PWM Mode Operation (2)

Figure 9.24 shows examples of PWM waveform output with 0% duty and 100% duty in PWM mode.

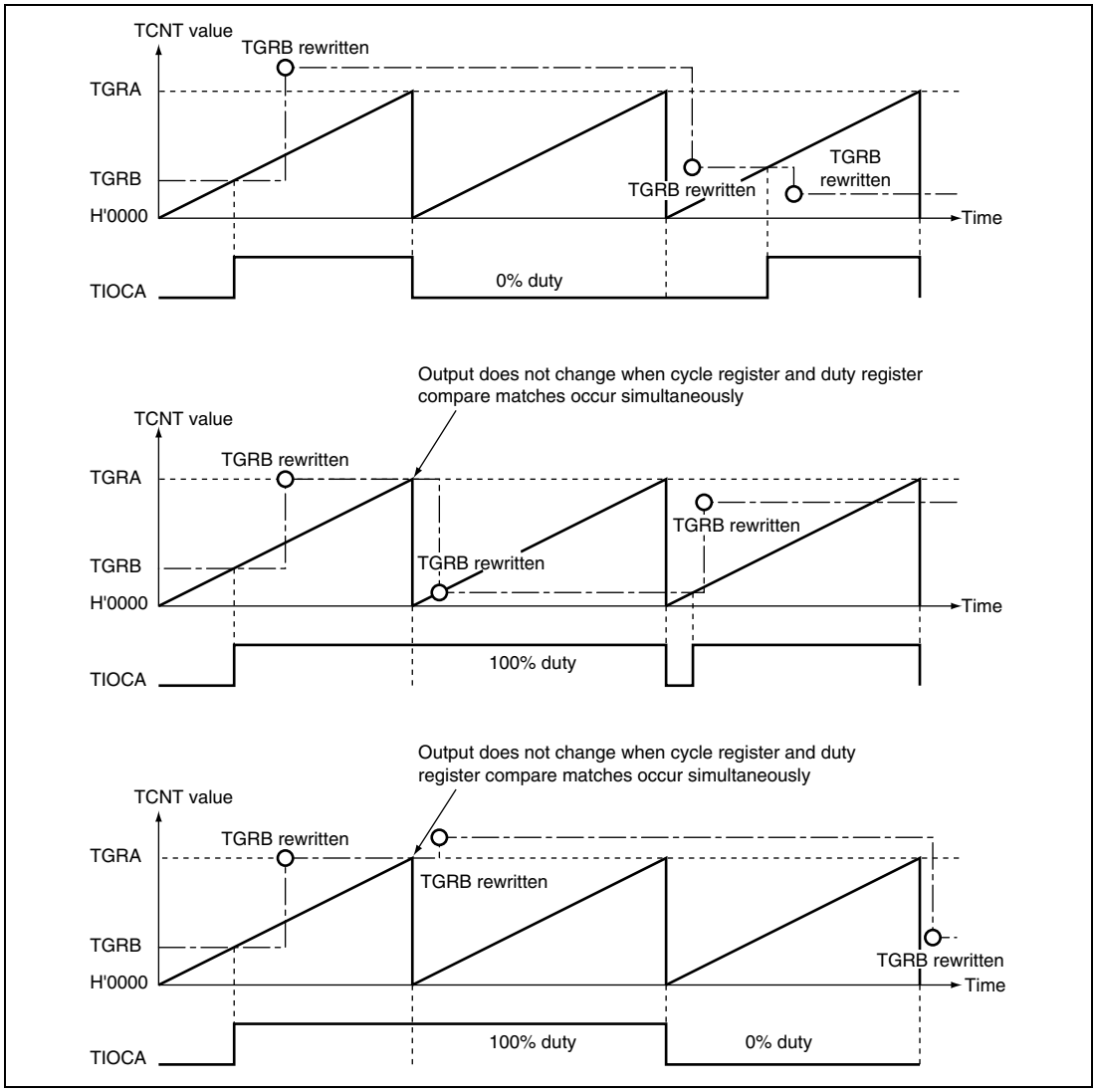


Figure 9.24 Example of PWM Mode Operation (3)

9.5.5 Phase Counting Mode

In phase counting mode, the phase difference between two external clock inputs is detected and TCNT is incremented/decremented accordingly. This mode can be set for channels 1 and 2. When phase counting mode is set, an external clock is selected as the counter input clock and TCNT operates as an up/down-counter regardless of the setting of bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 and bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 in TCR. However, the functions of bits CCLR1 and CCLR0 in TCR, and of TIOR, TIER, and TGR are valid, and input capture/compare match and interrupt functions can be used. This can be used for two-phase encoder pulse input. When overflow occurs while TCNT is counting up, the TCFV flag in TSR is set; when underflow occurs while TCNT is counting down, the TCFU flag is set. The TCFD bit in TSR is the count direction flag. Reading the TCFD flag provides an indication of whether TCNT is counting up or down. Table 9.19 shows the correspondence between external clock pins and channels.

Table 9.19 Phase Counting Mode Clock Input Pins

	External Clock Pins	
Channels	**A-Phase**	**B-Phase**
When channel 1 is set to phase counting mode	TCLKA	TCLKB
When channel 2 is set to phase counting mode	TCLKC	TCLKD

Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure: Figure 9.25 shows an example of the phase counting mode setting procedure.

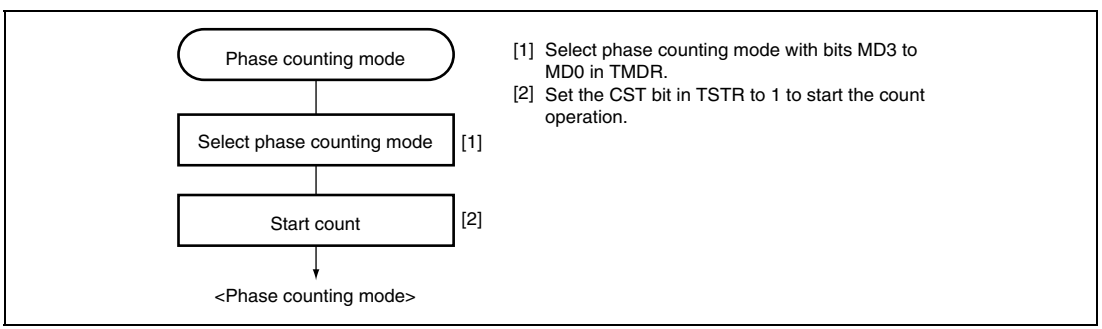


Figure 9.25 Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure

Examples of Phase Counting Mode Operation: In phase counting mode, TCNT counts up or down according to the phase difference between two external clocks. There are four modes, according to the count conditions.

1. Phase counting mode 1

   Figure 9.26 shows an example of phase counting mode 1 operation, and table 9.20 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

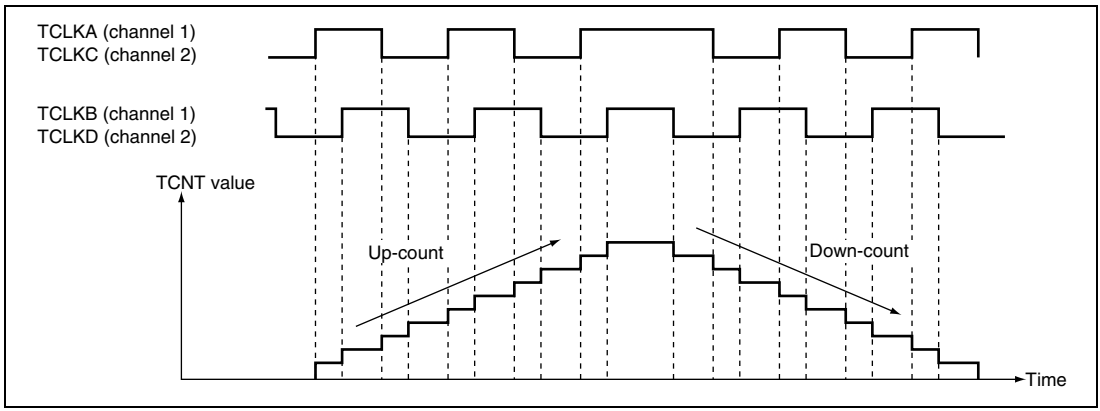


Figure 9.26 Example of Phase Counting Mode 1 Operation

Table 9.20 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 1

TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2)	TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2)	Operation
High level	↑	Up-count
Low level	↓	
↑	Low level	
↓	High level	
High level	↓	Down-count
Low level	↑	
↑	High level	
↓	Low level	

Legend
↑ : Rising edge
↓ : Falling edge

2. Phase counting mode 2

Figure 9.27 shows an example of phase counting mode 2 operation, and table 9.21 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

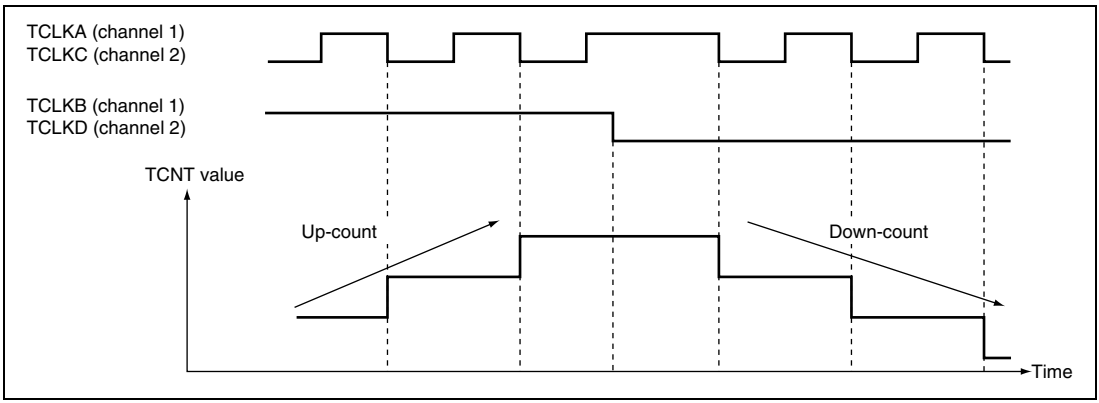


Figure 9.27 Example of Phase Counting Mode 2 Operation

Table 9.21 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 2

TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2)	TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2)	Operation
High level	↑	Don't care
Low level	↓	Don't care
↑	Low level	Don't care
↓	High level	Up-count
High level	↓	Don't care
Low level	↑	Don't care
↑	High level	Don't care
↓	Low level	Down-count

Legend

↑ : Rising edge

↓ : Falling edge

3. Phase counting mode 3

Figure 9.28 shows an example of phase counting mode 3 operation, and table 9.22 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

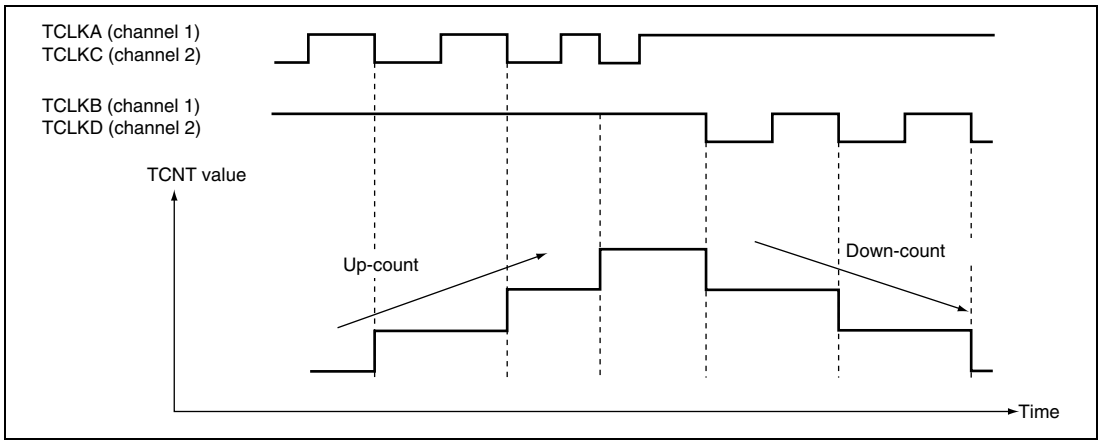


Figure 9.28 Example of Phase Counting Mode 3 Operation

Table 9.22 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 3

TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2)	TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2)	Operation
High level	↑	Don't care
Low level	↓	Don't care
↑	Low level	Don't care
↓	High level	Up-count
High level	↓	Down-count
Low level	↑	Don't care
↑	High level	Don't care
↓	Low level	Don't care

Legend

↑ : Rising edge

↓ : Falling edge

4. Phase counting mode 4

   Figure 9.29 shows an example of phase counting mode 4 operation, and table 9.23 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions. Figure 9.29 Example of Phase Counting Mode 4 Operation

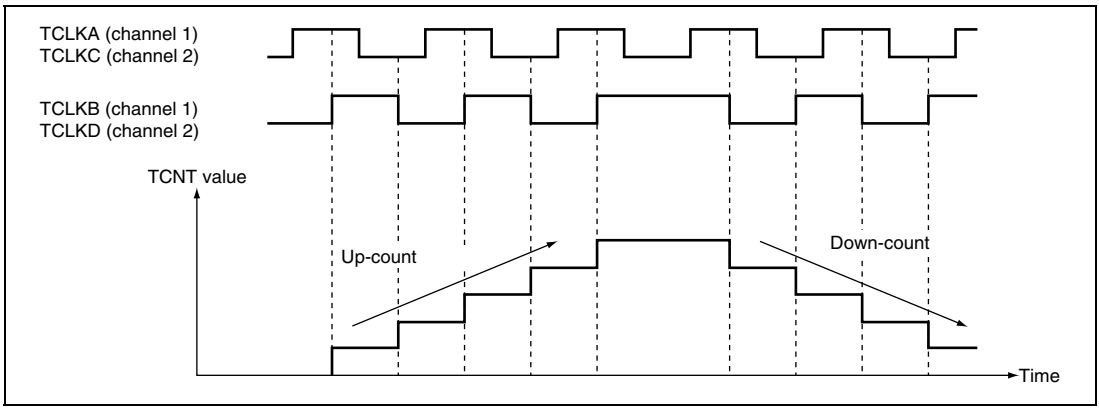


Figure 9.29 Example of Phase Counting Mode 4 Operation

Table 9.23 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 4

TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2)	TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2)	Operation
High level	↑	Up-count
Low level	↓	
↑	Low level	Don't care
↓	High level	
High level	↓	Down-count
Low level	↑	
↑	High level	Don't care
↓	Low level	

Legend

↑ : Rising edge

↓ : Falling edge

9.6 Interrupts

9.6.1 Interrupt Source and Priority

There are three kinds of TPU interrupt source: TGR input capture/compare match, TCNT overflow, and TCNT underflow. Each interrupt source has its own status flag and enable/disabled bit, allowing generation of interrupt request signals to be enabled or disabled individually. When an interrupt request is generated, the corresponding status flag in TSR is set to 1. If the corresponding enable/disable bit in TIER is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt is requested. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the status flag to 0. Relative channel priorities can be changed by the interrupt controller, but the priority order within a channel is fixed. For details, see section 5, Interrupt Controller. Table 9.24 lists the TPU interrupt sources.

Table 9.24 TPU Interrupts

Channel	Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Flag	DMAC Activation	Priority
0	TGI0A	TGRA_0 input capture/compare match	TGFA	Possible	High
	TGI0B	TGRB_0 input capture/compare match	TGFB	Not possible	
	TGI0C	TGRC_0 input capture/compare match	TGFC	Not possible	
	TGI0D	TGRD_0 input capture/compare match	TGFD	Not possible	
	TCI0V	TCNT_0 overflow	TCFV	Not possible	
1	TGI1A	TGRA_1 input capture/compare match	TGFA	Possible	
	TGI1B	TGRB_1 input capture/compare match	TGFB	Not possible	
	TCI1V	TCNT_1 overflow	TCFV	Not possible	
	TCI1U	TCNT_1 underflow	TCFU	Not possible	
2	TGI2A	TGRA_2 input capture/compare match	TGFA	Possible	
	TGI2B	TGRB_2 input capture/compare match	TGFB	Not possible	
	TCI2V	TCNT_2 overflow	TCFV	Not possible	
	TCI2U	TCNT_2 underflow	TCFU	Not possible	Low

Note: This table shows the initial state immediately after a reset. The relative channel priorities can be changed by the interrupt controller.

Input Capture/Compare Match Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TGIE bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TGF flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of a TGR input capture/compare match on a particular channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TGF flag to 0. The TPU has 16 input capture/compare match interrupts, four each for channel 0, and two each for channels 1 and 2.

Overflow Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TCIEV bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TCFV flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of TCNT overflow on a channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TCFV flag to 0. The TPU has three overflow interrupts, one for each channel.

Underflow Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TCIEU bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TCFU flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of TCNT underflow on a channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TCFU flag to 0. The TPU has two underflow interrupts, one each for channels 1 and 2.

9.6.2 DMAC Activation

The DMAC can be activated by the TGRA input capture/compare match interrupt for a channel. For details, see section 7, DMA Controller. With the TPU, a total of three TGRA input capture/compare match interrupts can be used as DMAC activation sources, one for each channel.

9.6.3 A/D Converter Activation

The A/D converter can be activated by the TGRA input capture/compare match for a channel. If the TTGE bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TGFA flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of a TGRA input capture/compare match on a particular channel, a request to start A/D conversion is sent to the A/D converter. If the TPU conversion start trigger has been selected on the A/D converter side at this time, A/D conversion is started. In the TPU, a total of three TGRA input capture/compare match interrupts can be used as A/D converter conversion start sources, one for each channel.

9.7 Operation Timing

9.7.1 Input/Output Timing

TCNT Count Timing: Figure 9.30 shows TCNT count timing in internal clock operation, and figure 9.31 shows TCNT count timing in external clock operation.

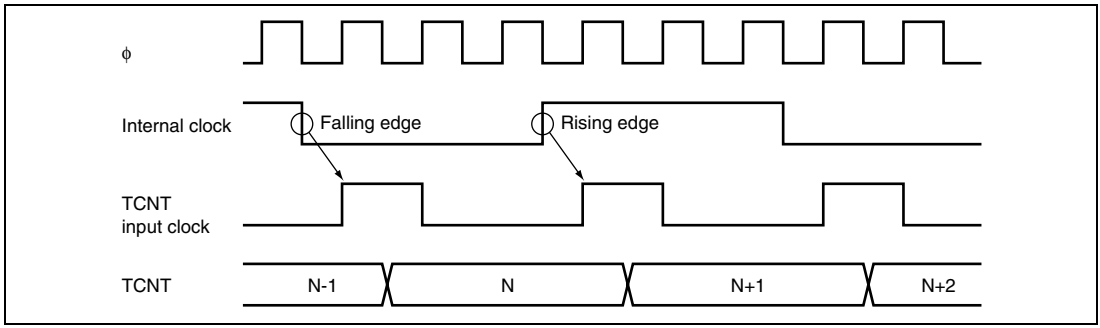


Figure 9.30 Count Timing in Internal Clock Operation

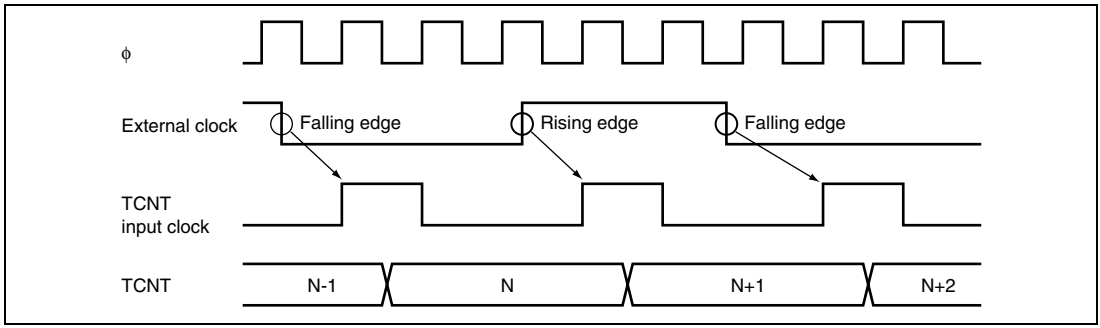


Figure 9.31 Count Timing in External Clock Operation

Output Compare Output Timing: A compare match signal is generated in the final state in which TCNT and TGR match (the point at which the count value matched by TCNT is updated). When a compare match signal is generated, the output value set in TIOR is output at the output compare output pin. After a match between TCNT and TGR, the compare match signal is not generated until the TCNT input clock is generated. Figure 9.32 shows output compare output timing.

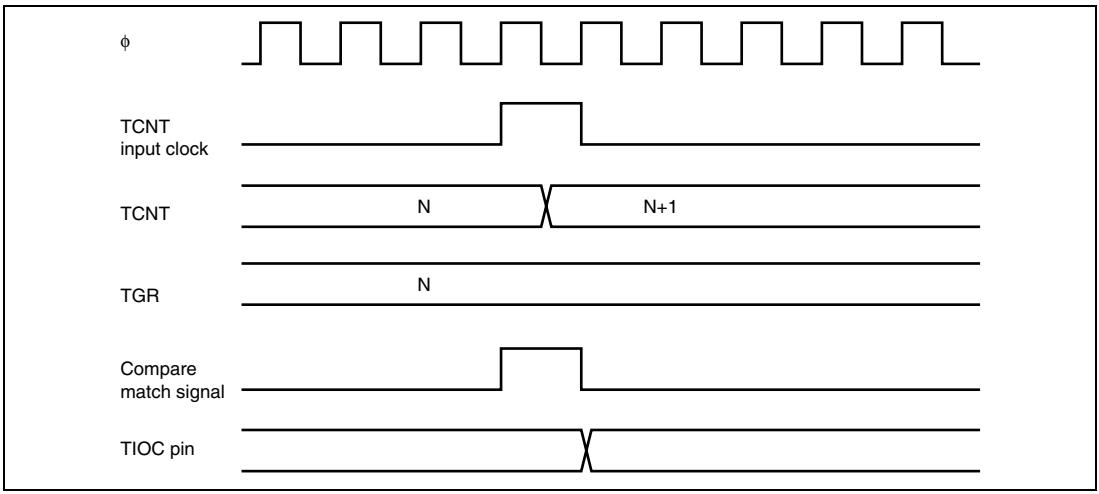


Figure 9.32 Output Compare Output Timing

Input Capture Signal Timing: Figure 9.33 shows input capture signal timing.

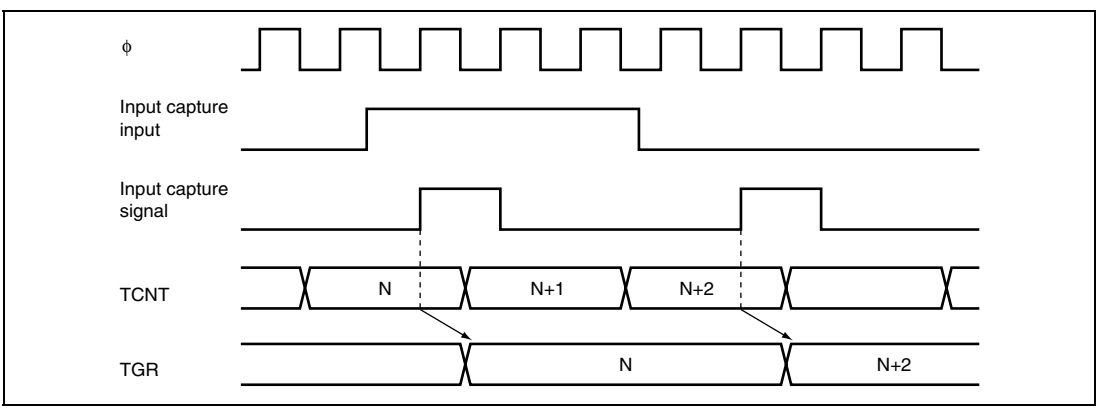


Figure 9.33 Input Capture Input Signal Timing

Timing for Counter Clearing by Compare Match/Input Capture: Figure 9.34 shows the timing when counter clearing by compare match occurrence is specified, and figure 9.35 shows the timing when counter clearing by input capture occurrence is specified.

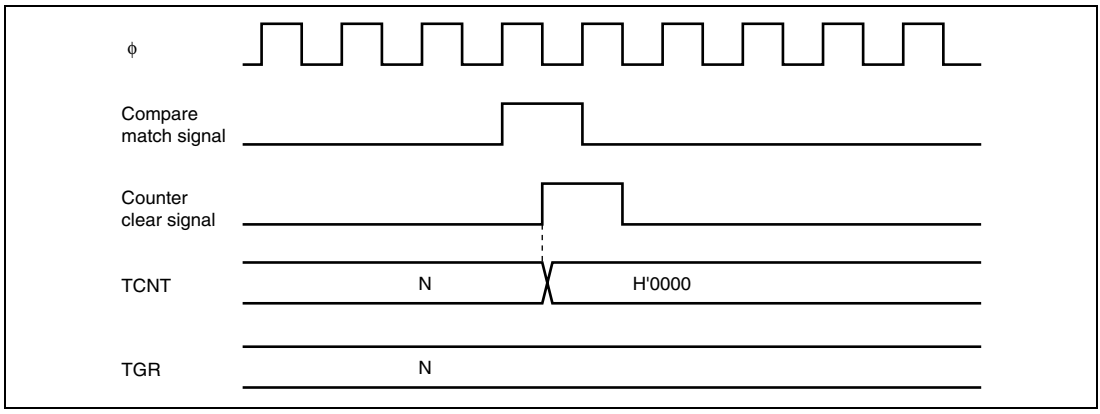


Figure 9.34 Counter Clear Timing (Compare Match)

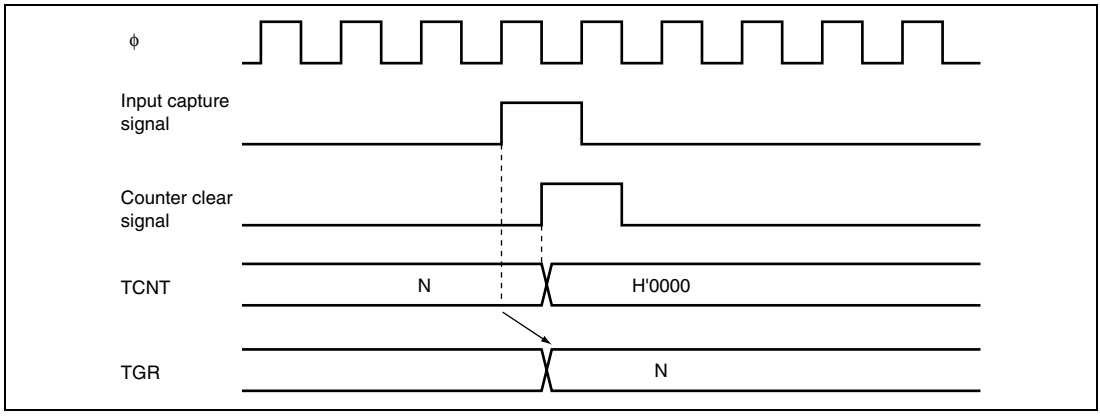


Figure 9.35 Counter Clear Timing (Input Capture)

Buffer Operation Timing: Figures 9.36 and 9.37 show the timing in buffer operation.

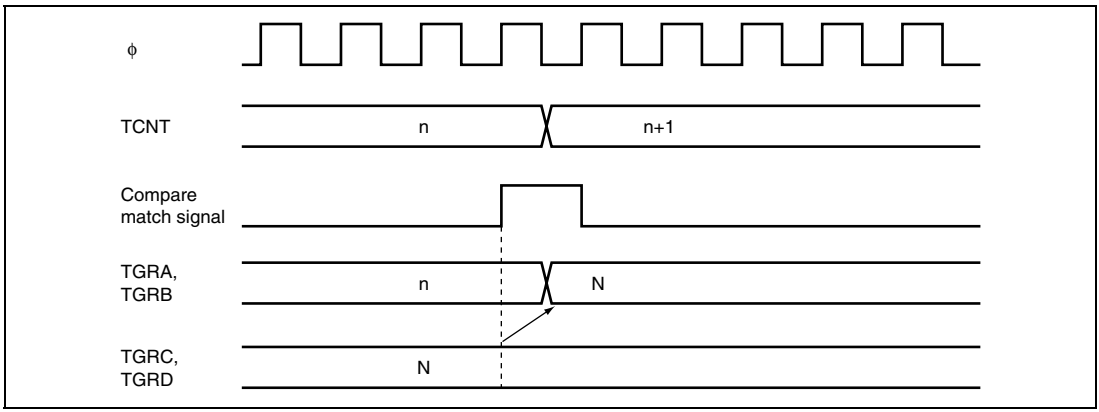


Figure 9.36 Buffer Operation Timing (Compare Match)

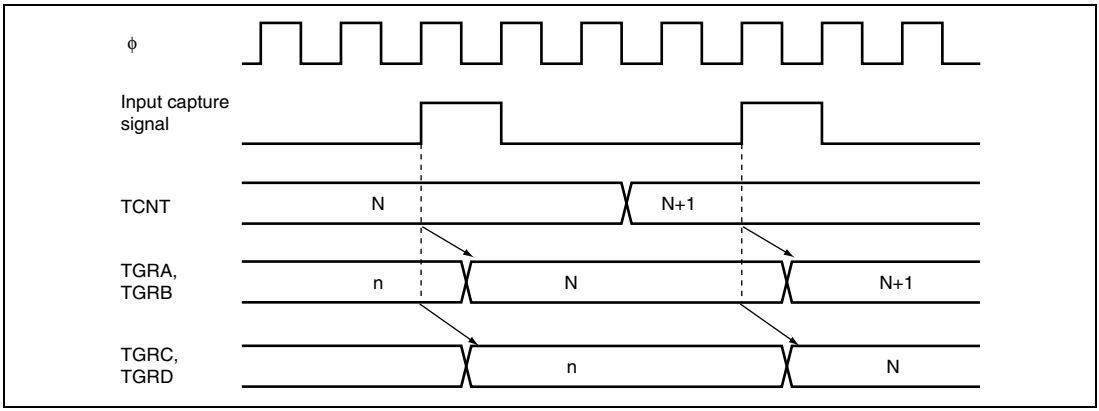


Figure 9.37 Buffer Operation Timing (Input Capture)

9.7.2 Interrupt Signal Timing

TGF Flag Setting Timing in Case of Compare Match: Figure 9.38 shows the timing for setting of the TGF flag in TSR by compare match occurrence, and TGI interrupt request signal timing.

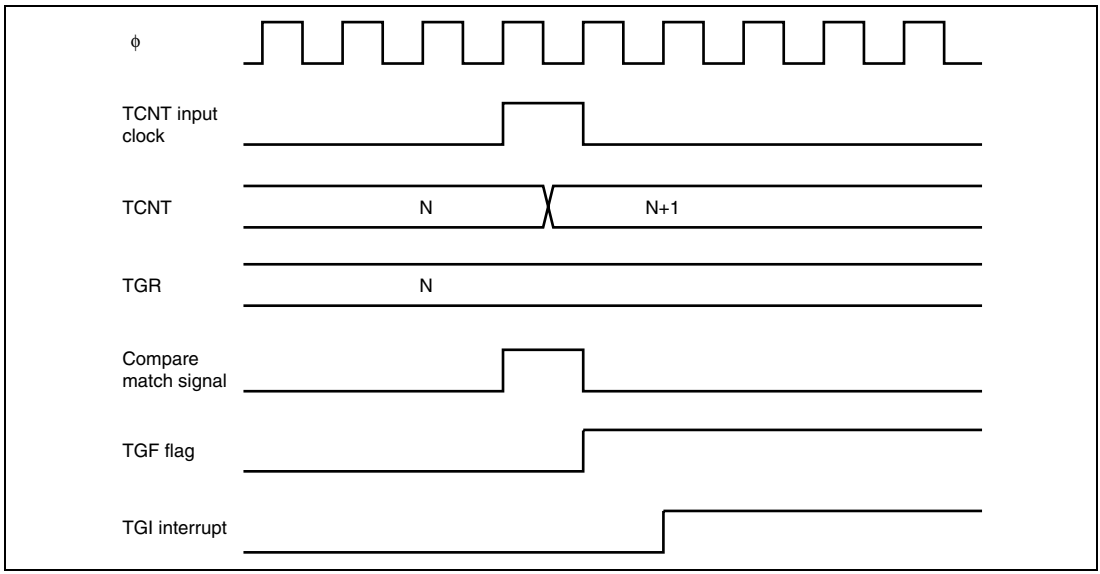


Figure 9.38 TGI Interrupt Timing (Compare Match)

TGF Flag Setting Timing in Case of Input Capture: Figure 9.39 shows the timing for setting of the TGF flag in TSR by input capture occurrence, and TGI interrupt request signal timing.

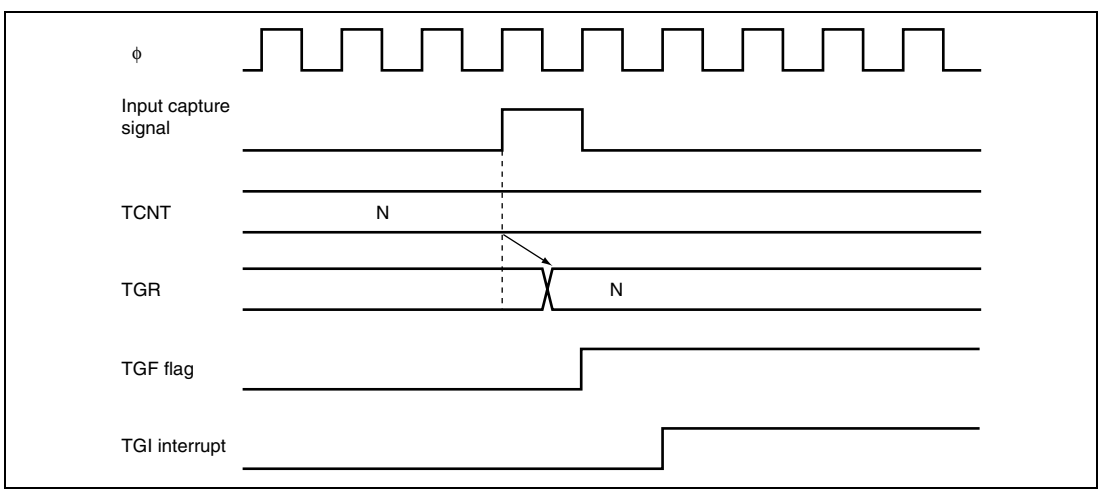


Figure 9.39 TGI Interrupt Timing (Input Capture)

TCFV Flag/TCFU Flag Setting Timing: Figure 9.40 shows the timing for setting of the TCFV flag in TSR by overflow occurrence, and TCIV interrupt request signal timing. Figure 9.41 shows the timing for setting of the TCFU flag in TSR by underflow occurrence, and TCIU interrupt request signal timing.

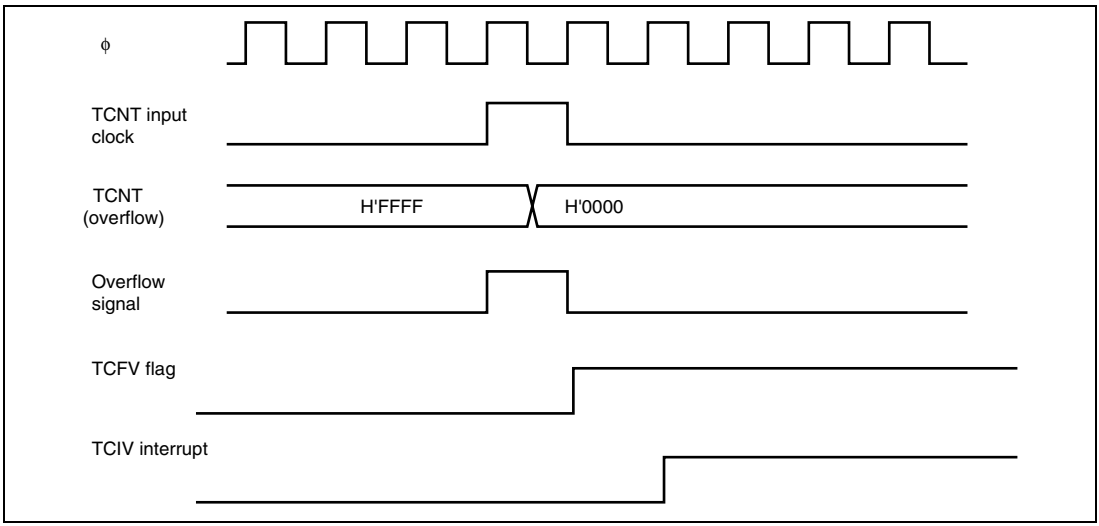


Figure 9.40 TCIV Interrupt Setting Timing

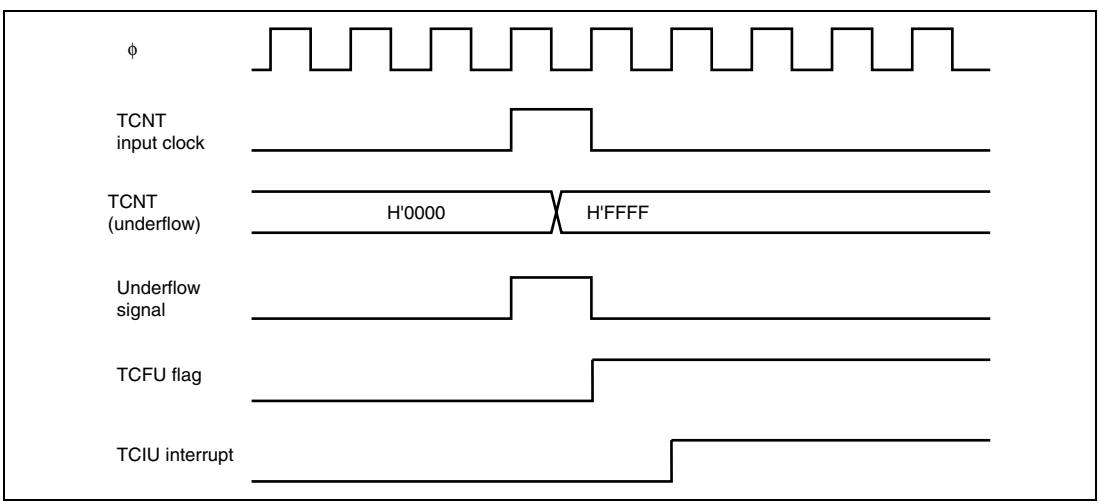


Figure 9.41 TCIU Interrupt Setting Timing

Status Flag Clearing Timing: After a status flag is read as 1 by the CPU, it is cleared by writing 0 to it. When the DMAC is activated, the flag is cleared automatically. Figure 9.42 shows the timing for status flag clearing by the CPU, and figure 9.43 shows the timing for status flag clearing by the DMAC.

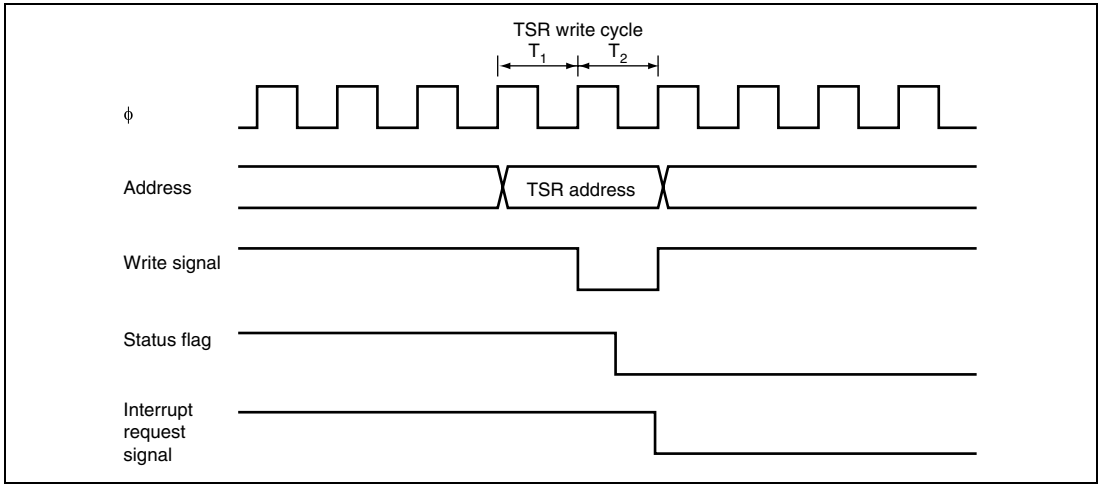


Figure 9.42 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by CPU

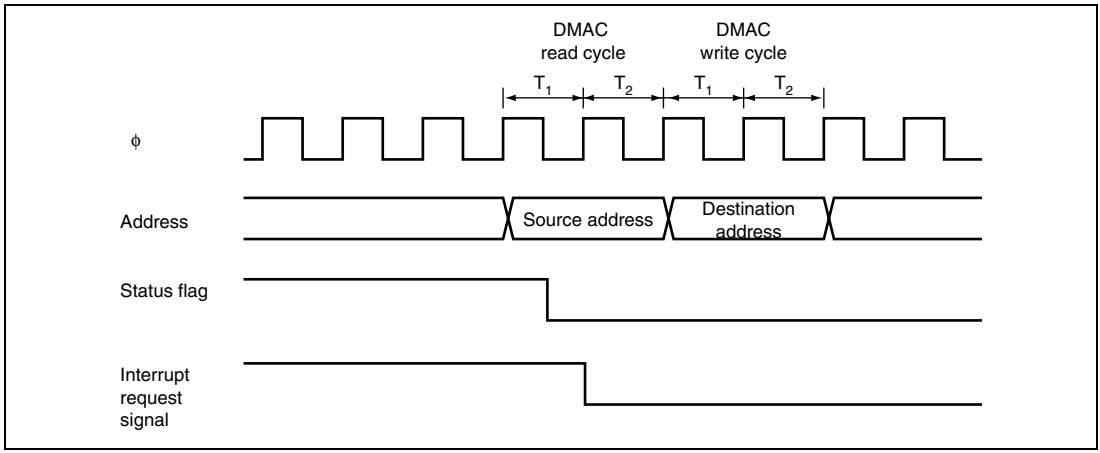


Figure 9.43 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by DMAC Activation

9.8 Usage Notes

Input Clock Restrictions: The input clock pulse width must be at least 1.5 states in the case of single-edge detection, and at least 2.5 states in the case of both-edge detection. The TPU will not operate properly with a narrower pulse width. In phase counting mode, the phase difference and overlap between the two input clocks must be at least 1.5 states, and the pulse width must be at least 2.5 states. Figure 9.44 shows the input clock conditions in phase counting mode.

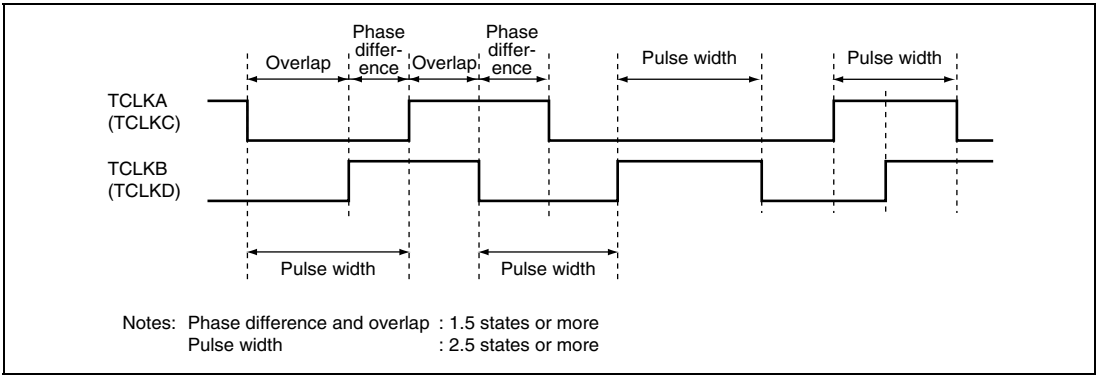


Figure 9.44 Phase Difference, Overlap, and Pulse Width in Phase Counting Mode

Caution on Period Setting: When counter clearing by compare match is set, TCNT is cleared in the final state in which it matches the TGR value (the point at which the count value matched by TCNT is updated). Consequently, the actual counter frequency is given by the following formula:

$$f = \frac{\phi}{(N + 1)}$$

Where f : Counter frequency
ϕ : Operating frequency
N : TGR set value

Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations: If the counter clear signal is generated in the T2 state of a TCNT write cycle, TCNT clearing takes precedence and the TCNT write is not performed. Figure 9.45 shows the timing in this case.

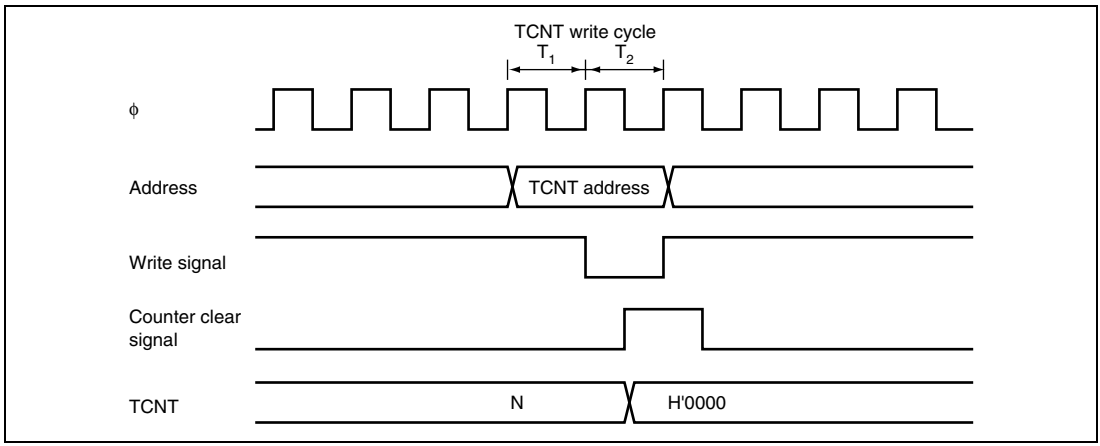


Figure 9.45 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations

Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations: If incrementing occurs in the T2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the TCNT write takes precedence and TCNT is not incremented. Figure 9.46 shows the timing in this case.

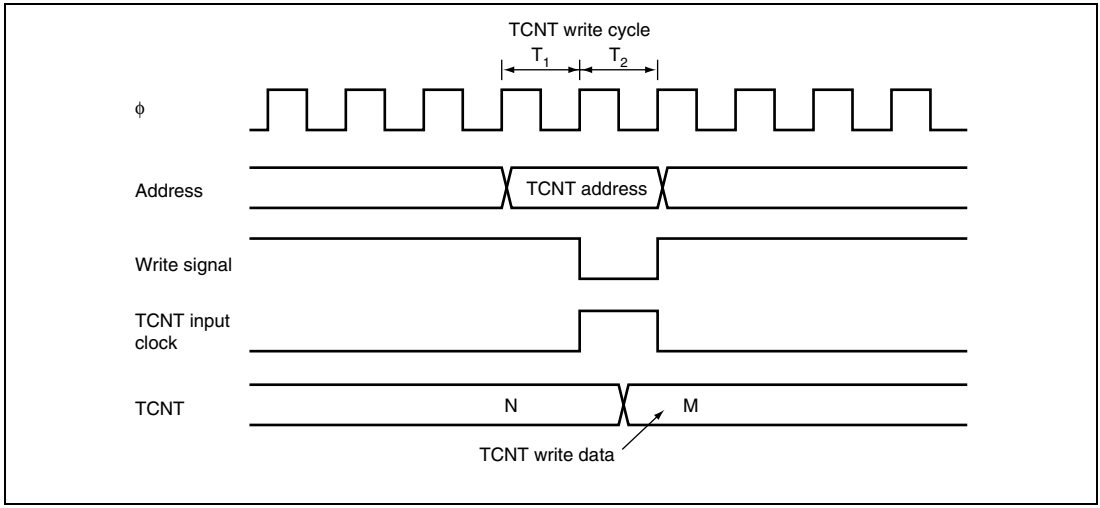


Figure 9.46 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations

Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match: If a compare match occurs in the T2 state of a TGR write cycle, the TGR write takes precedence and the compare match signal is inhibited. A compare match does not occur even if the same value as before is written. Figure 9.47 shows the timing in this case.

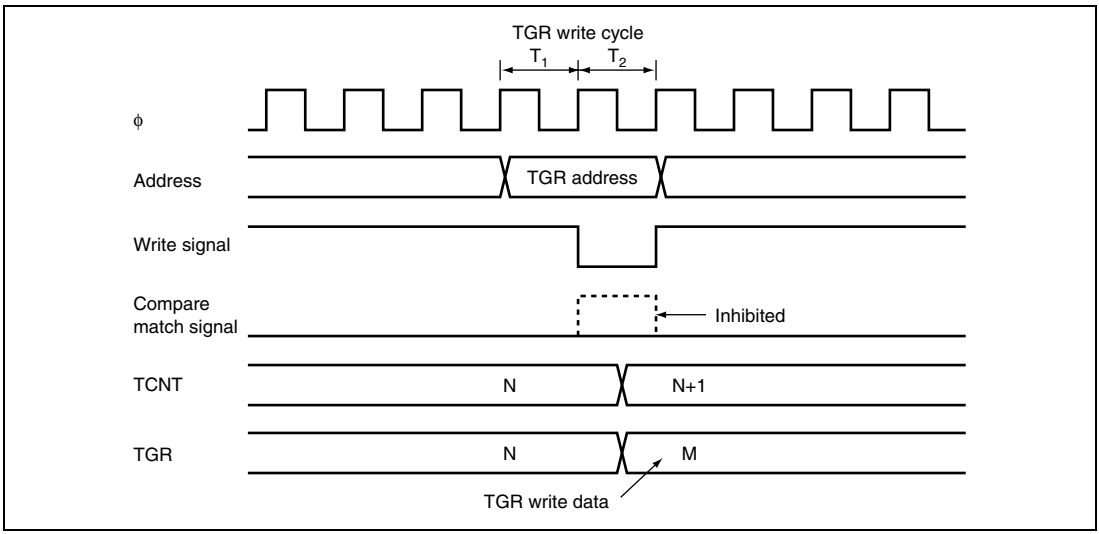


Figure 9.47 Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match

Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match: If a compare match occurs in the T2 state of a TGR write cycle, the data transferred to TGR by the buffer operation will be the data prior to the write. Figure 9.48 shows the timing in this case.

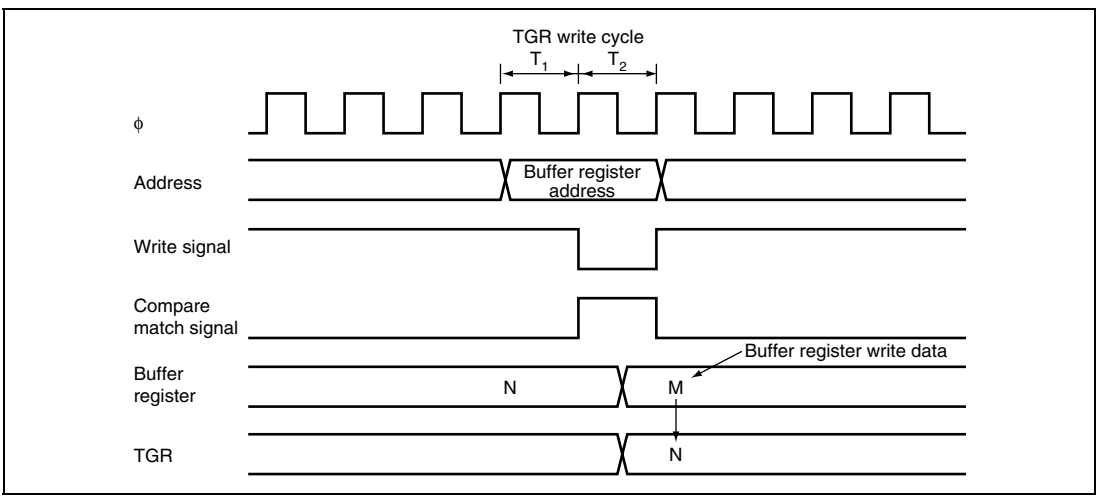


Figure 9.48 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match

Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T1 state of a TGR read cycle, the data that is read will be the data after input capture transfer. Figure 9.49 shows the timing in this case.

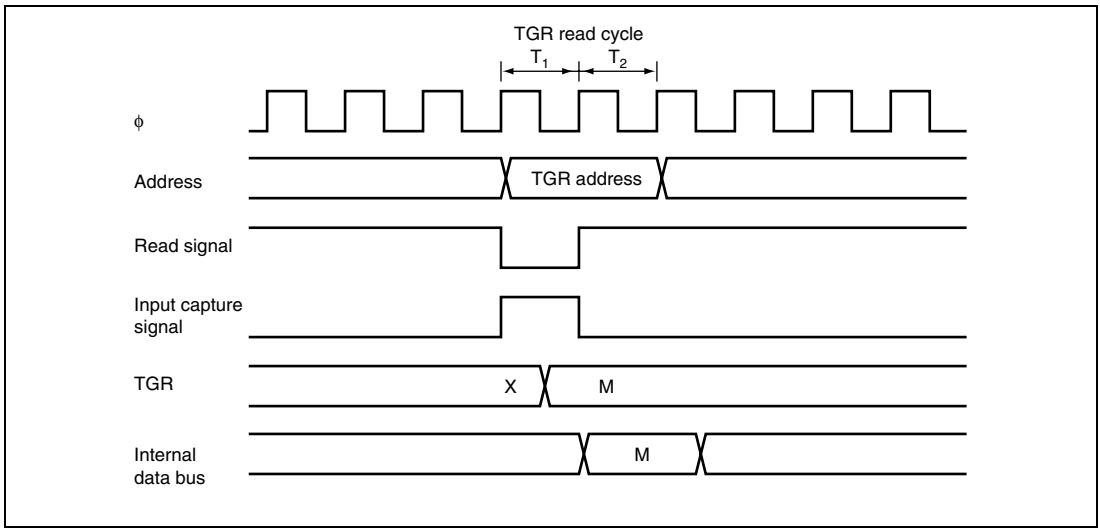


Figure 9.49 Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture

Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T2 state of a TGR write cycle, the input capture operation takes precedence and the write to TGR is not performed. Figure 9.50 shows the timing in this case.

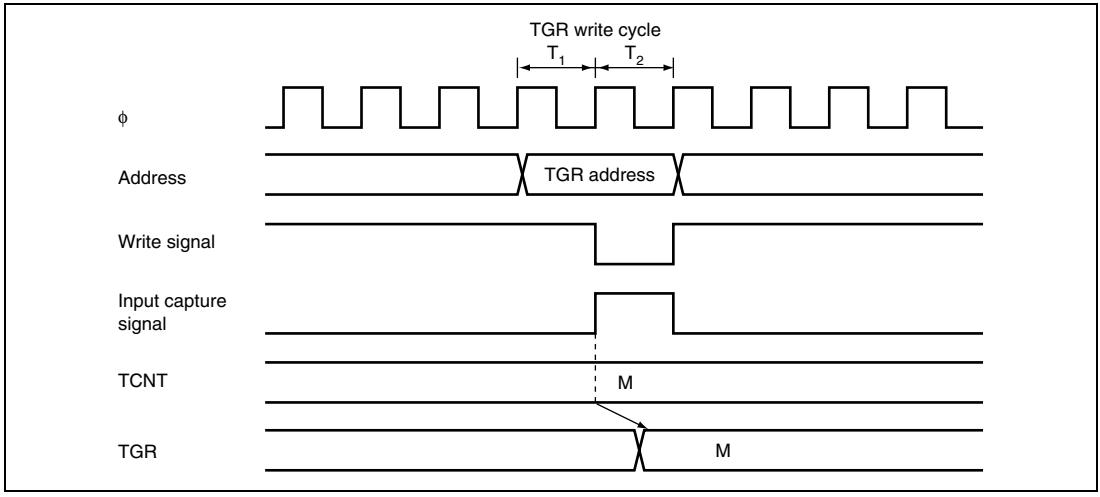


Figure 9.50 Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture

Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T2 state of a buffer register write cycle, the buffer operation takes precedence and the write to the buffer register is not performed. Figure 9.51 shows the timing in this case.

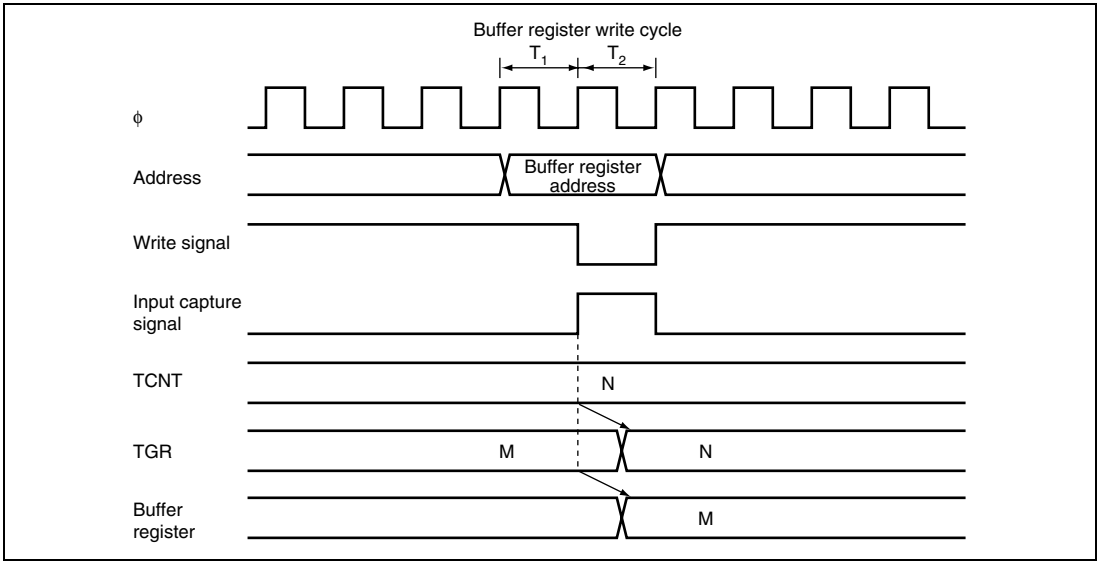


Figure 9.51 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture

Contention between Overflow/Underflow and Counter Clearing: If overflow/underflow and counter clearing occur simultaneously, the TCFV/TCFU flag in TSR is not set and TCNT clearing takes precedence. Figure 9.52 shows the operation timing when a TGR compare match is specified as the clearing source, and H'FFFF is set in TGR.

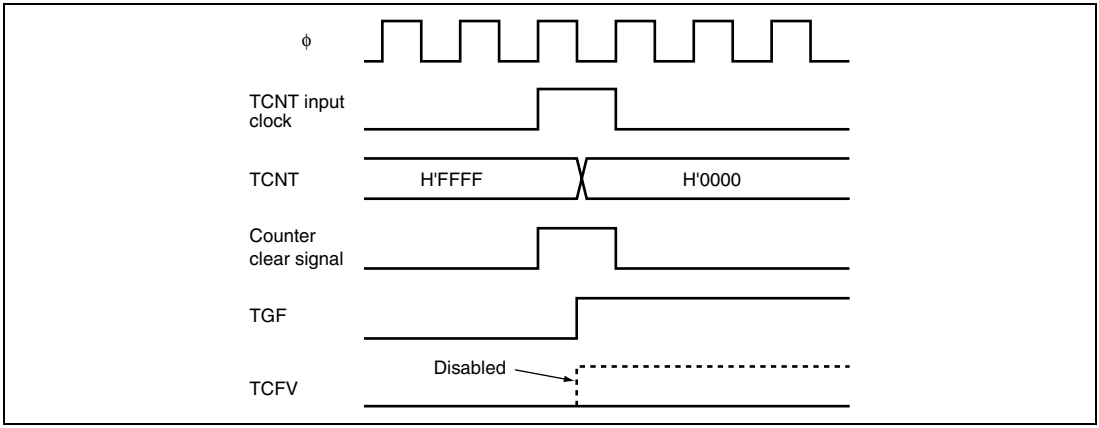


Figure 9.52 Contention between Overflow and Counter Clearing

Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow/Underflow: If there is an up-count or down-count in the T2 state of a TCNT write cycle, and overflow/underflow occurs, the TCNT write takes precedence and the TCFV/TCFU flag in TSR is not set. Figure 9.53 shows the operation timing when there is contention between TCNT write and overflow.

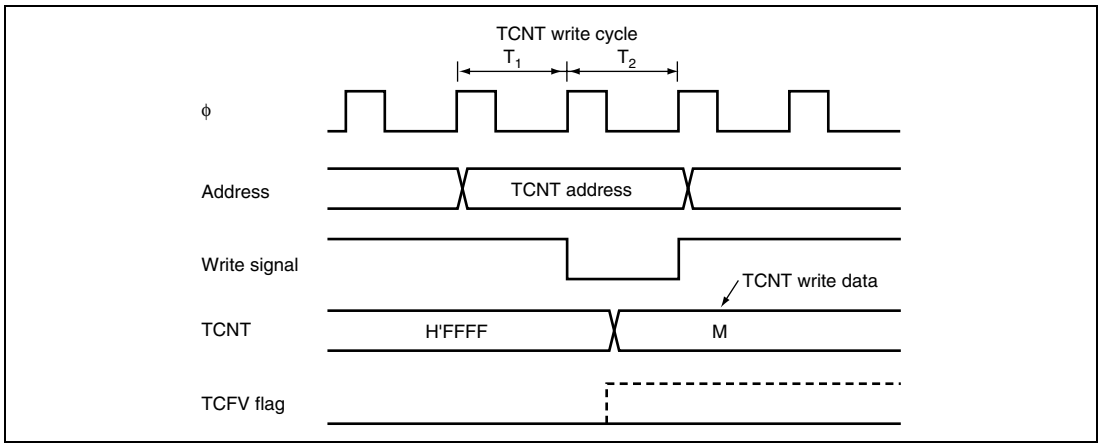


Figure 9.53 Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow

Multiplexing of I/O Pins: In this LSI, the TCLKA input pin is multiplexed with the TIOCC0 I/O pin, the TCLKB input pin with the TIOCD0 I/O pin, the TCLKC input pin with the TIOCB1 I/O pin, and the TCLKD input pin with the TIOCB2 I/O pin. When an external clock is input, compare match output should not be performed from a multiplexed pin.

Interrupts in Module Stop Mode: If module stop mode is entered when an interrupt has been requested, it will not be possible to clear the CPU interrupt source or the DMAC activation source. Interrupts should therefore be disabled before entering module stop mode.

Section 10 Watchdog Timer

The watchdog timer (WDT) is an 8-bit timer that can generate an internal reset signal for this LSI if a system crash prevents the CPU from writing to the timer counter, thus allowing it to overflow. When this watchdog function is not needed, the WDT can be used as an interval timer. In interval timer operation, an interval timer interrupt is generated each time the counter overflows.

The block diagram of the WDT is shown in Figure 10.1.

10.1 Features

- Selectable from eight counter input clocks.
- Switchable between watchdog timer mode and interval timer mode

In watchdog timer mode:

- If the counter overflows, it is possible to select whether this LSI is internally reset or not.

In interval timer mode:

- If the counter overflows, the WDT generates an interval timer interrupt (WOVI).

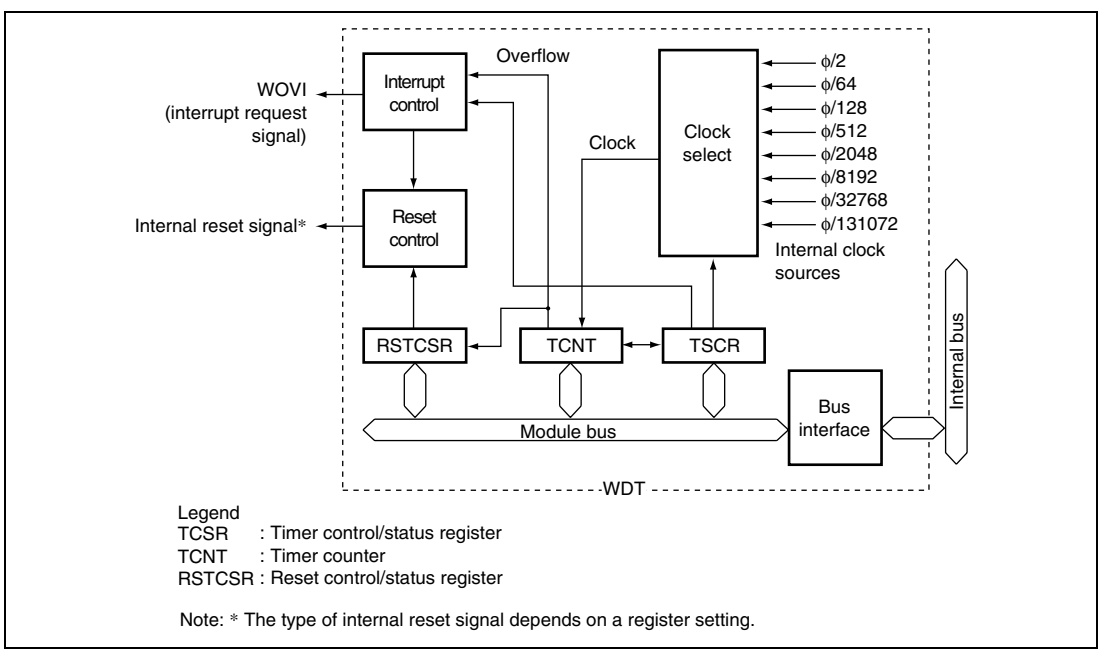


Figure 10.1 Block Diagram of WDT

10.2 Register Descriptions

The WDT has the following three registers. For details, refer to section 21, List of Registers. To prevent accidental overwriting, TCSR, TCNT, and RSTCSR have to be written to by a different method to normal registers. For details, refer to section 10.5.1, Notes on Register Access.

- Timer counter (TCNT)
- Timer control/status register (TCSR)
- Reset control/status register (RSTCSR)

10.2.1 Timer Counter (TCNT)

TCNT is an 8-bit readable/writable up-counter. TCNT is initialized to H'00 by a reset, when the TME bit in TCSR is cleared to 0.

10.2.2 Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR)

TCSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register. Its functions include selecting the clock source to be input to TCNT, and selecting the timer mode.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	OVF	0	R/(W)*	Overflow Flag Indicates that TCNT has overflowed. Only a write of 0 is permitted, to clear the flag. [Setting conditions] When TCNT overflows (changes from H'FF to H'00) When internal reset request generation is selected in watchdog timer mode, OVF is cleared automatically by the internal reset. [Clearing condition] Cleared by reading TCSR when OVF = 1, then writing 0 to OVF
6	WT/$\overline{IT}$	0	R/W	Timer Mode Select Selects whether the WDT is used as a watchdog timer or interval timer. 0: Interval timer mode 1: Watchdog timer mode

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	TME	0	R/W	Timer Enable When this bit is set to 1, TCNT starts counting. When this bit is cleared, TCNT stops counting and is initialized to H'00.
4, 3	—	All 1	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified.
2	CKS2	0	R/W	Clock Select 0 to 2 Selects the clock source to be input to TCNT. The overflow frequency for ϕ = 16 MHz is enclosed in parentheses. 000: Clock ϕ/2 (frequency: 32.0 μs) 001: Clock ϕ/64 (frequency: 1.0 ms) 010: Clock ϕ/128 (frequency: 2.0 ms) 011: Clock ϕ/512 (frequency: 8.2 ms) 100: Clock ϕ/2048 (frequency: 32.8 ms) 101: Clock ϕ/8192 (frequency: 131.1 ms) 110: Clock ϕ/32768 (frequency: 524.3 ms) 111: Clock ϕ/131072 (frequency: 2.1 s)
1	CKS1	0	R/W	
0	CKS0	0	R/W	

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

10.2.3 Reset Control/Status Register (RSTCSR)

RSTCSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that controls the generation of the internal reset signal when TCNT overflows, and selects the type of internal reset signal. RSTCSR is initialized to H'1F by a reset signal from the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, and not by the WDT internal reset signal caused by overflows.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	WOVF	0	R/(W)*[1]	Watchdog Overflow Flag This bit is set when TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode. This bit cannot be set in interval timer mode, and the write value should always be 0. [Setting condition] Set when TCNT overflows (changed from H'FF to H'00) in watchdog timer mode [Clearing condition] Cleared by reading RSTCSR when WOVF = 1, and then writing 0 to WOVF
6	RSTE	0	R/W	Reset Enable Specifies whether or not a reset signal is generated in the chip if TCNT overflows during watchdog timer operation. 0: Reset signal is not generated even if TCNT overflows (Though this LSI is not reset, TCNT and TCSR in WDT are reset) 1: Reset signal is generated if TCNT overflows
5	RSTS	0	R/W	Reset Select Selects the type of internal reset generated if TCNT overflows during watchdog timer operation. 0: Power-on reset*[2] 1: Setting prohibited
4 to 0	—	1	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified.

Notes: 1. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.
2. Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

10.3 Operation

10.3.1 Watchdog Timer Mode

To use the WDT as a watchdog timer, set the WT/$\overline{IT}$ bit in TCSR and the TME bit to 1.

TCNT does not overflow while the system is operating normally. Software must prevent TCNT overflows by rewriting the TCNT value (normally be writing H'00) before overflows occurs.

When the RSTE bit of the RSTCSR is set to 1, and if the TCNT overflows, an internal reset signal for this LSI is issued. In this case, select power-on reset or manual reset* by setting the RSTS bit of the RSTCSR to 0.

If a reset caused by a signal input to the $\overline{RES}$ pin occurs at the same time as a reset caused by a WDT overflow, the $\overline{RES}$ pin reset has priority and the WOVF bit in RSTCSR is cleared to 0. The internal reset signal is output for 518 states.

When the TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode, the WOVF bit of the RSTCSR is set to 1. If the RSTE bit of the RSTCSR has been set to 1, an internal reset signal for the entire LSI is generated at TCNT overflow.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

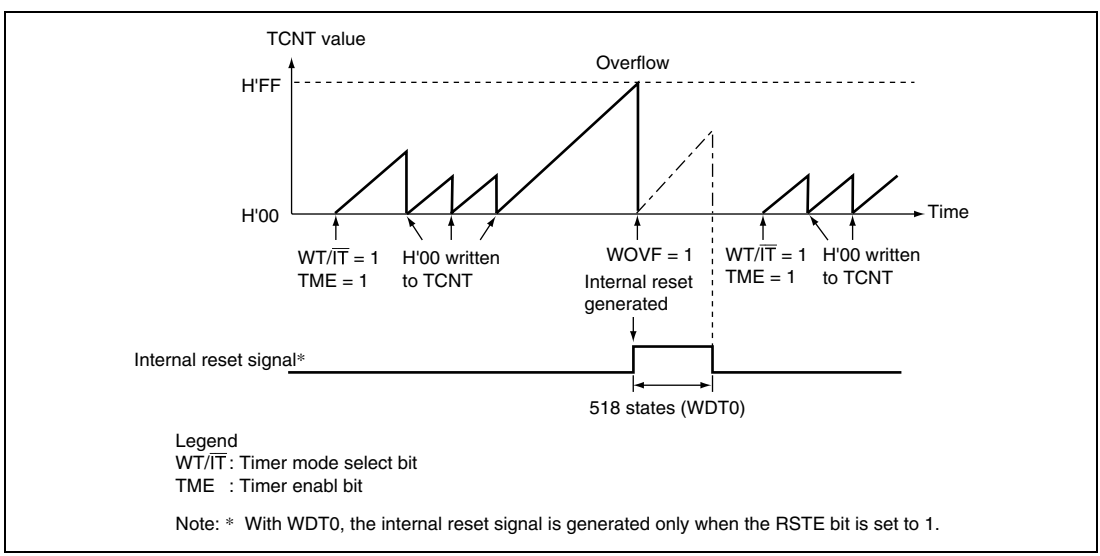


Figure 10.2 Operation in Watchdog Timer Mode

10.3.2 Timing of Setting of Watchdog Timer Overflow Flag (WOVF)

With WDT0, the WOVF bit in RSTCSR is set to 1 if TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode. If TCNT overflows while the RSTE bit in RSTCSR is set to 1, an internal reset signal is generated for the entire chip. This timing is illustrated in figure 10.3.

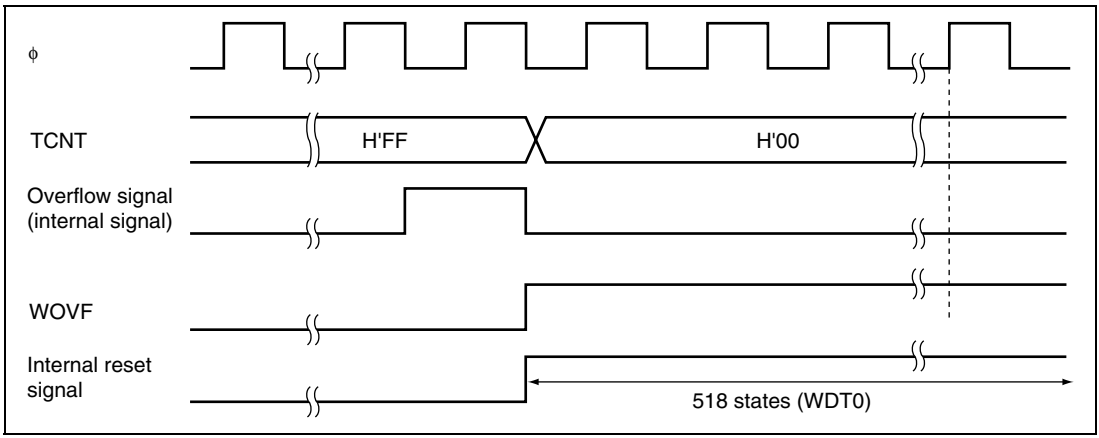


Figure 10.3 Timing of WOVF Setting

10.3.3 Interval Timer Mode

When the WDT is used as an interval timer, an interval timer interrupt (WOVI) is generated each time the TCNT overflows. Therefore, an interrupt can be generated at intervals.

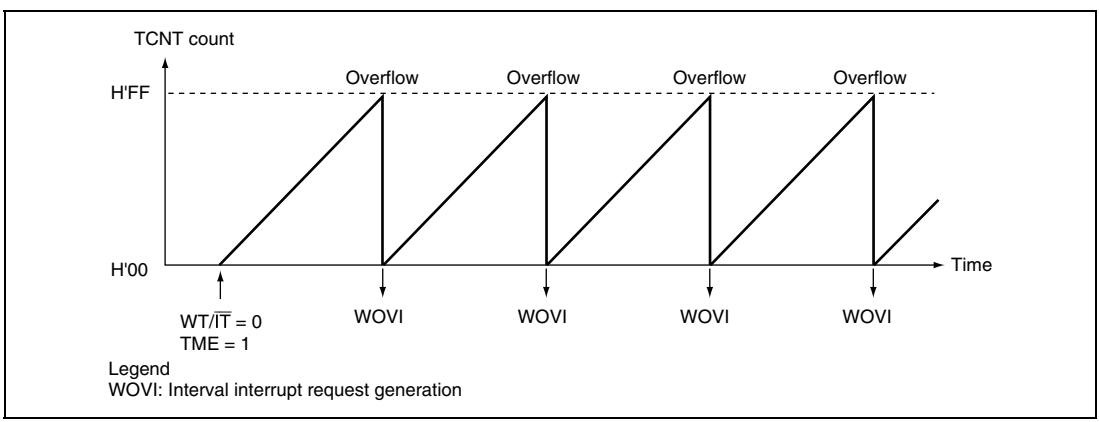


Figure 10.4 Operation in Interval Timer Mode

10.3.4 Timing of Setting of Overflow Flag (OVF)

The OVF flag is set to 1 if TCNT overflows during interval timer operation. At the same time, an interval timer interrupt (WOVI) is requested. This timing is shown in figure 10.5.

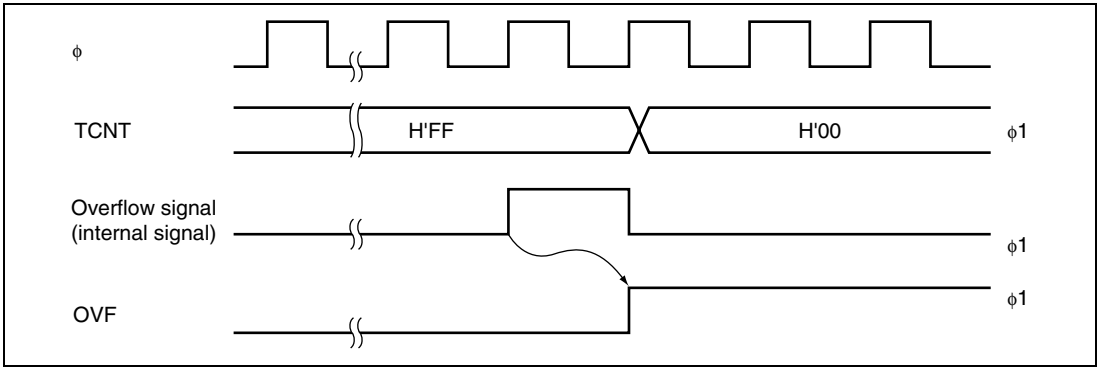


Figure 10.5 Timing of OVF Setting

10.4 Interrupts

During interval timer mode operation, an overflow generates an interval timer interrupt (WOVI). The interval timer interrupt is requested whenever the OVF flag is set to 1 in TCSR. OVF must be cleared to 0 in the interrupt handling routine.

Table 10.1 WDT Interrupt Source

Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Flag
WOVI	TCNT overflow	WOVF

10.5 Usage Notes

10.5.1 Notes on Register Access

The watchdog timer's TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR registers differ from other registers in being more difficult to write to. The procedures for writing to and reading these registers are given below.

Writing to TCNT and TCSR

These registers must be written to by a word transfer instruction.

They cannot be written to with byte transfer instructions. Figure 10.6 shows the format of data written to TCNT and TCSR. TCNT and TCSR both have the same write address. For a write to TCNT, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'5A and the lower byte must contain the write data. For a write to TCSR, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'A5 and the lower byte must contain the write data. This transfers the write data from the lower byte to TCNT or TCSR.

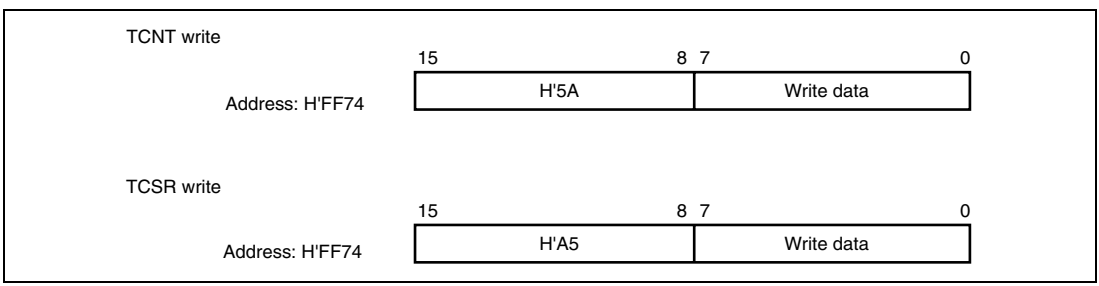


Figure 10.6 Format of Data Written to TCNT and TCSR

Writing to RSTCSR

RSTCSR must be written to by a word transfer to address H'FF76. It cannot be written to with byte instructions. Figure 10.7 shows the format of data written to RSTCSR. The method of writing 0 to the WOVF bit differs from that for writing to the RSTE and RSTS bits.

To write 0 to the WOVF bit, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'A5 and the lower byte must contain H'00. This clears the WOVF bit to 0, but has no effect on the RSTE and RSTS bits. To write to the RSTE and RSTS bits, the upper byte must contain H'5A and the lower byte must contain the write data. This writes the values in bits 6 and 5 of the lower byte into the RSTE and RSTS bits, but has no effect on the WOVF bit.

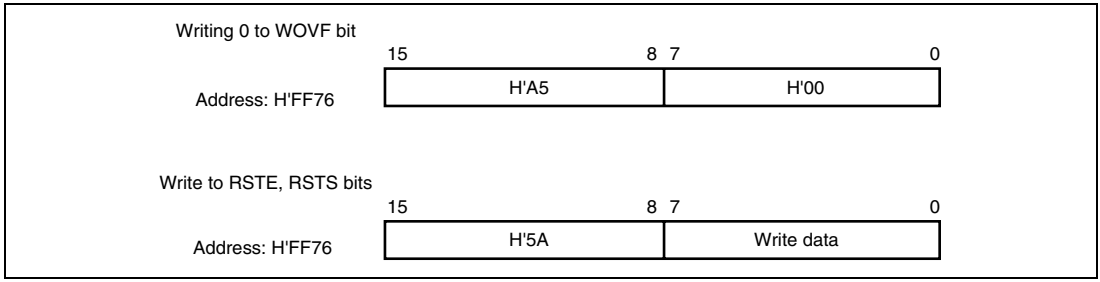


Figure 10.7 Format of Data Written to RSTCSR (Example of WDT0)

Reading from TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR

TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR are read by using the same method as for the general registers. TCSR, TCNT, and RSTCSR are allocated in addresses H'FF74, H'FF75, and H'FF77 respectively.

10.5.2 Contention between Timer Counter (TCNT) Write and Increment

If a timer counter clock pulse is generated during the T2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the write takes priority and the timer counter is not incremented. Figure 10.8 shows this operation.

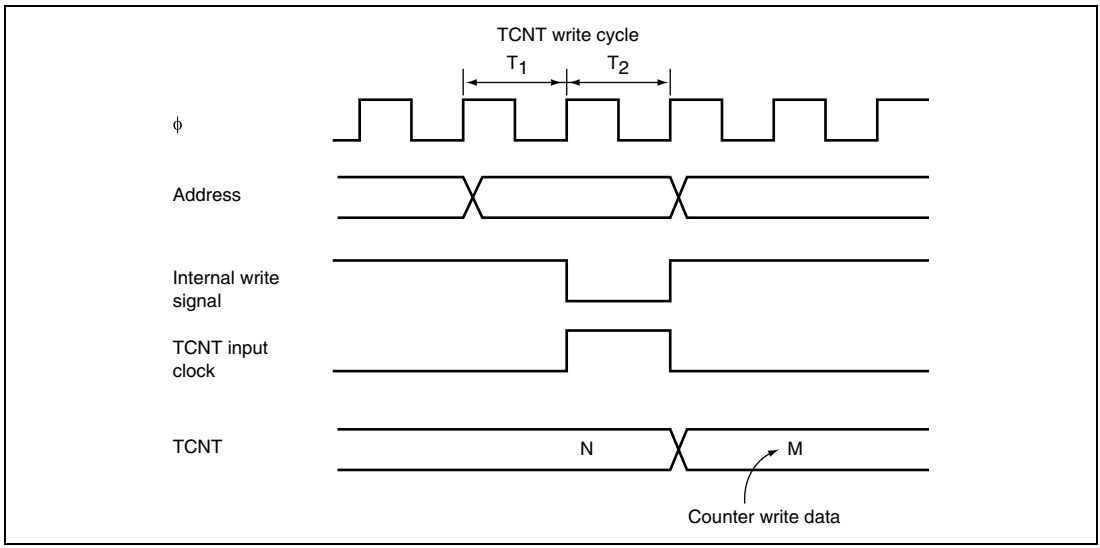


Figure 10.8 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment

10.5.3 Changing Value of CKS2 to CKS0

If bits CKS0 to CKS2 in TCSR are written to while the WDT is operating, errors could occur in the incrementation. Software must be used to stop the watchdog timer (by clearing the TME bit to 0) before changing the value of bits CKS0 to CKS2.

10.5.4 Switching between Watchdog Timer Mode and Interval Timer Mode

If the mode is switched from watchdog timer to interval timer while the WDT is operating, errors could occur in the incrementation. Software must be used to stop the watchdog timer (by clearing the TME bit to 0) before switching the mode.

10.5.5 Internal Reset in Watchdog Timer Mode

This LSI is not reset internally if TCNT overflows while the RSTE bit is cleared to 0 during watchdog timer operation, however TCNT and TCSR of the WDT are reset.

TCNT, TCSR, or RSTCR cannot be written to for 132 states following an overflow. During this period, any attempt to read the WOVF flag is not acknowledged. Accordingly, wait 132 states after overflow to write 0 to the WOVF flag for clearing.

Section 11 Realtime Clock (RTC)

The realtime clock (RTC) is a timer used to count time ranging from a second to a week. Figure 11.1 shows the block diagram of the RTC.

11.1 Features

- Counts seconds, minutes, hours, and day-of-week
- Start/stop function
- Reset function
- Readable/writable counter of seconds, minutes, hours, and day-of-week with BCD codes
- Periodic (seconds, minutes, hours, days, and weeks) interrupts
- 8-bit free running counter
- Selection of clock source

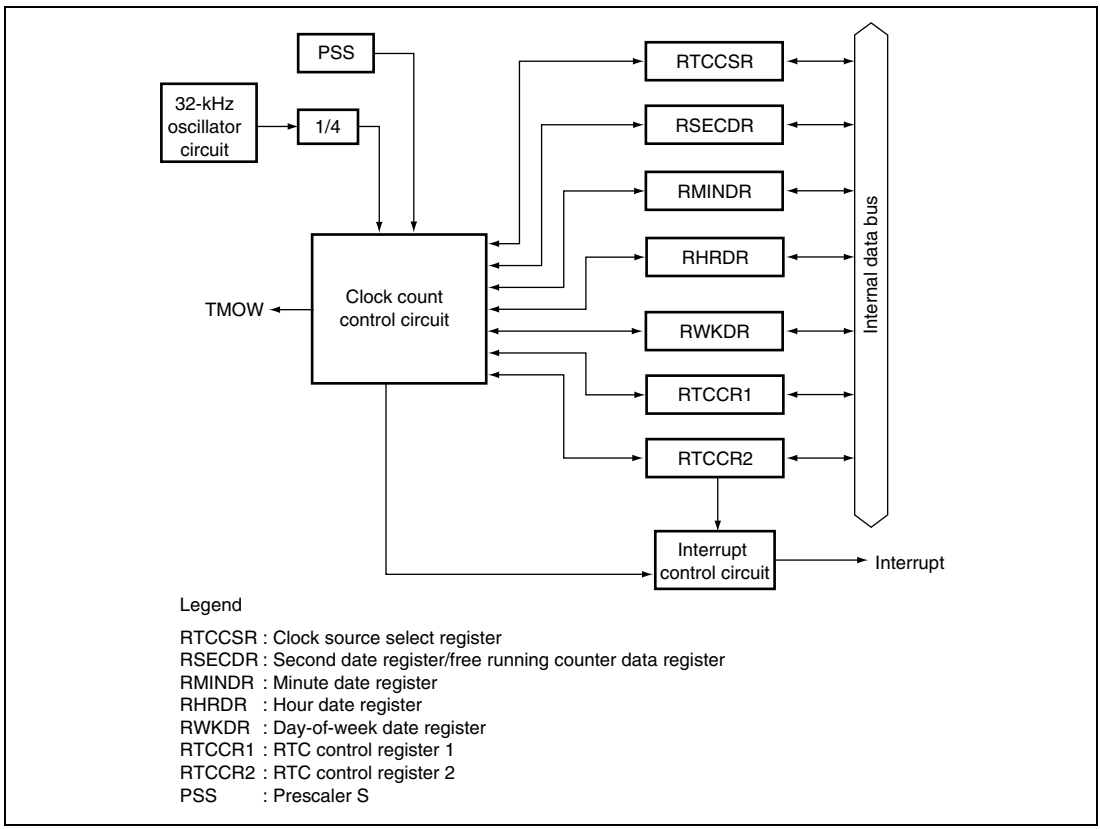


Figure 11.1 Block Diagram of RTC

11.2 Input/Output Pin

Table 11.1 shows the RTC input/output pin.

Table 11.1 Pin Configuration

Name	Abbreviation	I/O	Function
Clock output	TMOW	Output	RTC divided clock output

11.3 Register Descriptions

- Second data register/free running counter data register (RSECDR)
- Minute data register (RMINDR)
- Hour data register (RHRDR)
- Day-of-week data register (RWKDR)
- RTC control register 1 (RTCCR1)
- RTC control register 2 (RTCCR2)
- Clock source select register (RTCCSR)
- Extended module stop register (EXMDLSTP)

11.3.1 Second Data Register/Free Running Counter Data Register (RSECDR)

RSECDR counts the BCD-coded second value. This register is initialized to H'00 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. The setting range is decimal 00 to 59. It is an 8-bit read register used as a counter, when it operates as a free running counter. For more information on reading seconds, minutes, hours, and day-of-week, see section 11.4.3, Data Reading Procedure.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	BSY	—	R	RTC Busy This bit is set to 1 when the RTC is updating (operating) the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers. When this bit is 0, the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers must be adopted.
6	SC12	—	R/W	Counting Ten's Position of Seconds
5	SC11	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 5 for 60-second counting.
4	SC10	—	R/W	
3	SC03	—	R/W	Counting One's Position of Seconds
2	SC02	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 9 once per second. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the ten's position.
1	SC01	—	R/W	
0	SC00	—	R/W	

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

11.3.2 Minute Data Register (RMINDR)

RMINDR counts the BCD-coded minute value on the carry generated once per minute by the RSECDR counting. This register is initialized to H'00 a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. The setting range is decimal 00 to 59.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	BSY	—	R	RTC Busy This bit is set to 1 when the RTC is updating (operating) the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers. When this bit is 0, the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers must be adopted.
6	MN12	—	R/W	Counting Ten's Position of Minutes
5	MN11	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 5 for 60-minute counting.
4	MN10	—	R/W	
3	MN03	—	R/W	Counting One's Position of Minutes
2	MN02	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 9 once per minute. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the ten's position.
1	MN01	—	R/W	
0	MN00	—	R/W	

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

11.3.3 Hour Data Register (RHRDR)

RHRDR counts the BCD-coded hour value on the carry generated once per hour by RMINDR. This register is initialized to H'00 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. The setting range is either decimal 0 to 11 or 0 to 23 by the selection of the 12/24 bit in RTCCR1.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	BSY	—	R	RTC Busy This bit is set to 1 when the RTC is updating (operating) the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers. When this bit is 0, the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers must be adopted.
6	—	0	—	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
5	HR11	—	R/W	Counting Ten's Position of Hours
4	HR10	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 2 for ten's position of hours.
3	HR03	—	R/W	Counting One's Position of Hours
2	HR02	—	R/W	Counts on 0 to 9 once per hour. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the ten's position.
1	HR01	—	R/W	
0	HR00	—	R/W	

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

11.3.4 Day-of-Week Data Register (RWKDR)

RWKDR counts the BCD-coded day-of-week value on the carry generated once per day by RHRDR. This register is initialized to H'00 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. The setting range is decimal 0 to 6 using bits WK2 to WK0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	BSY	—	R	RTC Busy This bit is set to 1 when the RTC is updating (operating) the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers. When this bit is 0, the values of second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data registers must be adopted.
6 to 3	—	All 0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
2	WK2	—	R/W	Day-of-Week Counting
1	WK1	—	R/W	Day-of-week is indicated with a binary code
0	WK0	—	R/W	000: Sunday 001: Monday 010: Tuesday 011: Wednesday 100: Thursday 101: Friday 110: Saturday 111: Reserved (Setting prohibited)

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

11.3.5 RTC Control Register 1 (RTCCR1)

RTCCR1 controls start/stop and reset of the clock timer. Bits 7 to 5 of this register are initialized to H'00 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. For the definition of time expression, see figure 11.2.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	RUN	—	R/W	RTC Operation Start 0: Stops RTC and free running counter operation 1: Starts RTC and free running counter operation
6	12/24	—	R/W	Operating Mode 0: RTC operates in 12-hour mode. RHRDR counts on 0 to 11. 1: RTC operates in 24-hour mode. RHRDR counts on 0 to 23.
5	PM	—	R/W	A.M./P.M. 0: Indicates a.m. when RTC is in the 12-hour mode. 1: Indicates p.m. when RTC is in the 12-hour mode.
4	RST	0	R/W	Reset 0: Normal operation 1: Resets registers and control circuits except RTCCSR and this bit. Clear this bit to 0 after having been set to 1.
3 to 0	—	All 0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

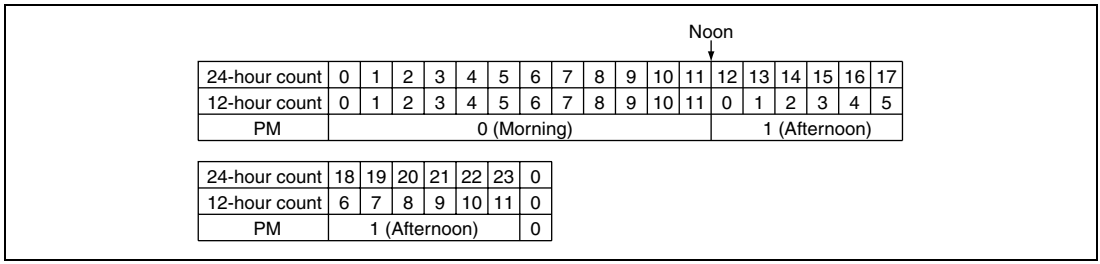


Figure 11.2 Definition of Time Expression

11.3.6 RTC Control Register 2 (RTCCR2)

RTCCR2 controls RTC periodic interrupts of weeks, days, hours, minutes, and seconds. This register is initialized to H'00 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or the RST bit in RTCCR1, but not initialized by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. Enabling interrupts of weeks, days, hours, minutes, and seconds sets the IRRTA flag to 1 in the interrupt flag register 1 (IRR1) when an interrupt occurs. It also controls an overflow interrupt of a free running counter when RTC operates as a free running counter.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value*	R/W	Description
7	—	0	—	Reserved
6	—	0	—	These bits are always read as 0.
5	FOIE	—	R/W	Free Running Counter Overflow Interrupt Enable 0: Disables an overflow interrupt 1: Enables an overflow interrupt
4	WKIE	—	R/W	Week Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disables a week periodic interrupt 1: Enables a week periodic interrupt
3	DYIE	—	R/W	Day Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disables a day periodic interrupt 1: Enables a day periodic interrupt
2	HRIE	—	R/W	Hour Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disables an hour periodic interrupt 1: Enables an hour periodic interrupt
1	MNIE	—	R/W	Minute Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disables a minute periodic interrupt 1: Enables a minute periodic interrupt
0	SEIE	—	R/W	Second Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disables a second periodic interrupt 1: Enables a second periodic interrupt

Note:* Initial value after $\overline{\text{RES}}$.

11.3.7 Clock Source Select Register (RTCCSR)

RTCCSR selects clock source. This register is initialized to H'08 by a $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input or $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. A free running counter controls start/stop of counter operation by the RUN bit in RTCCR1. When a clock other than 32.768 MHz is selected, the RTC is disabled and operates as an 8-bit free running counter. When the RTC operates as an 8-bit free running counter, RSECDR enables counter values to be read. An interrupt can be generated by setting 1 to the FOIE bit in RTCCR2 and enabling an overflow interrupt of the free running counter. A clock in which the system clock is divided by 32, 16, 8, or 4 is output in active or sleep mode.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	0	—	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
6	RCS6	0	R/W	Clock Output Selection
5	RCS5	0	R/W	Selects a clock output from the TMOW pin when the TMOWE bit in UCTLR is set to 1. 00: φ/4 01: φ/8 10: φ/16 11: φ/32
4	—	0	—	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
3	RCS3	1	R/W	Clock Source Selection
2	RCS2	0	R/W	0000: φ/8····· Free running counter
1	RCS1	0	R/W	0001: φ/32····· Free running counter operation
0	RCS0	0	R/W	0010: φ/128····· Free running counter operation 0011: φ/256····· Free running counter operation 0100: φ/512····· Free running counter operation 0101: φ/2048····· Free running counter operation 0110: φ/4096····· Free running counter operation 0111: φ/8192····· Free running counter operation 1000: 32.768 kHz·····RTC operation

11.3.8 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTP)

EXMDLSTP controls the clock supply of the RTC and USB.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Module
7 to 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are always read as undefined values. These bits should not to be modified.
1	RTCSTOP	0	R/W	RTC Module Stop 0: RTC module stop cancelled 1: RTC module stop
0	USBSTOP1	0	R/W	USB Module Stop 0: USB module stop partly cancelled 1: USB module completely stop

11.4 Operation

11.4.1 Initial Settings of Registers after Power-On

The RTC registers that store second, minute, hour, and day-of week data are not reset by a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input. Therefore, all registers must be set to their initial values after power-on. Figure 11.3 shows the initial setting procedure of the RTC. Once the register setting are made, the RTC provides an accurate time as long as power is supplied regardless of a $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input.

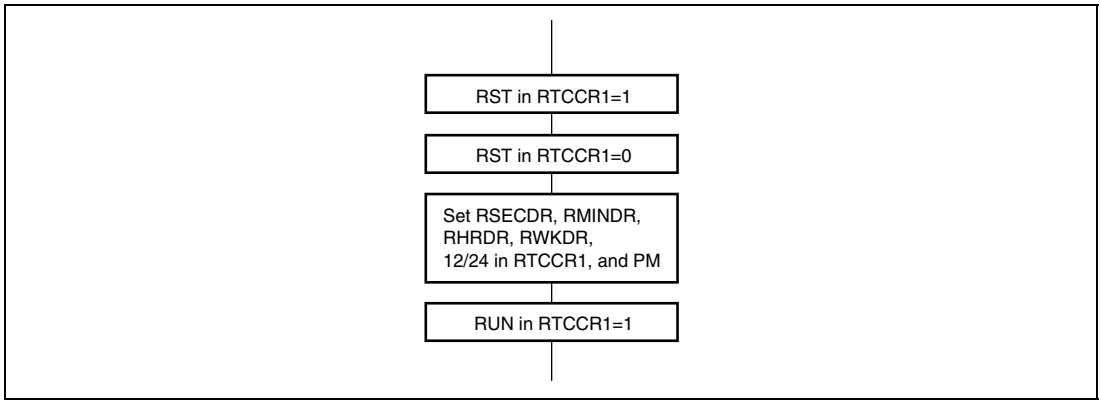


Figure 11.3 Initial Setting Procedure

11.4.2 Resetting Procedure

Figure 11.4 shows the procedure for the resetting of the RTC in operation. To set second, minute, hour, and day-of-week data, check the setting of the BSY bit, and clear the RUN bit in RTCCR1 to 0 when the BSY bit is 0 to stop operation of the RTC.

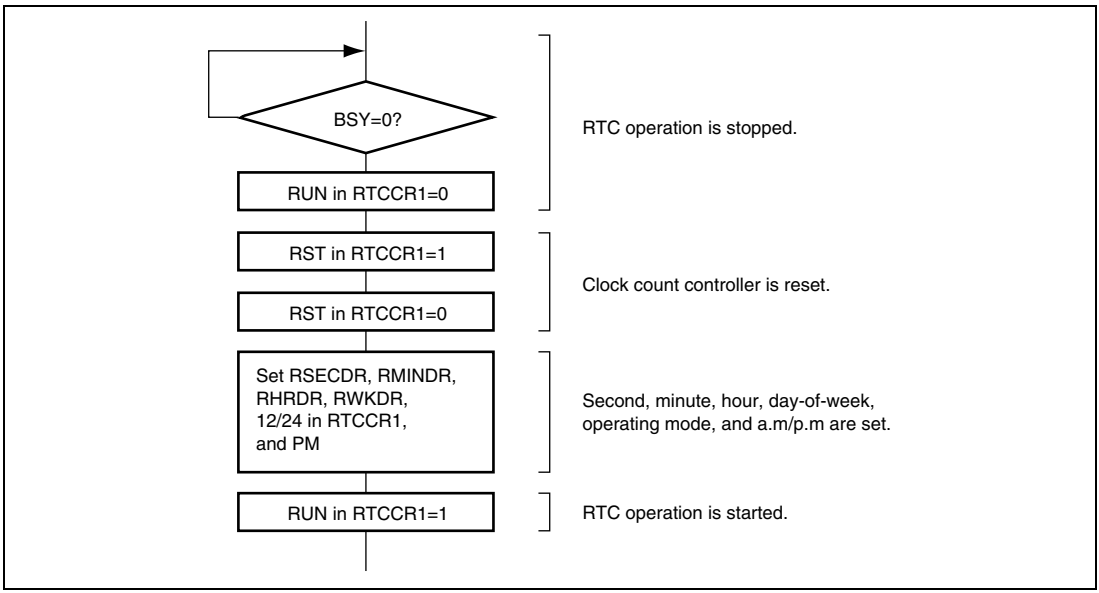


Figure 11.4 Resetting Procedure

11.4.3 Data Reading Procedure

When the seconds, minutes, hours, or day-of-week datum is updated while time data is being read, the data obtained may not be correct, and so the time data must be read again. Figure 11.5 shows an example in which correct data is not obtained. In this example, since only RSECDR is read after data update, about 1-minute inconsistency occurs.

To avoid reading in this timing, the following processing must be performed.

1. Check the setting of the BSY bit, and when the BSY bit changes from 1 to 0, read from the second, minute, hour, and day-of-week registers. When about 62.5 ms is passed after the BSY bit is set to 1, the registers are updated, and the BSY bit is cleared to 0.
2. Making use of interrupts, read from the second, minute, hour, and day-of week registers after the IRG5F flag in ISR is set to 1 and the BSY bit is confirmed to be 0.
3. Read from the second, minute, hour, and day-of week registers twice in a row, and if there is no change in the read data, the read data is used.

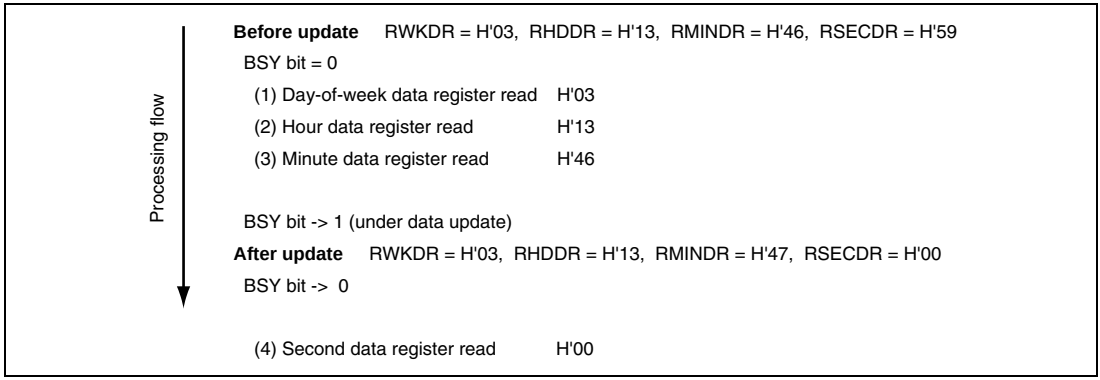


Figure 11.5 Example: Reading of Inaccurate Time Data

11.5 Interrupt Source

The RTC interrupt sources are listed in table 11.2. There are five kinds of RTC interrupts: week interrupts, day interrupts, hour interrupts, minute interrupts, and second interrupts.

When using an interrupt, initiate the RTC last after other registers (include ISCRH and IER of interrupt controller) are set. Do not set multiple interrupt enable bits in RTCCR2 simultaneously to 1.

When an interrupt request of the RTC occurs, the IRQ5F flag in ISR is set to 1. When clearing the flag, write 0 after reading the flag = 1.

Figure 11.6 shows the initializing setting procedure in using the RTC interrupt and figure 11.7 shows an example of the RTC interrupt handling routine.

Table 11.2 Interrupt Source

Interrupt Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Enable Bit
Overflow interrupt	Occurs when the free running counter is overflown.	FOIE
Week periodic interrupt	Occurs every week when the day-of-week date register value becomes 0.	WKIE
Day periodic interrupt	Occurs every day when the day-of-week date register is counted.	DYIE
Hour periodic interrupt	Occurs every hour when the hour date register is counted.	HRIE
Minute periodic interrupt	Occurs every minute when the minute date register is counted.	MNIE
Second periodic interrupt	Occurs every second when the second date register is counted.	SEIE

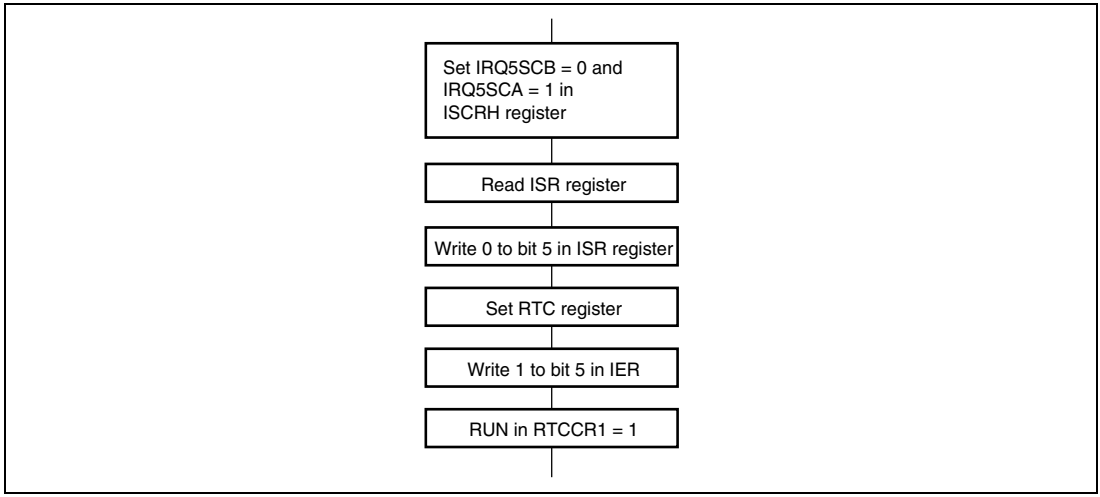


Figure 11.6 Initializing Procedure in Using RTC Interrupt

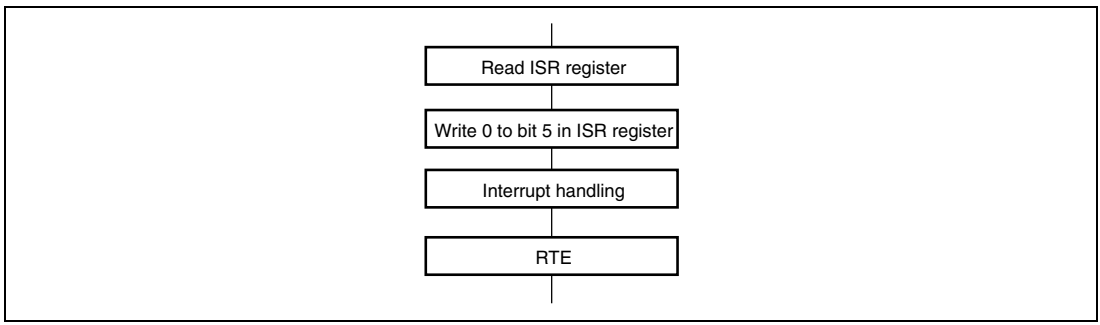


Figure 11.7 Example of RTC Interrupt Handling Routine

11.6 Operating State in Each Mode

Table 11.3 shows the operating state in each mode when the RTC is set for clock operation and free running timer operation. The clock operation is performed continuously even in low power mode. Therefore, when the clock operation is unnecessary, cancel it by EXMDLSTP.

Table 11.3 Operating State in Each Mode

Function	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hard-ware Standby
Clock operation	Sub-clock operation	Sub-clock operation	Sub-clock operation	Halted (Retained)	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Halted (Reset)
Free running timer operation	Operating	Operating	Operating	Halted (Retained)	Halted (Retained)	Halted (Retained)	Halted (Retained)	Halted (Retained)	Halted (Reset)

Section 12 Serial Communication Interface

This LSI has two independent serial communication interface (SCI) channels. The SCI can handle both asynchronous and clocked synchronous serial communication. Asynchronous serial data communication can be carried out using standard asynchronous communication chips such as a Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) or an Asynchronous Communication Interface Adapter (ACIA). A function is also provided for serial communication between processors (multiprocessor communication function). The SCI also supports the smart card (IC card) interface based on ISO/IEC 7816-3 (Identification Card) as an enhanced asynchronous communication function.

12.1 Features

- Choice of asynchronous or clocked synchronous serial communication mode
- Full-duplex communication capability

  The transmitter and receiver are mutually independent, enabling transmission and reception to be executed simultaneously.

  Double-buffering is used in both the transmitter and the receiver, enabling continuous transmission and continuous reception of serial data.

  On-chip baud rate generator allows any bit rate to be selected

  External clock can be selected as a transfer clock source (except for in Smart Card interface mode).
- Choice of LSB-first or MSB-first transfer (except in the case of asynchronous mode 7-bit data)
- Four interrupt sources

  Transmit-end, transmit-data-empty, receive-data-full, and receive error — that can issue requests.

  The transmit-data-empty interrupt and receive data full interrupts can be used to activate the direct memory access controller (DMAC).
- Module stop mode can be set

Asynchronous Mode

- Data length: 7 or 8 bits
- Stop bit length: 1 or 2 bits
- Parity: Even, odd, or none
- Receive error detection: Parity, overrun, and framing errors
- Break detection: Break can be detected by reading the RxD pin level directly in the case of a framing error

- Average transfer rate generator (SCI_0):
  921.569 kbps, 720 kbps, 460.784 kbps, or 115.196 kbps can be selected at 16 MHz
  921.053 kbps, 720 kbps, 460.526 kbps, or 115.132 kbps can be selected at 24 MHz
- A transfer rate clock can be input from the TPU (SCI_0)
- A multiprocessor communication function is provided that enables serial data communication with a number of processors

Clocked Synchronous Mode

- Data length: 8 bits
- Receive error detection: Overrun errors detected
- SCI select function (SCI_0): TxD0 = high-impedance and SCK0 = fixed high-level input can selected when IRQ7 = 1)
- Serial data communication can be carried out with other chips that have a synchronous communication function

Smart Card Interface

- An error signal can be automatically transmitted on detection of a parity error during reception
- Data can be automatically re-transmitted on detection of a error signal during transmission
- Both direct convention and inverse convention are supported

12.1.1 Block Diagram

Figure 12.1 shows the block diagram of the SCI_0. Figure 12.2 shows the block diagram of the SCI_2.

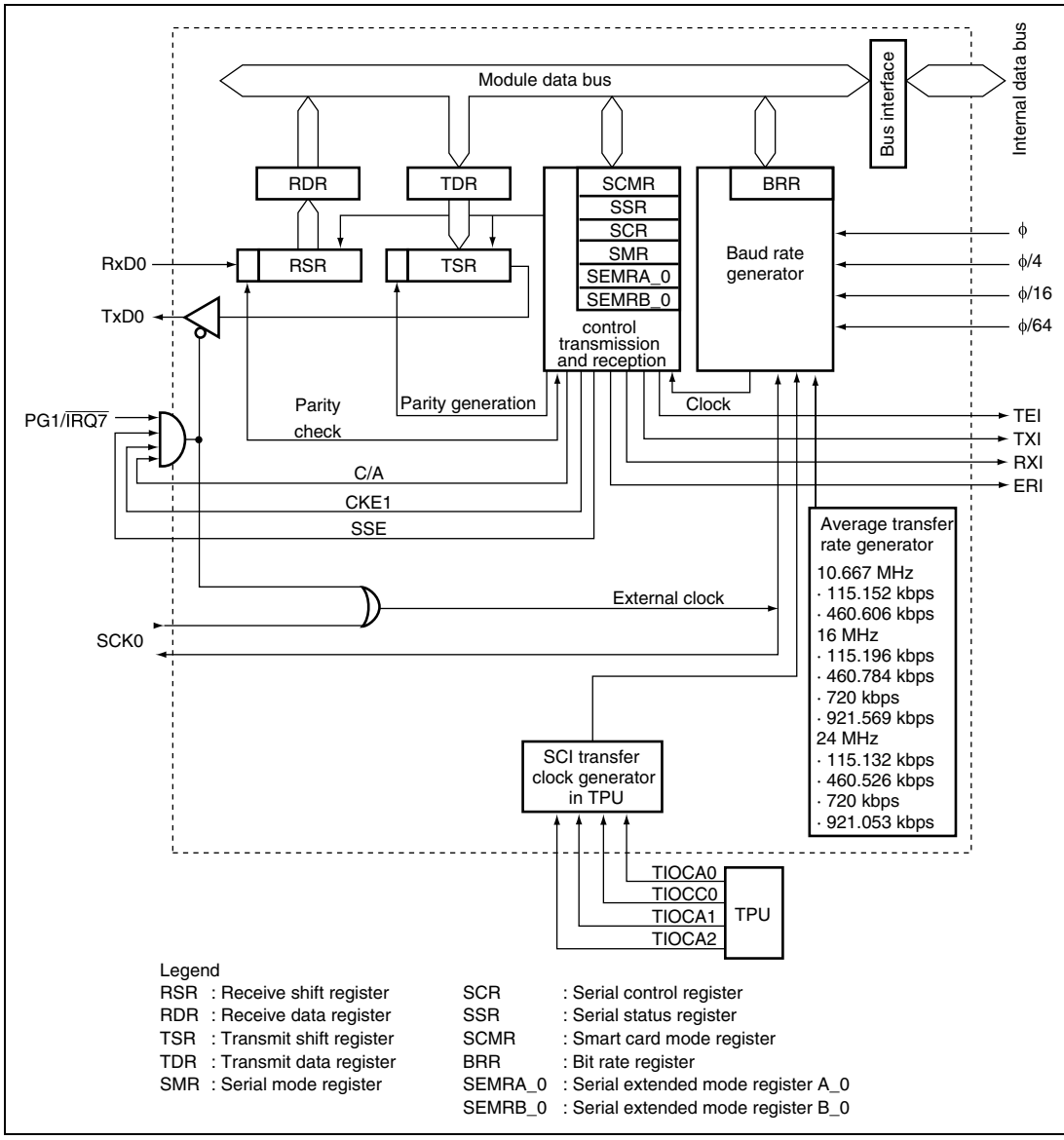


Figure 12.1 Block Diagram of SCI_0

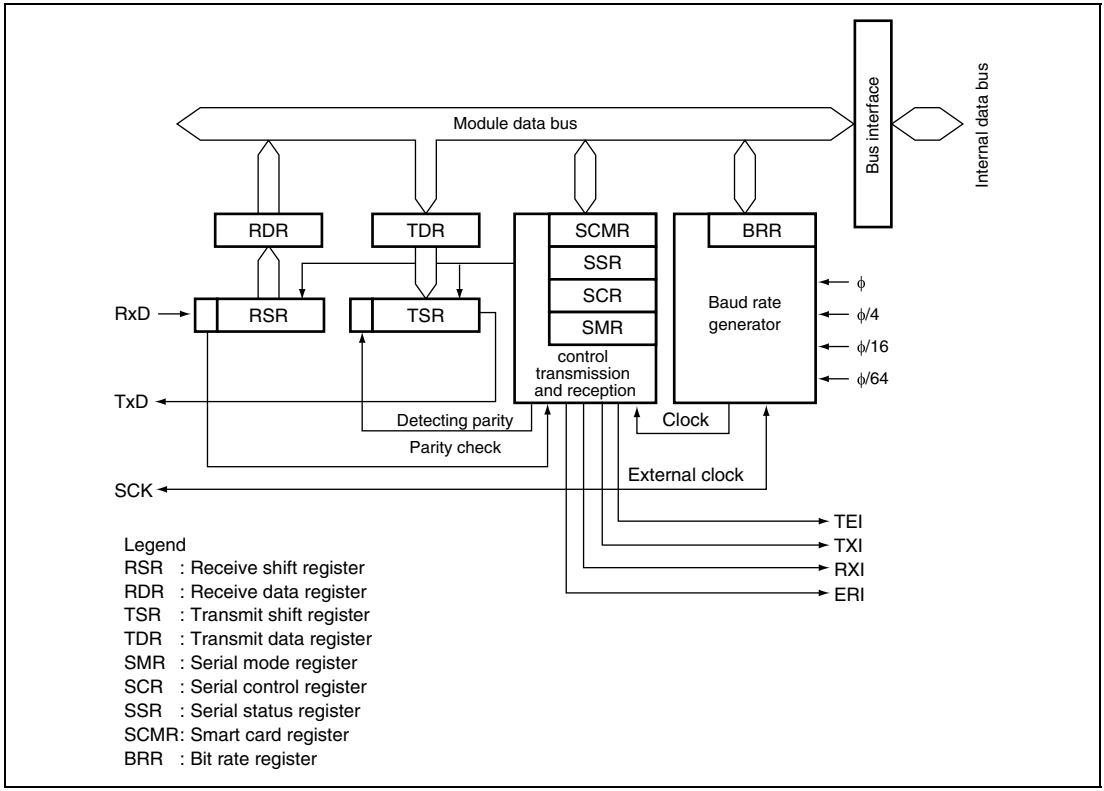


Figure 12.2 Block Diagram ofSCI_2

12.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 12.1 shows the serial pins for each SCI channel.

Table 12.1 Pin Configuration

Channel	Pin Name*	I/O	Function
0	SCK0	I/O	SCI_0 clock input/output
	RxD0	Input	SCI_0 receive data input
	TxD0	Output	SCI_0 transmit data output
2	SCK2	I/O	SCI_2 clock input/output
	RxD2	Input	SCI_2 receive data input
	TxD2	Output	SCI_2 transmit data output

Note: * Pin names SCK, RxD, and TxD are used in the text for all channels, omitting the channel designation.

12.3 Register Descriptions

The SCI has the following registers for each channel. Some bits in the serial mode register (SMR), serial status register (SSR), and serial control register (SCR) have different functions in different modes —normal serial communication interface mode and smart card interface mode; therefore, the bits are described separately for each mode in the corresponding register sections.

- Receive shift register (RSR)
- Receive data register (RDR)
- Transmit data register (TDR)
- Transmit shift register (TSR)
- Serial mode register (SMR)
- Serial control register (SCR)
- Serial status register (SSR)
- Smart card mode register (SCMR)
- Serial extended mode register A_0 (SEMRA_0) (only for channel 0)
- Serial extended mode register B_0 (SEMRB_0) (only for channel 0)
- Bit rate register (BRR)

12.3.1 Receive Shift Register (RSR)

RSR is a shift register that is used to receive serial data input to the RxD pin and convert it into parallel data. When one byte of data has been received, it is transferred to RDR automatically. RSR cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

12.3.2 Receive Data Register (RDR)

RDR is an 8-bit register that stores received data. When the SCI has received one byte of serial data, it transfers the received serial data from RSR to RDR, where it is stored. After this, RSR is receive-enabled. As RSR and RDR function as a double buffer in this way, continuous receive operations are possible. After confirming that the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, read RDR only once. RDR cannot be written to by the CPU.

12.3.3 Transmit Data Register (TDR)

TDR is an 8-bit register that stores data for transmission. When the SCI detects that TSR is empty, it transfers the transmit data written in TDR to TSR and starts transmission. The double-buffered structure of TDR and TSR enables continuous serial transmission. If the next transmit data has already been written to TDR during serial transmission, the SCI transfers the written data to TSR to continue transmission. Although TDR can be read from or written to by the CPU at all times, to achieve reliable serial transmission, write transmit data to TDR only once after confirming that the TDRE bit in SSR is set to 1.

12.3.4 Transmit Shift Register (TSR)

TSR is a shift register that transmits serial data. To perform serial data transmission, the SCI first transfers transmit data from TDR to TSR, then sends the data to the TxD pin. TSR cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

12.3.5 Serial Mode Register (SMR)

SMR is used to set the SCI's serial transfer format and select the baud rate generator clock source. Some bits in SMR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	C/$\overline{A}$	0	R/W	Communication Mode 0: Asynchronous mode 1: Clocked synchronous mode
6	CHR	0	R/W	Character Length (enabled only in asynchronous mode) 0: Selects 8 bits as the data length. 1: Selects 7 bits as the data length. LSB-first is fixed and the MSB of TDR is not transmitted in transmission. In clocked synchronous mode, a fixed data length of 8 bits is used.
5	PE	0	R/W	Parity Enable (enabled only in asynchronous mode) When this bit is set to 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data before transmission, and the parity bit is checked in reception. For a multiprocessor format, parity bit addition and checking are not performed regardless of the PE bit setting.
4	O/$\overline{E}$	0	R/W	Parity Mode (enabled only when the PE bit is 1 in asynchronous mode) 0: Selects even parity. 1: Selects odd parity.
3	STOP	0	R/W	Stop Bit Length (enabled only in asynchronous mode) Selects the stop bit length in transmission. 0: 1 stop bit 1: 2 stop bits In reception, only the first stop bit is checked. If the second stop bit is 0, it is treated as the start bit of the next transmit character.
2	MP	0	R/W	Multiprocessor Mode (enabled only in asynchronous mode) When this bit is set to 1, the multiprocessor communication function is enabled. The PE bit and O/$\overline{E}$ bit settings are invalid in multiprocessor mode. For details, see section 12.5, Multi Processor Communication Function.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
1	CKS1	0	R/W	Clock Select 0 and 1:
0	CKS0	0	R/W	These bits select the clock source for the baud rate generator. 00: ϕ clock (n = 0) 01: ϕ/4 clock (n = 1) 10: ϕ/16 clock (n = 2) 11: ϕ/64 clock (n = 3) For the relationship between the bit rate register setting and the baud rate, see section 12.3.11, Bit Rate Register (BRR). n is the decimal representation of the value of n in BRR (see section 12.3.11, Bit Rate Register (BRR)).

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	GM	0	R/W	GS Mode Setting this bit to 1 allows GSM mode operation. In GSM mode, the TEND set timing is put forward to 11.0 etu from the start and the clock output control function is appended. For details, see section 12.7.8, Clock Output Control.
6	BLK	0	R/W	Setting this bit to 1 allows block transfer mode operation. For details, see section 12.7.3, Block Transfer Mode.
5	PE	0	R/W	Parity Enable (valid only in asynchronous mode) When this bit is set to 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data before transmission, and the parity bit is checked in reception. Set this bit to 1 in smart card interface mode.
4	O/$\overline{E}$	0	R/W	Parity Mode (valid only when the PE bit is 1 in asynchronous mode) 0: Selects even parity 1: Selects odd parity For details on the usage of this bit in smart card interface mode, see section 12.7.2, Data Format (Except in Block Transfer Mode).

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	BCP1	0	R/W	Basic Clock Pulse 1,0
2	BCP0	0	R/W	These bits select the number of basic clock cycles in a 1-bit data transfer time in smart card interface mode. 00: 32 clock cycles (S = 32) 01: 64 clock cycles (S = 64) 10: 372 clock cycles (S = 372) 11: 256 clock cycles (S = 256) For details, see section 12.7.4, Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin. S is described in section 12.3.11, Bit Rate Register (BRR).
1	CKS1	0	R/W	Clock Select 1,0
0	CKS0	0	R/W	These bits select the clock source for the baud rate generator. 00: ϕ clock (n = 0) 01: ϕ/4 clock (n = 1) 10: ϕ/16 clock (n = 2) 11: ϕ/64 clock (n = 3) For the relation between the bit rate register setting and the baud rate, see section 12.3.11, Bit Rate Register (BRR). n is the decimal display of the value of n in BRR (see section 12.3.11, Bit Rate Register (BRR)).

12.3.6 Serial Control Register (SCR)

SCR is a register that enables or disables SCI transfer operations and interrupt requests, and is also used to selection of the transfer clock source. For details on interrupt requests, refer to section 12.9, Interrupts. Some bits in SCR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	TIE	0	R/W	Transmit Interrupt Enable When this bit is set to 1, the TXI interrupt request is enabled. TXI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag, then clearing it to 0, or clearing the TIE bit to 0.
6	RIE	0	R/W	Receive Interrupt Enable When this bit is set to 1, RXI and ERI interrupt requests are enabled. RXI and ERI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the RDRF flag, or the FER, PER, or ORER flag, then clearing the flag to 0, or clearing the RIE bit to 0.
5	TE	0	R/W	Transmit Enable When this bit s set to 1, transmission is enabled. In this state, serial transmission is started when transmit data is written to TDR and the TDRE flag in SSR is cleared to 0. SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the TE bit to 1. The TDRE flag in SSR is fixed at 1 if transmission is disabled by clearing this bit to 0.
4	RE	0	R/W	Receive Enable When this bit is set to 1, reception is enabled. Serial reception is started in this state when a start bit is detected in asynchronous mode or serial clock input is detected in clocked synchronous mode. SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the RE bit to 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 does not affect the RDRF, FER, PER, and ORER flags, which retain their states.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	MPIE	0	R/W	Multiprocessor Interrupt Enable (enabled only when the MP bit in SMR is 1 in asynchronous mode) When this bit is set to 1, receive data in which the multiprocessor bit is 0 is skipped, and setting of the RDRF, FER, and ORER status flags in SSR is prohibited. On receiving data in which the multiprocessor bit is 1, this bit is automatically cleared and normal reception is resumed. For details, refer to section 12.5, Multiprocessor Communication Function. When receive data including MPB = 0 is received, receive data transfer from RSR to RDR, receive error detection, and setting of the RDRF, FER, and ORER flags in SSR, is not performed. When receive data including MPB = 1 is received, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1, the MPIE bit is cleared to 0 automatically, and generation of RXI and ERI interrupts (when the TIE and RIE bits in SCR are set to 1) and FER and ORER flag setting is enabled.
2	TEIE	0	R/W	Transmit End Interrupt Enable This bit is set to 1, TEI interrupt request is enabled. TEI cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0 and clearing the TEND flag to 0, or clearing the TEIE bit to 0.
1	CKE1	0	R/W	Clock Enable 0 and 1
0	CKE0	0	R/W	Selects the clock source and SCK pin function. Asynchronous mode 00: Internal baud rate generator SCK pin functions as I/O port 01: Internal baud rate generator Outputs a clock of the same frequency as the bit rate from the SCK pin. 1X: External clock Inputs a clock with a frequency 16 times the bit rate from the SCK pin. Clocked synchronous mode 0X: Internal clock (SCK pin functions as clock output) 1X: External clock (SCK pin functions as clock input)

Legend X: Don't care

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	TIE	0	R/W	Transmit Interrupt Enable When this bit is set to 1, TXI interrupt request is enabled. TXI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0, or clearing the TIE bit to 0.
6	RIE	0	R/W	Receive Interrupt Enable When this bit is set to 1, RXI and ERI interrupt requests are enabled. RXI and ERI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the RDRF, FER, PER, or ORER flag in SSR, then clearing the flag to 0, or clearing the RIE bit to 0.
5	TE	0	R/W	Transmit Enable When this bit s set to 1, transmission is enabled. In this state, serial transmission is started when transmit data is written to TDR and the TDRE flag in SSR is cleared to 0. SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the TE bit to 1. When this bit is cleared to 0, the transmission operation is disabled, and the TDRE flag is fixed at 1.
4	RE	0	R/W	Receive Enable When this bit is set to 1, reception is enabled. Serial reception is started in this state when a start bit is detected in asynchronous mode or serial clock input is detected in clocked synchronous mode. SMR setting must be performed to decide the reception format before setting the RE bit to 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 does not affect the RDRF, FER,PER, and ORER flags, which retain their states.
3	MPIE	0	R/W	Multiprocessor Interrupt Enable (enabled only when the MP bit in SMR is 1 in asynchronous mode) Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode. When receive data including MPB = 0 is received, receive data transfer from RSR to RDR, receive error detection, and setting of the RERF, FER, and ORER flags in SSR, are not performed. When receive data including MPB = 1 is received, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1, the MPIE bit is cleared to 0 automatically, and generation of RXI and ERI interrupts (when the TIE and RIE bits in SCR are set to 1) and FER and ORER flag setting are enabled.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	TEIE	0	R/W	Transmit End Interrupt Enable Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode. TEI cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0 and clearing the TEND flag to 0, or clearing the TEIE bit to 0.
1	CKE1	0	R/W	Clock Enable 0 and 1
0	CKE0	0		Enables or disables clock output from the SCK pin. The clock output can be dynamically switched in GSM mode. For details, refer to section 12.7.8, Clock Output Control. When the GM bit in SMR is 0: 00: Output disabled (SCK pin can be used as an I/O port pin) 01: Clock output 1X: Reserved When the GM bit in SMR is 1: 00: Output fixed low 01: Clock output 10: Output fixed high 11: Clock output

Legend X: Don't care

12.3.7 Serial Status Register (SSR)

SSR is a register containing status flags of the SCI and multiprocessor bits for transfer. 1 cannot be written to flags TDRE, RDRF, ORER, PER, and FER; they can only be cleared. Some bits in SSR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	TDRE	1	R/(W)*	Transmit Data Register Empty Displays whether TDR contains transmit data. [Setting conditions] • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 • When data is transferred from TDR to TSR and data can be written to TDR [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by a TXI interrupt request and writes data to TDR
6	RDRF	0	R/(W)*	Receive Data Register Full Indicates that the received data is stored in RDR. [Setting condition] • When serial reception ends normally and receive data is transferred from RSR to RDR [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by an RXI interrupt and transferred data from RDR RDR and the RDRF flag are not affected and retain their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. The RDRF flag is not affected and retains their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	ORER	0	R/(W)*	Overrun Error [Setting condition] • When the next serial reception is completed while RDRF = 1 The receive data prior to the overrun error is retained in RDR, and the data received subsequently is lost. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the ORER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1 The ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.
4	FER	0	R/(W)*	Framing Error [Setting condition] • When the stop bit is 0 In 2-stop-bit mode, only the first stop bit is checked for a value of 0; the second stop bits not checked. If a framing error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the FER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to FER after reading FER = 1 The FER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
3	PER	0	R/(W)*	Parity Error [Setting condition] • When a parity error is detected during reception If a parity error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the PER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1 The PER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.
2	TEND	1	R	Transmit End [Setting conditions] • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 • When TDRE = 1 at transmission of the last bit of a 1-byte serial transmit character [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by a TXI interrupt and writes data to TDR
1	MPB	0	R	Multiprocessor Bit MPB stores the multiprocessor bit in the receive data. When the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0 its previous state is retained. This bit retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.
0	MPBT	0	R/W	Multiprocessor Bit Transfer MPBT stores the multiprocessor bit to be added to the transmit data.

Note:* The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	TDRE	1	R/(W)*	Transmit Data Register Empty Indicates whether TDR contains transmit data. [Setting conditions] • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 • When data is transferred from TDR to TSR and data can be written to TDR [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by a TXI interrupt request and writes data to TDR
6	RDRF	0	R/(W)*	Receive Data Register Full Indicates that the received data is stored in RDR. [Setting condition] • When serial reception ends normally and receive data is transferred from RSR to RDR [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by an RXI interrupt and transferred data from RDR The RDRF flag is not affected and retains their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. If reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag is still set to 1, an overrun error will occur and the receive data will be lost.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	ORER	0	R/(W)*	Overrun Error Indicates that an overrun error occurred during reception, causing abnormal termination. [Setting condition] • When the next serial reception is completed while RDRF = 1 The receive data prior to the overrun error is retained in RDR, and the data received subsequently is lost. Also, subsequent serial cannot be continued while the ORER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1 The ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.
4	ERS	0	R/(W)*	Error Signal Status Indicates that the status of an error, signal 1 returned from the reception side at reception [Setting condition] • When the low level of the error signal is sampled [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to ERS after reading ERS = 1 The ERS flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.
3	PER	0	R/(W)*	Parity Error Indicates that a parity error occurred during reception using parity addition in asynchronous mode, causing abnormal termination. [Setting condition] • When a parity error is detected during reception If a parity error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the PER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. [Clearing condition] • When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1 The PER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	TEND	1	R	Transmit End This bit is set to 1 when no error signal has been sent back from the receiving end and the next transmit data is ready to be transferred to TDR. [Setting conditions] • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 and the ERS bit is also 0 • When the ESR bit is 0 and the TDRE bit is 1 after the specified interval following transmission of 1-byte data. The timing of bit setting differs according to the register setting as follows: When GM = 0 and BLK = 0, 2.5 etu after transmission starts When GM = 0 and BLK = 1, 1.0 etu after transmission starts When GM = 1 and BLK = 0, 1.5 etu after transmission starts When GM = 1 and BLK = 1, 1.0 etu after transmission starts [Clearing conditions] • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 • When the DMAC is activated by a TXI interrupt and transfers transmission data to TDR
1	MPB	0	R	Multiprocessor Bit This bit is not used in Smart Card interface mode.
0	MPBT	0	R/W	Multiprocessor Bit Transfer Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode.

Note:* The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.

12.3.8 Smart Card Mode Register (SCMR)

SCMR selects LSB-first or MSB-first by means of bit SDIR.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	1	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 1.
3	DIR	0	R/W	Smart Card Data Transfer Direction Selects the serial/parallel conversion format. 0: LSB-first in transfer 1: MSB-first in transfer The bit setting is valid only when the transfer data format is 8 bits.
2	INV	0	R/W	Smart Card Data Invert Specifies inversion of the data logic level. The SINV bit does not affect the logic level of the parity bit. To invert the parity bit, invert the O/$\overline{E}$ bit in SMR. 0: TDR contents are transmitted as they are. Receive data is stored as it is in RDR 1: TDR contents are inverted before being transmitted. Receive data is stored in inverted form in RDR
1	—	1	—	Reserved This bit is always read as 1.
0	SMIF	0	R/W	Smart Card Interface Mode Select When this bit is set to 1, smart card interface mode is selected. 0: Normal asynchronous or clocked synchronous mode 1: Smart card interface mode

12.3.9 Serial Extended Mode Register A_0 (SEMRA_0)

SEMRA_0 extends the functions of SCI_0. SEMR0 enables selection of the SCI_0 select function in synchronous mode, base clock setting in asynchronous mode, and also clock source selection and automatic transfer rate setting. Figure 12.3 shows an example of the internal base clock when an average transfer rate is selected and figure 12.4 shows as example of the setting when the TPU clock input is selected.

<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Bit Name</th><th>Initial Value</th><th>R/W</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>SSE</td><td>0</td><td>R/W</td><td>SCI_0 Select Enable

Allows selection of the SCI0 select function when an external clock is input in synchronous mode.

The SSE setting is valid when external clock input is used (CKE1 = 1 in SCR) in synchronous mode (C/$\overline{A}$ = 1 in SMR).

0: SCI_0 select function disabled
1: SCI_0 select function enabled

When the SCI_0 select function is enabled, if 1 is input to the PG1/$\overline{IRQ7}$ pin, TxD0 output goes to the high-impedance state, SCK0 input is fixed high.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>TCS2</td><td>0</td><td>R/W</td><td>TPU Clock Select*[1]

When the TPU clock is input as the clock source in asynchronous mode, serial transfer clock is generated depending on the combination of the TPU clock.

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Base Clock</th><th>Clock Enable</th><th>TCLKA</th><th>TCLKB</th><th>TCLKC</th></tr>
<tr><td>000</td><td>TIOCA1</td><td>TIOCA2</td><td>Base clock written in the left column</td><td>Pin input</td><td>Pin input</td></tr>
<tr><td>001</td><td>TIOCA0 | TIOCC0</td><td>TIOCA1</td><td>Pin input</td><td>Base clock written in the left column</td><td>Pin input</td></tr>
<tr><td>010</td><td>TIOCA0</td><td>TIOCA1 & TIOCA2</td><td>Pin input</td><td>Base clock written in the left column</td><td>Pin input</td></tr>
<tr><td>011</td><td>TIOCA0 | TIOCC0</td><td>TIOCA1 & TIOCA2</td><td>Pin input</td><td>Base clock written in the left column</td><td>Pin input</td></tr>
<tr><td>1**</td><td colspan="5">Reserved (Setting prohibited)</td></tr>
</table>

Legend

&: AND (logical multiplication)

I : OR (logical addition)</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>TCS1</td><td>0</td><td>R/W</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>TCS0</td><td>0</td><td>R/W</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ABCS</td><td>0</td><td>R/W</td><td>Asynchronous Base Clock Select

Selects the 1-bit-interval base clock in asynchronous mode. The ABCS setting is valid in asynchronous mode (C/$\overline{A}$ = 0 in SMR).

0: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate

1: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 8 times transfer rate</td></tr>
</table>

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	ACS2	0	R/W	Asynchronous Clock Source Select 2 to 0
1	ACS1	0	R/W	These bits select the clock source in asynchronous mode depending on the combination with the bit 7 (ACS3) in SEMRB_0 (serial extended mode register B_0). When an average transfer rate is selected, the base clock is set automatically regardless of the ABCS value. Note that average transfer rates support only 10.667 MHz, 16 MHz, and 24 MHz, and not support other operating frequencies.
0	ACS0	0	R/W	ACS 3210 0000: External clock input 0001: 115.152 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 10.667 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) 0010: 460.606 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 10.667 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) 0011: 921.569 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 16 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) 0100: TPU clock input The signal generated by TIOCA0, TIOCC0, TIOCA1, and TIOCA2, which are the compare match outputs for TPU_0 to TPU_2 or PWM outputs, is used as a base clock. Note that $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ cannot be used since TIOCA1 and TIOCA2 are used as outputs. 0101: 115.196 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 16 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) 0110: 460.784 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 16 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) 0111: 720 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 16 MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	ACS2	0	R/W	1000: 115.132 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 24 MHz only) is selected*2 (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate)
1	ACS1	0	R/W	
0	ACS0	0	R/W	1001: 460.526 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 24 MHz only) is selected*2 (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate)
				1010: 720 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 24 MHz only) is selected*2 (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate)
				1011: 921.053 kbps average transfer rate (for ϕ = 24 MHz only) is selected*2 (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate)
				11XX: Reserved (Setting prohibited)

Notes: 1. The functions of bits 6 to 4 are not supported by the E6000 emulator.
2. The average transfer rate select functions for 24 MHz only (ACS3 to ACS0 = 10XX) are not supported by the E6000 emulator.

12.3.10 Serial Extended Mode Register B_0 (SEMRB_0)

SEMRB_0 enables clock source selection with the combination of SEMRA_0, automatic transfer rate setting, and control of port 1 pins (P16, P14, P12, and P10) at the transfer clock generation by TPU.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	ACS3	0	R/W	Asynchronous Clock Source Select Selects the clock source in asynchronous mode depending on the combination with the ACS2 to ACS0 (bits 2 to 0 in SEMRA_0). For details, see section 12.3.9, Serial Extended Mode Register A_0 (SEMRA_0).
6 to 4	—	Undefined	—	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
3	TIOCA2E	1	R/W	TIOCA Output Enable* Controls the TIOCA2 output on the P16 pin. When the TIOCA2 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P16 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0. 0: Disables output of TIOCA2 in TPU 1: Enables output of TIOCA2 in TPU

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	TIOCA1E	1	R/W	TIOCA1 Output Enable*
				Controls the TIOCA1 output on the P14 pin.
				When the TIOCA1 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P16 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.
				0: Disables output of TIOCA1 in TPU
				1: Enables output TIOCA1 in TPU
1	TIOCC0E	1	R/W	TIOCC0 Output Enable*
				Controls the TIOCC0 output on the P12 pin.
				When the TIOCC0 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P12 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.
				0: Disables output of TIOCC0 in TPU
				1: Enables output of TIOCC0 in TPU
0	TIOCA0E	1	R/W	TIOCA0 Output Enable*
				Controls the TIOCA0 output on the P10 pin.
				When the TIOCA0 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P10 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.
				0: Disables output of TIOCA0 in TPU
				1: Enables output of TIOCA0 in TPU

Note:* The functions of bits 3 to 0 are not supported by the E6000 emulator.

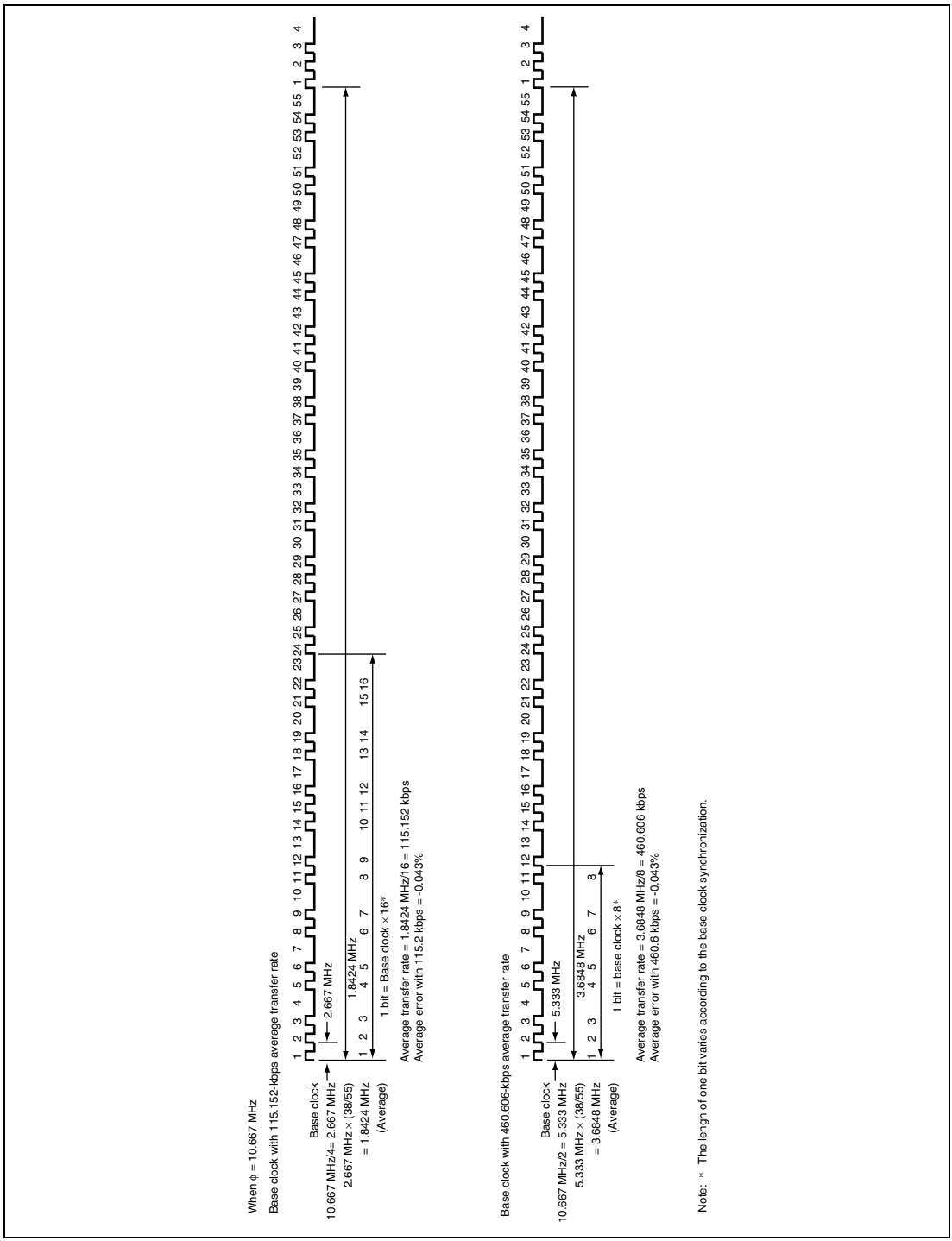


Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (1)

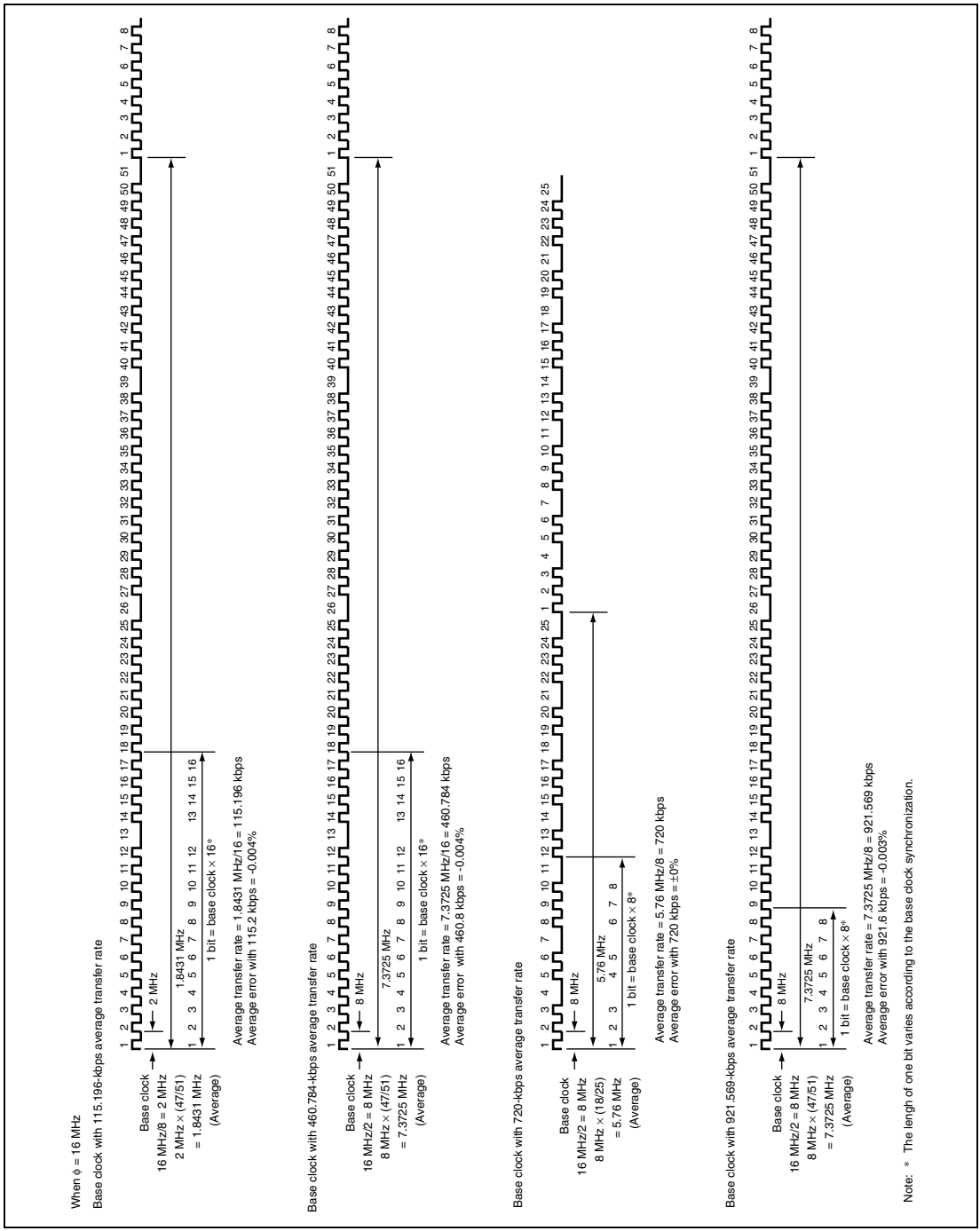


Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (2)

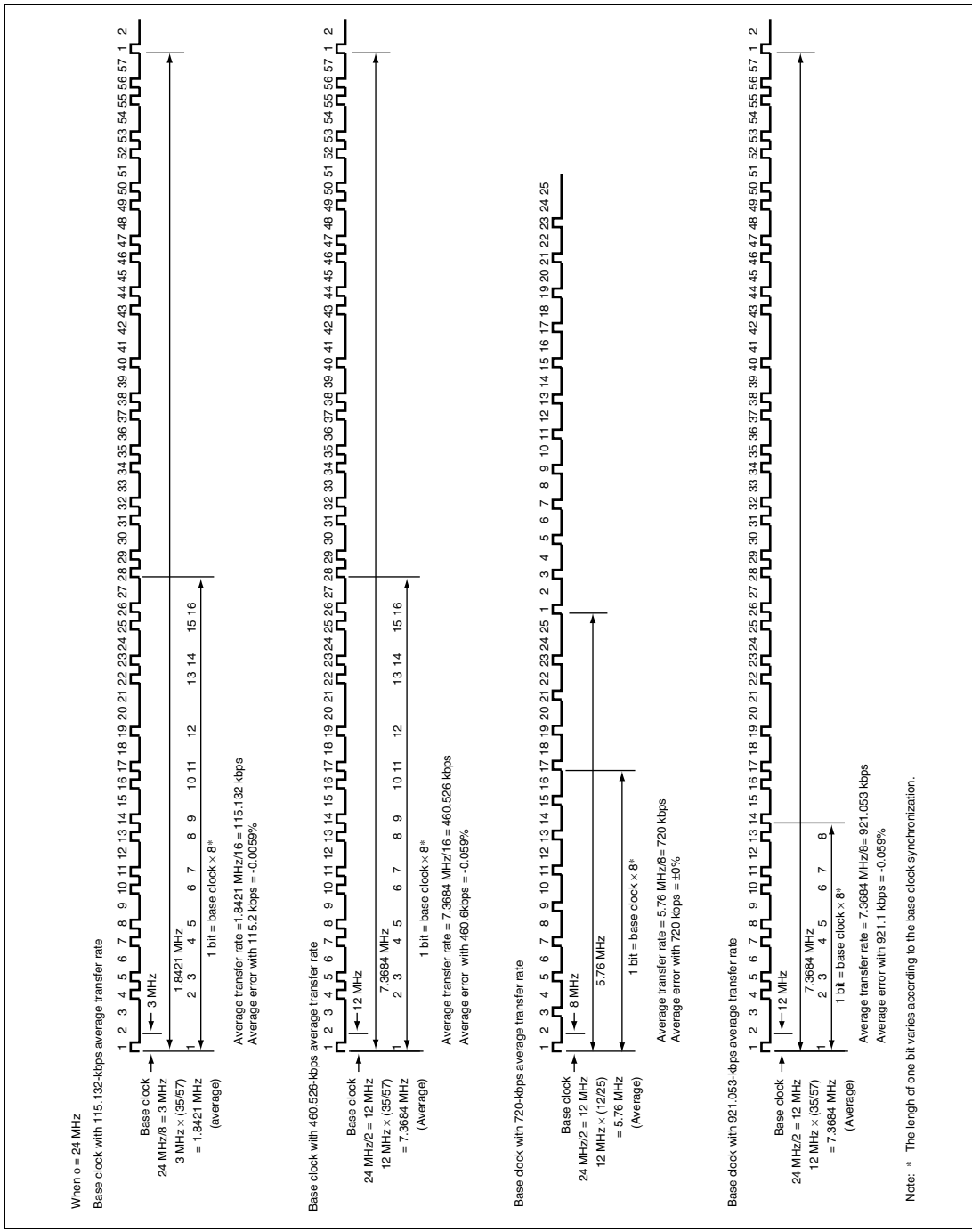


Figure 12.3 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate is Selected (3)

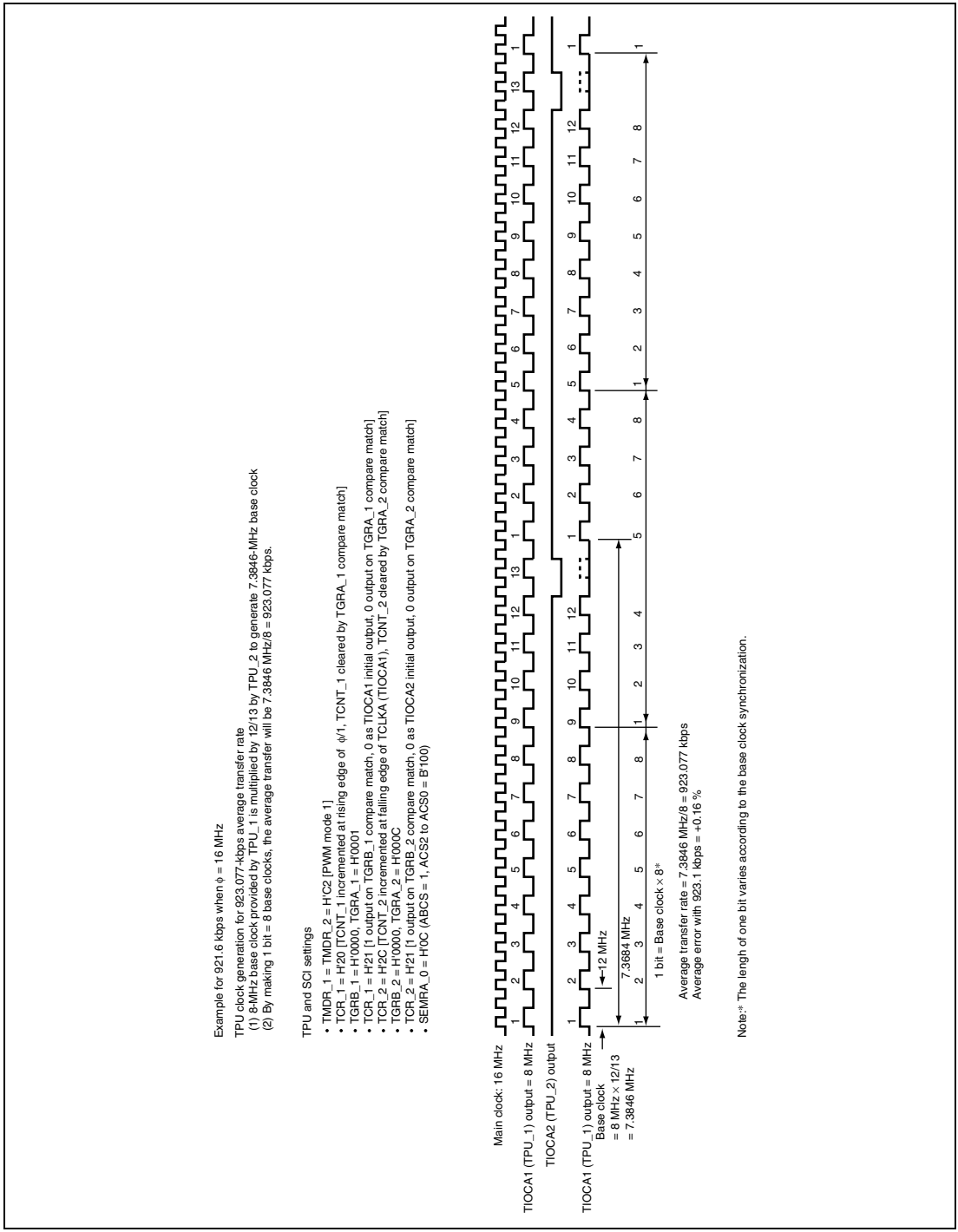


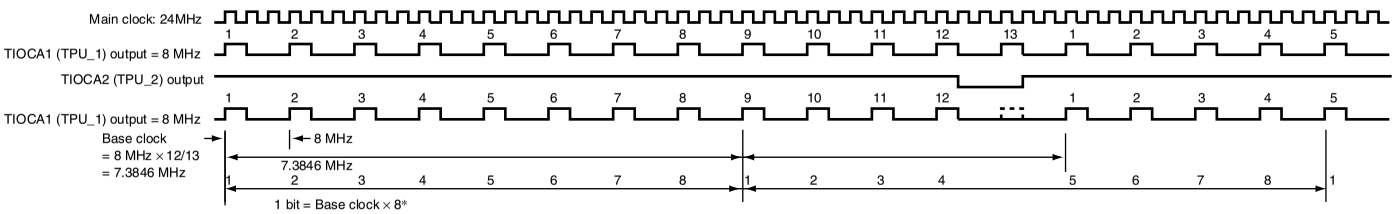
Figure 12.4 Example of Base Clock when TPU Clock is Input (1)

Example for 921.6 kbps when ϕ = 24 MHz

TPU clock generation for 923.077-kbps average transfer rate
(1) 8-MHz base clock provided by TPU_1 is multiplied by 12/13 by TPU_2 to generate 7.3846-MHz base clock
(2) By making 1 bit = 8 base clocks, the average transfer will be 7.3846 MHz/8 = 923.077 kbps.

TPU and SCI settings

- TMDR_1 = TMDR_2 = H'C2 [PWM mode 1]
- TCR_1 = H'20 [TCNT_1 incremented at rising edge of ϕ/1, TCNT_1 cleared by TGRA_1 compare match]
- TGRB_1 = H'0003, TGRA_1 = H'0004
- TCR_1 = H'21 [1 output on TGRB_1 compare match, 0 as TIOCA1 initial output, 0 output on TGRA_1 compare match]
- TCR_2 = H'2C [TCNT_2 incremented at falling edge of TCLKA (TIOCA1), TCNT_2 cleared by TGRA_2 compare match]
- TGRB_2 = H'0000, TGRA_2 = H'000C
- TCR_2 = H'21 [1 output on TGRB_2 compare match, 0 as TIOCA2 initial output, 0 output on TGRA_2 compare match]
- SEMRA_0 = H'0C (ABCS = 1, ACS2 to ACS0 = B'100)



Average transfer rate = 7.3846 MHz/8 = 923.077 kbps
Average error with 923.1 kbps = +0.16 %

Note:* The lengh of one bit varies according to the base clock synchronization.

Figure 12.4 Example of Base Clock when TPU Clock is Input (2)

12.3.11 Bit Rate Register (BRR)

BRR is an 8-bit register that adjusts the bit rate. As the SCI performs baud rate generator control independently for each channel, different bit rates can be set for each channel. Table 12.2 shows the relationships between the N setting in BRR and bit rate B for normal asynchronous mode, clocked synchronous mode, and Smart Card interface mode. The initial value of BRR is H'FF, and it can be read from or written to by the CPU at all times.

Table 12.2 Relationships between the N Setting in BRR and Bit Rate B

Mode	ABCS	Bit Rate	Error
Asynchronous mode	0	$B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$	$\text{Error (\%)} = \left\lvert \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times 64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right\rvert \times 100$
	1	$B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$	$\text{Error (\%)} = \left\lvert \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times 32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right\rvert \times 100$
Clocked synchronous mode	—	$B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{8 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$	—
Smart Card interface mode	—	$B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{S \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$	$\text{Error (\%)} = \left\lvert \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times S \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right\rvert \times 100$

Legend

B: Bit rate (bps)

N: BRR setting for baud rate generator ($0 \le N \le 255$)

ϕ: Operating frequency (MHz)

n, S: Determined by the SMR settings shown in the following tables.

SMR Setting			
CKS1	CKS0	Clock Source	n
0	0	ϕ	0
0	1	$\phi/4$	1
1	0	$\phi/16$	2
1	1	$\phi/64$	3

SMR Setting		
BCP1	BCP0	S
0	0	32
0	1	64
1	0	372
1	1	256

Table 12.3 shows sample N settings in BRR in normal asynchronous mode. Table 12.4 shows the maximum bit rate for each frequency in normal asynchronous mode. Table 12.6 shows sample N settings in BRR in clocked synchronous mode. Table 12.8 shows sample N settings in BRR in Smart Card interface mode. In Smart Card interface mode, S (the number of basic clock periods in a 1-bit transfer interval) can be selected. For details, see section 12.7.4, Receive Data Sampling and Reception Margin. Tables 12.5 and 12.7 show the maximum bit rates with external clock input.

When the ABCS bit in SCI_0's serial extended mode register A_0 (SEMRA_0) is set to 1 in asynchronous mode, the maximum bit rates are twice those shown in table 12.3.

Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (1)

Bit Rate	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	2			2.097152			2.4576			3		
(bps)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	1	141	0.03	1	148	–0.04	1	174	–0.26	1	212	0.03
150	1	103	0.16	1	108	–0.21	1	127	0.00	1	155	0.16
300	0	207	0.16	0	217	–0.21	0	255	0.00	1	77	0.16
600	0	103	0.16	0	108	–0.21	0	127	0.00	0	155	0.16
1200	0	51	0.16	0	54	–0.70	0	63	0.00	0	77	0.16
2400	0	25	0.16	0	26	1.14	0	31	0.00	0	38	0.16
4800	0	12	0.16	0	13	–2.48	0	15	0.00	0	19	–2.34
9600	—	—	—	—	6	–2.48	0	7	0.00	0	9	–2.34
19200	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	3	0.00	0	4	–2.34
31250	0	1	0.00	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	2	0.00
38400	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	1	0.00	—	—	—

Bit Rate	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	3.6864			4			4.9152			5		
(bps)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	64	0.70	2	70	0.03	2	86	0.31	2	88	–0.25
150	1	191	0.00	1	207	0.16	1	255	0.00	2	64	0.16
300	1	95	0.00	1	103	0.16	1	127	0.00	1	129	0.16
600	0	191	0.00	0	207	0.16	0	255	0.00	1	64	0.16
1200	0	95	0.00	0	103	0.16	0	127	0.00	0	129	0.16
2400	0	47	0.00	0	51	0.16	0	63	0.00	0	64	0.16
4800	0	23	0.00	0	25	0.16	0	31	0.00	0	32	–1.36
9600	0	11	0.00	0	12	0.16	0	15	0.00	0	15	1.73
19200	0	5	0.00	—	—	—	0	7	0.00	0	7	1.73
31250	—	—	—	0	3	0.00	0	4	–1.70	0	4	0.00
38400	0	2	0.00	—	—	—	0	3	0.00	0	3	1.73

Note: This table shows bit rates when the ABCS bit in SEMRA_0 is cleared to 0.
When the ABCS bit in SEMR0 is set to 1, the bit rates are twice those shown in this table.
In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 6 MHz or greater.

Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (2)

Bit Rate (bps)	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	6			6.144			7.3728			17.2032		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	106	–0.44	2	108	0.08	2	130	–0.07	2	141	0.03
150	2	77	0.16	2	79	0.00	2	95	0.00	2	103	0.16
300	1	155	0.16	1	159	0.00	1	191	0.00	1	207	0.16
600	1	77	0.16	1	79	0.00	1	95	0.00	1	103	0.16
1200	0	155	0.16	0	159	0.00	0	191	0.00	0	207	0.16
2400	0	77	0.16	0	79	0.00	0	95	0.00	0	103	0.16
4800	0	38	0.16	0	39	0.00	0	47	0.00	0	51	0.16
9600	0	19	–2.34	0	19	0.00	0	23	0.00	0	25	0.16
19200	0	9	–2.34	0	9	0.00	0	11	0.00	0	12	0.16
31250	0	5	0.00	0	5	2.40	—	—	—	0	7	0.00
38400	0	4	–2.34	0	4	0.00	0	5	0.00	—	—	—

Bit Rate (bps)	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	9.8304			10			12			12.288		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	174	–0.26	2	177	–0.25	2	212	0.03	2	217	0.08
150	2	127	0.00	2	129	0.16	2	155	0.16	2	159	0.00
300	1	255	0.00	2	64	0.16	2	77	0.16	2	79	0.00
600	1	127	0.00	1	129	0.16	1	155	0.16	1	159	0.00
1200	0	255	0.00	1	64	0.16	1	77	0.16	1	79	0.00
2400	0	127	0.00	0	129	0.16	0	155	0.16	0	159	0.00
4800	0	63	0.00	0	64	0.16	0	77	0.16	0	79	0.00
9600	0	31	0.00	0	32	–1.36	0	38	0.16	0	39	0.00
19200	0	15	0.00	0	15	1.73	0	19	–2.34	0	19	0.00
31250	0	9	–1.70	0	9	0.00	0	11	0.00	0	11	2.40
38400	0	7	0.00	0	7	1.73	0	9	–2.34	0	9	0.00

Note: This table shows bit rates when the ABCS bit in SEMRA_0 is cleared to 0.
When the ABCS bit in SEMR0 is set to 1, the bit rates are twice those shown in this table.
In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 6 MHz or greater.

Table 12.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) (3)

Bit Rate (bps)	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	14			14.7456			16			17.2032		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	248	–0.17	3	64	0.70	3	70	0.03	3	75	0.48
150	2	181	0.16	2	191	0.00	2	207	0.16	2	223	0.00
300	2	90	0.16	2	95	0.00	2	103	0.16	2	111	0.00
600	1	181	0.16	1	191	0.00	1	207	0.16	1	223	0.00
1200	1	90	0.16	1	95	0.00	1	103	0.16	1	111	0.00
2400	0	181	0.16	0	191	0.00	0	207	0.16	0	223	0.00
4800	0	90	0.16	0	95	0.00	0	103	0.16	0	111	0.00
9600	0	45	–0.93	0	47	0.00	0	51	0.16	0	55	0.00
19200	0	22	–0.93	0	23	0.00	0	25	0.16	0	27	0.00
31250	0	13	0.00	0	14	–1.70	0	15	0.00	0	16	1.20
38400	–	–	–	0	11	0.00	0	12	0.16	0	13	0.00

Bit Rate (bps)	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	18			19.6608			20			24		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	3	79	–0.12	3	86	0.31	3	88	–0.25	3	106	–0.44
150	2	233	0.16	2	255	0.00	3	64	0.16	3	77	0.16
300	2	116	0.16	2	127	0.00	2	129	0.16	2	155	0.16
600	1	233	0.16	1	255	0.00	2	64	0.16	2	77	0.16
1200	1	116	0.16	1	127	0.00	1	129	0.16	1	155	0.16
2400	0	233	0.16	0	255	0.00	1	64	0.16	1	77	0.16
4800	0	116	0.16	0	127	0.00	0	129	0.16	0	155	0.16
9600	0	58	–0.69	0	63	0.00	0	64	0.16	0	77	0.16
19200	0	28	1.02	0	31	0.00	0	32	–1.36	0	38	0.16
31250	0	17	0.00	0	19	–0.17	0	19	0.00	0	23	0.00
38400	0	14	–2.34	0	15	0.00	0	15	1.73	0	19	–2.34

Note: This table shows bit rates when the ABCS bit in SEMRA_0 is cleared to 0.
When the ABCS bit in SEMR0 is set to 1, the bit rates are twice those shown in this table.
In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 6 MHz or greater.

Table 12.4 Maximum Bit Rate for Each Frequency (Asynchronous Mode)

	Maximum Bit Rate (kbps)					Maximum Bit Rate (kbps)			
φ (MHz)	ABCS=0	ABCS=1	n	N	φ (MHz)	ABCS=0	ABCS=1	n	N
2	62.5	125.0	0	0	9.8304	307.2	614.4	0	0
2.097152	65.536	131.027	0	0	10	312.5	625.0	0	0
2.4576	76.8	153.6	0	0	12	375.0	750.0	0	0
3	93.75	187.5	0	0	12.288	384.0	768.0	0	0
3.6864	115.2	230.4	0	0	14	437.5	875.0	0	0
4	125.0	250.0	0	0	14.7456	460.8	921.6	0	0
4.9152	153.6	307.2	0	0	16	500.0	1000.0	0	0
5	156.25	312.5	0	0	17.2032	537.6	1075.2	0	0
6	187.5	375.0	0	0	18	562.5	1125.0	0	0
6.144	192.0	384.0	0	0	19.6608	614.4	1228.8	0	0
7.3728	230.4	460.8	0	0	20	625.0	1250.0	0	0
8	250.0	500.0	0	0	24	750.0	1500.0	0	0

Table 12.5 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Asynchronous Mode)

	External Input	Maximum Bit Rate (kbps)			External Input	Maximum Bit Rate (kbps)	
φ (MHz)	Clock (MHz)	ABCS=0	ABCS=1	φ (MHz)	Clock (MHz)	ABCS=0	ABCS=1
2	0.5000	31.25	62.5	9.8304	2.4576	153.6	307.2
2.097152	0.5243	327.68	65.536	10	2.5000	156.25	312.5
2.4576	0.6144	38.4	76.8	12	3.0000	187.5	375.0
3	0.7500	46.875	93.75	12.288	3.0720	192.0	384.0
3.6864	0.9216	57.6	115.2	14	3.5000	218.75	437.0
4	1.0000	62.5	125.0	14.7456	3.6864	230.4	460.8
4.9152	1.2288	76.8	153.6	16	4.0000	250.0	500.0
5	1.2500	78.125	156.25	17.2032	4.3008	268.8	537.6
6	1.5000	93.75	187.5	18	4.5000	281.25	562.5
6.144	1.5360	96.0	192.0	19.6608	4.9152	307.2	614.4
7.3728	1.8432	115.2	230.4	20	5.0000	312.5	625.0
8	2.0000	125.0	250.0	24	6.0000	375.0	750.0

Note: In this LSI, operating frequency φ must be 6 MHz or greater.

Table 12.6 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Bit Rate (bps)	Operating Frequency φ (MHz)															
	2		4		6		8		10		16		20		24	
	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N
110	3	70	—	—												
250	2	124	2	249			3	124	—	—	3	249				
500	1	249	2	124			2	249	—	—	3	124	—	—	—	—
1k	1	124	1	249			2	124	—	—	2	249	—	—	—	—
2.5k	0	199	1	99	1	149	1	199	1	249	2	99	2	124	2	149
5k	0	99	0	199	1	74	1	99	1	124	1	199	1	249	2	74
10k	0	49	0	99	0	149	0	199	0	249	1	99	1	124	1	149
25k	0	19	0	39	0	59	0	79	0	99	0	159	0	199	0	239
50k	0	9	0	19	0	29	0	39	0	49	0	79	0	99	0	119
100k	0	4	0	9	0	14	0	19	0	24	0	39	0	49	0	59
250k	0	1	0	3	0	5	0	7	0	9	0	15	0	19	0	23
500k	0	0*	0	1	0	2	0	3	0	4	0	7	0	9	0	11
1M			0	0*			0	1			0	3	0	4	0	5
2M							0	0*			0	1			0	2
2.5M									0	0*			0	1	—	—
4M											0	0*				
5M													0	0*	—	—
6M															0	0*

Legend:

Blank : Cannot be set.

— : Can be set, but there will be a degree of error.

* : Continuous transfer is not possible.

Table 12.7 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

φ (MHz)	External Input Clock (MHz)	Maximum Bit Rate (Mbps)	φ (MHz)	External Input Clock (MHz)	Maximum Bit Rate (Mbps)
2	0.333	0.333	14	2.333	2.333
4	0.667	0.667	16	2.667	2.667
6	1.000	1.000	18	3.0000	3.000
8	1.333	1.333	20	3.3333	3.333
10	1.667	1.667	24	4.0000	4.000
12	2.000	2.000			

Note: In this LSI, operating frequency φ must be 6 MHz or greater.

Table 12.8 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Smart Card Interface Mode, when n = 0 and S = 372)

	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)											
	5.00		7.00		7.1424		10.00		10.7136		13.00	
Bit Rate (bps)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)
6720	0	0.00	1	30	1	28.75	1	0.01	1	7.14	2	13.33
9600					0	0.00	1	30	1	25	1	8.99

	Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz)									
	14.2848		16.00		18.00		20.00		24.00	
Bit Rate (bps)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)	N	Error (%)
6720	2	4.76	2	6.67	2	20.01	2	33.34	4	–3.99
9600	1	0.00	1	12.01	2	15.99	2	6.66	2	12.01

Table 12.9 Maximum Bit Rate at Various Frequencies (Smart Card Interface Mode, when S = 372)

ϕ (MHz)	Maximum Bit Rate (bps)	N	N
5.00	6720	0	0
7.00	9409	0	0
7.1424	9600	0	0
10.00	13441	0	0
10.7136	14400	0	0
13.00	17473	0	0
14.2848	19200	0	0
16.00	21505	0	0
18.00	24194	0	0
20.00	26882	0	0
24.00	32258	0	0

12.4 Operation in Asynchronous Mode

Figure 12.5 shows the general format for asynchronous serial communication. One frame consists of a start bit (low level), followed by data (in LSB-first order), a parity bit (high or low level), and finally stop bits (high level). In asynchronous serial communication, the transmission line is usually held in the mark state (high level). The SCI monitors the transmission line. When the transmission line goes to the space state (low level), the SCI recognizes a start bit and starts serial communication. Inside the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex. Both the transmitter and the receiver also have a double-buffered structure, so data can be read from or written during transmission or reception, enabling continuous data transfer.

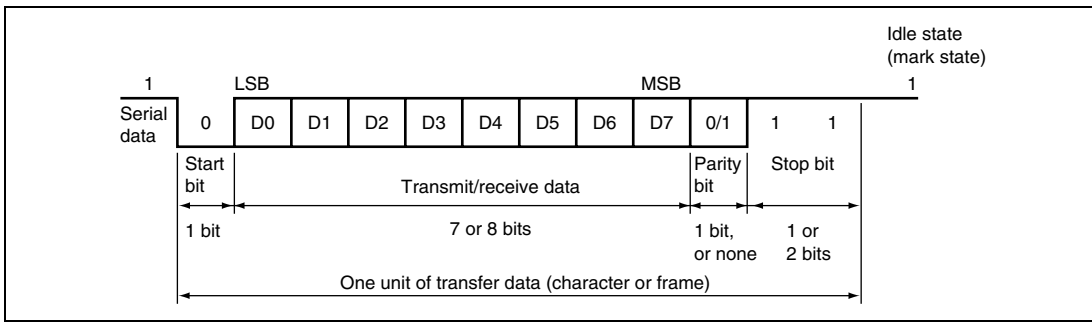


Figure 12.5 Data Format in Asynchronous Communication (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, Two Stop Bits)

12.4.1 Data Transfer Format

Table 12.10 shows the data transfer formats that can be used in asynchronous mode. Any of 12 transfer formats can be selected according to the SMR setting. For details on the multiprocessor bit, refer to section 12.5, Multiprocessor Communication Function.

Table 12.10 Serial Transfer Formats (Asynchronous Mode)

SMR Settings				Serial Transfer Format and Frame Length
CHR	PE	MP	STOP	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
0	0	0	0	S 8-bit data STOP
0	0	0	1	S 8-bit data STOP STOP
0	1	0	0	S 8-bit data P STOP
0	1	0	1	S 8-bit data P STOP STOP
1	0	0	0	S 7-bit data STOP
1	0	0	1	S 7-bit data STOP STOP
1	1	0	0	S 7-bit data P STOP
1	1	0	1	S 7-bit data P STOP STOP
0	–	1	0	S 8-bit data MPB STOP
0	–	1	1	S 8-bit data MPB STOP STOP
1	–	1	0	S 7-bit data MPB STOP
1	–	1	1	S 7-bit data MPB STOP STOP

Legend

S : Start bit

STOP : Stop bit

P : Parity bit

MPB : Multiprocessor bit

12.4.2 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode

In asynchronous mode, the SCI operates on a basic clock with a frequency of 16 times the transfer rate. In reception, the SCI samples the falling edge of the start bit using the basic clock, and performs internal synchronization. Receive data is latched internally at the rising edge of the 8th pulse of the basic clock as shown in Figure 12.6. Thus, the reception margin in asynchronous mode is given by formula (1) below.

$$M = \left| (0.5 - \frac{1}{2N}) - (L - 0.5)\,F - \frac{|\,D - 0.5\,|}{N}\,(1 + F)\right| \times 100\ [\%] \qquad \text{... Formula (1)}$$

Where M: Reception margin
N: Ratio of bit rate to clock (N = 16)
D: Clock duty (D = 0.5 to 1.0)
L: Frame length (L = 9 to 12)
F: Absolute value of clock rate deviation

Assuming values of F (absolute value of clock rate deviation) = 0 and D (clock duty) = 0.5 N (ratio of bit rate to clock) in formula (1), the reception margin can be given by the formula.

$M = \{0.5 - 1/(2 \times 16)\} \times 100\ [\%] = 46.875\%$

However, this is only the computed value, and a margin of 20% to 30% should be allowed for in system design.

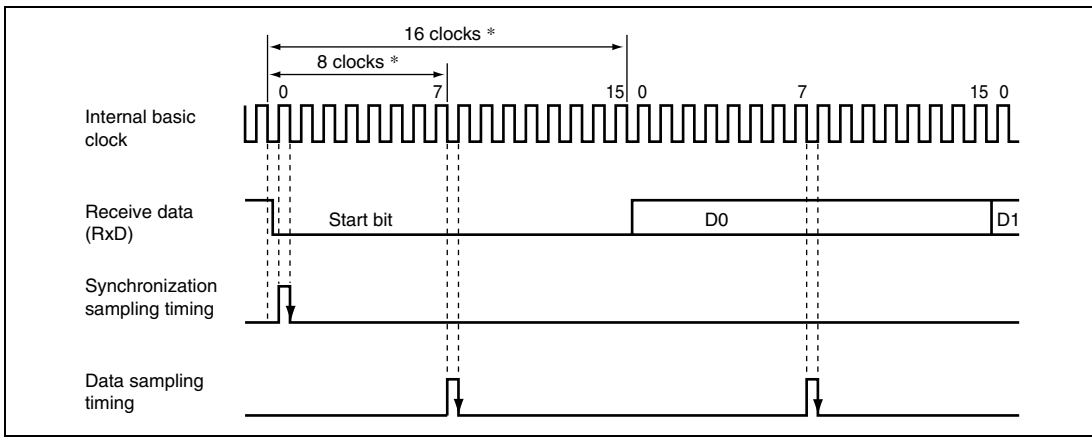


Figure 12.6 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode

Note: Figure 12.5 shows an example when the ABCS bit of SEMRA_0 is cleared to 0. When ABCS is set to 1, the clock frequency of basic clock is 8 times the bit rate and the receive data is sampled at the rising edge of the 4th pulse of the basic clock.

12.4.3 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external clock input at the SCK pin can be selected as the SCI's serial clock, according to the setting of the C/$\overline{A}$ bit in SMR and the CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. When an external clock is input at the SCK pin, the clock frequency should be 16 times the bit rate used. When an external clock is selected, the basic clock of average transfer rate can be selected according to the ACS2 to ACS0 bit setting of SEMR_0.

When the SCI is operated on an internal clock, the clock can be output from the SCK pin by setting CKE1 =0 and CKE0=1. The frequency of the clock output in this case is equal to the bit rate, and the phase is such that the rising edge of the clock is in the middle of the transmit data, as shown in Figure 12.7.

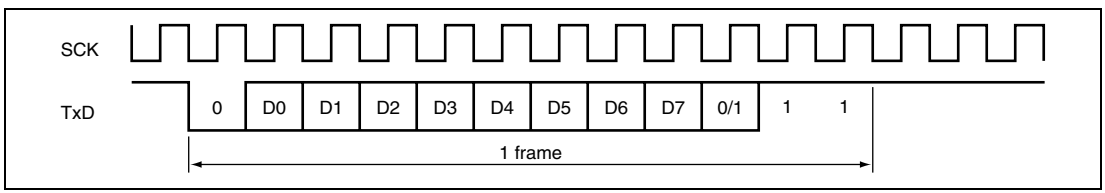


Figure 12.7 Relationship between Output Clock and Transfer Data Phase (Asynchronous Mode)

12.4.4 SCI Initialization (Asynchronous Mode)

Before transmitting and receiving data, you should first clear the TE and RE bits in SCR to 0, then initialize the SCI as described in a sample flowchart in Figure 12.8. When the operating mode, or transfer format, is changed for example, the TE and RE bits must be cleared to 0 before making the change using the following procedure. When the TE bit is cleared to 0, the TDRE flag is set to 1. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not initialize the contents of the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORER flags, or the contents of RDR. When the external clock is used in asynchronous mode, the clock must be supplied even during initialization.

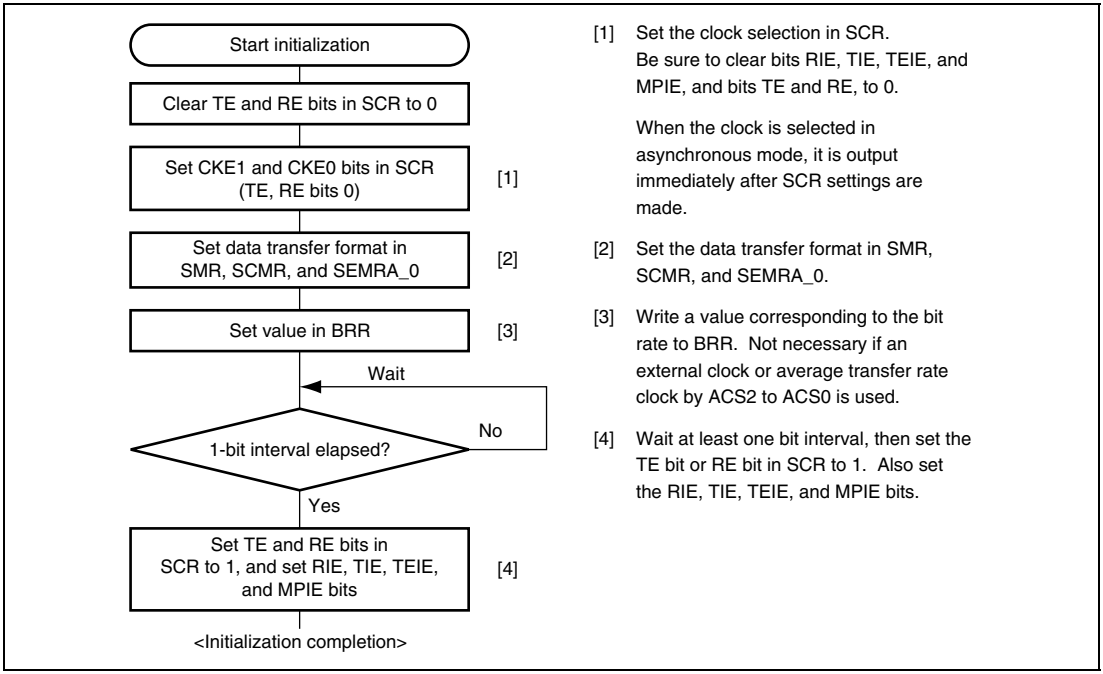


Figure 12.8 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart

12.4.5 Data Transmission (Asynchronous Mode)

Figure 12.9 shows an example of operation for transmission in asynchronous mode. In transmission, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR. If the flag is cleared to 0, the SCI recognizes that data has been written to TDR, and transfers the data from TDR to TSR.
2. After transferring data from TDR to TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmission. If the TIE bit is set to 1 at this time, a transmit data empty interrupt request (TXI) is generated. Continuous transmission is possible because the TXI interrupt routine writes next transmit data to TDR before transmission of the current transmit data has been completed.
3. Data is sent from the TxD pin in the following order: start bit, transmit data, parity bit or multiprocessor bit (may be omitted depending on the format), and stop bit.
4. The SCI checks the TDRE flag at the timing for sending the stop bit.
5. If the TDRE flag is 0, the data is transferred from TDR to TSR, the stop bit is sent, and then serial transmission of the next frame is started.
6. If the TDRE flag is 1, the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, the stop bit is sent, and then the "mark state" is entered, in which 1 is output. If the TEIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a TEI interrupt request is generated.

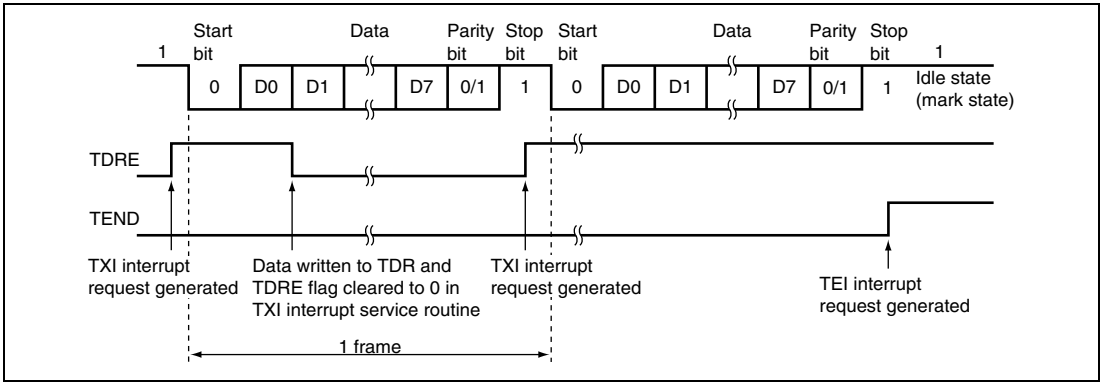


Figure 12.9 Example of Operation in Transmission in Asynchronous Mode (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)

Figure 12.10 shows a sample flowchart for transmission in asynchronous mode.

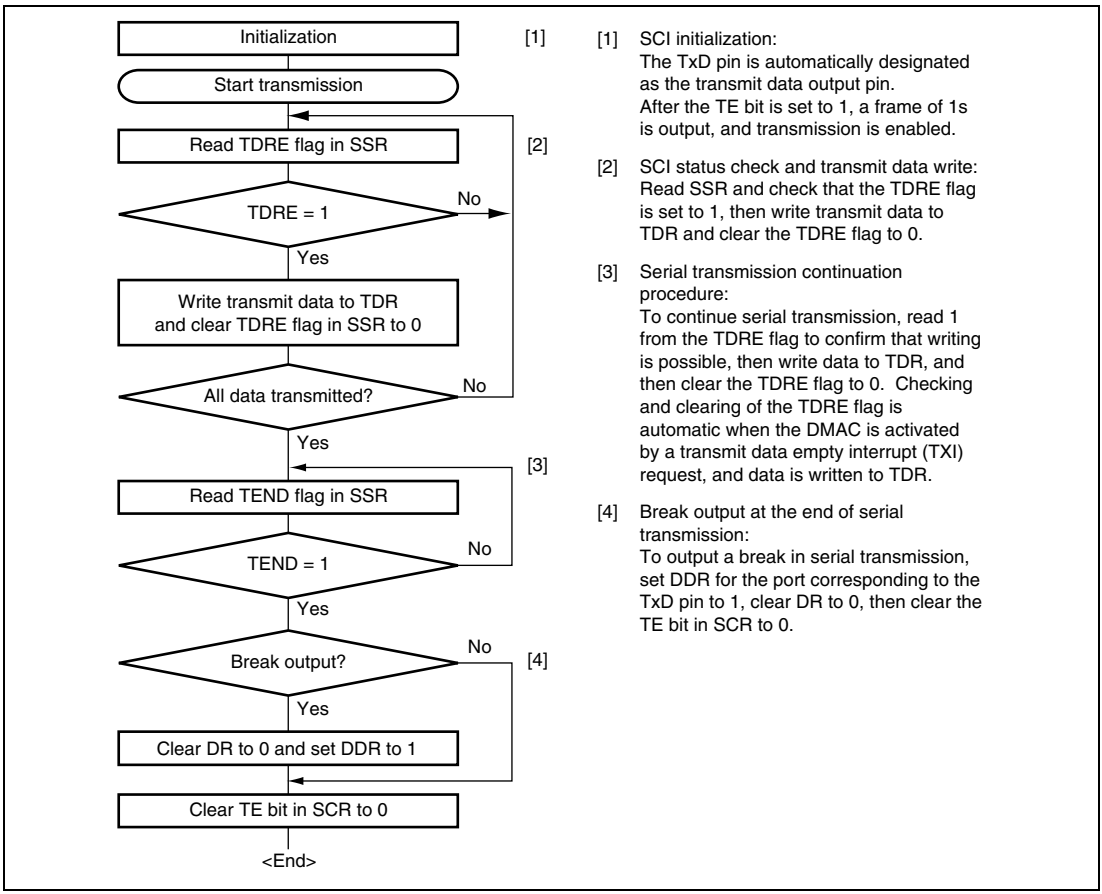


Figure 12.10 Sample Serial Transmission Flowchart

12.4.6 Serial Data Reception (Asynchronous Mode)

Figure 12.11 shows an example of operation for reception in asynchronous mode. In serial reception, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the communication line. If a start bit is detected, the SCI performs internal synchronization, receives receive data in RSR, and checks the parity bit and stop bit.
2. If an overrun error occurs (when reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag is still set to 1), the ORER bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. Receive data is not transferred to RDR. The RDRF flag remains to be set to 1.
3. If a parity error is detected, the PER bit in SSR is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated.
4. If a framing error is detected (when the stop bit is 0), the FER bit in SSR is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated.
5. If reception is completed successfully, the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is possible because the RXI interrupt routine reads the receive data transferred to RDR before reception of the next receive data has been completed.

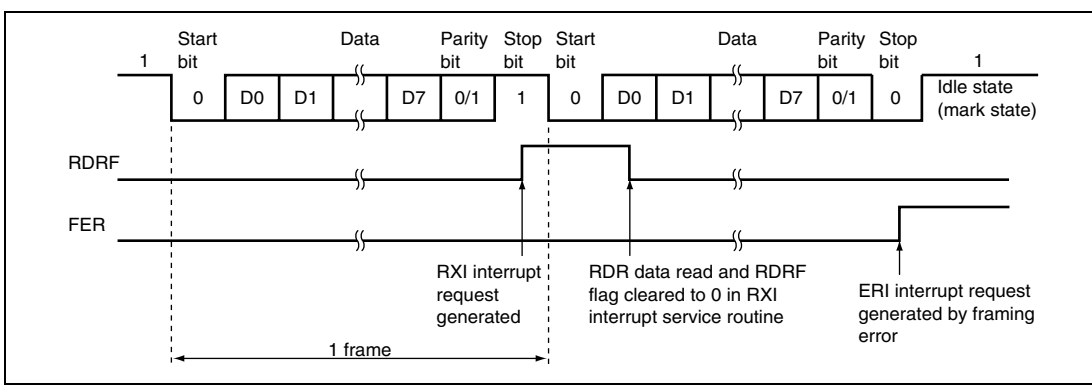


Figure 12.11 Example of SCI Operation in Reception (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)

Table 12.11 shows the states of the SSR status flags and receive data handling when a receive error is detected. If a receive error is detected, the RDRF flag retains its state before receiving data. Reception cannot be resumed while a receive error flag is set to 1. Accordingly, clear the ORER, FER, PER, and RDRF bits to 0 before resuming reception. Figure 12.12 shows a sample flow chart for serial data reception.

Table 12.11 SSR Status Flags and Receive Data Handling

SSR Status Flag					
RDRF*	**ORER**	**FER**	**PER**	**Receive Data**	**Receive Error Type**
1	1	0	0	Lost	Overrun error
0	0	1	0	Transferred to RDR	Framing error
0	0	0	1	Transferred to RDR	Parity error
1	1	1	0	Lost	Overrun error + framing error
1	1	0	1	Lost	Overrun error + parity error
0	0	1	1	Transferred to RDR	Framing error + parity error
1	1	1	1	Lost	Overrun error + framing error + parity error

Note: * The RDRF flag retains the state it had before data reception.

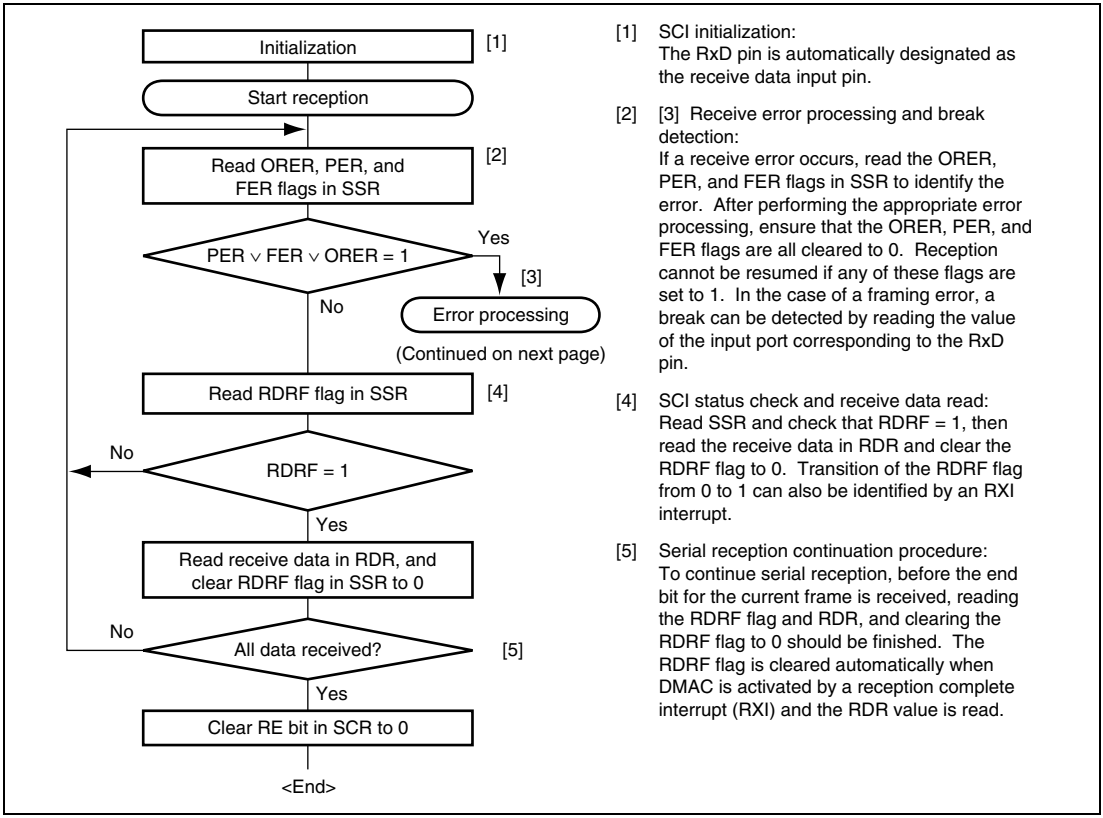


Figure 12.12 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (1)

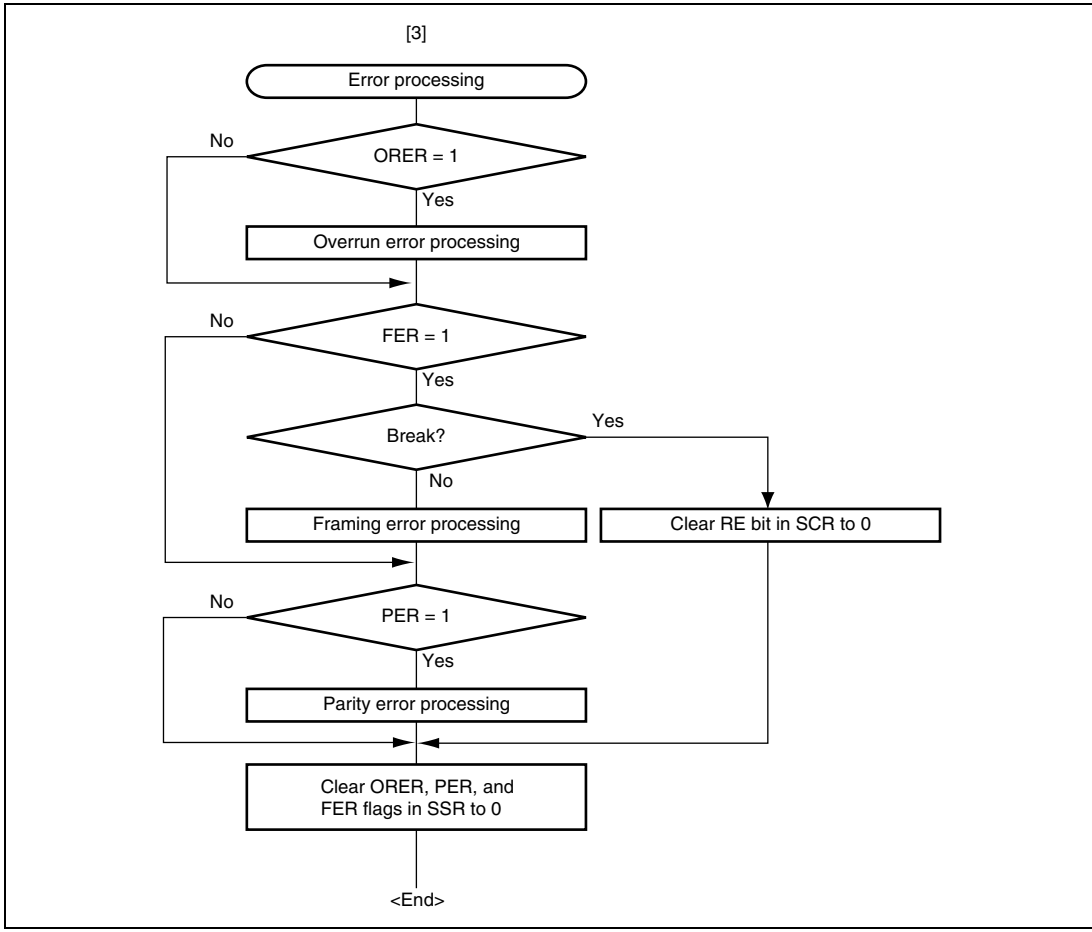


Figure 12.12 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (2)

12.5 Multiprocessor Communication Function

Use of the multiprocessor communication function enables data transfer between a number of processors sharing communication lines by asynchronous serial communication using the multiprocessor format, in which a multiprocessor bit is added to the transfer data. When multiprocessor communication is performed, each receiving station is addressed by a unique ID code. The serial communication cycle consists of two component cycles; an ID transmission cycle that specifies the receiving station, and a data transmission cycle. The multiprocessor bit is used to differentiate between the ID transmission cycle and the data transmission cycle. If the multiprocessor bit is 1, the cycle is an ID transmission cycle; if the multiprocessor bit is 0, the cycle is a data transmission cycle. Figure 12.13 shows an example of inter-processor communication using the multiprocessor format. The transmitting station first sends the ID code of the receiving station with which it wants to perform serial communication as data with a 1 multiprocessor bit added. It then sends transmit data as data with a 0 multiprocessor bit added. When data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is received, the receiving station compares that data with its own ID. The station whose ID matches then receives the data sent next. Stations whose ID do not match continue to skip data until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is again received.

The SCI uses the MPIE bit in SCR to implement this function. When the MPIE bit is set to 1, transfer of receive data from RSR to RDR, error flag detection, and setting the SSR status flags, RDRF, FER, and ORER to 1, are inhibited until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is received. On reception of a receive character with a 1 multiprocessor bit, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1 and the MPIE bit is automatically cleared, thus normal reception is resumed. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt is generated.

When the multiprocessor format is selected, the parity bit setting is rendered invalid. All other bit settings are the same as those in normal asynchronous mode. The clock used for multiprocessor communication is the same as that in normal asynchronous mode.

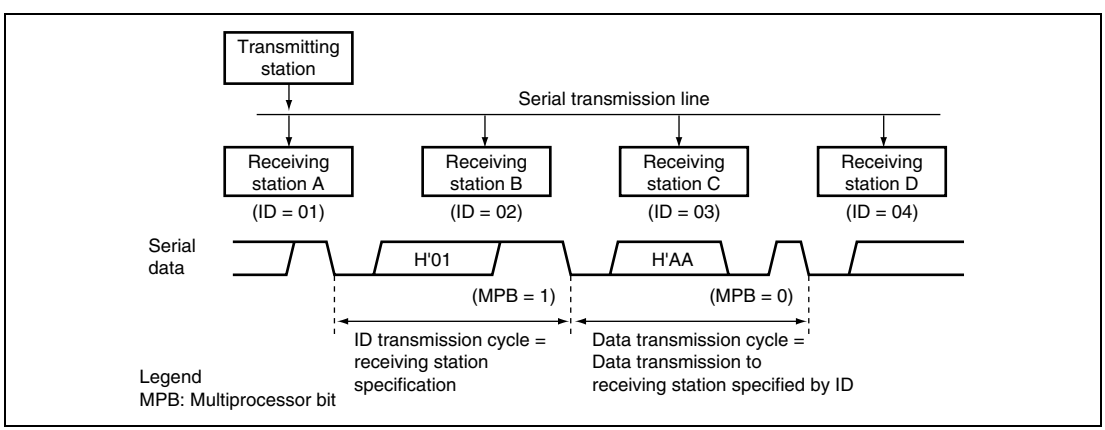


Figure 12.13 Example of Communication Using Multiprocessor Format (Transmission of Data H'AA to Receiving Station A)

12.5.1 Multiprocessor Serial Data Transmission

Figure 12.14 shows a sample flowchart for multiprocessor serial data transmission. For an ID transmission cycle, set the MPBT bit in SSR to 1 before transmission. For a data transmission cycle, clear the MPBT bit in SSR to 0 before transmission. All other SCI operations are the same as those in asynchronous mode.

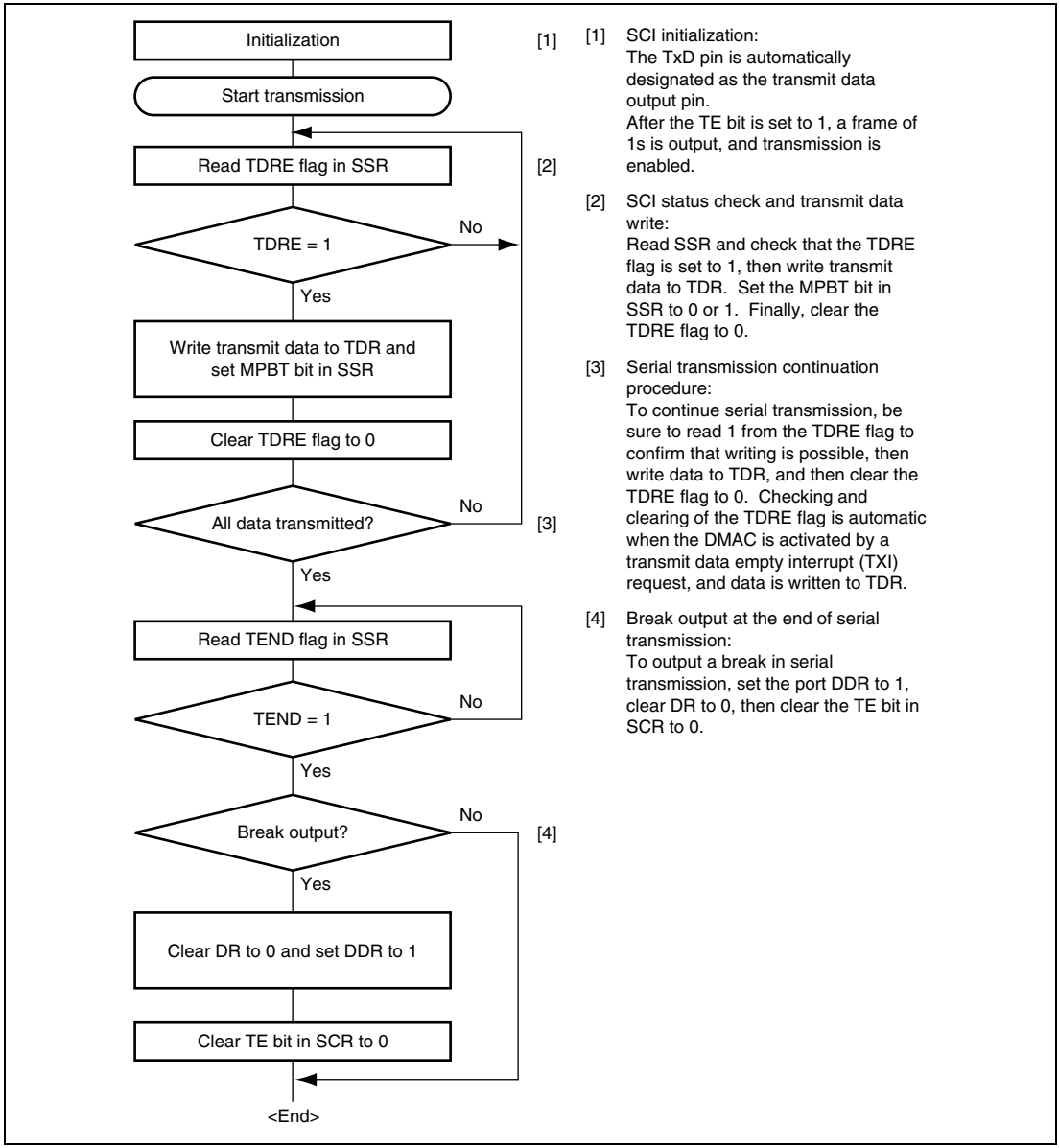


Figure 12.14 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Transmission Flowchart

12.5.2 Multiprocessor Serial Data Reception

Figure 12.16 shows a sample flowchart for multiprocessor serial data reception. If the MPIE bit in SCR is set to 1, data is skipped until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is sent. On receiving data with a 1 multiprocessor bit, the receive data is transferred to RDR. An RXI interrupt request is generated at this time. All other SCI operations are the same as in asynchronous mode. Figure 12.15 shows an example of SCI operation for multiprocessor format reception.

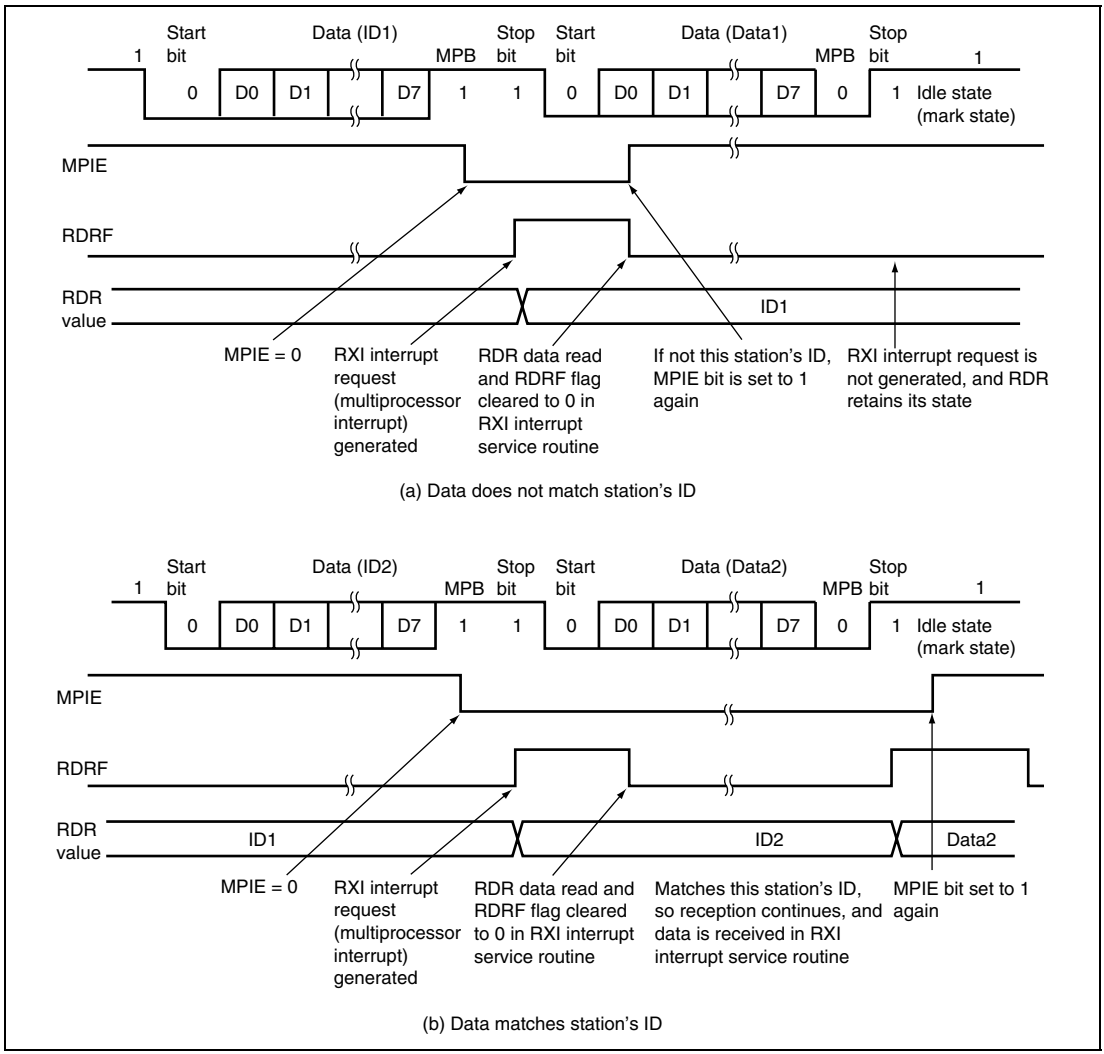
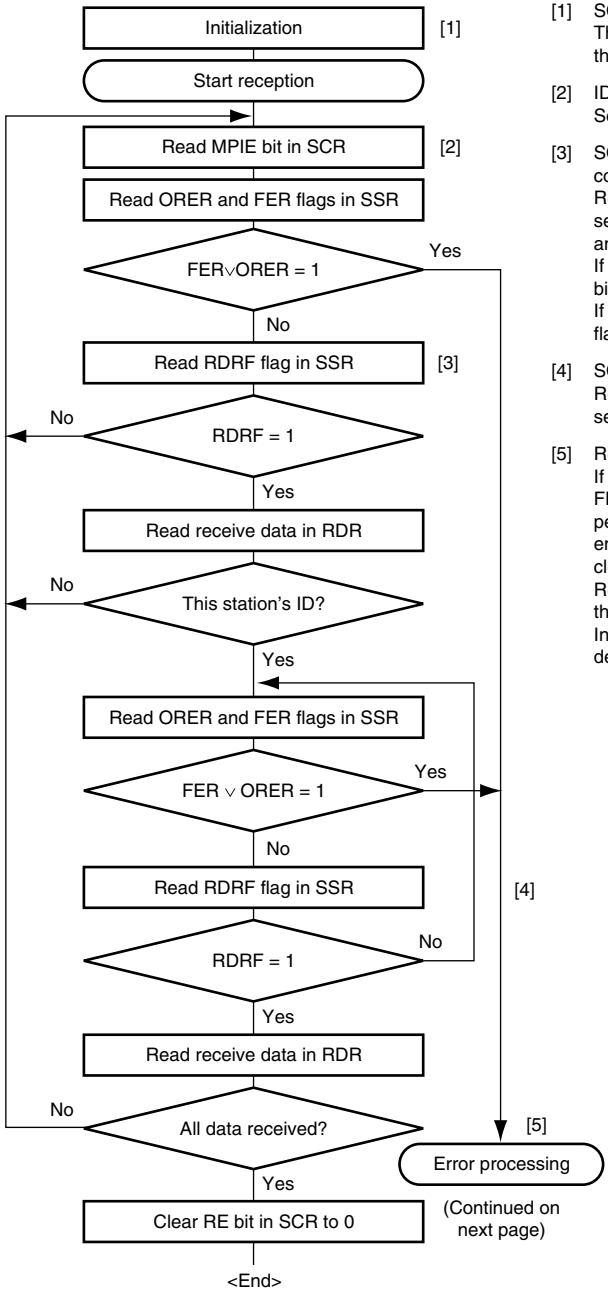


Figure 12.15 Example of SCI Operation in Reception (Example with 8-Bit Data, Multiprocessor Bit, One Stop Bit)



[1] SCI initialization:
The RxD pin is automatically designated as the receive data input pin.

[2] ID reception cycle:
Set the MPIE bit in SCR to 1.

[3] SCI status check, ID reception and comparison:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the receive data in RDR and compare it with this station's ID.
If the data is not this station's ID, set the MPIE bit to 1 again, and clear the RDRF flag to 0.
If the data is this station's ID, clear the RDRF flag to 0.

[4] SCI status check and data reception:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the data in RDR.

[5] Receive error processing and break detection:
If a receive error occurs, read the ORER and FER flags in SSR to identify the error. After performing the appropriate error processing, ensure that the ORER and FER flags are all cleared to 0.
Reception cannot be resumed if either of these flags is set to 1.
In the case of a framing error, a break can be detected by reading the RxD pin value.

Figure 12.16 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (1)

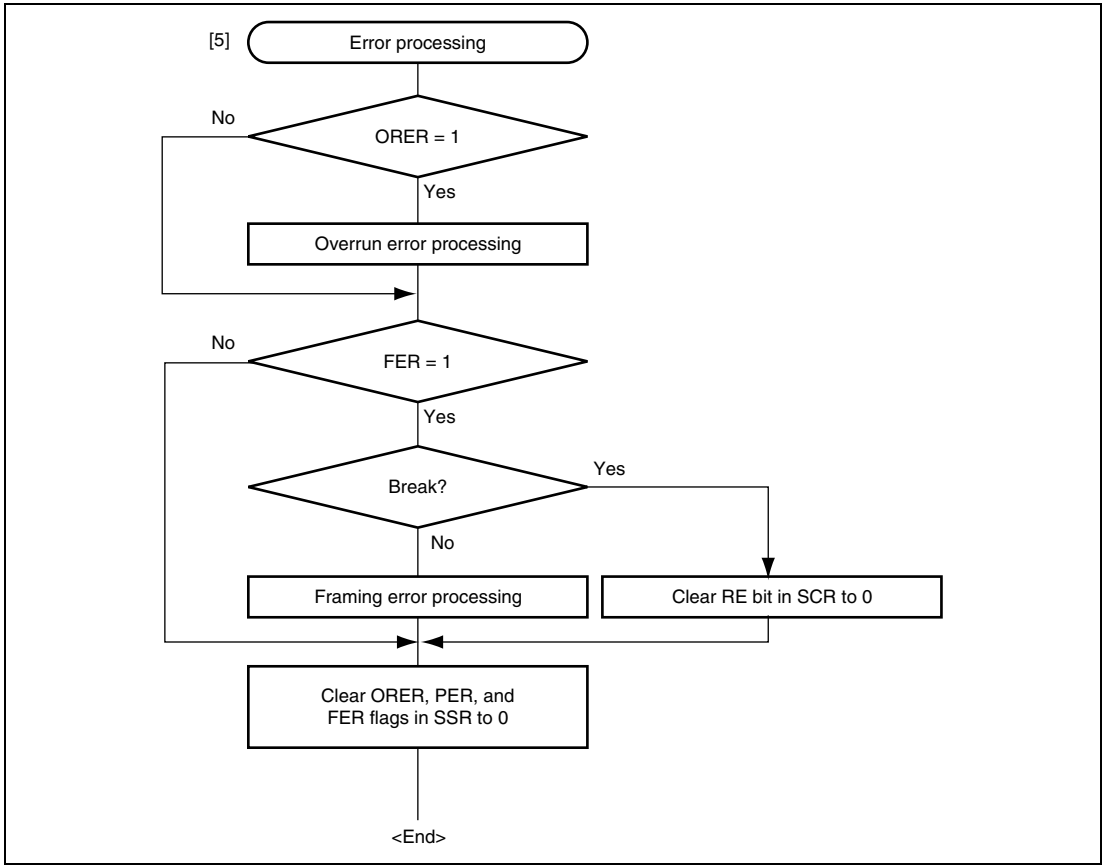


Figure 12.16 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (2)

12.6 Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode

Figure 12.17 shows the general format for clocked synchronous communication. In clocked synchronous mode, data is transmitted or received synchronous with clock pulses. In clocked synchronous serial communication, data on the transmission line is output from one falling edge of the serial clock to the next. In clocked synchronous mode, the SCI receives data in synchronous with the rising edge of the serial clock. After 8-bit data is output, the transmission line holds the MSB state. In clocked synchronous mode, no parity or multiprocessor bit is added. Inside the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex communication through the use of a common clock. Both the transmitter and the receiver also have a double-buffered structure, so data can be read from or written during transmission or reception, enabling continuous data transfer.

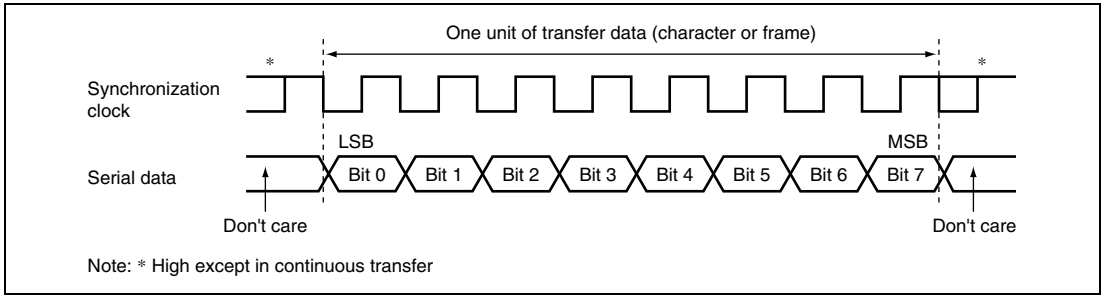


Figure 12.17 Data Format in Synchronous Communication (For LSB-First)

12.6.1 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external synchronization clock input at the SCK pin can be selected, according to the setting of CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. When the SCI is operated on an internal clock, the serial clock is output from the SCK pin. Eight serial clock pulses are output in the transfer of one character, and when no transfer is performed the clock is fixed high.

12.6.2 SCI Initialization (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Before transmitting and receiving data, the TE and RE bits in SCR should be cleared to 0, then the SCI should be initialized as described in a sample flowchart in Figure 12.18. When the operating mode, or transfer format, is changed for example, the TE and RE bits must be cleared to 0 before making the change using the following procedure. When the TE bit is cleared to 0, the TDRE flag is set to 1. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not change the contents of the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORER flags, or the contents of RDR.

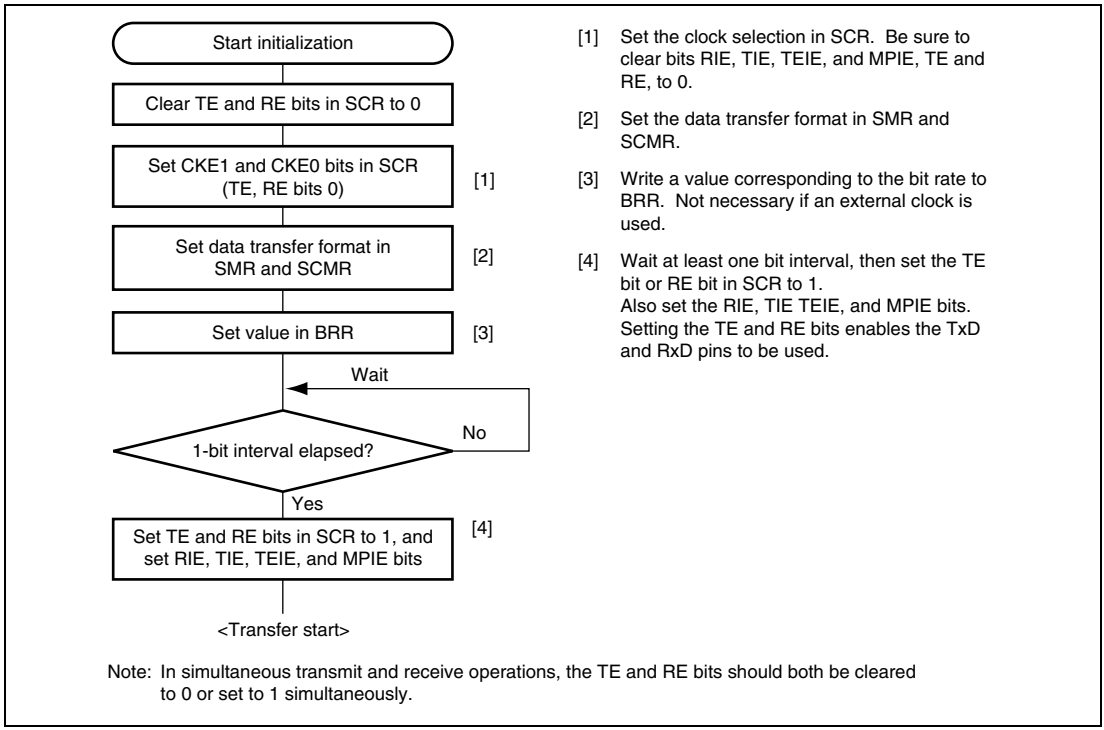


Figure 12.18 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart

12.6.3 Serial Data Transmission (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 12.19 shows an example of SCI operation for transmission in clocked synchronous mode. In serial transmission, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR, and if the flag is 0, the SCI recognizes that data has been written to TDR, and transfers the data from TDR to TSR.
2. After transferring data from TDR to TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmission. If the TIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a transmit data empty interrupt (TXI) is generated. Continuous transmission is possible because the TXI interrupt routine writes the next transmit data to TDR before transmission of the current transmit data has been completed.
3. 8-bit data is sent from the TxD pin synchronized with the output clock when output clock mode has been specified, and synchronized with the input clock when use of an external clock has been specified.
4. The SCI checks the TDRE flag at the timing for sending the MSB (bit 7).
5. If the TDRE flag is cleared to 0, data is transferred from TDR to TSR, and serial transmission of the next frame is started.
6. If the TDRE flag is set to 1, the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, and the TDRE flag maintains the output state of the last bit. If the TEIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a TEI interrupt request is generated. The SCK pin is fixed high.

Figure 12.20 shows a sample flow chart for serial data transmission. Even if the TDRE flag is cleared to 0, transmission will not start while a receive error flag (ORER, FER, or PER) is set to 1. Make sure that the receive error flags are cleared to 0 before starting transmission. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not clear the receive error flags.

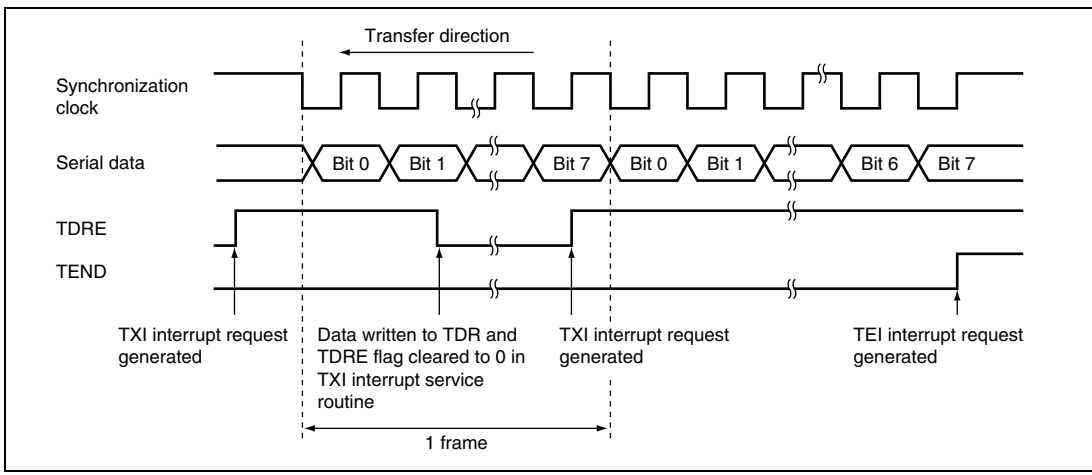
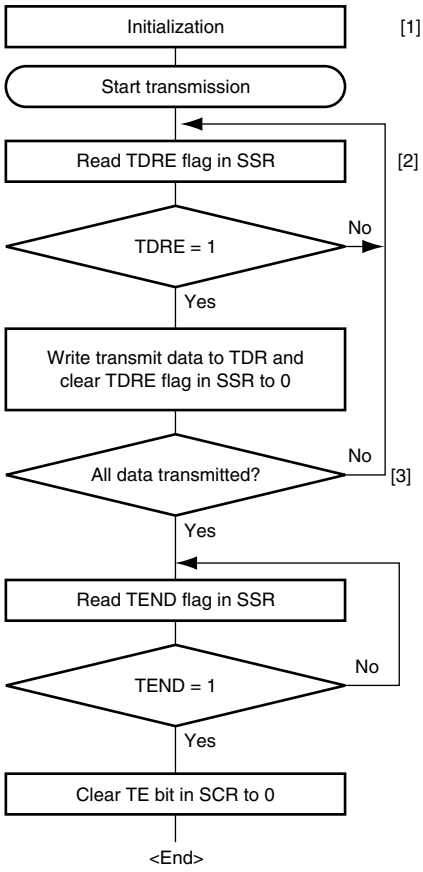


Figure 12.19 Sample SCI Transmission Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode



[1] SCI initialization:
The TxD pin is automatically designated as the transmit data output pin.

[2] SCI status check and transmit data write:
Read SSR and check that the TDRE flag is set to 1, then write transmit data to TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0.

[3] Serial transmission continuation procedure:
To continue serial transmission, be sure to read 1 from the TDRE flag to confirm that writing is possible, then write data to TDR, and then clear the TDRE flag to 0.
Checking and clearing of the TDRE flag is automatic when the DMAC is activated by a transmit data empty interrupt (TXI) request and data is written to TDR.

Figure 12.20 Sample Serial Transmission Flowchart

12.6.4 Serial Data Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 12.21 shows an example of SCI operation for reception in clocked synchronous mode. In serial reception, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI performs internal initialization synchronous with a synchronous clock input or output, starts receiving data, and stores the received data in RSR.
2. If an overrun error occurs (when reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag in SSR is still set to 1), the ORER bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated, receive data is not transferred to RDR, and the RDRF flag remains to be set to 1.
3. If reception is completed successfully, the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is possible because the RXI interrupt routine reads the receive data transferred to RDR before reception of the next receive data has finished.

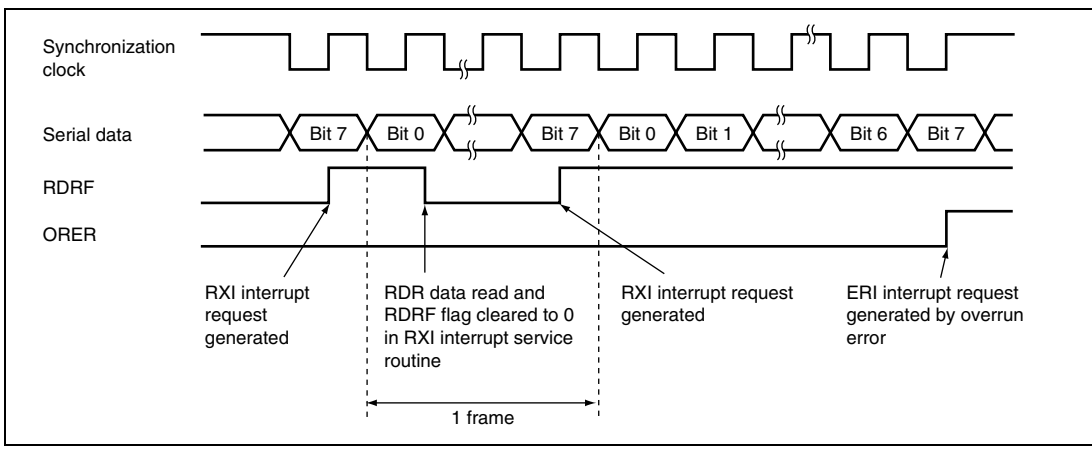


Figure 12.21 Example of SCI Operation in Reception

Reception cannot be resumed while a receive error flag is set to 1. Accordingly, clear the ORER, FER, PER, and RDRF bits to 0 before resuming reception. Figure 12.22 shows a sample flow chart for serial data reception.

When the internal clock is selected during reception, the synchronization clock will be output until an overrun error occurs or the RE bit is cleared. To receive data in frame units, a dummy data of one frame must be transmitted simultaneously.

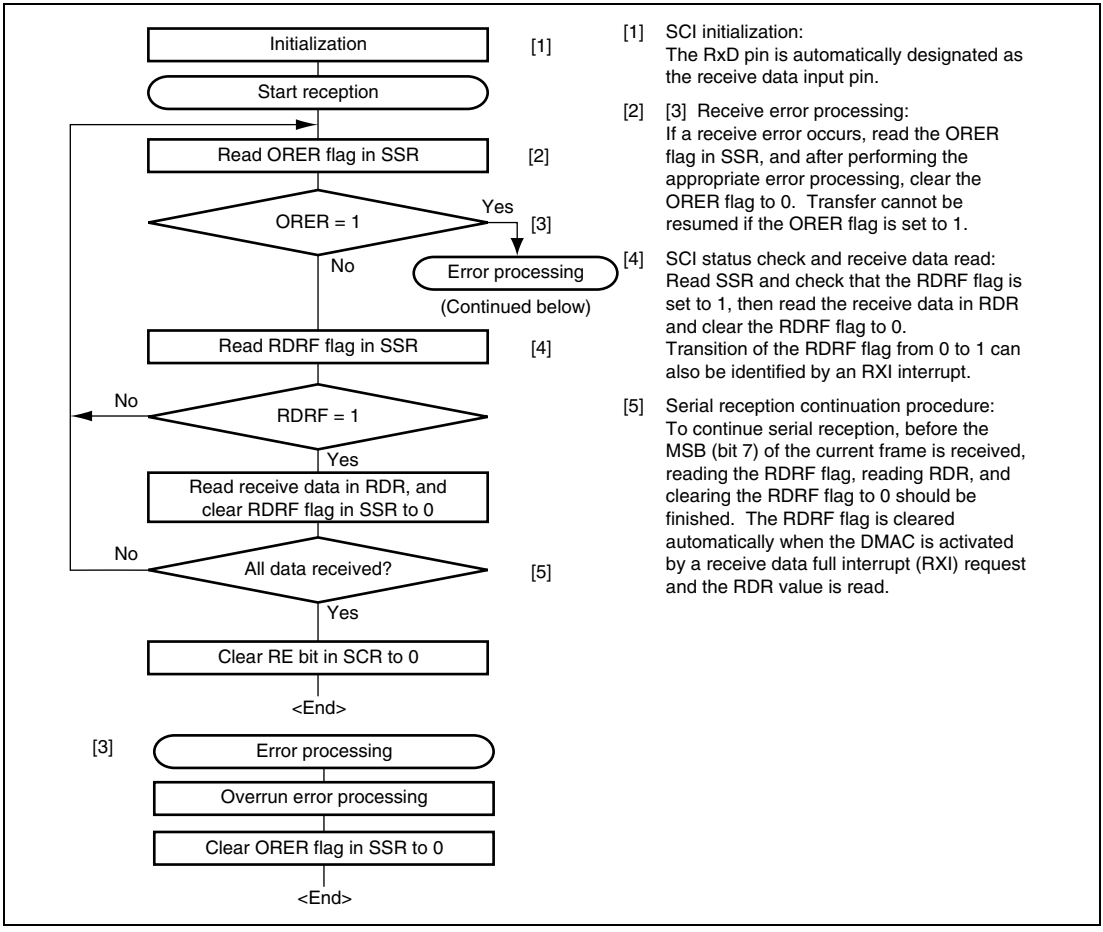
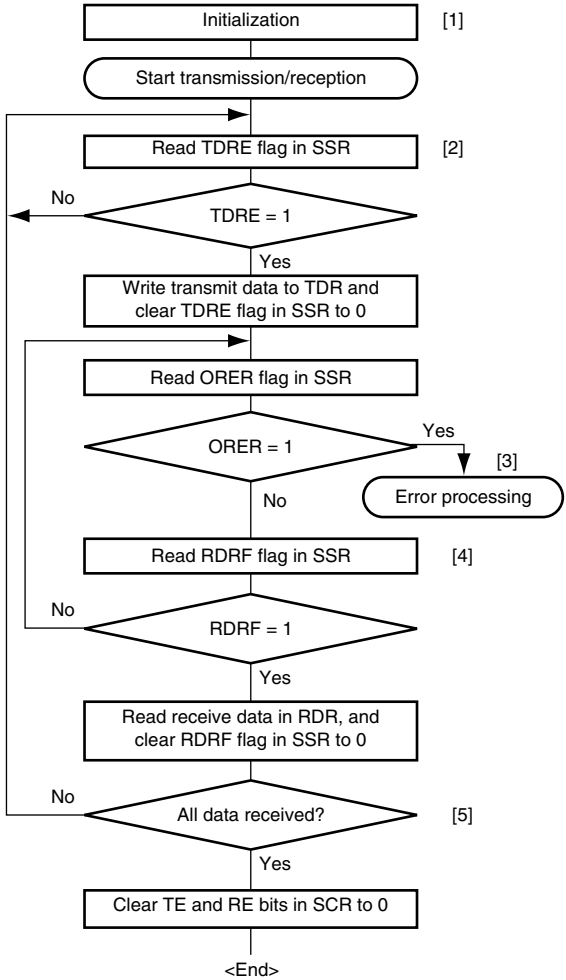


Figure 12.22 Sample Serial Reception Flowchart

12.6.5 Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 12.23 shows a sample flowchart for simultaneous serial transmit and receive operations. The following procedure should be used for simultaneous serial data transmit and receive operations. To switch from transmit mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished transmission and the TDRE and TEND flags are set to 1, clear TE to 0. Then simultaneously set TE and RE to 1 with a single instruction. To switch from receive mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished reception, clear RE to 0. Then after checking that the RDRF and receive error flags (ORER, FER, and PER) are cleared to 0, simultaneously set TE and RE to 1 with a single instruction.



Note: When switching from transmit or receive operation to simultaneous transmit and receive operations, first clear the TE bit and RE bit to 0, then set both these bits to 1 simultaneously.

[1] SCI initialization:
The TxD pin is designated as the transmit data output pin, and the RxD pin is designated as the receive data input pin, enabling simultaneous transmit and receive operations.

[2] SCI status check and transmit data write:
Read SSR and check that the TDRE flag is set to 1, then write transmit data to TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0. Transition of the TDRE flag from 0 to 1 can also be identified by a TXI interrupt.

[3] Receive error processing:
If a receive error occurs, read the ORER flag in SSR, and after performing the appropriate error processing, clear the ORER flag to 0. Transmission/reception cannot be resumed if the ORER flag is set to 1.

[4] SCI status check and receive data read:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the receive data in RDR and clear the RDRF flag to 0. Transition of the RDRF flag from 0 to 1 can also be identified by an RXI interrupt.

[5] Serial transmission/reception continuation procedure:
To continue serial transmission/reception, before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is received, finish reading the RDRF flag, reading RDR, and clearing the RDRF flag to 0. Also, before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is transmitted, read 1 from the TDRE flag to confirm that writing is possible. Then write data to TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0.
Checking and clearing of the TDRE flag is automatic when the DMAC is activated by a transmit data empty interrupt (TXI) request and data is written to TDR. Also, the RDRF flag is cleared automatically when the DMAC is activated by a receive data full interrupt (RXI) request and the RDR value is read.

Figure 12.23 Sample Flowchart of Simultaneous Serial Transmit and Receive Operations

12.7 Operation in Smart Card Interface

The SCI supports an IC card (Smart Card) interface that conforms to ISO/IEC 7816-3 (Identification Card) as a serial communication interface extension function. Switching between the normal serial communication interface and the Smart Card interface mode is carried out by means of a register setting.

12.7.1 Pin Connection Example

Figure 12.24 shows an example of connection with the Smart Card. In communication with an IC card, as both transmission and reception are carried out on a single data transmission line, the TxD pin and RxD pin should be connected to the LSI pin. The data transmission line should be pulled up to the V_{CC} power supply with a resistor. If an IC card is not connected, and the TE and RE bits are both set to 1, closed transmission/reception is possible, enabling self-diagnosis to be carried out. When the clock generated on the Smart Card interface is used by an IC card, the SCK pin output is input to the CLK pin of the IC card. This LSI port output is used as the reset signal.

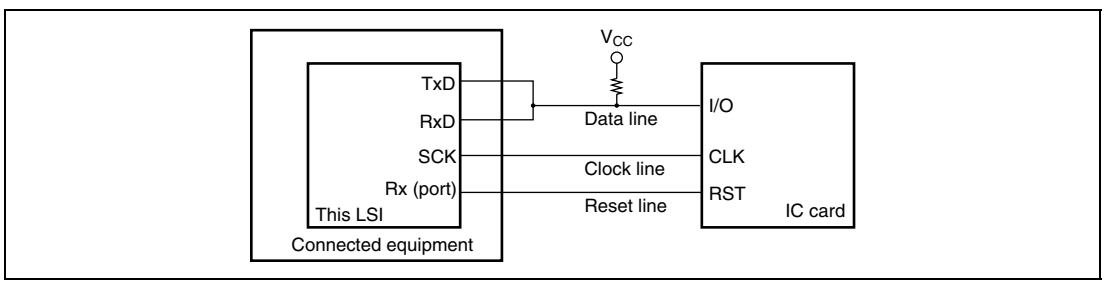


Figure 12.24 Schematic Diagram of Smart Card Interface Pin Connections

12.7.2 Data Format (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

Figure 12.25 shows the transfer data format in Smart Card interface mode.

- One frame consists of 8-bit data plus a parity bit in asynchronous mode.
- In transmission, a guard time of at least 2 etu (Elementary Time Unit: the time for transfer of one bit) is left between the end of the parity bit and the start of the next frame.
- If a parity error is detected during reception, a low error signal level is output for one etu period, 10.5 etu after the start bit.

If an error signal is sampled during transmission, the same data is retransmitted automatically after a delay of 2 etu or longer.

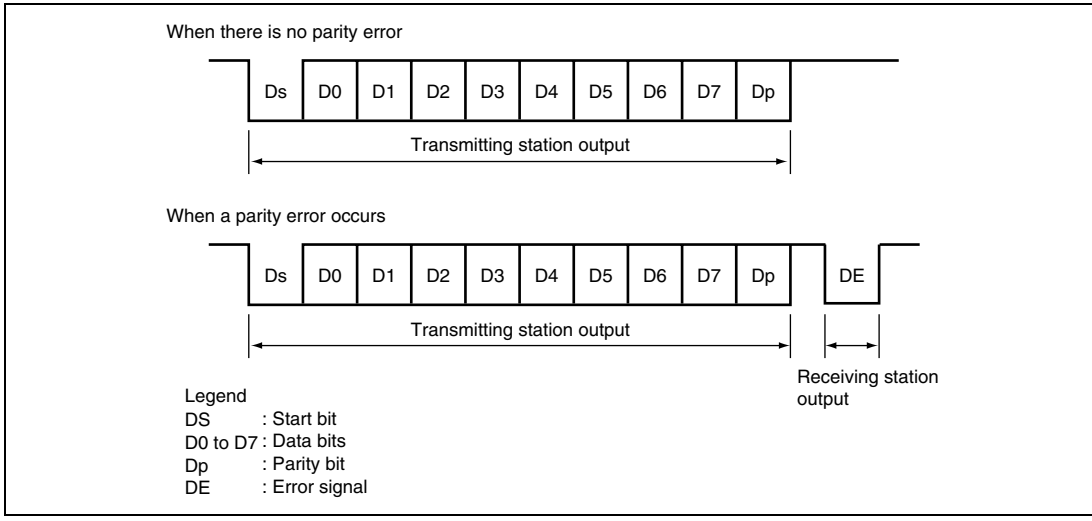


Figure 12.25 Normal Smart Card Interface Data Format

Data transfer with other types of IC cards (direct convention and inverse convention) are performed as described in the following.

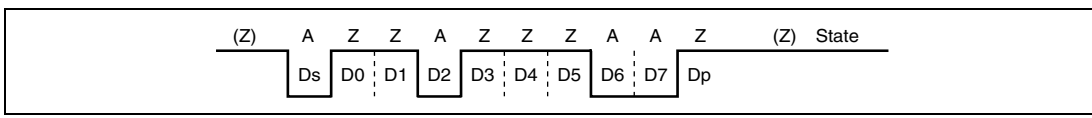


Figure 12.26 Direct Convention (SDIR = SINV = O/$\overline{E}$ = 0)

With the direction convention type IC and the above sample start character, the logic 1 level corresponds to state Z and the logic 0 level to state A, and transfer is performed in LSB-first order. The start character data above is H'3B. For the direct convention type, clear the SDIR and SINV bits in SCMR to 0. According to Smart Card regulations, clear the O/$\overline{E}$ bit in SMR to 0 to select even parity mode.

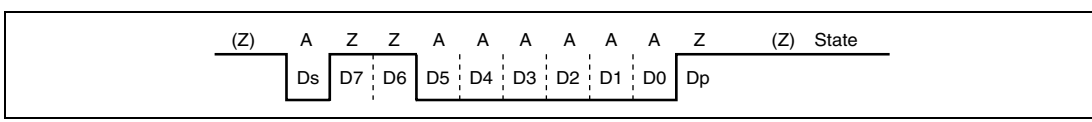


Figure 12.27 Inverse Convention (SDIR = SINV = O/$\overline{E}$ = 1)

With the inverse convention type, the logic 1 level corresponds to state A and the logic 0 level to state Z, and transfer is performed in MSB-first order. The start character data for the above is H'3F. For the inverse convention type, set the SDIR and SINV bits in SCMR to 1. According to Smart Card regulations, even parity mode is the logic 0 level of the parity bit, and corresponds to state Z. In this LSI, the SINV bit inverts only data bits D0 to D7. Therefore, set the O/$\overline{E}$ bit in SMR to 1 to invert the parity bit for both transmission and reception.

12.7.3 Block Transfer Mode

Operation in block transfer mode is the same as that in the normal Smart Card interface mode, except for the following points.

- In reception, though the parity check is performed, no error signal is output even if an error is detected. However, the PER bit in SSR is set to 1 and must be cleared before receiving the parity bit of the next frame.
- In transmission, a guard time of at least 1 etu is left between the end of the parity bit and the start of the next frame.
- In transmission, because retransmission is not performed, the TEND flag is set to 1, 11.5 etu after transmission start.
- As with the normal Smart Card interface, the ERS flag indicates the error signal status, but since error signal transfer is not performed, this flag is always cleared to 0.

12.7.4 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin

In Smart Card interface mode an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator can only be used as a transmission/reception clock. In this mode, the SCI operates on a basic clock with a frequency of 32, 64, 372, or 256 times the transfer rate (fixed to 16 times in normal asynchronous mode) as determined by bits BCP1 and BCP0. In reception, the SCI samples the falling edge of the start bit using the basic clock, and performs internal synchronization. As shown in figure 12.28, by sampling receive data at the rising-edge of the 16th, 32nd, 186th, or 128th pulse of the basic clock, data can be latched at the middle of the bit. The reception margin is given by the following formula.

$$M = \left| (0.5 - \frac{1}{2N}) - (L - 0.5)\,F - \frac{|\,D - 0.5\,|}{N}\,(1 + F) \right| \times 100\ [\%]$$

Where M: Reception margin (%)
N: Ratio of bit rate to clock (N = 32, 64, 372, and 256)
D: Clock duty (D = 0 to 1.0)
L: Frame length (L = 10)
F: Absolute value of clock frequency deviation

Assuming values of F = 0, D = 0.5 and N = 372 in the above formula, the reception margin formula is as follows.

$$M = (0.5 - 1/2 \times 372) \times 100\%$$
$$= 49.866\%$$

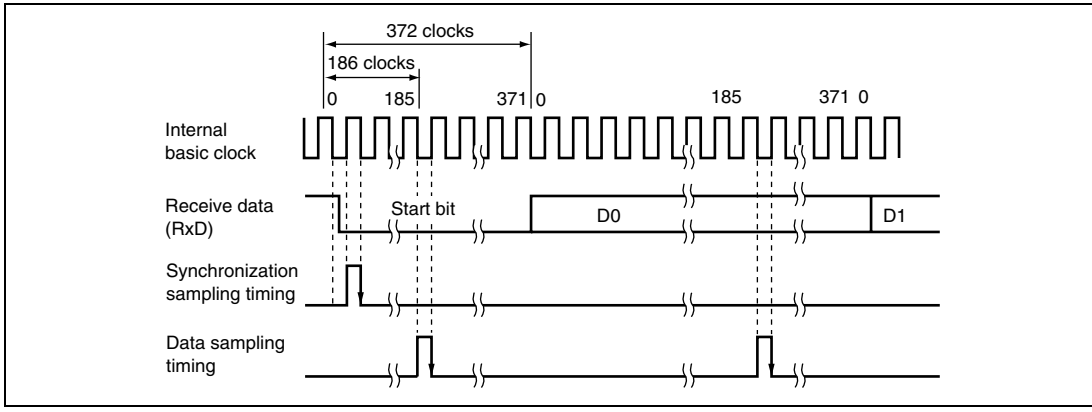


Figure 12.28 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Smart Card Mode (Using Clock of 372 Times the Transfer Rate)

12.7.5 Initialization

Before transmitting and receiving data, initialize the SCI as described below. Initialization is also necessary when switching from transmit mode to receive mode, or vice versa.

1. Clear the TE and RE bits in SCR to 0.
2. Clear the error flags ERS, PER, and ORER in SSR to 0.
3. Set the GM, BLK, O/$\overline{E}$, BCP0, BCP1, CKS0, CKS1 bits in SMR. Set the PE bit to 1.
4. Set the SMIF, SDIR, and SINV bits in SCMR.
   When the SMIF bit is set to 1, the TxD and RxD pins are both switched from ports to SCI pins, and are placed in the high-impedance state.
5. Set the value corresponding to the bit rate in BRR.
6. Set the CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. Clear the TIE, RIE, TE, RE, MPIE, and TEIE bits to 0.
   If the CKE0 bit is set to 1, the clock is output from the SCK pin.
7. Wait at least one bit interval, then set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in SCR. Do not set the TE bit and RE bit at the same time, except for self-diagnosis.

To switch from receive mode to transmit mode, after checking that the SCI has finished reception, initialize the SCI, and set RE to 0 and TE to 1. Whether SCI has finished reception or not can be checked with the RDRF, PER, or ORER flags. To switch from transmit mode to receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished transmission, initialize the SCI, and set TE to 0 and RE to 1. Whether SCI has finished transmission or not can be checked with the TEND flag.

12.7.6 Serial Data Transmission (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

As data transmission in Smart Card interface mode involves error signal sampling and retransmission processing, the operations are different from those in normal serial communication interface mode (except for block transfer mode). Figure 12.29 illustrates the retransfer operation when the SCI is in transmit mode.

1. If an error signal is sent back from the receiving end after transmission of one frame is complete, the ERS bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. The ERS bit in SSR should be cleared to 0 by the time the next parity bit is sampled.
2. The TEND bit in SSR is not set for a frame in which an error signal indicating an abnormality is received. Data is retransferred from TDR to TSR, and retransmitted automatically.
3. If an error signal is not sent back from the receiving end, the ERS bit in SSR is not set. Transmission of one frame, including a retransfer, is judged to have been completed, and the TEND bit in SSR is set to 1. If the TIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, a TXI interrupt request is generated. Writing transmit data to TDR transfers the next transmit data.

Figure 12.31 shows a flowchart for transmission. A sequence of transmit operations can be performed automatically by specifying the DTC to be activated with a TXI interrupt source. In a transmit operation, the TDRE flag is set to 1 at the same time as the TEND flag in SSR is set, and a TXI interrupt will be generated if the TIE bit in SCR has been set to 1. If the TXI request is designated beforehand as a DTC activation source, the DTC will be activated by the TXI request, and transfer of the transmit data will be carried out. The TDRE and TEND flags are automatically cleared to 0 when data is transferred by the DTC. In the event of an error, the SCI retransmits the same data automatically. During this period, the TEND flag remains cleared to 0 and the DTC is not activated. Therefore, the SCI and DTC will automatically transmit the specified number of bytes in the event of an error, including retransmission. However, the ERS flag is not cleared automatically when an error occurs, and so the RIE bit should be set to 1 beforehand so that an ERI request will be generated in the event of an error, and the ERS flag will be cleared.

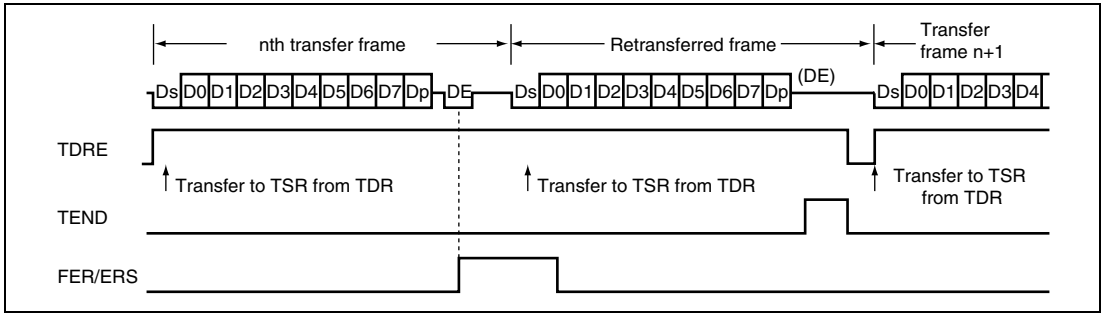


Figure 12.29 Retransfer Operation in SCI Transmit Mode

The timing for setting the TEND flag depends on the value of the GM bit in SMR. The TEND flag set timing is shown in figure 12.30.

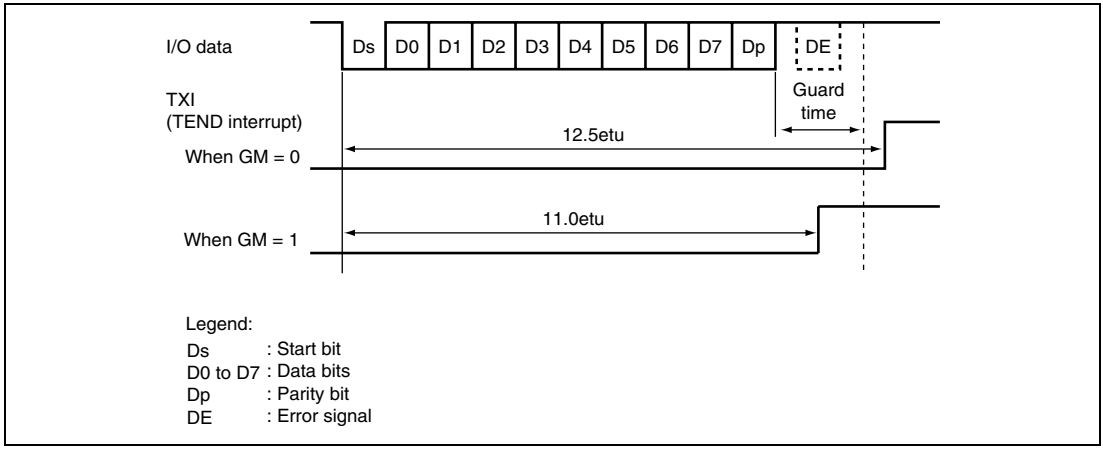


Figure 12.30 TEND Flag Generation Timing in Transmission Operation

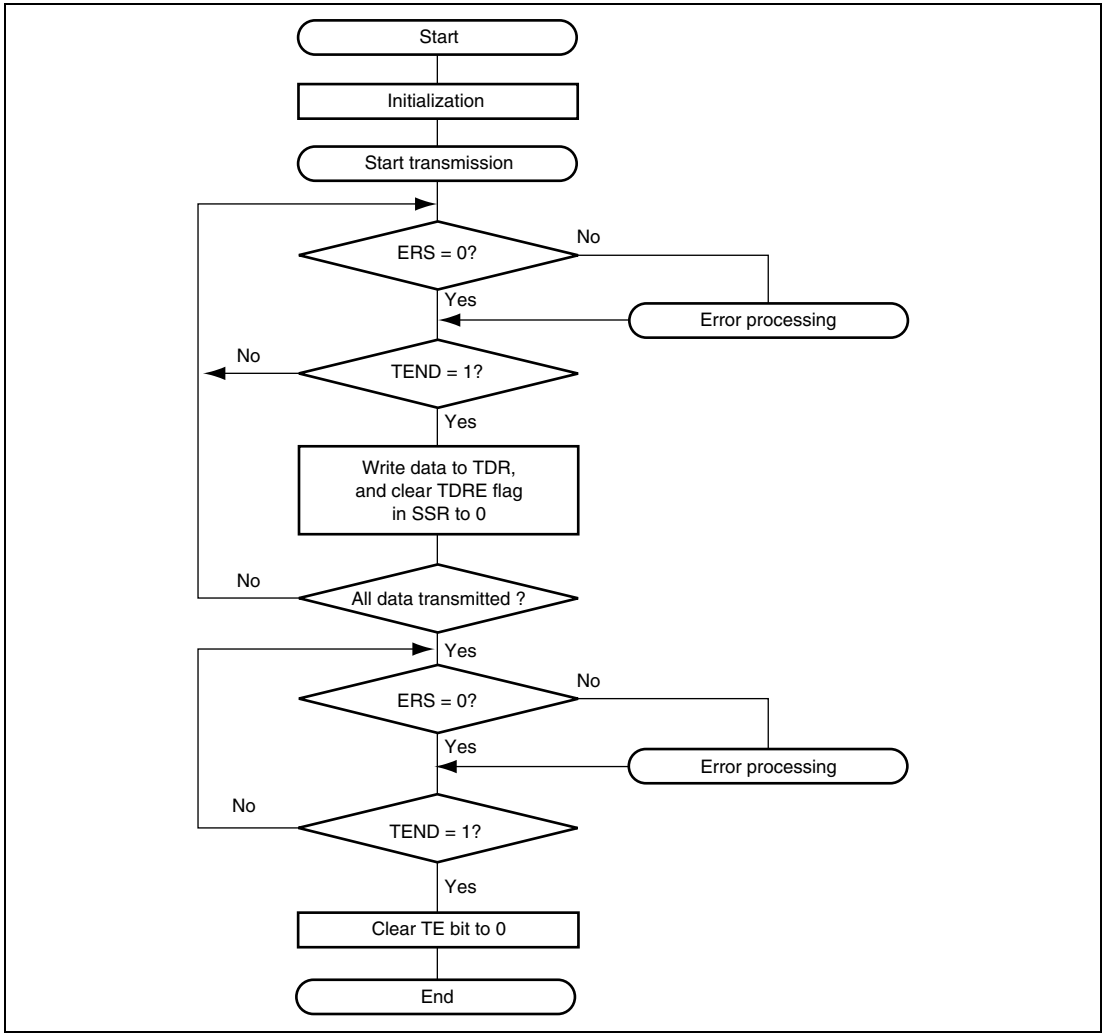


Figure 12.31 Example of Transmission Processing Flow

12.7.7 Serial Data Reception (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

Data reception in Smart Card interface mode uses the same operation procedure as for normal serial communication interface mode. Figure 12.32 illustrates the retransfer operation when the SCI is in receive mode.

1. If an error is found when the received parity bit is checked, the PER bit in SSR is automatically set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. The PER bit in SSR should be kept cleared to 0 until the next parity bit is sampled.
2. The RDRF bit in SSR is not set for a frame in which an error has occurred.
3. If no error is found when the received parity bit is checked, the PER bit in SSR is not set to 1, the receive operation is judged to have been completed normally, and the RDRF flag in SSR is automatically set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated.

Figure 12.33 shows a flowchart for reception. A sequence of receive operations can be performed automatically by specifying the DTC to be activated using an RXI interrupt source. In a receive operation, an RXI interrupt request is generated when the RDRF flag in SSR is set to 1. If the RXI request is designated beforehand as a DTC activation source, the DTC will be activated by the RXI request, and the receive data will be transferred. The RDRF flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DTC. If an error occurs in receive mode and the ORER or PER flag is set to 1, a transfer error interrupt (ERI) request will be generated. Hence, so the error flag must be cleared to 0. In the event of an error, the DTC is not activated and receive data is skipped. Therefore, receive data is transferred for only the specified number of bytes in the event of an error. Even when a parity error occurs in receive mode and the PER flag is set to 1, the data that has been received is transferred to RDR and can be read from there.

Note: For details on receive operations in block transfer mode, refer to section 12.4, Operation in Asynchronous Mode.

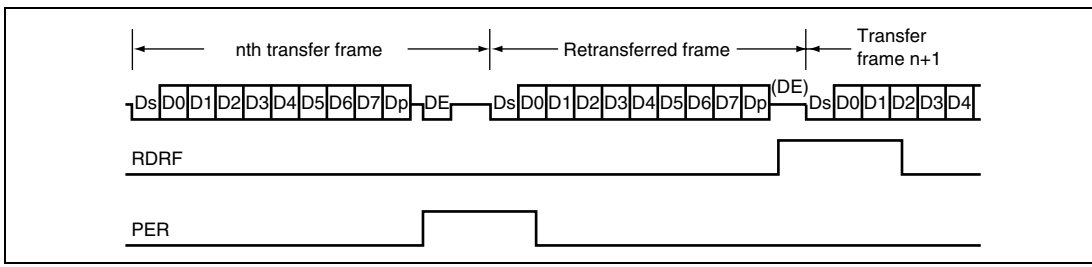


Figure 12.32 Retransfer Operation in SCI Receive Mode

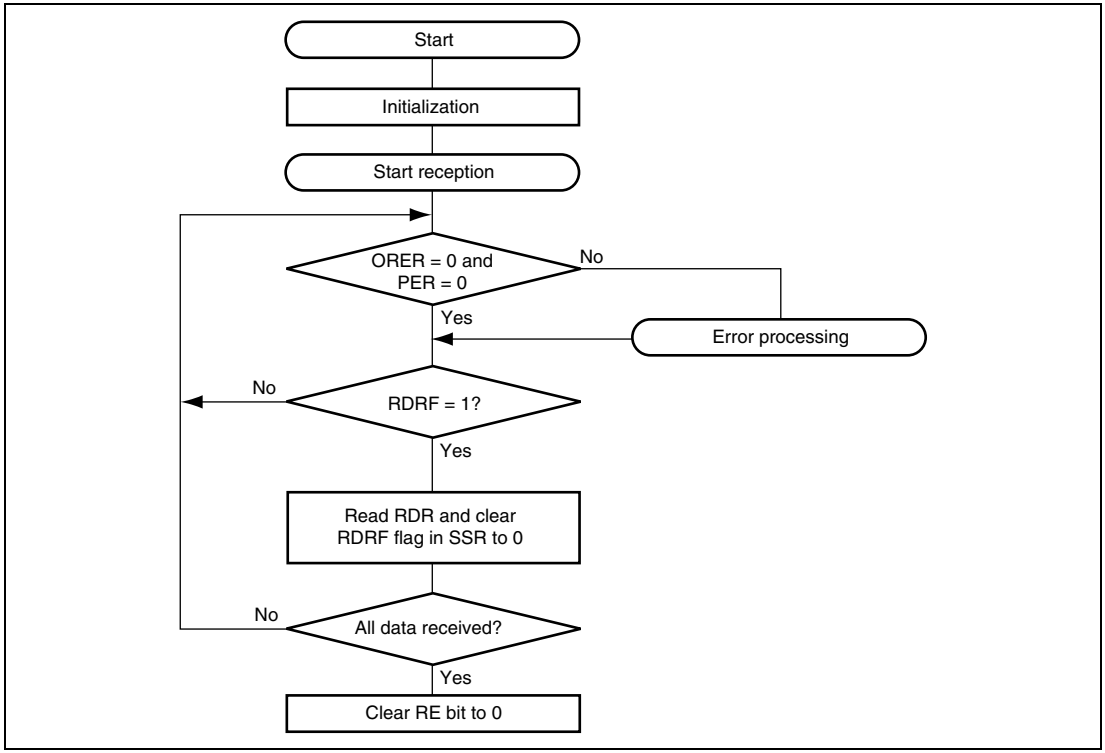


Figure 12.33 Example of Reception Processing Flow

12.7.8 Clock Output Control

When the GM bit in SMR is set to 1, the clock output level can be fixed with bits CKE0 and CKE1 in SCR. At this time, the minimum clock pulse width can be made the specified width. Figure 12.34 shows the timing for fixing the clock output level. In this example, GM is set to 1, CKE1 is cleared to 0, and the CKE0 bit is controlled.

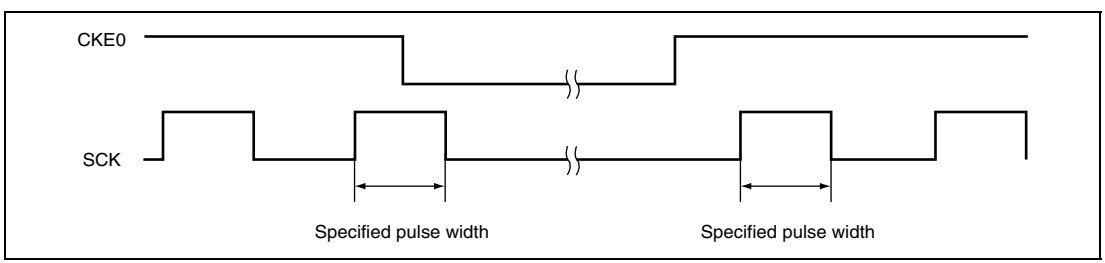


Figure 12.34 Timing for Fixing Clock Output Level

When turning on the power or switching between Smart Card interface mode and software standby mode, the following procedures should be followed in order to maintain the clock duty.

Powering On: To secure clock duty from power-on, the following switching procedure should be followed.

1. The initial state is port input and high impedance. Use a pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor to fix the potential.
2. Fix the SCK pin to the specified output level with the CKE1 bit in SCR.
3. Set SMR and SCMR, and switch to smart card mode operation.
4. Set the CKE0 bit in SCR to 1 to start clock output.

When changing from smart card interface mode to software standby mode:

1. Set the data register (DR) and data direction register (DDR) corresponding to the SCK pin to the value for the fixed output state in software standby mode.
2. Write 0 to the TE bit and RE bit in the serial control register (SCR) to halt transmit/receive operation. At the same time, set the CKE1 bit to the value for the fixed output state in software standby mode.
3. Write 0 to the CKE0 bit in SCR to halt the clock.
4. Wait for one serial clock period.

   During this interval, clock output is fixed at the specified level, with the duty preserved.
5. Make the transition to the software standby state.

When returning to smart card interface mode from software standby mode:

1. Exit the software standby state.
2. Write 1 to the CKE0 bit in SCR and output the clock. Signal generation is started with the normal duty.

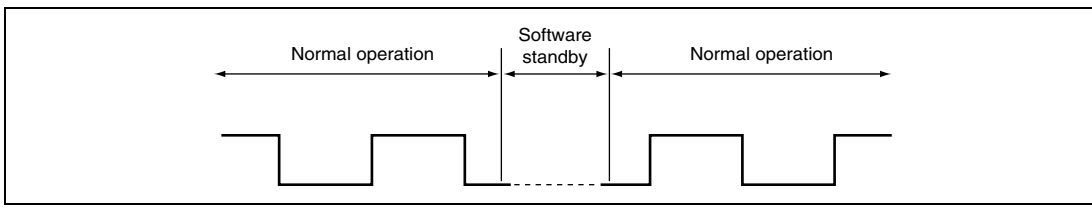


Figure 12.35 Clock Halt and Restart Procedure

12.8 SCI Select Function

The SCI_0 supports the SCI select function which allows clock synchronous communication between master LSI and one of multiple slave LSI. Figure 12.36 shows an example of communication using the SCI select function. Figure 12.37 shows the operation.

The master LSI can communicate with slave LSI_A by bringing $\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$ signals low and high, respectively. In this case, the TxD0_B pin of the slave LSI_B is brought high-impedance state and the internal SCK0_A signal is fixed high. This halts the communication operation of slave LSI_B. The master LSI can communicate with slave LSI_B by bringing the $\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$ signals high and low, respectively.

The slave LSI detects the selection by receiving the low level input from the $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ pin and immediately executes data transmission/reception processing.

Note: The selection signals ($\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$) of the LSI must be switched while the serial clock (M_SCK) is high after the end bit of the transmit data has been send. Note that one selection signal can be brought low at the same time.

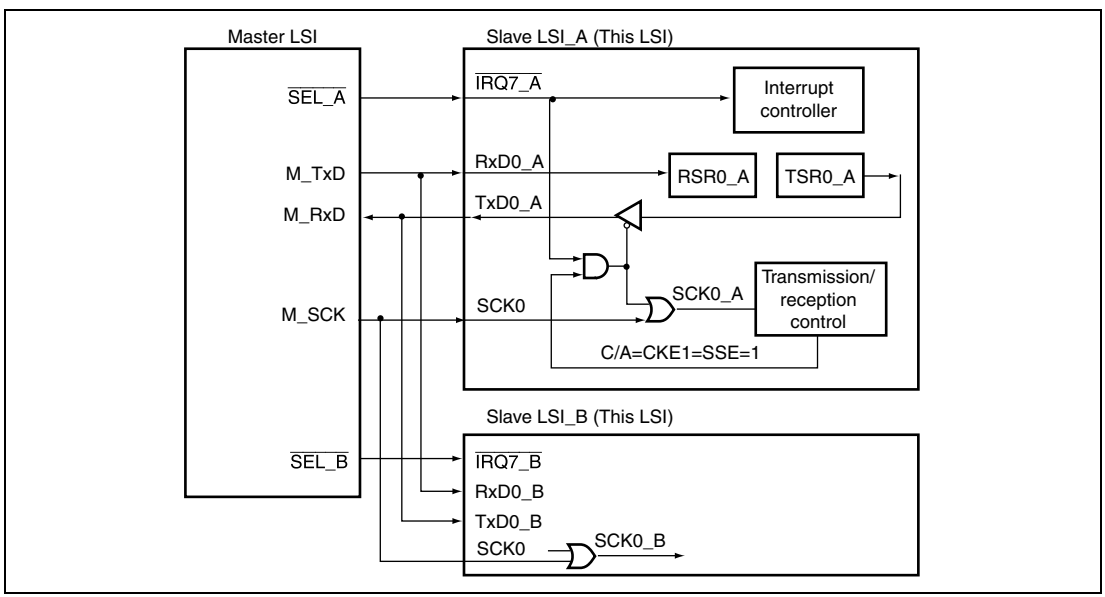


Figure 12.36 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function

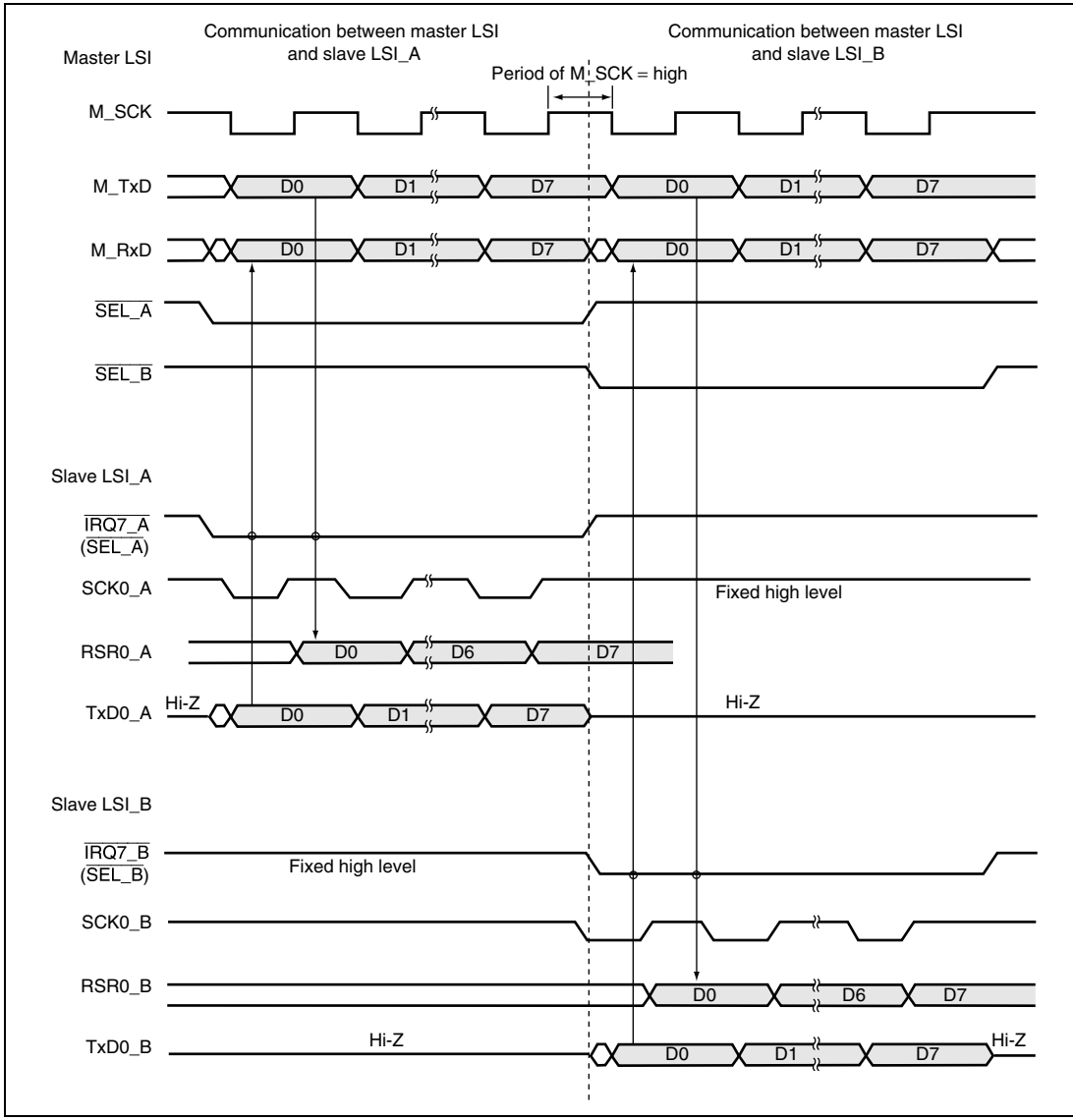


Figure 12.37 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function

12.9 Interrupts

12.9.1 Interrupts in Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode

Table 12.12 shows the interrupt sources in normal serial communication interface mode. A different interrupt vector is assigned to each interrupt source, and individual interrupt sources can be enabled or disabled using the enable bits in SCR.

When the TDRE flag in SSR is set to 1, a TXI interrupt request is generated. When the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, a TEI interrupt request is generated. A TXI interrupt can activate the DMAC to perform data transfer. The TDRE flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DMAC.

When the RDRF flag in SSR is set to 1, an RXI interrupt request is generated. When the ORER, PER, or FER flag in SSR is set to 1, an ERI interrupt request is generated. An RXI interrupt request can activate the DMAC to transfer data. The RDRF flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DMAC.

A TEI interrupt is requested when the TEND flag is set to 1 and the TEIE bit is set to 1. If a TEI interrupt and a TXI interrupt are requested simultaneously, the TXI interrupt has priority for acceptance. However, if the TDRE and TEND flags are cleared simultaneously by the TXI interrupt routine, the SCI cannot branch to the TEI interrupt routine later.

Table 12.12 SCI Interrupt Sources

Channel	Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Flag	DMAC Activation	Priority*
0	ERI0	Receive Error	ORER, FER, PER	Not possible	High
	RXI0	Receive Data Full	RDRF	Possible	
	TXI0	Transmit Data Empty	TDRE	Possible	
	TEI0	Transmission End	TEND	Not possible	
2	ERI2	Receive Error	ORER, FER, PER	Not possible	
	RXI2	Receive Data Full	RDRF	Not possible	
	TXI2	Transmit Data Empty	TDRE	Not possible	
	TEI2	Transmission End	TEND	Not possible	Low

Note: This table shows the initial state immediately after a reset. The relative channel priorities can be changed by the interrupt controller.

12.9.2 Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode

Table 12.13 shows the interrupt sources in Smart Card interface mode. The transmit end interrupt (TEI) request cannot be used in this mode.

Note: In case of block transfer mode, see 12.9.1, Interrupts in Nomal Serial Communication Interface Mode.

Table 12.13 Interrupt Sources in Smart Card Interface Mode

Channel	Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Flag	DMAC Activation	Priority*
0	ERI0	Receive Error, detection	ORER, PER, ERS	Not possible	High
	RXI0	Receive Data Full	RDRF	Possible	
	TXI0	Transmit Data Empty	TEND	Possible	
2	ERI2	Receive Error, detection	ORER, PER, ERS	Not possible	
	RXI2	Receive Data Full	RDRF	Not possible	
	TXI2	Transmit Data Empty	TEND	Not possible	Low

Note: * Indicates the initial state immediately after a reset.
Priorities in channels can be changed by the interrupt controller.

12.10 Usage Notes

12.10.1 Break Detection and Processing (Asynchronous Mode Only)

When framing error detection is performed, a break can be detected by reading the RxD pin value directly. In a break, the input from the RxD pin becomes all 0s, setting the FER flag, and possibly the PER flag. Note that as the SCI continues the receive operation after receiving a break, even if the FER flag is cleared to 0, it will be set to 1 again.

12.10.2 Mark State and Break Detection (Asynchronous Mode Only)

When TE is 0, the TxD pin is used as an I/O port whose direction (input or output) and level are determined by DR and DDR. This can be used to set the TxD pin to mark state (high level) or send a break during serial data transmission. To maintain the communication line at mark state until TE is set to 1, set both DDR and DR to 1. As TE is cleared to 0 at this point, the TxD pin becomes an I/O port, and 1 is output from the TxD pin. To send a break during serial transmission, first set PCR to 1 and PDR to 0, and then clear TE to 0. When TE is cleared to 0, the transmitter is initialized regardless of the current transmission state, the TxD pin becomes an I/O port, and 0 is output from the TxD pin.

12.10.3 Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operations (Clocked Synchronous Mode Only)

Transmission cannot be started when a receive error flag (ORER, PER, or FER) is set to 1, even if the TDRE flag is cleared to 0. Be sure to clear the receive error flags to 0 before starting transmission. Note also that receive error flags cannot be cleared to 0 even if the RE bit is cleared to 0.

12.10.4 Restrictions on Use of DMAC

- When an external clock source is used as the serial clock, the transmit clock should not be input until at least 5 ϕ clock cycles after TDR is updated by the DMAC. Misoperation may occur if the transmit clock is input within 4 ϕ clocks after TDR is updated. (figure 12.38)
- When RDR is read by the DMAC, be sure to set the activation source to the relevant SCI reception end interrupt (RXI).

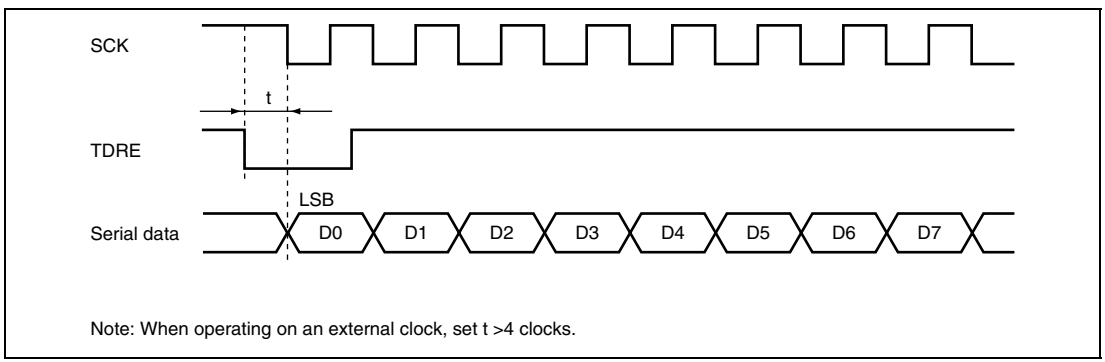


Figure 12.38 Example of Clocked Synchronous Transmission by DMAC

12.10.5 Operation in Case of Mode Transition

- Transmission

  Operation should be stopped (by clearing TE, TIE, and TEIE to 0) before making a module stop mode, software standby mode, or subsleep mode transition. TSR, TDR, and SSR are reset. The output pin states in module stop mode, software standby mode, or subsleep mode depend on the port settings, and becomes high-level output after the relevant mode is cleared. If a transition is made during transmission, the data being transmitted will be undefined. When transmitting without changing the transmit mode after the relevant mode is cleared, transmission can be started by setting TE to 1 again, and performing the following sequence: SSR read -> TDR write -> TDRE clearance. To transmit with a different transmit mode after clearing the relevant mode, the procedure must be started again from initialization. Figure 12.39 shows a sample flowchart for mode transition during transmission. Port pin states are shown in figures 12.40 and 12.41.

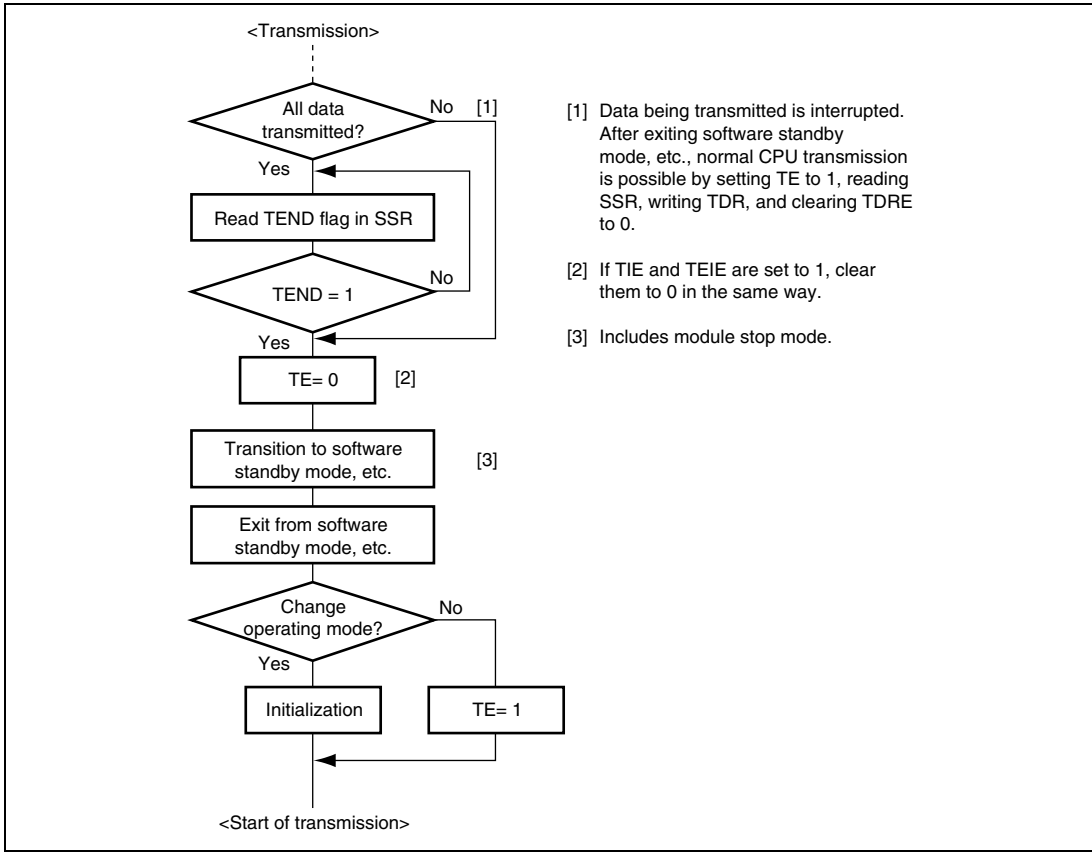


Figure 12.39 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Transmission

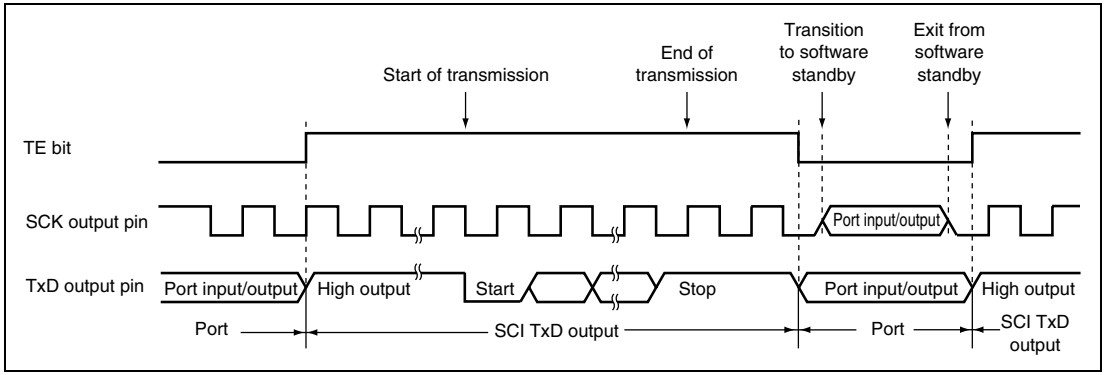


Figure 12.40 Port Pin State of Asynchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock

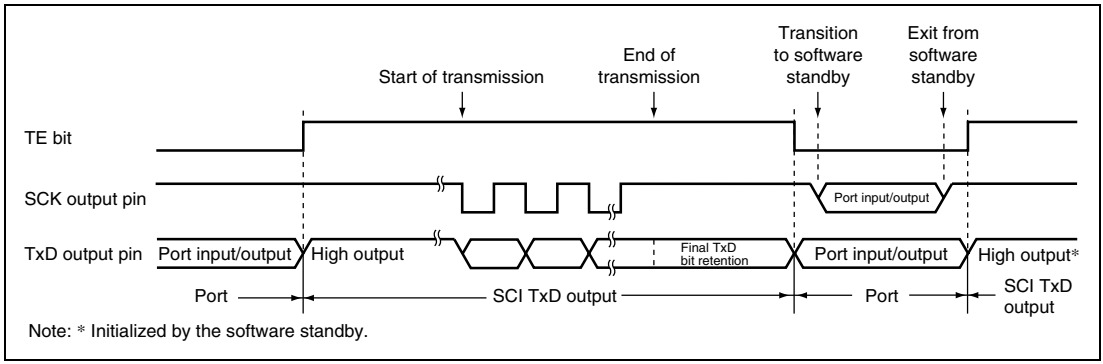


Figure 12.41 Port Pin State of Synchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock

- Reception

  Receive operation should be stopped (by clearing RE to 0) before making a module stop mode, software standby mode, watch mode, subactive mode, or subsleep mode transition. RSR, RDR, and SSR are reset. If a transition is made without stopping operation, the data being received will be invalid.

  To continue receiving without changing the reception mode after the relevant mode is cleared, set RE to 1 before starting reception. To receive with a different receive mode, the procedure must be started again from initialization.

  Figure 12.42 shows a sample flowchart for mode transition during reception.

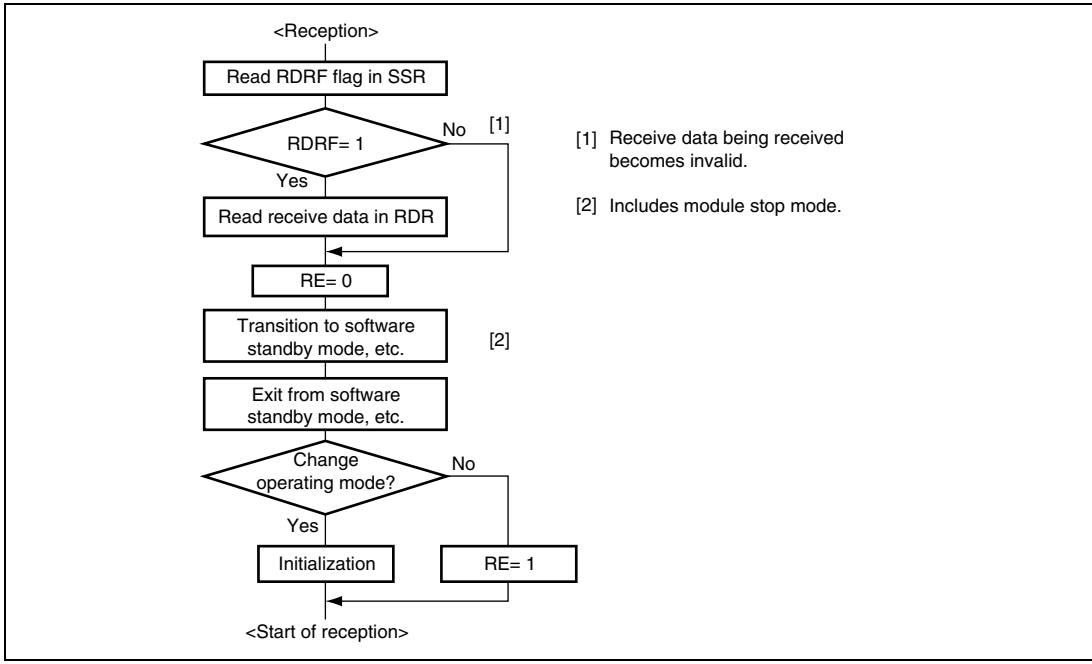


Figure 12.42 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Reception

12.10.6 Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function:

When switching the SCK pin function to the output port function (high-level output) by making the following settings while DDR = 1, DR = 1, C/$\overline{A}$ = 1, CKE1 = 0, CKE0 = 0, and TE = 1 (synchronous mode), low-level output occurs for one half-cycle.

1. End of serial data transmission
2. TE bit = 0
3. C/$\overline{A}$ bit = 0 ... switchover to port output
4. Occurrence of low-level output (see Figure 12.43)

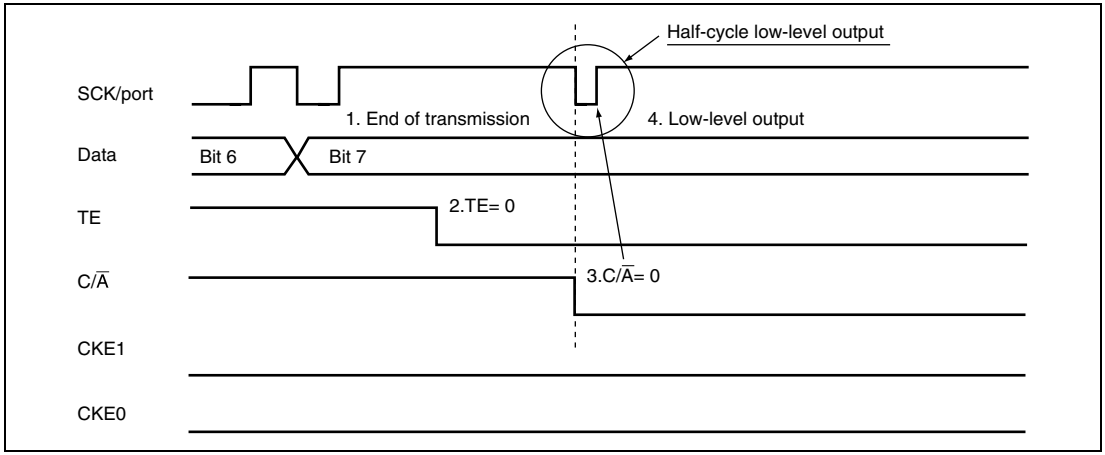


Figure 12.43 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function

Sample Procedure for Avoiding Low-Level Output: As this sample procedure temporarily places the SCK pin in the input state, the SCK/port pin should be pulled up beforehand with an external circuit.
With DDR = 1, DR = 1, C/$\overline{A}$ = 1, CKE1 = 0, CKE0 = 0, and TE = 1, make the following settings in the order shown.

1. End of serial data transmission
2. TE bit = 0
3. CKE1 bit = 1
4. C/$\overline{A}$ bit = 0 ... switchover to port output
5. CKE1 bit = 0

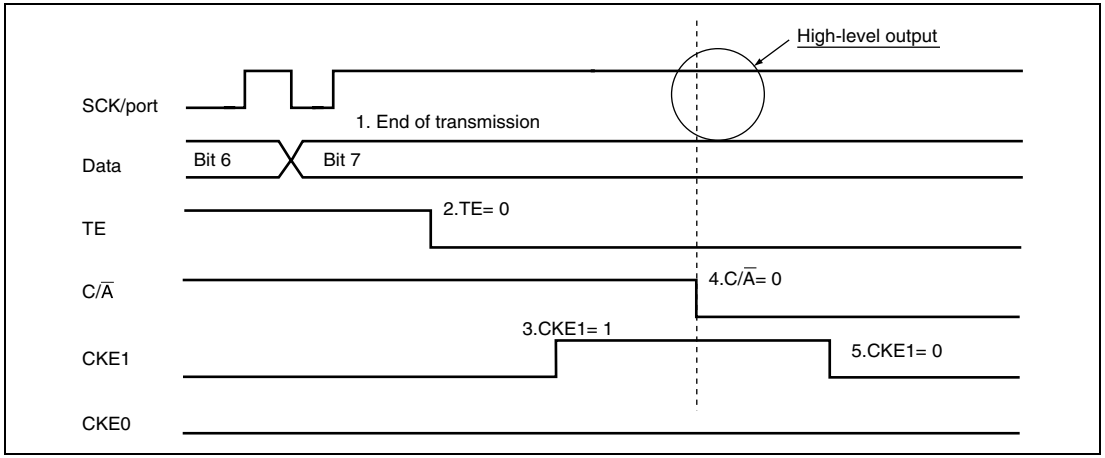


Figure 12.44 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function (Example of Preventing Low-Level Output)

Section 13 Boundary Scan Function

The HD64F2218 and HD64F2218U incorporate a boundary scan function, which is a serial I/O interface based on the JTAG (Joint Test Action Group, IEEEStd.1149.1 and IEEE Standard Test Access Port and Boundary Scan Architecture). Figure 13.1 shows the block diagram of the boundary scan function.

13.1 Features

- Five test signals
  - TCK, TDI, TDO, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$
- Six test modes supported
  - BYAPASS, SAMPLE/PRELOAD, EXTEST, CLAMP, HIGHZ, IDCODE
- Boundary scan function cannot be performed on the following pins.
  - Power supply pins: VCC, VSS, Vref, PLLVCC, PLLVSS, DrVCC, DrVSS
  - Clock signals: EXTAL, XTAL, OSC2, OSC1
  - Analog signals: P40 to P43, P96, P97, USD+, USD-
  - Boundary scan signals: TCK, TDI, TDO, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$
  - H-UDI control signal: EMLE

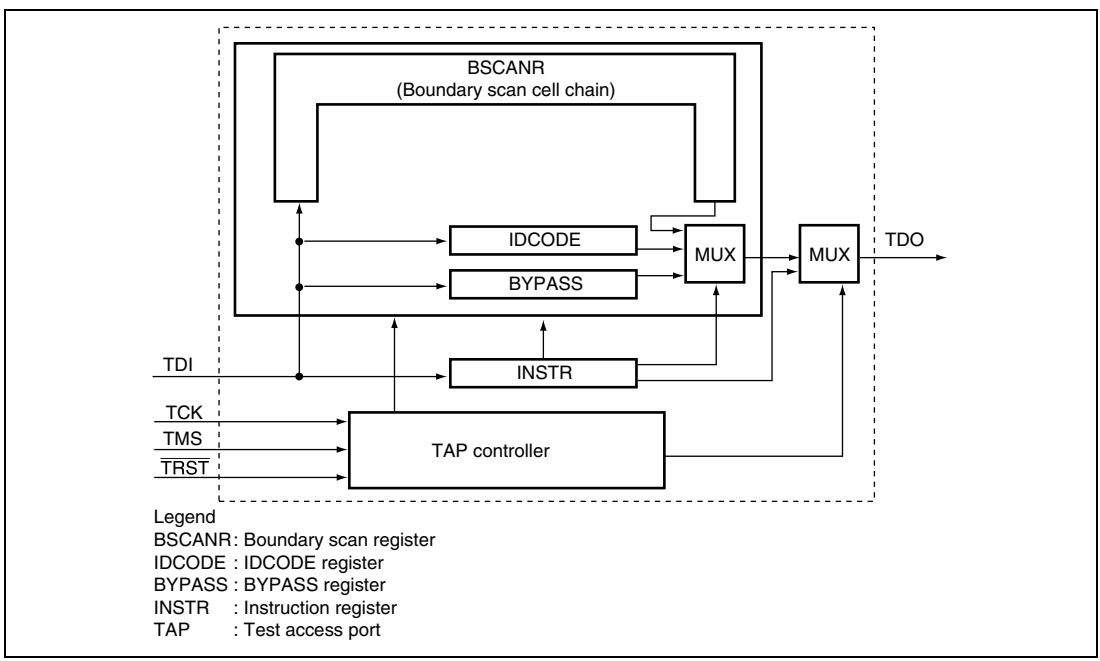


Figure 13.1 Block Diagram of Boundary Scan Function

13.2 Pin Configuration

Table 13.1 shows the I/O pins used in the boundary scan function.

Table 13.1 Pin Configuration

Pin Name	I/O	Function
TMS	Input	Test Mode Select Controls the TAP controller which is a 16-state Finite State Machine. The TMS input value at the rising edge of TCK determines the status transition direction on the TAP controller. The TMS is fixed high when the boundary scan function is not used. The protocol is based on JTAG standard (IEEE Std.1149.1). This pin has a pull-up resistor.
TCK	Input	Test Clock A clock signal for the boundary scan function. When the boundary scan function is used, input a clock of 50% duty to this pin. This pin has a pull-up resistor.
TDI	Input	Test Data Input A data input signal for the boundary scan function. Data input from the TDI is latched at the rising edge of TCK. TDI is fixed high when the boundary scan function is not used. This pin has a pull-up register.
TDO	Output	Test Data Output A data output signal for the boundary scan function. Data output from the TDO changes at the falling edge of TCK. The output driver of the TDO is driven only when it is necessary only in Shift-IR or Shift-DR states, and is brought to the high-impedance state when not necessary.
$\overline{\text{TRST}}$	Input	Test Reset Asynchronously resets the TAP controller when $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is brought low. The user must apply power-on reset signal specific to the boundary scan function when the power is supplied. (For details on signal design, refer to figure 13.4, Reset Signal Design Examples.) $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is fixed high when the boundary scan function is not used. This pin has a pull-up resistor. This pin has a pull-up register.

13.3 Register Descriptions

The boundary scan function has the following registers. These registers cannot be accessed by the CPU.

- Instruction register (INSTR)
- IDCODE register (IDCODE)
- BYPASS register (BYPASS)
- Boundary scan register (BSCANR)

13.3.1 Instruction Register (INSTR)

INSTR is a 3-bit register. At initialization, this register is specified to IDCODE mode. When $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is pulled low, or when the TAP controller is in the Test-Logic-Reset state, INSTR is initialized. INSTR can be written by the serial data input from the TDI. If more than three bits of instruction is input from the TDI, INSTR stores the last three bits of serial data.

If a command reserved in INSTR is used, the correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	TI2	1	—	Test Instruction Bits
1	TI1	0	—	Instruction configuration is shown in table 13.2.
0	TI0	1	—	

Table 13.2 Instruction configuration

Bit 2	Bit1	Bit 0	
TI2	TI1	TI0	Instruction
0	0	0	EXTEST
0	0	1	SAMPLE/PRELOAD
0	1	0	CLAMP
0	1	1	HIGHZ
1	0	0	Reserved
1	0	1	IDCODE (initial value)
1	1	0	Reserved
1	1	1	BYPASS

1. EXTEST

   The EXTEST instruction is used to test external circuits when this LSI is installed on the print circuit board. If this instruction is executed, output pins are used to output test data (specified by the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction) from the boundary scan register to the print circuit board, and input pins are used to input test results.

2. SAMPLE/PRELOAD

   The SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction is used to input data from the LSI internal circuits to the boundary scan register, output data from scan path, and reload the data to the scan path. While this instruction is executed, input signals are directly input to the LSI and output signals are also directly output to the external circuits. The LSI system circuit is not affected by this instruction.

   In SAMPLE operation, the boundary scan register latches the snap shot of data transferred from input pins to internal circuit or data transferred from internal circuit to output pins. The latched data is read from the scan path. The scan register latches the snap data at the rising edge of the TCK in Capture –DR state. The scan register latches snap shot without affecting the LSI normal operation.

   In PRELOAD operation, initial value is written from the scan path to the parallel output latch of the boundary scan register prior to the EXTEST instruction execution. If the EXTEST is executed without executing this RELOAD operation, undefined values are output from the beginning to the end (transfer to the output latch) of the EXTEST sequence. (In EXTEST instruction, output parallel latches are always output to the output pins.)

3. CLAMP

   When the CLAMP instruction is selected output pins output the boundary scan register value which was specified by the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction in advance. While the CLAMP instruction is selected, the status of boundary scan register is maintained regardless of the TAP controller state. BYPASS is connected between TDI and TDO, the same operation as BYPASS instruction can be achieved.

4. HIGHZ

   When the HIGHZ instruction is selected, all outputs enter high-impedance state. While this instruction is selected, the status of boundary scan register is maintained regardless of the TAP controller state. BYPASS resistor is connected between TDI and TDO, the same operation as BYPASS instruction can be achieved.

5. IDCODE

   When the IDCODE instruction is selected, IDCODE register value is output to the TDO in Shift-DR state of TAP controller. In this case, IDCODE register value is output from the LSB. During this instruction execution, test circuit does not affect the system circuit. INSTR is initialized by the IDCODE instruction in Test-Logic-Reset state of TAP controller.

6. BYPASS

   The BYPASS instruction is a standard instruction necessary to operate bypass register. The BYPASS instruction improves the serial data transfer speed by bypassing the scan path. During this instruction execution, test circuit does not affect the system circuit.

13.3.2 IDCODE Register (IDCODE)

IDCODE register is a 32-bit register. If INSTR is set to IDCODE mode, IDCODE is connected between TDI and TDO. The HD64F2218, HD64F2218U output fixed codes H′002A200F from the TDO. Serial data cannot be written to IDCODE register through TDI. Table 13.3 shows the IDCODE register configuration.

Table 13.3 IDCODE Register Configuration

Bits	31 to 28	27 to 12	11 to 1	0
HD64F2218, HD64F2218U codes	0000	0000 0010 1010 0010	0000 0000 111	1
Contents	Version (4 bits)	Part No. (16 bits)	Product No. (11 bits)	Fixed code (1 bit)

13.3.3 BYPASS Register (BYPASS)

BYPASS is a 1-bit register. If INSTR is specified to BYPASS mode, CLAMP mode, or HIGHZ mode, BYPASS is connected between TDI and TDO.

13.3.4 Boundary Scan Register (BSCANR)

BSCAN is a 199-bit shift register assigned on the pins to control input/output pins.

The I/O pins consists of three bits (IN, Control, OUT), input pins 1 bit (IN), and output pins 1 bit (OUT) of shift registers. The boundary scan test based on the JTAG standard can be performed by using instructions listed in Table 13.2. Table 13.4 shows the correspondence between the LSI pins and boundary scan registers. (In Table 13.4, Control indicates the high active pin. By specifying Control to high, the pin is driven by OUT.) Figure 13.2 shows the boundary scan register configuration example.

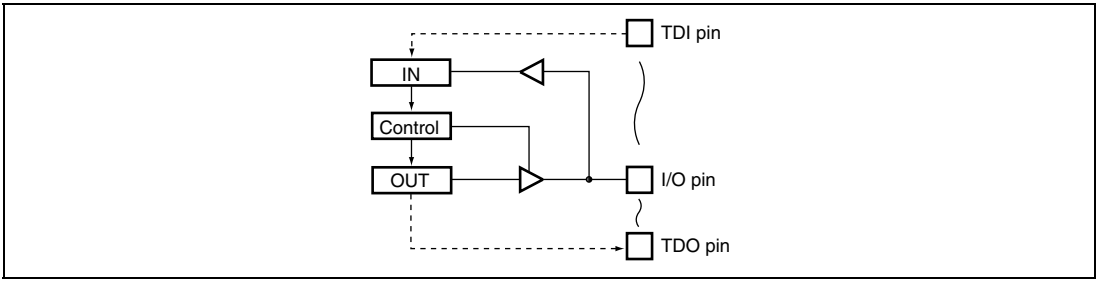


Figure 13.2 Boundary Scan Register Configuration

Table 13.4 Correspondence between LSI Pins and Boundary Scan Register

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
	From TDI		
89	PF7/ϕ	IN	198
		Control	197
		OUT	196
91	PF6/$\overline{AS}$	IN	195
		Control	194
		OUT	193
92	PF5/$\overline{RD}$	IN	192
		Control	191
		OUT	190
93	PF4/$\overline{HWR}$	IN	189
		Control	188
		OUT	187
94	PF3/$\overline{LWR}$/$\overline{ADTRG}$/$\overline{IRQ3}$	IN	186
		Control	185
		OUT	184
95	PF2/$\overline{WAIT}$	IN	183
		Control	182
		OUT	181

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
96	PF1/$\overline{\text{BACK}}$	IN	180
		Control	179
		OUT	178
97	PF0/$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$	IN	177
		Control	176
		OUT	175
98	PA3/A19/SCK2	IN	174
		Control	173
		OUT	172
99	PA2/A18/RxD2	IN	171
		Control	170
		OUT	169
100	PA1/A17/TxD2	IN	168
		Control	167
		OUT	166
1	PA0/A16	IN	165
		Control	164
		OUT	163
2	P10/TIOCA0/A20	IN	162
		Control	161
		OUT	160
3	P11/TIOCB0/A21	IN	159
		Control	158
		OUT	157
4	P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22	IN	156
		Control	155
		OUT	154
5	P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23	IN	153
		Control	152
		OUT	151
6	P14/TIOCA1/$\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$	IN	150
		Control	149
		OUT	148

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
7	P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC	IN	147
		Control	146
		OUT	145
8	P16/TIOCA2/$\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$	IN	144
		Control	143
		OUT	142
9	P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD	IN	141
		Control	140
		OUT	139
10	PC0/A0	IN	138
		Control	137
		OUT	136
11	PC1/A1	IN	135
		Control	134
		OUT	133
12	PC2/A2	IN	132
		Control	131
		OUT	130
13	PC3/A3	IN	129
		Control	128
		OUT	127
14	MD0	IN	126
15	MD1	IN	125
16	MD2	IN	124
17	PC4/A4	IN	123
		Control	122
		OUT	121
18	PC5/A5	IN	120
		Control	119
		OUT	118
19	PC6/A6	IN	117
		Control	116
		OUT	115

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
20	PC7/A7	IN	114
		Control	113
		OUT	112
21	USPND/TMOW	OUT	111
22	P30/TxD0	IN	110
		Control	109
		OUT	108
23	P31/RxD0	IN	107
		Control	106
		OUT	105
24	P32/SCK0/$\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$	IN	104
		Control	103
		OUT	102
25	PG1/$\overline{\text{CS3}}$/$\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$	IN	101
		Control	100
		OUT	99
26	PG2/$\overline{\text{CS2}}$	IN	98
		Control	97
		OUT	96
27	PG3/$\overline{\text{CS1}}$	IN	95
		Control	94
		OUT	93
28	PG4/$\overline{\text{CS0}}$	IN	92
		Control	91
		OUT	90
29	VBUS	IN	89
30	P36	IN	88
		Control	87
		OUT	86
37	PB0/A8	IN	85
		Control	84
		OUT	83

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
38	PB1/A9	IN	82
		Control	81
		OUT	80
39	PB2/A10	IN	79
		Control	78
		OUT	77
40	PB3/A11	IN	76
		Control	75
		OUT	74
47	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	IN	73
49	PB4/A12	IN	72
		Control	71
		OUT	70
50	PB5/A13	IN	69
		Control	68
		OUT	67
51	PB6/A14	IN	66
		Control	65
		OUT	64
52	PB7/A15	IN	63
		Control	62
		OUT	61
55	P74/$\overline{\text{MRES}}$	IN	60
		Control	59
		OUT	58
56	P71/$\overline{\text{CS5}}$	IN	57
		Control	56
		OUT	55
57	$\overline{\text{STBY}}$	IN	54
58	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	IN	53
63	P70/$\overline{\text{CS4}}$	IN	52
		Control	51
		OUT	50

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
64	PE0/D0	IN	49
		Control	48
		OUT	47
65	PE1/D1	IN	46
		Control	45
		OUT	44
66	PE2/D2	IN	43
		Control	42
		OUT	41
67	PE3/D3	IN	40
		Control	39
		OUT	38
68	PE4/D4	IN	37
		Control	36
		OUT	35
69	PE5/D5	IN	34
		Control	33
		OUT	32
70	PE6/D6	IN	31
		Control	30
		OUT	29
71	PE7/D7	IN	28
		Control	27
		OUT	26
72	PD0/D8	IN	25
		Control	24
		OUT	23
73	PD1/D9	IN	22
		Control	21
		OUT	20

TFP-100G Pin No.	Pin Name	I/O	Bit Name
74	PD2/D10	IN	19
		Control	18
		OUT	17
75	PD3/D11	IN	16
		Control	15
		OUT	14
76	PD4/D12	IN	13
		Control	12
		OUT	11
77	PD5/D13	IN	10
		Control	9
		OUT	8
78	PD6/D14	IN	7
		Control	6
		OUT	5
79	PD7/D15	IN	4
		Control	3
		OUT	2
80	FWE	IN	1
81	NMI	IN	0
	to TDO		

13.4 Boundary Scan Function Operation

13.4.1 TAP Controller

Figure 13.3 shows the TAP controller status transition diagram, based on the JTAG standard.

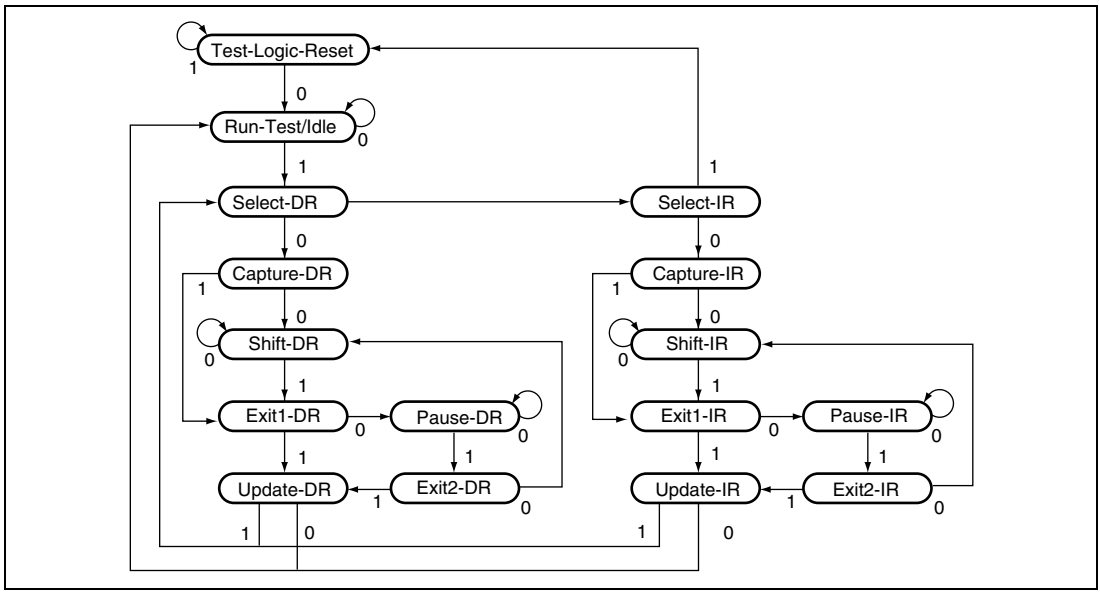


Figure 13.3 TAP Controller Status Transition

Note: The transition condition is the TMS value at the rising edge of TCK. The TDI value is sampled at the rising edge of the TCK and shifted at the falling edge of the TCK. The TDO value changes at the falling edge of the TCK. In addition, TDO is high-impedance state in a state other than Shift-DR or Shift-IR state. If TRST is 0, Test-Logic-Reset state is entered asynchronously with the TCK.

13.5 Usage Notes

1. The $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ pin must be brought low level at power-on regardless of boundary scan function usage. If the boundary scan function is used, bring $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ high and set TCK, TMS and TDI appropriately. If the boundary scan function is not used, drive $\overline{\text{TRST}}$, TCK, TMS, and TDI high or high-impedance state. These pins are internally pulled up, and care must be taken in standby mode.
2. The following must be noted on the power-on reset signal applied to the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ pin.
   - Reset signal must be applied at power-on.
   - $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ must be separated in order not to affect the system operation.
   - $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ must be separated from the system circuitry in order not to affect the system operation.
   - System circuitry must also be separated from the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ in order not to affect $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ operation as shown in figure 13.4.

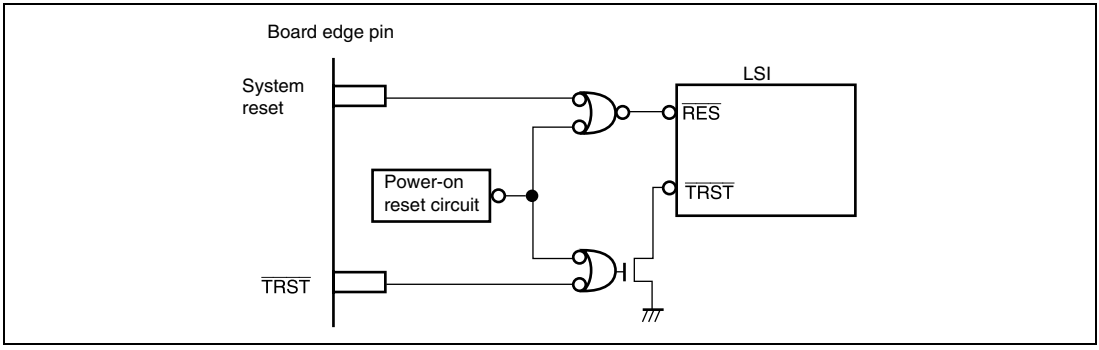


Figure 13.4 Recommended Reset Signal Design

3. TCK clock speed is 24 MHz at the maximum.
4. In serial communication, data is input or output from the LSB as shown in figure 13.5.

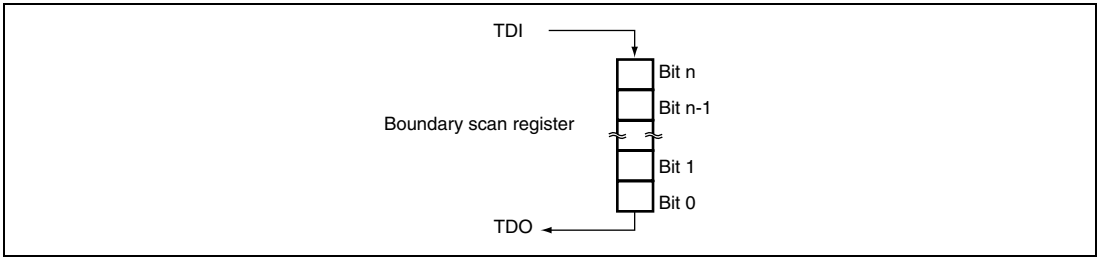


Figure 13.5 Serial Data Input/Output

5. If a pin with pull-up function is SAMPLEed with pull-up function enabled, the corresponding IN register is set to 1. In this case, the corresponding Control register must be cleared to 0.
6. If a pin with open-drain function is SAMPLEed while its open-drain function is enabled and while the corresponding OUT register is set to 1, the corresponding Control register is cleared to 0 (the pin status is Hi-Z). If the pin is SAMPLEed while the corresponding OUT register is cleared to 0, the corresponding Control register is set to 1 (the pin status is 0).
7. If EXTEST, CLAMP, or HIGHZ state is entered, this LSI enters guarded mode such as hardware standby mode ($\overline{RES}$ = $\overline{STBY}$ = 0). Before entering normal operating mode from EXTEST, CLAMP, or HIGHZ state, specify $\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, FWE, and MD2 to MD0 pin to the designated mode.
8. The EMLE pin must be cleared to 0. When the pin is set to 1, this chip functions as Hitachi user debugging interface (H-UDI).

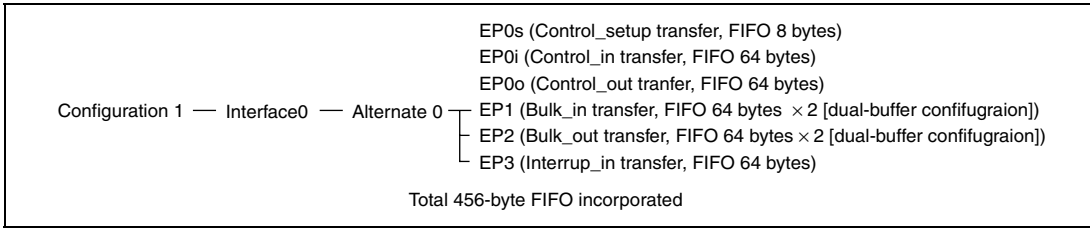
EMLE Pin	Chip State
0	Normal operation, boundary scan function
1	Hitachi user debugging interface (H-UDI)

Section 14 Universal Serial Bus (USB)

This LSI incorporates a USB function module complying with USB standard version 1.1. Figure 14.1 shows the block diagram of the USB.

14.1 Features

- USB standard version 1.1 compliant
- Bus-powered mode or self-powered mode is selectable via the USB specific pin ($\overline{\text{UBPM}}$)
- Full speed (12 Mbps) support
- On-chip PLL circuit to generate the USB operation clock (24 MHz × 2 = 48 MHz, 16 MHz × 3 = 48 MHz)
- On-chip bus transceiver
- Standard commands are processed automatically by hardware
  - Only Set_Descriptor, Get_Descriptor, Class/VendorCommand, and SynchFrame commands should be processed by software
- Current Configuration value can be checked by Set_Configuration interrupt
- Three transfer modes supported (Control, Bulk, Interrupt)
- Configuration of four endpoints; EP0, EP1, EP2, and EP3



- When the USB is not used, the data transfer FIFO area can be used as the on-chip RAM of 512 bytes (address: H'C00200 to H'C003FF)
- 16 kinds of interrupts
  - Suspend/resume interrupt source can be assigned for $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$
  - Each interrupt source except the suspend/resume interrupt source can be assigned for $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ via registers
- DMA transfer interface
  - DMA transfer is enabled for the Bulk transfer data of EP1 and EP2
- 8-bit bus (3 cycle access timing) connected to the external bus interface
  - Internal registers are addressed to a part of area 6 of external address (H'C00000 to H'DFFFFF)
  - The area of H'C00400 to H'DFFFFF is reserved for the USB and should not be accessed

Note: In this section, power-down mode represents watch, subactive, subsleep, and software standby modes.

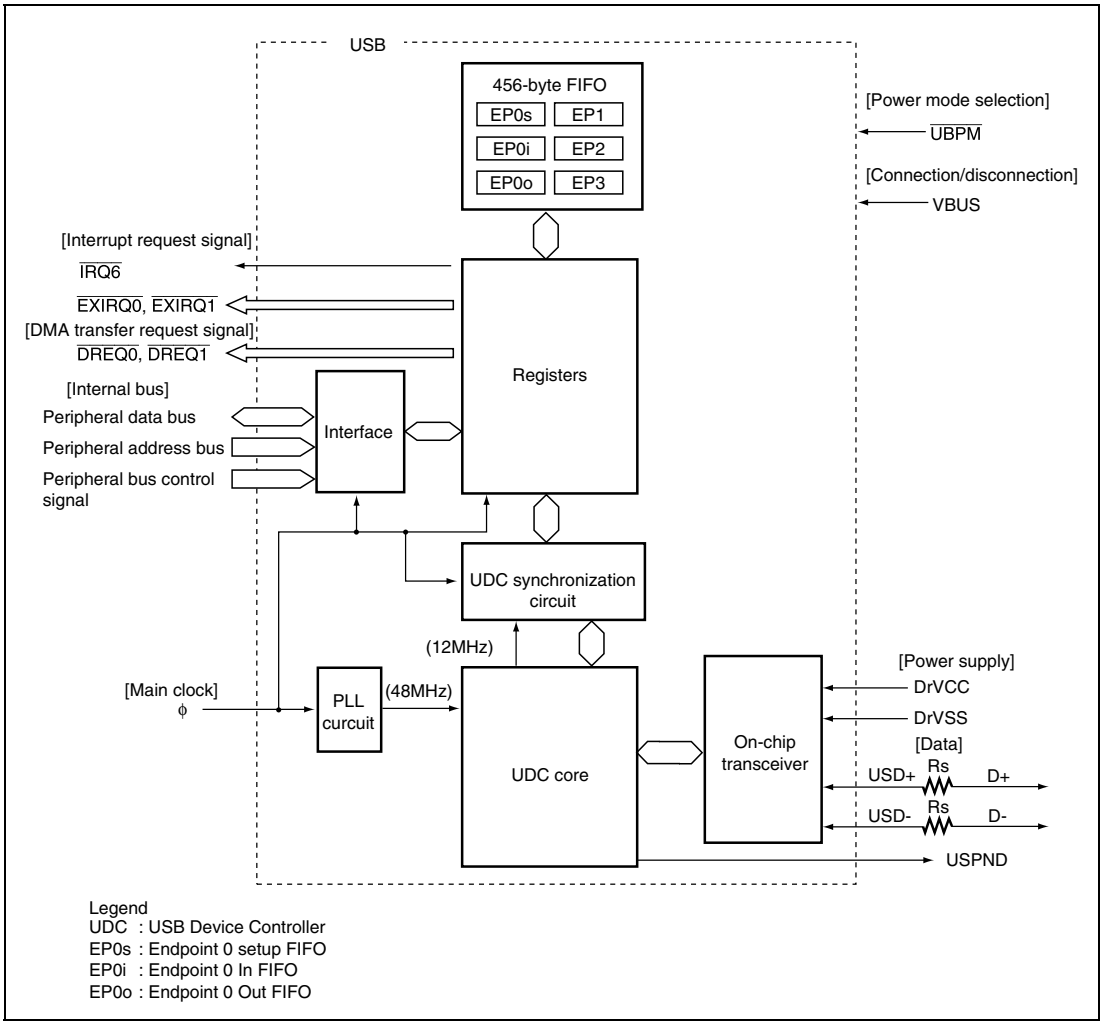


Figure 14.1 Block Diagram of USB

14.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 14.1 shows the USB pin configuration.

Table 14.1 Pin Configuration

Pin Name	I/O	Function
USD+	I/O	I/O pin for USB data
USD-		
DrVCC	Input	USB internal transceiver power supply pin
DrVSS	Input	USB internal transceiver ground pin
VBUS	Input	USB cable connection/disconnection detection signal pin
$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	Input	USB bus-powered/self-powered mode set pin When USB is used in bus-powered mode, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ must be fixed low. When USB is used in self-powered mode, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ must be fixed high.
USPND	Output	USB suspend output pin When USB enters the suspend state, USPND is set to high.

14.3 Register Descriptions

The USB has the following registers.

- USB control register (UCTLR)
- USB DMAC transfer request register (UDMAR)
- USB device resume register (UDRR)
- USB trigger register 0 (UTRG0)
- USB FIFO clear register 0 (UFCLR0)
- USB endpoint stall register 0 (UESTL0)
- USB endpoint stall register 1 (UESTL1)
- USB endpoint data register 0s (UEDR0s) [for Setup data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 0i (UEDR0i) [for Control_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 0o (UEDR0o) [for Control_out data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 3 (UEDR3) [for Interrupt_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 1 (UEDR1) [for Bulk_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 2 (UEDR2) [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 0o (UESZ0o) [for Control _out data reception]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 2 (UESZ2) [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0)
- USB interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1)
- USB interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3)
- USB interrupt enable register 0 (UIER0)
- USB interrupt enable register 1 (UIER1)
- USB interrupt enable register 3 (UIER3)
- USB interrupt select register 0 (UISR0)
- USB interrupt select register 1 (UISR1)
- USB interrupt select register 3 (UISR3)
- USB data status register (UDSR)
- USB Configuration value register (UCVR)
- USB test register 0 (UTSTR0)
- USB test register 1 (UTSTR1)
- USB test registers 2 and A to F (UTSTR2, UTSTRA to UTSTRF)
- Module stop control register B (MSTPCRB)
- Extended module stop register (EXMDLSTAP)

14.3.1 USB Control Register (UCTLR)

UCTLR is used to select the USB operation clock and control the USB module internal reset. UCTLR can be read from or written to even when the USB module stop 2 bit (MSTPB0) in MSTPCRB is 1. For details on UCTLR setting procedure, refer to section 14.5, Communication Operations.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
6	TMOWE	0	R/W	TMOW Pin Enable 0: The USPND/TMOW pin outputs USPND of USB. 1: The USPND/TMOW pin outputs TMOW of RTC.
5	UCKS3	All 0	R/W	USB Operation Clock Select 3 to 0 These bits control the on-chip PLL, which generates the USB operation clock (48 MHz). When UCKS3 to UCKS0 are 0000, the PLL circuit stops and thus the USB operation clock must be selected according to the clock source. The on-chip PLL circuit starts operating after the USB module stop 2 bit has been cancelled. In addition, the USB operation clock is supplied to the UDC core after the USB operating clock stabilization time has been passed. The completion timing of the USB operating clock stabilization time can be detected by the CK48READY flag in UIFR3. UCKS0 to UCKS3 muse be written while the USB module stop 2 bit (MSTPB0) is 1. 0000: USB operation clock stops (PLL stops) 0001: Reserved 001x: Reserved 010x: Reserved 0110: Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by doubling the 24-MHz main oscillation by the PLL. 0111: Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by tripling the 16-MHz main oscillation by the PLL. 1xxx: Reserved The USB operating clock stabilization time is 2 ms. Legend X: Don't care
4	UCKS2			
3	UCKS1			
2	UCKS0			

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
1	UIFRST	1	R/W	USB Interface Software Reset Controls USB module internal reset. When the UIFRST bit is set to 1, the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48READY bit in UIFR3 are all reset. At initialization, the UIFRST bit must be cleared to 0 after the USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time has passed following the clearing of the USB module stop 2 bit. 0: Sets the USB internal modules to the operating state. (At initialization, this bit must be cleared after the USB operating clock stabilization time has passed.) 1: Sets the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48READY bit in UIFR3 to the reset state. If the UIFRST bit is set to 1 after it is cleared to 0, the UDCRST bit should also be set to 1 simultaneously.
0	UDCRST	1	R/W	UDC Core Software Reset Controls reset of the UDC core in the USB module. When the UDCRST bit is set to 1, the UDC core is reset and the USB bus synchronization operation stops. At initialization, UDCRST must be cleared to 0 after D+ pull-up by the port (P36) control following the clearing of the UIFRST bit. In the suspend state, to maintain the internal state of the UDC core, enter power-down mode after setting the USB module stop 2 bit with the UDCRST bit to be maintained to 0. After VBUS disconnection detection, UDCRST must be set to 1. 0: Sets the UDC core in the USB module to operating state. (At initialization, UDCRST must be cleared to 0 after D+ pull-up by the port control following the clearing of the UIFRST bit.) 1: Sets the UDC core in the USB module to reset state. (In the suspend state, UDCRST must not be set to 1; after VBUS disconnection detection, UDCRST must be set to 1.)

14.3.2 USB DMAC Transfer Request Register (UDMAR)

UDMAR is set when data transfer by means of the on-chip DMAC is performed for data registers UEDR1 and UEDR2 corresponding to EP1 and EP2 respectively used for Bulk transfer. For the DMAC transfer, set $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ and $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ separately. If $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ and $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ usage overlaps, the USB cannot operate correctly. For details on DMAC transfer, refer to section 14.6, DMA Transfer Specifications.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
3	EP2T1	All 0	R/W	EP2 DMAC Transfer Request Select 1, 0
2	EP2T0			00: Does not request EP2 DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP2 DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP2 DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$
1	EP1T1	All 0	R/W	EP1 DMAC Transfer Request Select 1, 0
0	EP1T0			00: Does not request EP1 DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP1 DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP1 DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$

14.3.3 USB Device Resume Register (UDRR)

UDRR indicates the enabled or disabled state of remote wakeup by the host, and executes the remote wakeup of the USB modules in the suspend state.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 2	—	0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
1	RWUPs	0	R	Remote Wakeup Status Indicates the enabled or disabled state of remote wakeup by the host. This bit is a status bit and cannot be written to. If the remote wakeup from the host is disabled by Device_Remote_Wakeup through the Set_Feature/Clear _Feature request, this bit is cleared to 0. If the remote wakeup is enabled, this bit is set to 1. 0: Remote wakeup disabled state 1: Remote wakeup enabled state
0	DVR	0	W	Device Resume Cancels the suspend state (executes the remote wakeup). This bit can be written to 1 and is always read as 0. Before executing the remote wakeup, power-down mode or USB module stop mode must be cancelled to provide a clock for the USB module. 0: Performs no operation 1: Cancels the suspend state (executes the remote wakeup)

14.3.4 USB Trigger Register 0 (UTRG0)

UTRG0 is a one-shot register to generate triggers to the FIFO for each endpoint EP0 to EP3.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7, 6	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	EP2RDFN	0	W	EP2 Read Complete 0: Performs no operation. 1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP2 OUT FIFO. EP2 has a dual-FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated to the currently effective FIFO.
4	EP1PKTE	0	W	EP1 Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation. 1: Generates a trigger to enable the transmission to EP1 IN FIFO. EP1 has a dual-FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated to the currently effective FIFO.
3	EP3PKTE	0	W	EP3 Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation. 1: Generates a trigger to enable the transmission to EP3 IN FIFO.
2	EP0oRDFN	0	W	EP0o Read Complete 0: Performs no operation. 1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP0o OUT FIFO. This trigger enables EP0o to receive the next packet.
1	EP0iPKTE	0	W	EP0i Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation. 1: Generates a trigger to enable the transmission to EP0i IN FIFO.
0	EP0sRDFN	0	W	EP0s Read Complete 0: Performs no operation. A NAK handshake is returned in response to transmit/receive requests in the data stage until 1 is written to this bit. 1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP0s command FIFO. After receiving the setup command, this trigger enables the next packet in the data stage to be received by EP0i and EP0o. EP0s can always be overwritten and receive data regardless of this trigger.

14.3.5 USB FIFO Clear Register 0 (UFCLR0)

UFCLR0 is a one-shot register used to clear the FIFO for each endpoint EP0 to EP3. Writing 1 to a bit clears the data in the corresponding FIFO.

For IN FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR0 clears the data for which the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG0 is not set to 1 after data write, or data that is validated by setting the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG0.

For OUT FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR0 clears data that has not been fixed during reception or received data for which the corresponding RDFN bit is not set to 1. Accordingly, care must be taken not to clear data that is currently being received or transmitted. EP1 and EP2, having a dual-FIFO configuration, are cleared by entire FIFOs. Note that this trigger does not clear the corresponding interrupt flag.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7, 6	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	EP2CLR	0	W	EP2 Clear 0: Performs no operation. 1: Clears EP2 OUT FIFO.
4	EP1CLR	0	W	EP1 Clear 0: Performs no operation. 1: Clears EP1 IN FIFO.
3	EP3CLR	0	W	EP3 Clear 0: Performs no operation. 1: Clears EP3 IN FIFO.
2	EP0oCLR	0	W	EP0o Clear 0: Performs no operation. 1: Clears EP0o OUT FIFO.
1	EP0iCLR	0	W	EP0i Clear 0: Performs no operation. 1: Clears EP0i IN FIFO.
0	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.

14.3.6 USB Endpoint Stall Register 0 (UESTL0)

UESTL0 is used to forcibly stall each endpoint EP0 to EP3. When the bit is set to 1, the corresponding endpoint returns a stall handshake to the host, following from the next transfer.

The stall bit for endpoint 0 is cleared automatically on reception of 8-byte command data for which decoding is performed by the function, and thus the EP0STL bit is cleared to 0. When the SetupTS flag in UIFR0 is set to 1, a write of 1 to the EP0STL bit is ignored. For details, refer to section 14.5.9, Stall Operations.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7, 6	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	EP2STL	0	R/W	EP2 Stall 0: Cancels the EP2 stall state. 1: Sets the EP2 stall state.
4	EP1STL	0	R/W	EP1 Stall 0: Cancels the EP1 stall state. 1: Sets the EP1 stall state.
3	EP3STL	0	R/W	EP3 Stall 0: Cancels the EP3 stall state. 1: Sets the EP3 stall state.
2, 1	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
0	EP0STL	0	R/W	EP0 Stall 0: Cancels the EP0 stall state. 1: Sets the EP0 stall state.

14.3.7 USB Endpoint Stall Register 1 (UESTL1)

UESTL1 is used to control stall cancellation mode for all endpoints.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	SCME	0	R/W	Stall Cancellation Mode Enable Controls stall cancellation mode. When this bit is set to 1, the EPnSTL bit, which has been set once, is automatically cleared to 0 after returning a handshake to the host. This bit is common to all endpoints. The stall cancellation mode cannot be specified for each endpoint. When this bit is cleared to 0, the EPnSTL bit, which has been set once, cannot be cleared automatically. To cancel the stall state of the EPn, clear the EPnSTL bit to 0. 0: Disables stall cancellation mode for all endpoints (EP0 to EP3). 1: Enables stall cancellation mode for all endpoints (EP0 to EP3).
6 to 0	—	0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.

14.3.8 USB Endpoint Data Register 0s (UEDR0s)

UEDR0s stores the setup command for endpoint 0 (for Control_out transfer). UEDR0s stores 8-byte command data sent from the host in setup stage.

For details on the USB operation when data for the next setup stage is received while data in UEDR0s is being read, refer to section 14.8, Usage Notes.

UEDR0s is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0s allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	R	These bits store the setup command for Control_out transfer

14.3.9 USB Endpoint Data Register 0i (UEDR0i)

UEDR0i is a data register for endpoint 0 (for Control_in transfer). UEDR0i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR0i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	W	These bits store data for Control_in transfer

14.3.10 USB Endpoint Data Register 0o (UEDR0o)

UEDR0o is a data register for endpoint 0 (for Control_out transfer). UEDR0o stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be the number of bytes specified by UESZ0o.

UEDR0o is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0o allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	R	These bits store data for Control_out transfer

14.3.11 USB Endpoint Data Register 3 (UEDR3)

UEDR3 is a data register for endpoint 3 (for Interrupt_in transfer). UEDR3 stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR3 is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR3 allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	W	These bits store data for Interrupt_in transfer

14.3.12 USB Endpoint Data Register 1 (UEDR1)

UEDR1 is a data register for endpoint 1 (for Bulk_in transfer). UEDR1 stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR1 is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR1 allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	R	These bits store data for Bulk_in transfer

14.3.13 USB Endpoint Data Register 2 (UEDR2)

UEDR2 is a data register for endpoint 2 (for Bulk_out transfer). UEDR2 stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be the number of bytes specified by UESZ2.

UEDR2 is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR2 allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data continuously by word transfer or longword transfer.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 0	D7 to D0	—	W	These bits store data for Bulk_out transfer

14.3.14 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 0o (UESZ0o)

UESZ0o is a receive data size register for endpoint 0 (for Control_out transfer). UESZ0o indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	—	R	Reserved
6 to 0	D6 to D0	—	R	These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Control_out transfer

14.3.15 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 2 (UESZ2)

UESZ2 is a receive data size register for endpoint 2 (for Bulk_out transfer). UESZ2 indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

The FIFO for endpoint 2 (for Bulk_out transfer) has a dual-FIFO configuration. The data size indicated by this register refers to the currently selected FIFO.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	—	—	R	Reserved
6 to 0	D6 to D0	—	R	These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Bulk_out transfer

14.3.16 USB Interrupt Flag Register 0 (UIFR0)

UIFR0 is an interrupt flag register indicating the setup command reception, EP0 and EP3 transmission/reception, and bus reset state. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested to the CPU. A bit in this register can be cleared by writing 0 to it. Writing 1 to a bit is invalid and causes no operation.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	BRST	0	R/(W)*	Bus Reset Set to 1 when the bus reset signal is detected on the USB bus. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. Note that BRST is also set to 1 if D+ is not pulled-up during USB cable connection.
6	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	EP3TR	0	R/(W)*	EP3 Transfer Request Set to 1 if there is no valid data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP3. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
4	EP3TS	0	R/(W)*	EP3 Transmit Complete Set to 1 if the data written in EP3 is transmitted to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
3	EP0oTS	0	R/(W)*	EP0o Receive Complete Set to 1 if EP0o receives data from the host normally and returns the ACK handshake to the host. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
2	EP0iTR	0	R/(W)*	EP0i Transfer Request Set to 1 if there is no valid data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP0i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
1	EP0iTS	0	R/(W)*	EP0i Transmit Complete Set to 1 if the data written in EP0i is transmitted to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
0	SetupTS	0	R/(W)*	Setup Command Receive Complete Set to 1 if EP0s normally receives 8-byte command data to be decoded by the function from the host and returns the ACK handshake to the host. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Note:* The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

14.3.17 USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1)

UIFR1 is an interrupt flag register indicating the EP1 and EP2 status. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested to the CPU. EP1TR flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. However, EP1EMPTY, EP2READY, and EP1ALLEMPTY are status bits to indicate the EP1, EP2, and FIFO state respectively, and cannot be cleared.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
3	EP1ALL EMPTY	1	R	EP1 FIFO All Empty EP1 FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This bit is set to 1 if there is no valid data in both FIFOs. This corresponds to the negative-electrode signal for the EP1DE bit in UDSR.
2	EP2READY	0	R	EP2 Data Ready EP2 FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This bit is set to 1 if there is valid data at least in either of FIFOs. This bit is cleared to 0 if there is no valid data in both FIFOs. This bit is a status bit and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
1	EP1TR	0	R/(W)*	EP1 Transfer Request Set to 1 if there is no valid data in both FIFOs when an IN token is sent from the host to EP1. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
0	EP1EMPTY	1	R	EP1 FIFO Empty EP1 FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This bit is set to 1 if there is no valid data at least in either of FIFOs. This bit is cleared to 0 if there is valid data in both FIFOs. This bit is a status bit and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Note:* The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

14.3.18 USB Interrupt Flag Register 3 (UIFR3)

UIFR3 is an interrupt flag register indicating the USB status. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$, $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$, or $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ interrupt is requested to the CPU. VBUSi, SPRSi, SETC, SOF, and CK48READY flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. VBUSs and SPRSs are status bits and cannot be modified.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	CK48READY	0	R/(W)*	USB Operating Clock (48 MHz) Stabilization Detection Set to 1when the USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time has been automatically counted after USB module stop mode cancellation. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. CK48READY can also operate in the USB interface software reset state (the UIFRST bit in UCTLR is set to 1). Note that USB operating clock stabilization time differs according to the clock source. Refer to the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits in section 14.3.1, USB Control Register (UCTLR).
6	SOF	0	R/(W)*	Start of Frame Packet Detection Set to 1 if the Start of Frame (SOF) packet is detected. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
5	SETC	0	R/(W)*	Set_Configuration Command Detection Set to 1 if the Set_Configuration command is detected. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.
4	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
3	SPRSs	0	R	Suspend/Resume Status SPRSs indicates the suspend/resume status. However, an interrupt cannot be requested by SPRSs. 0: Indicates that the bus is in the normal state. 1: Indicates that the bus is in the suspend state.
2	SPRSi	0	R/(W)*	Suspend/Resume Interrupt Set to 1 if a transition from normal state to suspend state or suspend state to normal state has occurred. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$. This bit can be used to cancel power-down mode at resuming.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
1	VBUSs	0	R	VBUS Status VBUSs is a status bit to indicate the VBUS state by the USB cable connection or disconnection. However, an interrupt cannot be requested by VBUSs. 0: Indicates that the VBUS (USB cable) bus is disconnected. 1: Indicates that the VBUS (USB cable) bus is connected.
0	VBUSi	0	R/(W)*	VBUS Interrupt Set to 1 if a VBUS state changes by the USB cable connection or disconnection. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Note:* The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

14.3.19 USB Interrupt Enable Register 0 (UIER0)

UIER0 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER0 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 0 (UISR0).

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	BRSTE	0	R/W	Enables the BRST interrupt.
6	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
5	EP3TRE	0	R/W	Enables the EP3TR interrupt.
4	EP3TSE	0	R/W	Enables the EP3TS interrupt.
3	EP0oTSE	0	R/W	Enables the EP0oTS interrupt.
2	EP0iTRE	0	R/W	Enables the EP0iTR interrupt.
1	EP0iTSE	0	R/W	Enables the EP0iTS interrupt.
0	SetupTSE	0	R/W	Enables the SetupTS interrupt.

14.3.20 USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1)

UIER1 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER1 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 1 (UISR1).

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
3	EP1ALL EMPTYE	0	R/W	Enables the EP1ALLEMPRY interrupt.
2	EP2READYE	0	R/W	Enables the EP2READY interrupt.
1	EP1TRE	0	R/W	Enables the EP1TR interrupt.
0	EP1EMPTYE	0	R/W	Enables the EP1EMPTYE interrupt.

14.3.21 USB Interrupt Enable Register 3 (UIER3)

UIER3 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3). This register is readable/writable while the USB module stop 2 bit (MSTPB0) in MSTPCRB is 1.

When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER3 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 3 (UISR3). Note, however, that the SPRSiE bit is an interrupt enable bit specific to the $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ pin and cannot be selected by UISR3.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	CK48READYE	1	R/W	Enables the CK48READY interrupt.
6	SOFE	0	R/W	Enables the SOF interrupt.
5	SETCE	0	R/W	Enables the SETC interrupt.
4, 3	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
2	SPRSiE	0	R/W	Enables the SPRSi interrupt. (only for $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$)
1	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
0	VBUSiE	0	R/W	Enables the VBUSi interrupt.

14.3.22 USB Interrupt Select Register 0 (UISR0)

UISR0 sets $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0). When a bit in UIER0 corresponding to the UISR0 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER0 corresponding to the UISR0 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	BRSTS	0	R/W	Selects the BRST interrupt.
6	—	0	R	Reserved This bit is always read as 0.
5	EP3TRS	0	R/W	Selects the EP3TR interrupt.
4	EP3TSS	0	R/W	Selects the EP3TS interrupt
3	EP0oTSS	0	R/W	Selects the EP0oTS interrupt.
2	EP0iTRS	0	R/W	Selects the EP0iTR interrupt.
1	EP0iTSS	0	R/W	Selects the EP0iTS interrupt.
0	SetupTSS	0	R/W	Selects the SetupTS interrupt.

14.3.23 USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1)

UISR1 sets $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
3	EP1ALL EMPTYS	0	R/W	Selects the EP1ALLEMPTY interrupt.
2	EP2READYS	0	R/W	Selects the EP2READY interrupt.
1	EP1TRS	0	R/W	Selects the EP1TR interrupt.
0	EP1EMPTYS	0	R/W	Selects the EP1EMPTY interrupt.

14.3.24 USB Interrupt Select Register 3 (UISR3)

UISR3 sets $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3). When a bit in UIER3 corresponding to the UISR3 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER3 corresponding to the UISR3 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output from $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	CK48READYS	0	R/W	Selects the CK48READY interrupt.
6	SOFS	0	R/W	Selects the SOF interrupt.
5	SETCS	0	R/W	Selects the SETC interrupt.
4 to 1	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
0	VBUSiS	0	R/W	Selects the VBUSi interrupt.

14.3.25 USB Data Status Register (UDSR)

UDSR indicates whether the IN FIFO data registers (EP1, and EP3) contain valid data or not. A bit in USDR is set when data written to the corresponding IN FIFO becomes valid after the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG is set to 1. A bit in USDR is cleared when all valid data is sent to the host. For EP1, having a dual-FIFO configuration, the corresponding bit in USDR is cleared to 0 and FIFO becomes empty.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 3	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
2	EP1DE	0	R	EP1 Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP1 contains no valid data. 1: Indicates that the EP1 contains valid data. This bit can output the interrupt as the EP1ALLEMPTY flag in UIFR1 (corresponds to the negative-electrode signal for EP1DE).
1	EP3DE	0	R	EP3 Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP3 contains no valid data. 1: Indicates that the EP3 contains valid data.
0	EP0iDE	0	R	EP0i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP0i contains no valid data. 1: Indicates that the EP0i contains valid data.

14.3.26 USB Configuration Value Register (UCVR)

UCVR stores the Configuration value when the Set_Configuration command is received from the host.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7, 6	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
5	CNFV0	0	R	Configuration Value 0 Stores the Configuration value when the Set_Configuration command is received. CNFV0 is modified when the SETC bit in UIFR3 is set to 1.
4 to 0	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.

14.3.27 USB Test Register 0 (UTSTR0)

UTSTR0 controls the on-chip transceiver output signals. Setting the PTSTE bit to 1 specifies the transceiver output signals (USD+ and USD-) arbitrarily. Table 14.2 shows the relationship between UTSTR0 setting and pin output.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PTSTE	0	R/W	Pin Test Enable Enables the test control for the on-chip transceiver output pins (USD+ and USD-) and USPND pin.
6 to 4	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
3	SUSPEND	0	R/W	On-Chip Transceiver Output Signal Setting SUSPEND: Sets the USPND pin signal of the on-chip transceiver. $\overline{OE}$: Sets the output enable ($\overline{OE}$) signal of the on-chip transceiver. FSE0: Sets the Signal-ended 0 (FSE0) signal of the on-chip transceiver. VPO: Sets the USD+ (VPO) signal of the on-chip transceiver.
2	$\overline{OE}$	1	R/W	
1	FSE0	0	R/W	
0	VPO	0	R/W	

Table 14.2 Relationship between UTSTR0 Setting and Pin Output

Register Setting			Pin Output	Pin Input	Register Setting				Pin Output	
UCTLR/ USPNDE	PTSTE	SUSPEND	USPND/ TMOW	VBUS	PTSTE	$\overline{OE}$	FSE0	VPO	USD+	USD-
0	x	x	—	0	x	x	x	x	Hi-Z	Hi-Z
1	0	x	—	1	0	x	x	x	—	—
1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0
				1	1	0	1	x	0	0
				1	1	1	x	x	Hi-Z	Hi-Z

Legend

X: Don't care.

—: Cannot be controlled. Indicates state in normal operation according to the USB operation and port settings.

14.3.28 USB Test Register 1 (UTSTR1)

UTSTR1 allows the USB control pin and on-chip transceiver input signals to be monitored. Table 14.3 shows the relationship between pin input and UTSTR1 monitoring value.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	VBUS	—*	R	On-Chip Transceiver Input Signal Monitor
6	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	—*	R	VBUS: Monitors the VBUS pin. $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$: Monitors the $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ pin.
5 to 3	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.
2	RCV	—*	R	On-Chip Transceiver Input Signal Monitor
1	VP	—*	R	RCV: Monitors the differential input level (RCV) signal of the on-chip transceiver.
0	VM	—*	R	VP: Monitors the USD+ (VP) signal of the on-chip transceiver. VM: Monitors the USD- (VM) signal of the on-chip transceiver.

Note: * Determined by the state of pins. VBUS, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$, USD+, USD-

Table 14.3 Relationship between Pin Input and UTSTR1 Monitoring Value

Pin Input		UTSTR1 Monitoring Value		Register Setting		Pin Input			UTSTR1 Monitoring Value		
VBUS	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	VBUS	$\overline{\text{UBPM}}$	UTSTR0/ PTSTE	UTSTR0/ SUSPEND	VBUS	USD+	USD-	RCV	VP	VM
0/1	x	0/1	x	x	x	0	x	x	0	0	0
x	0/1	x	0/1	0	x	1	0	0	x	0	0
				0	x	1	0	1	0	0	1
				0	x	1	1	0	1	1	0
				0	x	1	1	1	x	1	1
				1	0	1	0	0	x	0	0
				1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1
				1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
				1	0	1	1	1	x	1	1
				1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
				1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1
				1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0
				1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1

Legend

X: Don't care.

0/1: Combination for pin input = UTSTR1 monitoring value.

14.3.29 USB Test Registers 2 and A to F (UTSTR2, UTSTRA to UTSTRF)

UTSTR2 and UTSRTA to UTSRTF are test registers and cannot be written to.

14.3.30 Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 1	MSTPB7	All 1	R/W	Module Stop
	MSTPB6			For details, refer to section 20.1.3, Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC).
	MSTPB5			
	MSTPB4			
	MSTPB3			
	MSTPB2			
	MSTPB1			
0	MSTPB0	1	R/W	USB Module Stop 2 0: Cancels the stop state of the USB module completely. A clock is provided for the USB module completely. Before clearing this bit, make sure to clear the USBSTOP1 bit in EXMDLSTP. After this bit has been cleared, the internal PLL circuit starts operation. Registers in the USB module must be accessed after the USB operating clock stabilization time (the CK48READY bit in UIFR3 is set to 1) has passed. 1: Places the USB module partly in the stop state. The internal PLL circuit and the most of the clocks in the USB module stop operation. However, register values in the USB module are maintained.

14.3.31 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTP)

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved These bits are always read as an undefined value and cannot be modified.
1	RTCSTOP	0	R/W	RTC Module Stop 0: Cancels the RTC module stop. 1: Sets the RTC module stop.
0	USBSTOP1	0	R/W	USB Module Stop 1 0: Cancels the stop state of the USB module partly. A clock is provided for the USB module partly. After this bit has been cleared, only the UCTLR and UIER3 registers in the USB module can be accessed. To access the other registers, clear the MSTPB0 bit in MSTPCRB to 0. 1: Places the USB module completely in the stop state. The clocks in the USB module stop operation completely. However, register values in the USB module are maintained.

Note: For details on USB module stop mode cancellation procedure, refer to section 14.5, Communication Operation.

14.4 Interrupt Sources

This module has three interrupt signals. Table 14.4 shows the interrupt sources and their corresponding interrupt request signals. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ interrupt signals are activated at low level. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ interrupt requests can only be detected at low level (specified as level sensitive). The suspend/resume interrupt request $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified to be detected at the falling edge (falling-edge sensitive) by the interrupt controller register.

Table 14.4 Interrupt Sources

Register	Bit	Transfer Mode	Interrupt Source	Description	Interrupt Request Signal	DMAC Activation
UIFR0	0	Control transfer (EP0)	SetupTS*[1]	Setup command receive complete	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	1		EP0iTS*[1]	EP0i transfer complete	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	2		EP0iTR*[1]	EP0i transfer request	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	3		EP0oTS*[1]	EP0o receive complete	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	4	Interrupt_in transfer (EP3)	EP3TS	EP3 transfer complete	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	5		EP3TR	EP3 transfer request	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	6	—	Reserved	—	—	—
	7	Status	BRST	Bus reset	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
UIFR1	0	Bulk_in transfer (EP1)	EP1EMPTY	EP1 FIFO empty	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	$\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$*[2]
	1		EP1TR	EP1 transfer request	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	2	Bulk_out transfer (EP2)	EP2READY	EP2 data ready	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	$\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$*[3]
	3	Bulk_in transfer (EP1)	EP1ALLEMPTY	EP1 FIFO all empty	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	4	—	Reserved	—	—	—
	5					
	6					
	7					

Register	Bit	Transfer Mode	Interrupt Source	Description	Interrupt Request Signal	DMAC Activation
UIFR3	0	— (Status)	VBUSi	VBUS interrupt	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	1		VBUSs	VBUS status	X	X
	2		SPRSi	Suspend/resume interrupt	$\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ *4	X
	3		SPRSs	Suspend/resume status	X	X
	4		Reserved	—	—	—
	5		SETC	Set_Configuration detection	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	6		SOF	Start of Frame packet detection	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X
	7		CK48READY	USB operating clock stabilization detection	$\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$	X

Notes: 1. EP0 interrupts must be assigned to the same interrupt request signal.
2. An EP1 DMA transfer request is specified by the EP1T1 and EP1T0 bits in UDMAR.
3. An EP2 DMA transfer request is specified by the EP2T1 and EP2T0 bits in UDMAR.
4. The suspend/resume interrupt request $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified to be detected at the falling edge (IRQ6SCB and IRQ6SCA in ISCRH = 01) by the interrupt controller register.

- $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ signal

  The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ signal requests interrupt sources for which the corresponding bits in interrupt select registers 0 to 3 (UISR0 to UISR3) are cleared to 0. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ is driven low if a corresponding bit in the interrupt flag register is set to 1.
- $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ signal

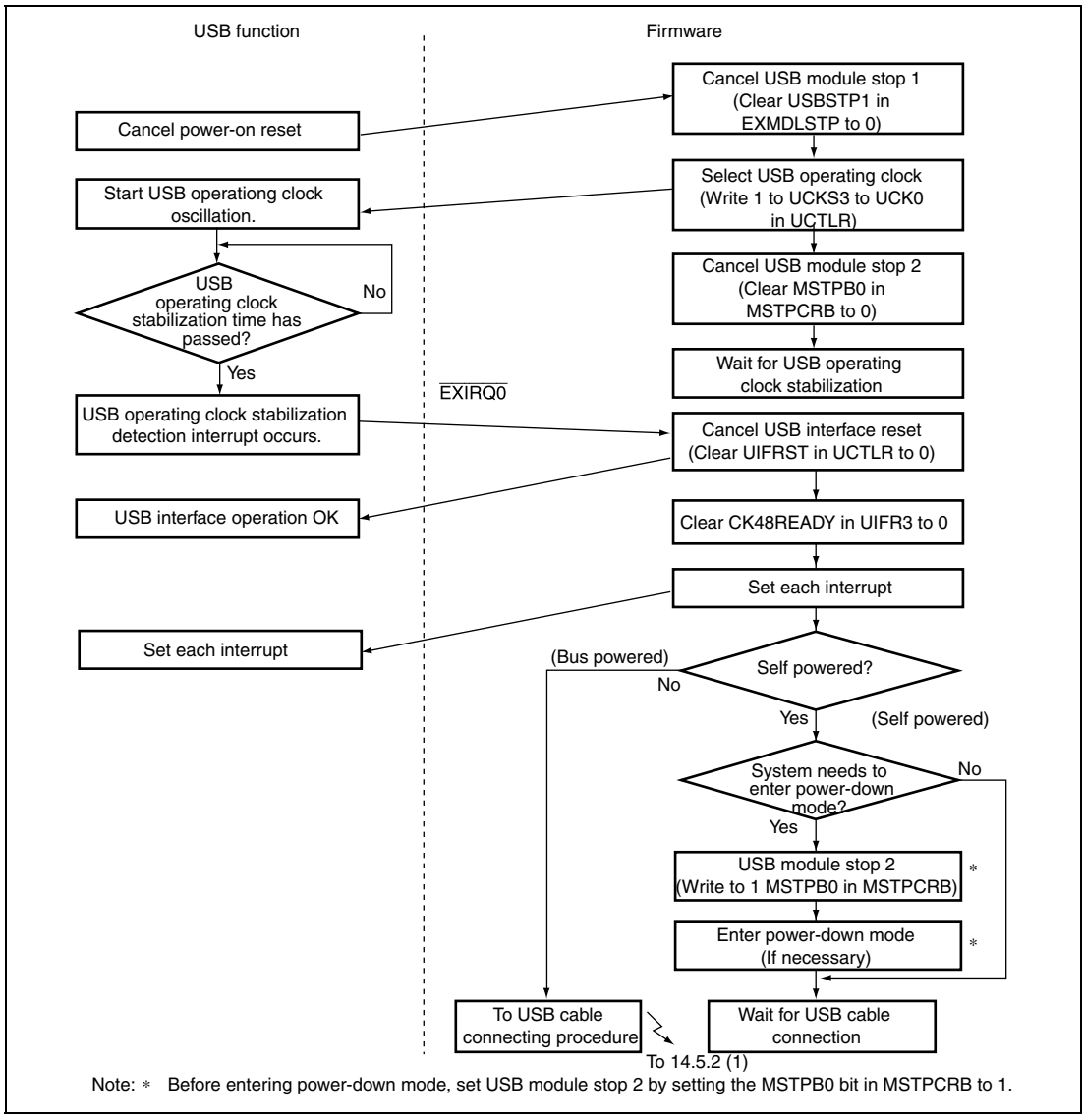
  The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ signal requests interrupt sources for which the corresponding bits in interrupt select registers 0 to 3 (UISR0 to UISR3) are cleared to 0. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ is driven low if a corresponding bit in the interrupt flag register is set to 1.
- $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal

  The $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal is specific to the suspend/resume interrupt request. The falling edge of the $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal is output at the transition from the suspend state or from the resume state.

14.5 Communication Operation

14.5.1 Initialization

The USB must be initialized as described in the flowchart in figure 14.2.



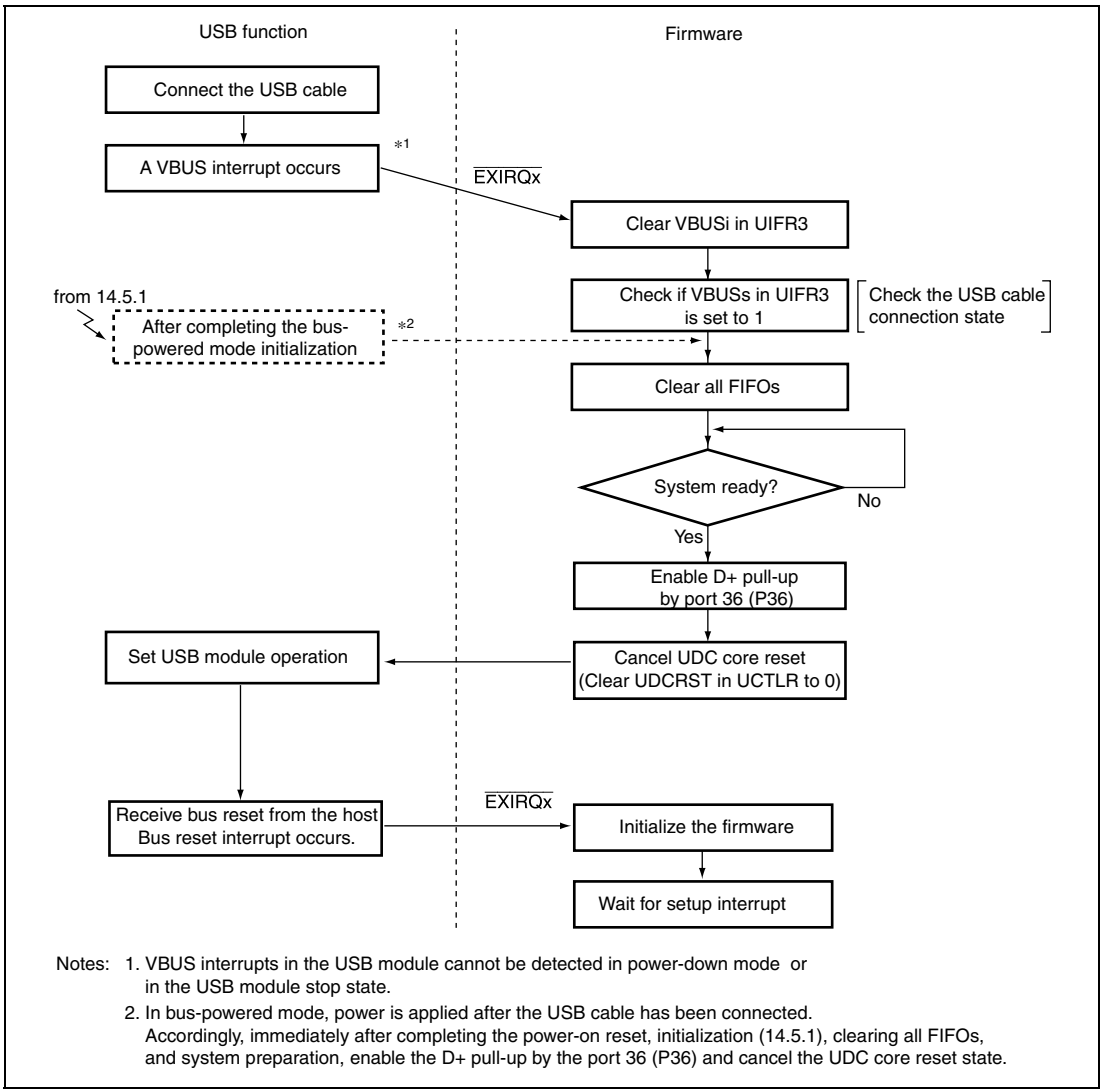
Note: * Before entering power-down mode, set USB module stop 2 by setting the MSTPB0 bit in MSTPCRB to 1.

Figure 14.2 USB Initialization

14.5.2 USB Cable Connection/Disconnection

1. USB Cable Connection (when USB module stop or power-down mode is not used)

If the USB cable enters the connection state from the disconnection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or power-down mode is not used, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.3. In bus-powered mode, perform the operation according to note 2 in figure 14.3.



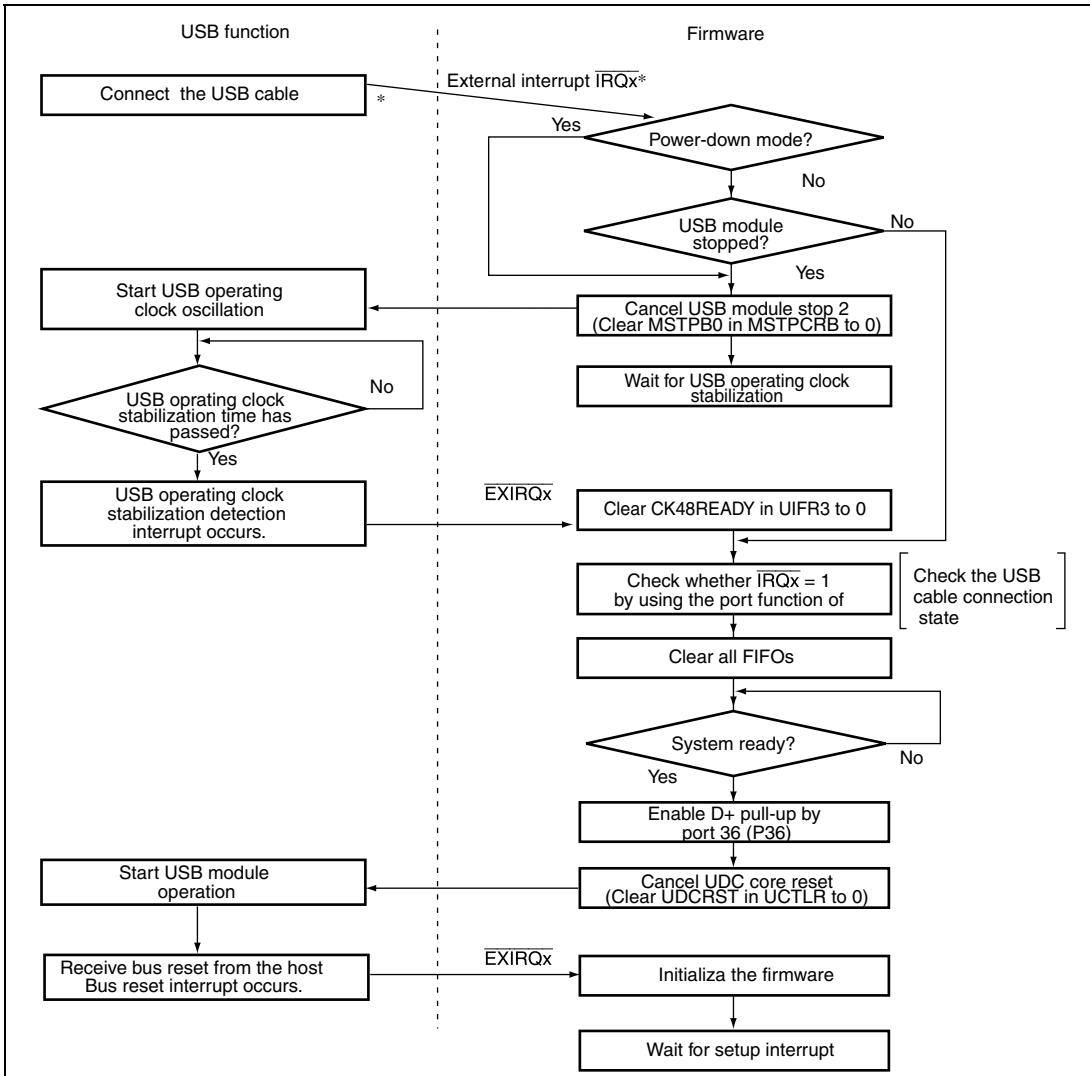
Notes: 1. VBUS interrupts in the USB module cannot be detected in power-down mode or in the USB module stop state.

2. In bus-powered mode, power is applied after the USB cable has been connected. Accordingly, immediately after completing the power-on reset, initialization (14.5.1), clearing all FIFOs, and system preparation, enable the D+ pull-up by the port 36 (P36) and cancel the UDC core reset state.

Figure 14.3 USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is not Used)

2. USB Cable Connection (When USB module stop or power-down mode is used)

If the USB cable enters the connection state from the disconnection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or power-down mode is used, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.4.



Note: * VBUS interrupts in the USB module cannot be detected in power-down mode or in the USB module stop state. Accordingly, in an application (self powered) where power-down mode or USB module stop is used,VBUS interrupts of the USB must be detected via the external interrupt pin IRQx.
In this case, the IRQx pin must be specified as both-edge sensitive. When IRQx is used, VBUS interrupts in the USB module need not to be used.

Figure 14.4 USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is Used)

3. USB Cable Disconnection (When USB module stop or power-down mode is not used)

If the USB cable enters the disconnection state from the connection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or power-down mode is not used, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.5. In bus-powered mode, the power is automatically turned off when the USB cable is disconnected and the following processing is not required.

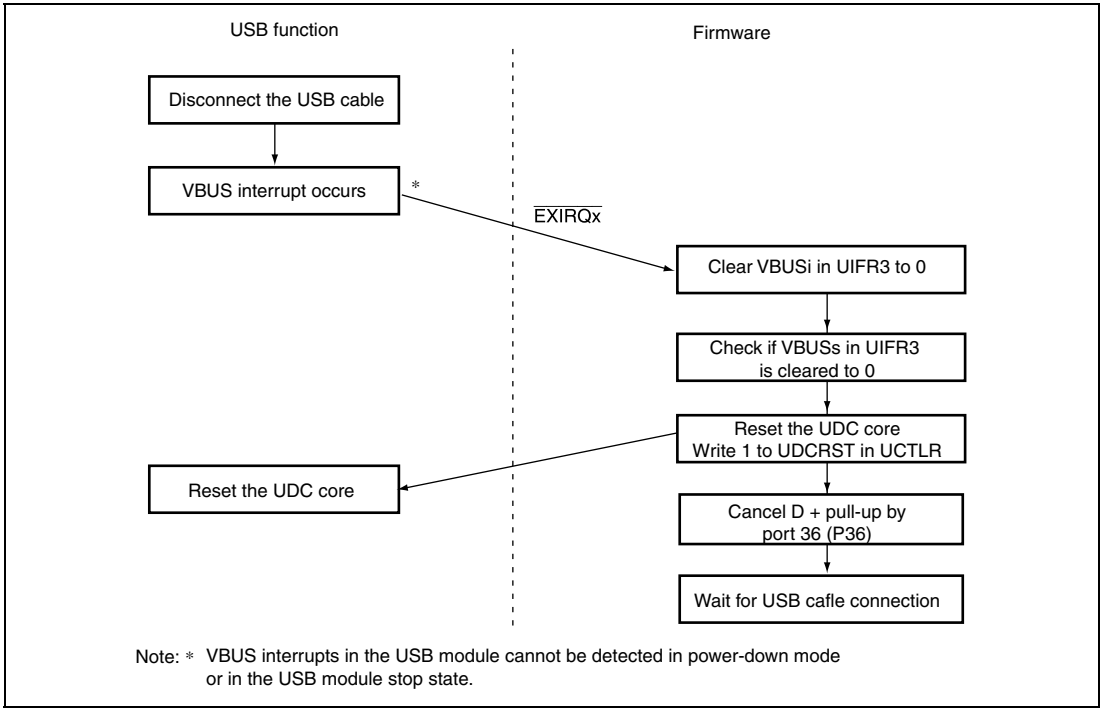
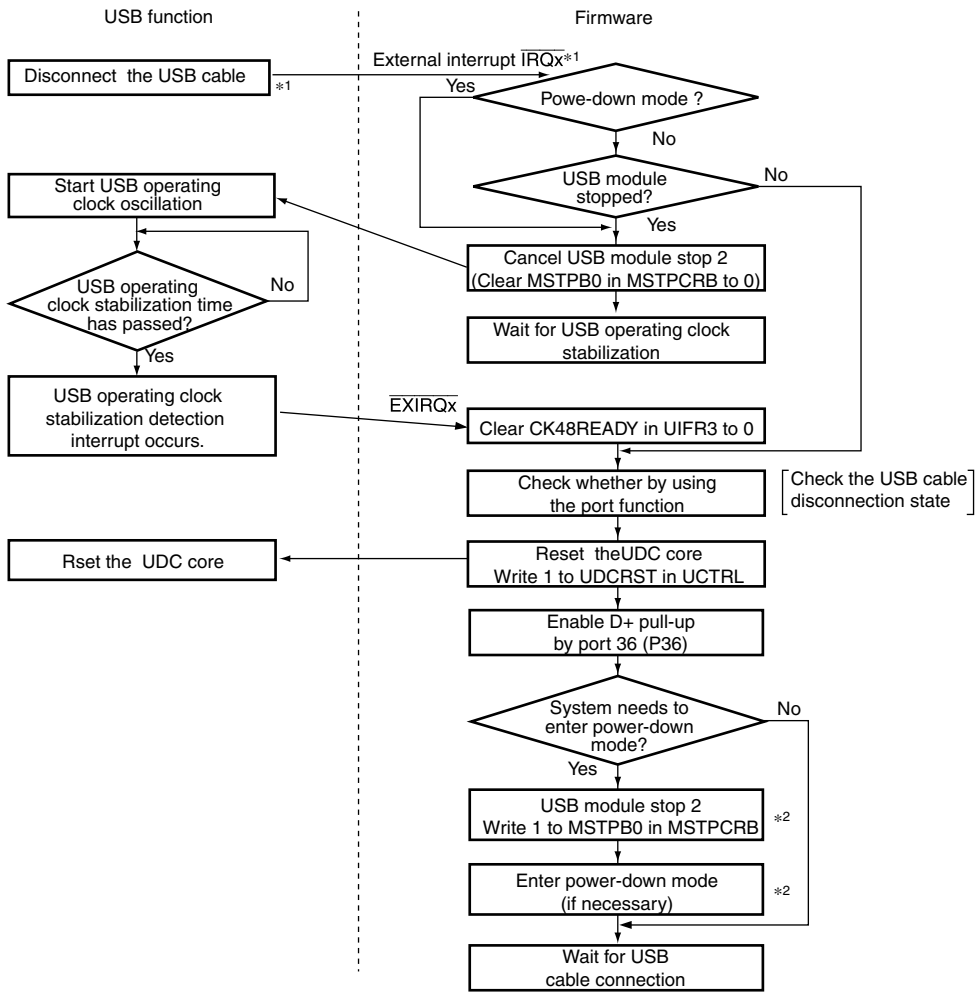


Figure 14.5 USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is not Used)

4. USB Cable Disconnection (When USB module stop or power-down mode is used)

If the USB cable enters the disconnection state from the connection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or power-down mode is used, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.6.



Notes: 1. VBUS interrupts in the USB module cannot be detected in power-down mode or in the USB module stop state. Accordingly, in an application (self powered) where power-down mode or USB module stop is used , VBUS interrupts of the USB must bedetected via the external interrupt pin $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$. In this case, the $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ pin must be specified as both edge sensitive. When $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ is used, VBUS interrupts in the USB module need not to be used.

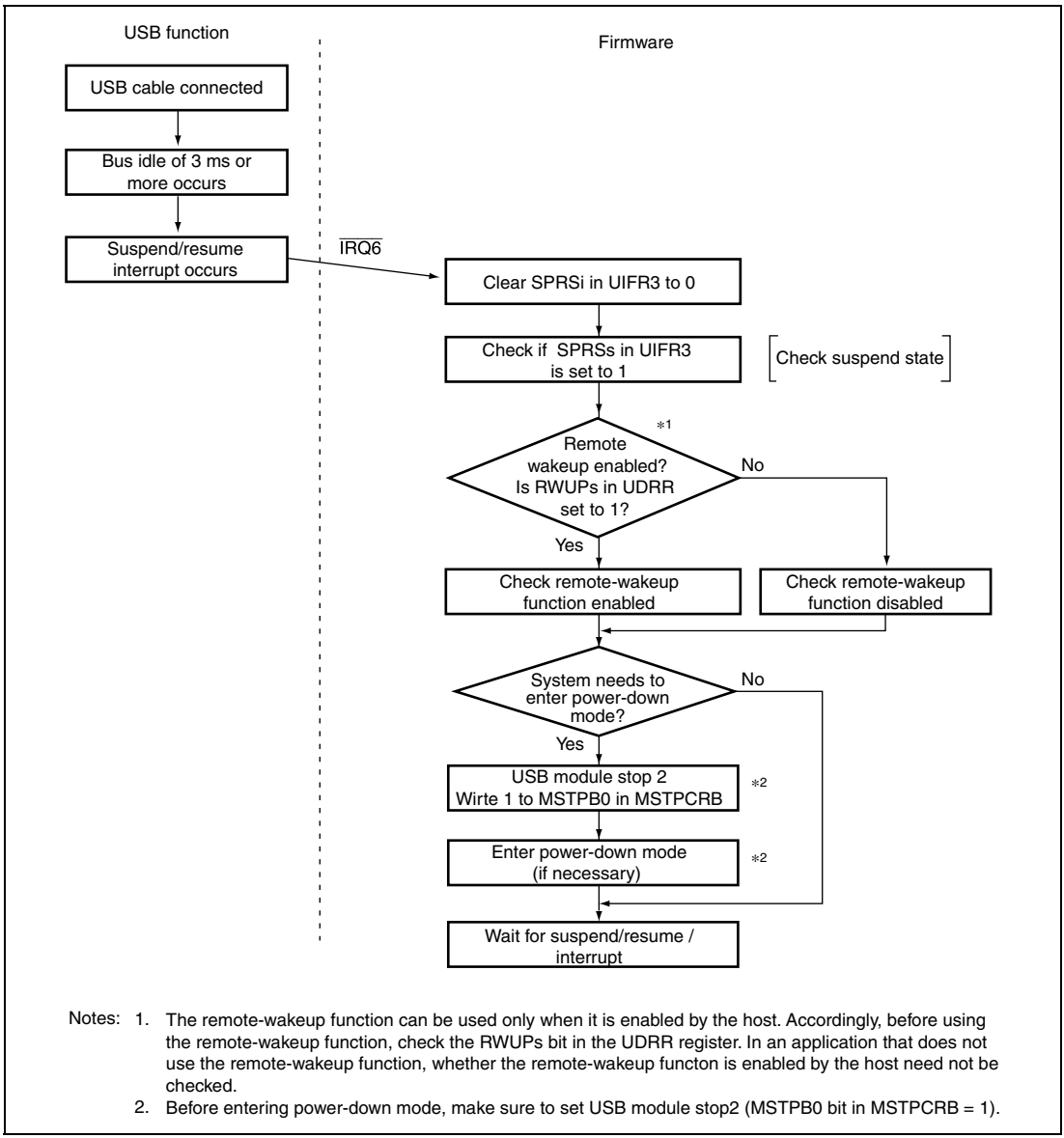
2. Before entering power-down mode, make sure to set USB module stop2 (the MSTPB0 bit of MSTPCRB = 1).

Figure 14.6 USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Power-Down Mode is Used)

14.5.3 Suspend and Resume Operations

1. Suspend Operation

If the USB bus enters the suspend state from the non-suspend state, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.7.



Notes: 1. The remote-wakeup function can be used only when it is enabled by the host. Accordingly, before using the remote-wakeup function, check the RWUPs bit in the UDRR register. In an application that does not use the remote-wakeup function, whether the remote-wakeup functon is enabled by the host need not be checked.

2. Before entering power-down mode, make sure to set USB module stop2 (MSTPB0 bit in MSTPCRB = 1).

Figure 14.7 Suspend Operation

2. Resume Operation from Up-Stream

If the USB bus enters the non-suspend state from the suspend state by resume signal output from up-stream, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.8.

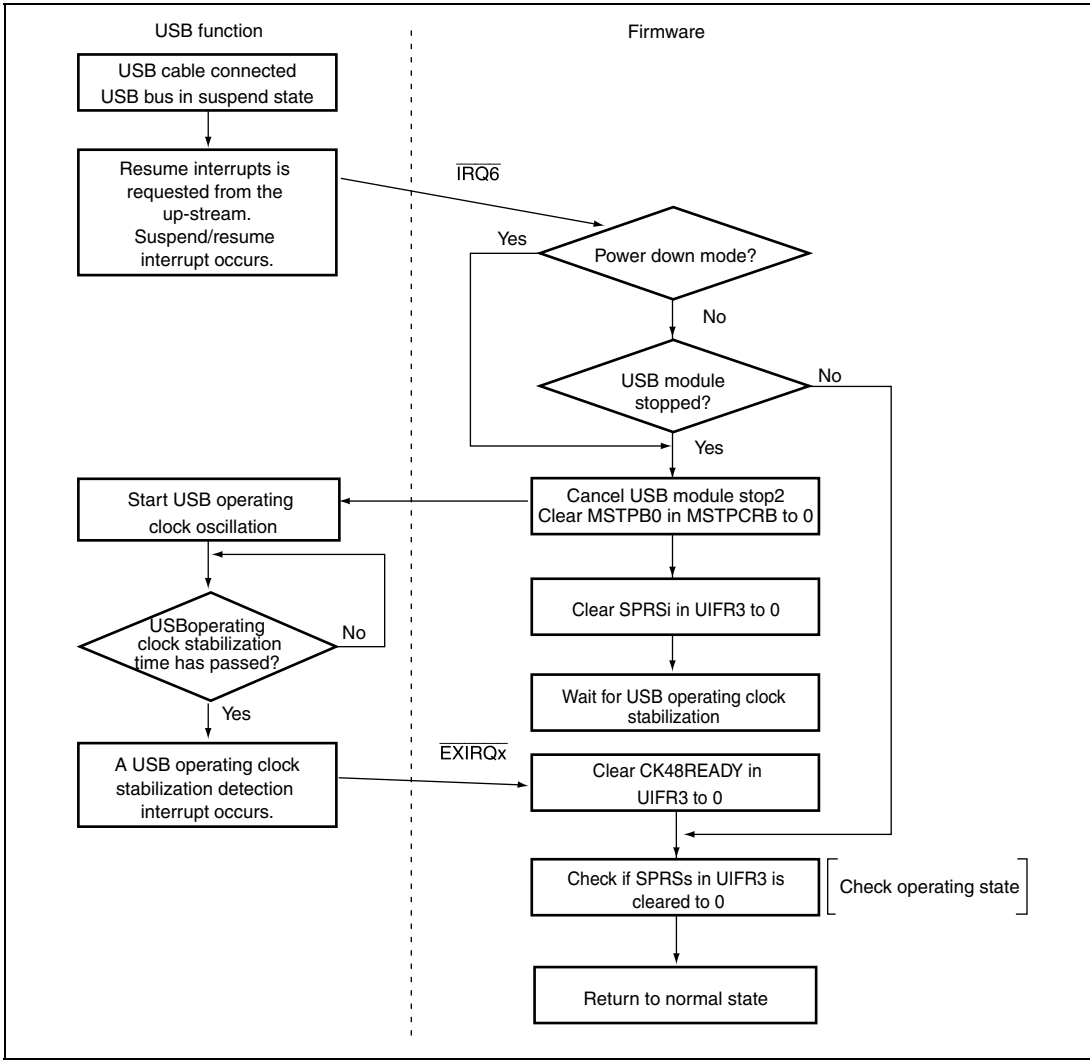


Figure 14.8 Resume Operation from Up-Stream

3. Resume-Wakeup Operation

If the USB bus enters the non-suspend (resume) state from the suspend state by the remote-wakeup signal output from this function, perform the operation as shown in figure 14.9.

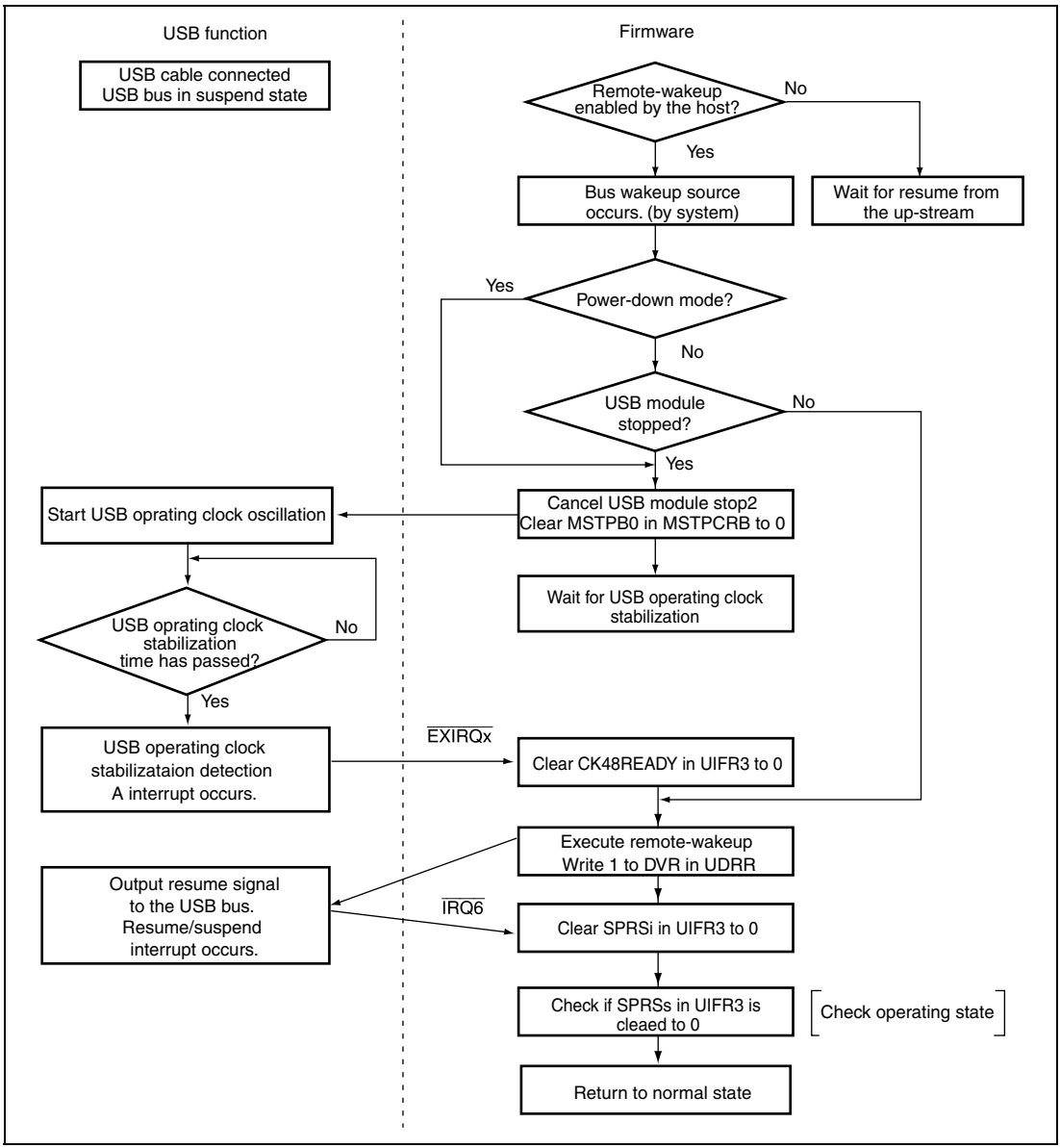


Figure 14.9 Remote-Wakeup

14.5.4 Control Transfer

The control transfer consists of three stages; setup, data (sometimes omitted), and status, as shown in figure 14.10. The data stage consists of multiple bus transactions. Figures 14.11 to 14.15 show operation flows in each stage.

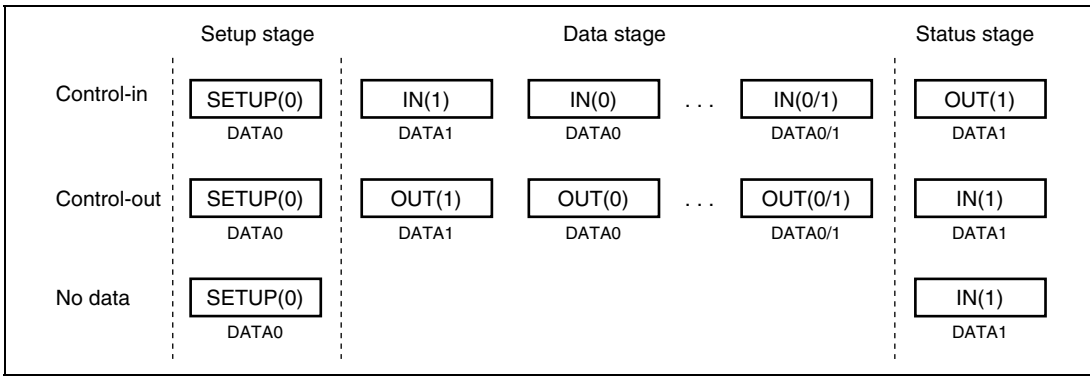
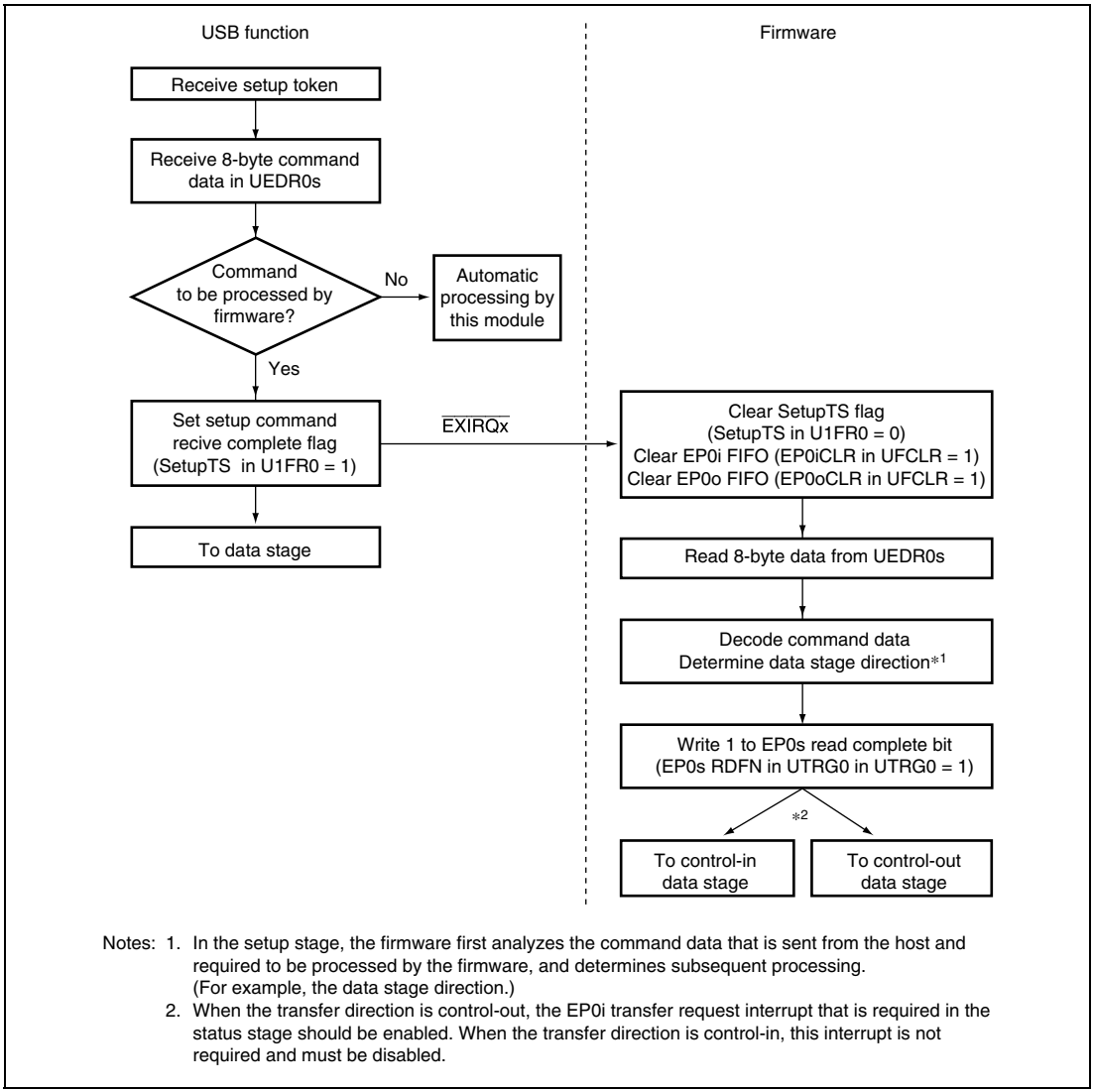


Figure 14.10 Control Transfer Stage Configuration

1. Setup Stage



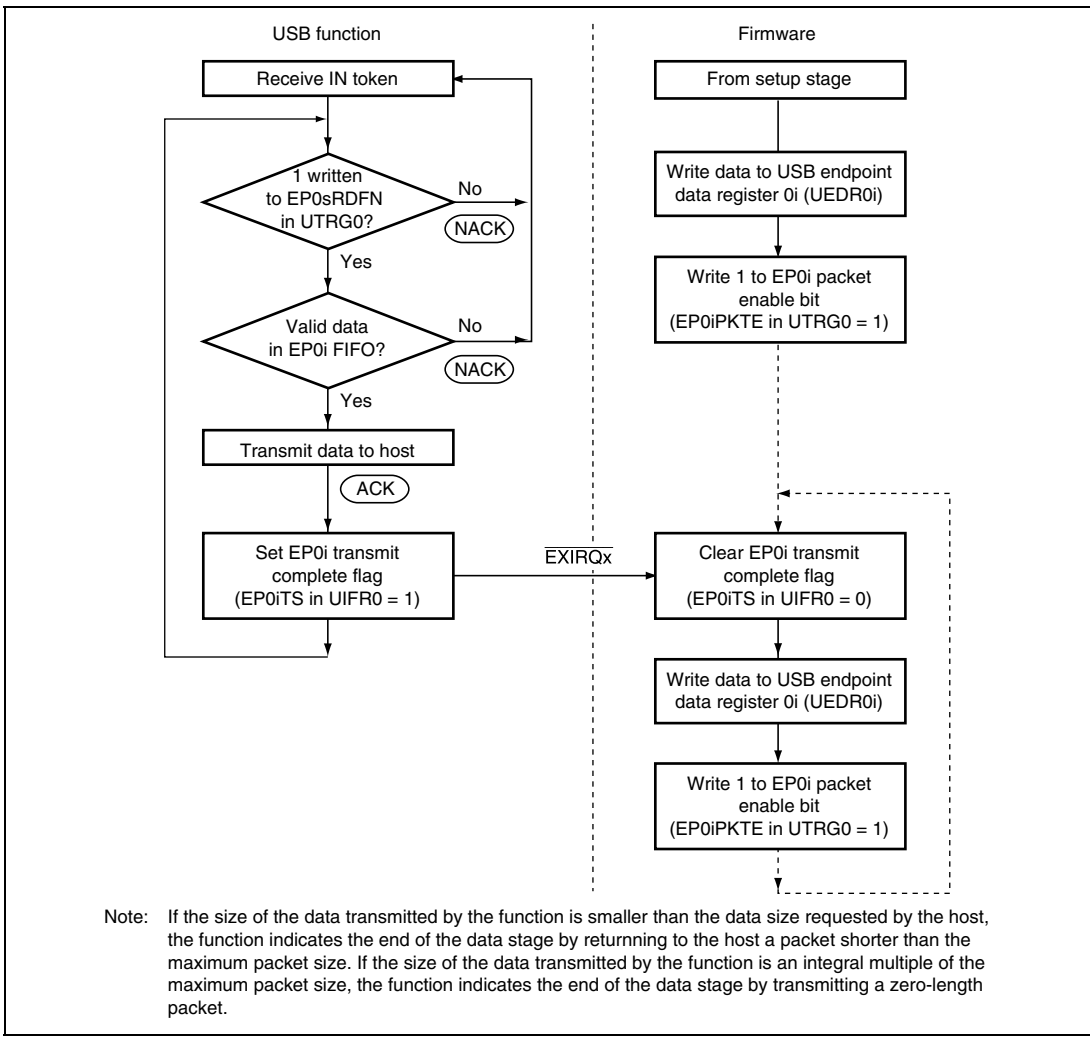
Notes: 1. In the setup stage, the firmware first analyzes the command data that is sent from the host and required to be processed by the firmware, and determines subsequent processing. (For example, the data stage direction.)
2. When the transfer direction is control-out, the EP0i transfer request interrupt that is required in the status stage should be enabled. When the transfer direction is control-in, this interrupt is not required and must be disabled.

Figure 14.11 Setup Stage Operation

2. Data Stage (Control-In)

The firmware first analyzes the command data that is sent from the host in the setup stage, and determines the subsequent data stage direction. If the result of command data analysis is that the data stage is in-transfer, one packet of data to be sent to the host is written to the FIFO. If there is more data to be sent, this data is written to the FIFO after the data written first has been sent to the host (EP0iTS in UIFR0 is set to 1).

The end of the data stage is identified when the host transmits an OUT token and the status stage is entered.



Note: If the size of the data transmitted by the function is smaller than the data size requested by the host, the function indicates the end of the data stage by returnning to the host a packet shorter than the maximum packet size. If the size of the data transmitted by the function is an integral multiple of the maximum packet size, the function indicates the end of the data stage by transmitting a zero-length packet.

Figure 14.12 Data Stage Operation (Control-In)

3. Data Stage (Control-Out)

The firmware first analyzes the command data that is sent from the host in the setup stage, and determines the subsequent data stage direction. If the result of command data analysis is that the data stage is out-transfer, data from the host is waited for, and after data is received (EP0oTS in UIFR0 is set to 1), data is read from the FIFO. Next, the firmware writes 1 to the EP0o read complete bit, empties the receive FIFO, and waits for reception of the next data.

The end of the data stage is identified when the host transmits an IN token and the status stage is entered.

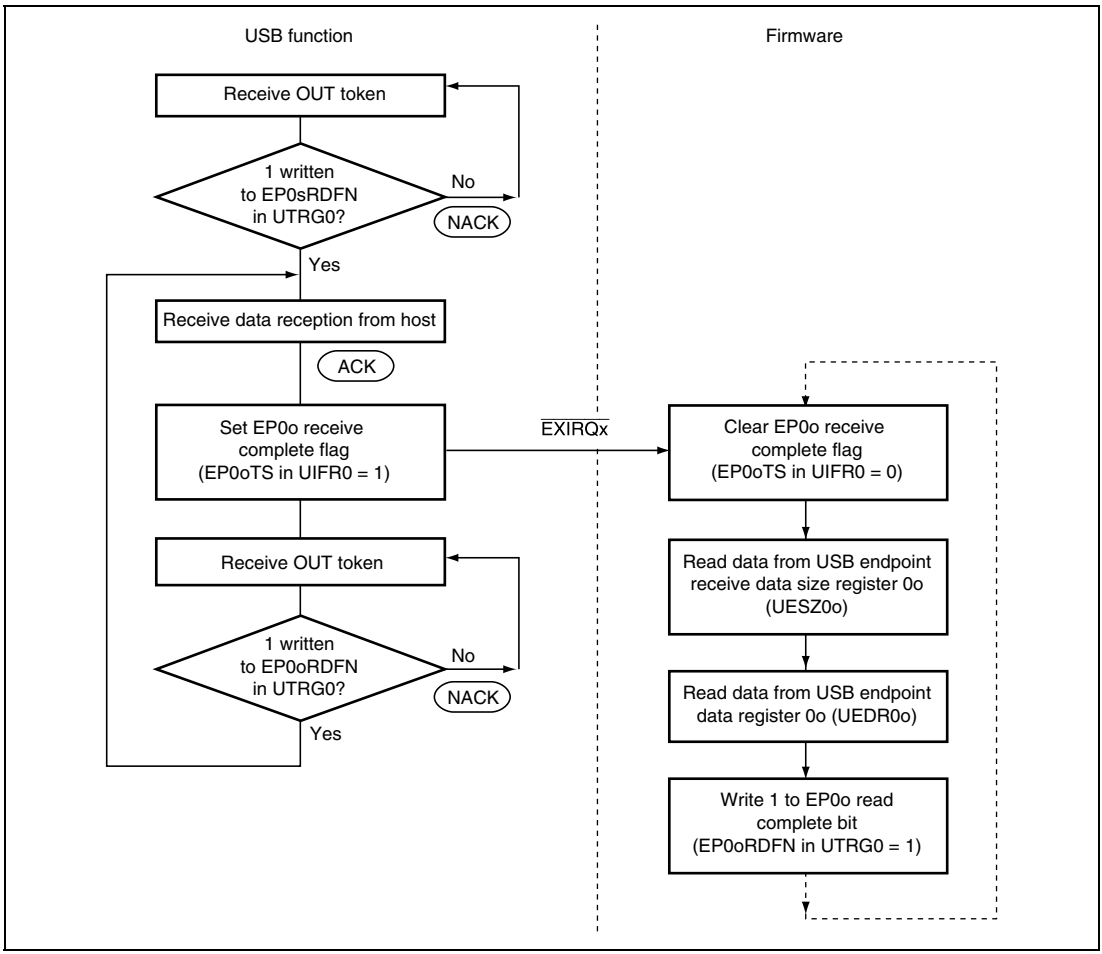


Figure 14.13 Data Stage Operation (Control-Out)

4. Status Stage (Control-In)

The control-in status stage starts with an OUT token from the host. The firmware receives 0-byte data from the host, and ends control transfer.

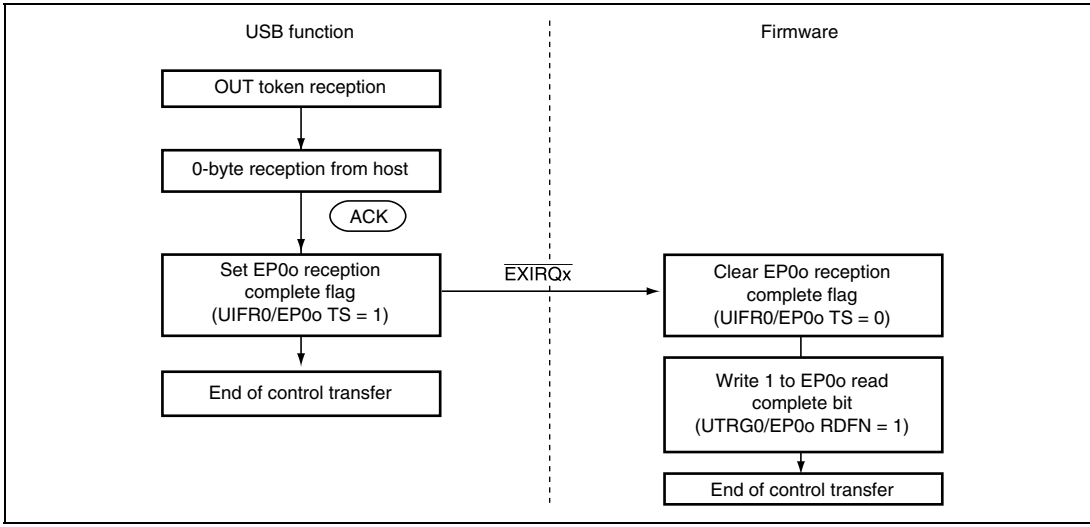


Figure 14.14 Status Stage Operation (Control-In)

5. Status Stage (Control-Out)

The control-out status stage starts with an IN token from the host. When an IN-token is received at the start of the status stage, there is not yet any data in the EP0i FIFO, and so an EP0i transfer request interrupt is generated. The firmware recognizes from this interrupt that the status stage has started. Next, in order to transmit 0-byte data to the host, 1 is written to the EP0i packet enable bit but no data is written to the EP0i FIFO. As a result, the next IN token causes 0-byte data to be transmitted to the host, and control transfer ends.

After the firmware has finished all processing relating to the data stage, 1 should be written to the EP0i packet enable bit.

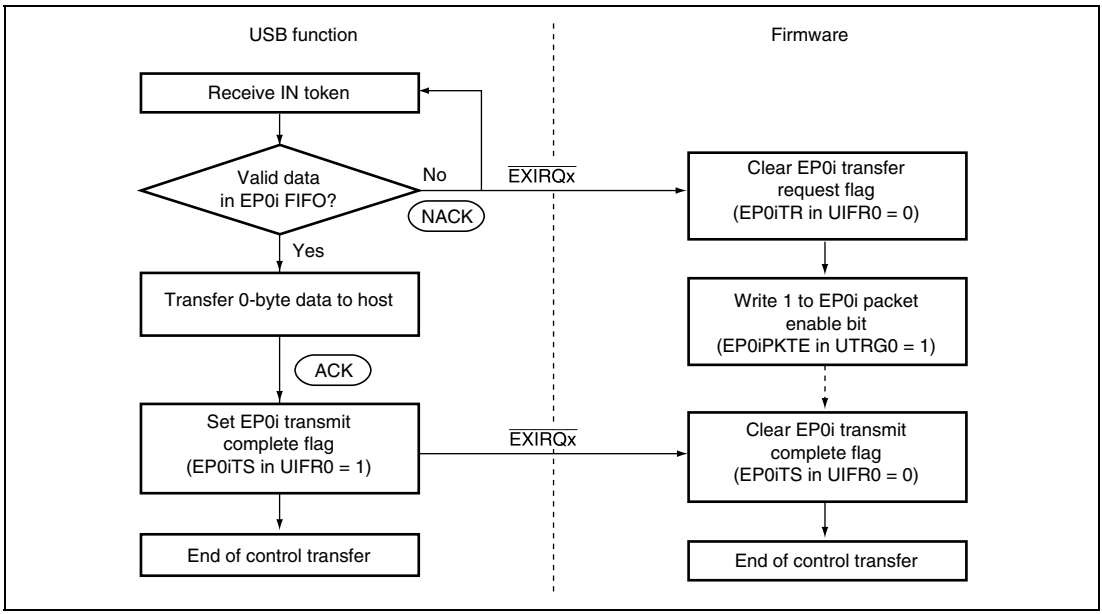
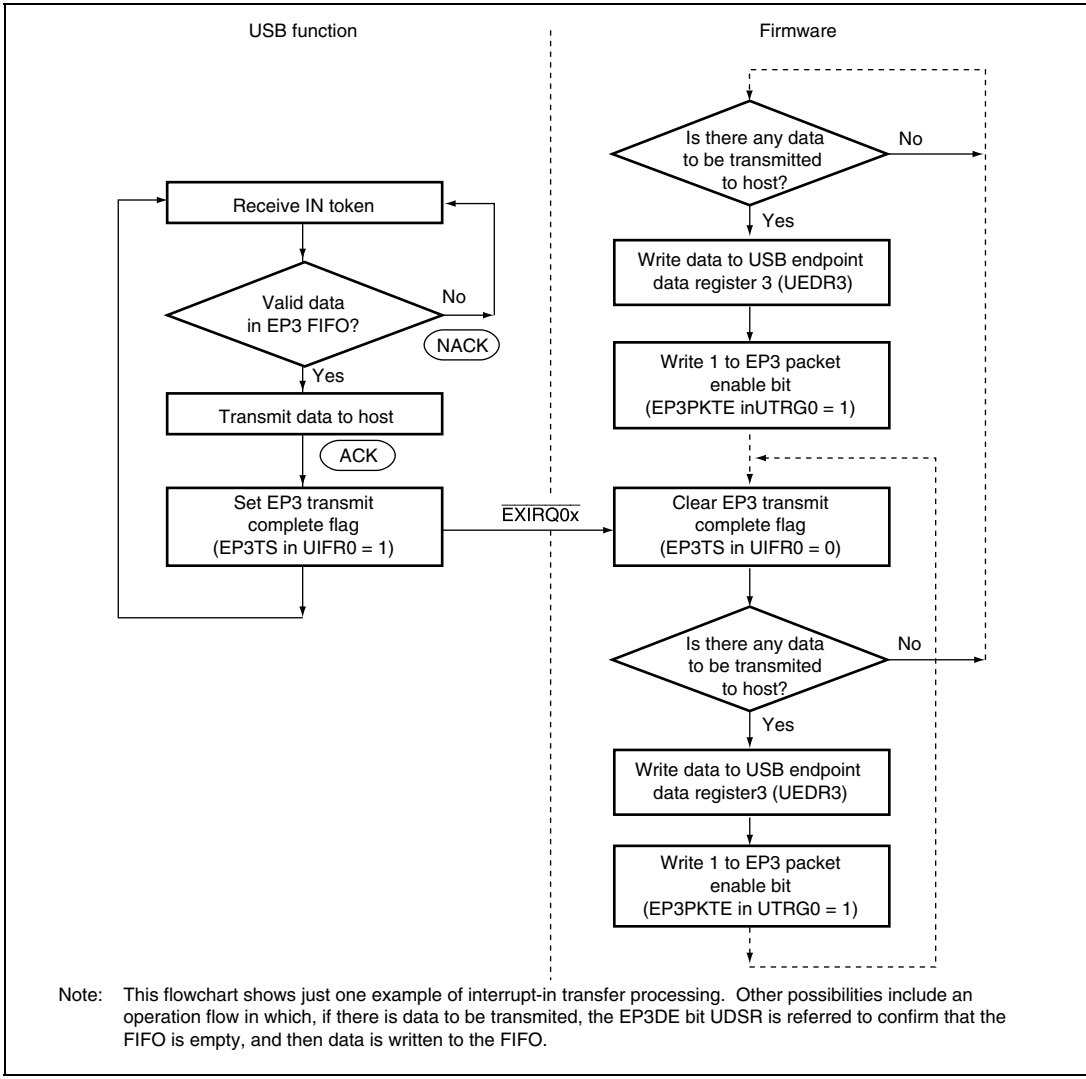


Figure 14.15 Status Stage Operation (Control-Out)

14.5.5 Interrupt-In Transfer: (Endpoint 3)



Note: This flowchart shows just one example of interrupt-in transfer processing. Other possibilities include an operation flow in which, if there is data to be transmited, the EP3DE bit UDSR is referred to confirm that the FIFO is empty, and then data is written to the FIFO.

Figure 14.16 EP3 Interrupt-In Transfer Operation

14.5.6 Bulk-In Transfer (Dual FIFOs): (Endpoint 1)

EP1 has two 64-byte FIFOs, but the user can transmit data and write transmit data without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration. However, one data write should be performed for one FIFO. For example, even if both FIFOs are empty, it is not possible to perform EP1PKTE at one time after consecutively writing 128 bytes of data. EP1PKTE must be performed for each 64- byte write.

When performing bulk-in transfer, as there is no valid data in the FIFOs on reception of the first IN token, a UIFR1/EP1TR interrupt is requested. With this interrupt, 1 is written to the UIER1/EP1EMPTYE bit, and the EP1 FIFO empty interrupt is enabled. At first, both EP1 FIFOs are empty, and so an EP1 FIFO empty interrupt is generated immediately. The data to be transmitted is written to the data register using this interrupt. After the first transmit data write for one FIFO, the other FIFO is empty, and so the next transmit data can be written to the other FIFO immediately. When both FIFOs are full, EP1EMPTY is cleared to 0. If at least one FIFO is empty, UIFR1/EP1EMPTY is set to 1. When ACK is returned from the host after data transmission is completed, the FIFO used in the data transmission becomes empty. If the other FIFO contains valid transmit data at this time, transmission can be continued.

When transmission of all data has been completed, write 0 to UIER1/EP1EMPTYE and disable $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt requests.

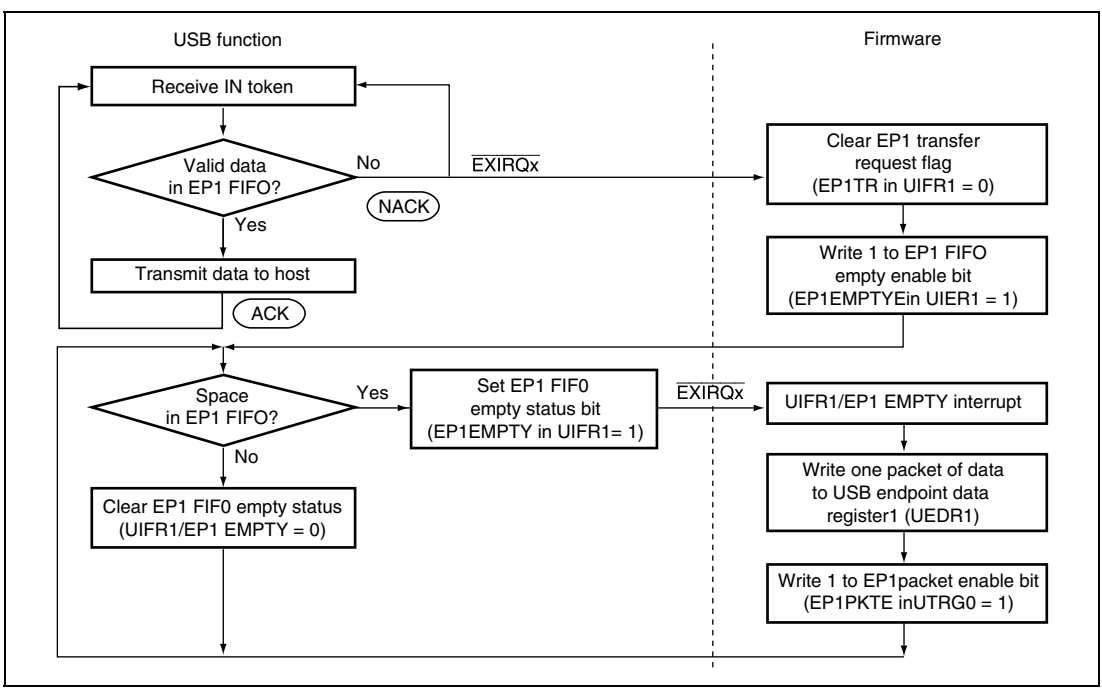


Figure 14.17 EP1 Bulk-In Transfer Operation

14.5.7 Bulk-Out Transfer (Dual FIFOs): (Endpoint 2)

EP2 has two 64-byte FIFOs, but the user can receive data and read receive data without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration.

When one FIFO is full after reception is completed, the UIFR1/EP2READY bit is set. After the first receive operation into one of the FIFOs when both FIFOs are empty, the other FIFO is empty, and so the next packet can be received immediately. When both FIFOs are full, NACK is returned to the host automatically. When reading of the receive data is completed following data reception, 1 is written to the UTRG0/EP2RDFN bit. This operation empties the FIFO that has just been read, and makes it ready to receive the next packet.

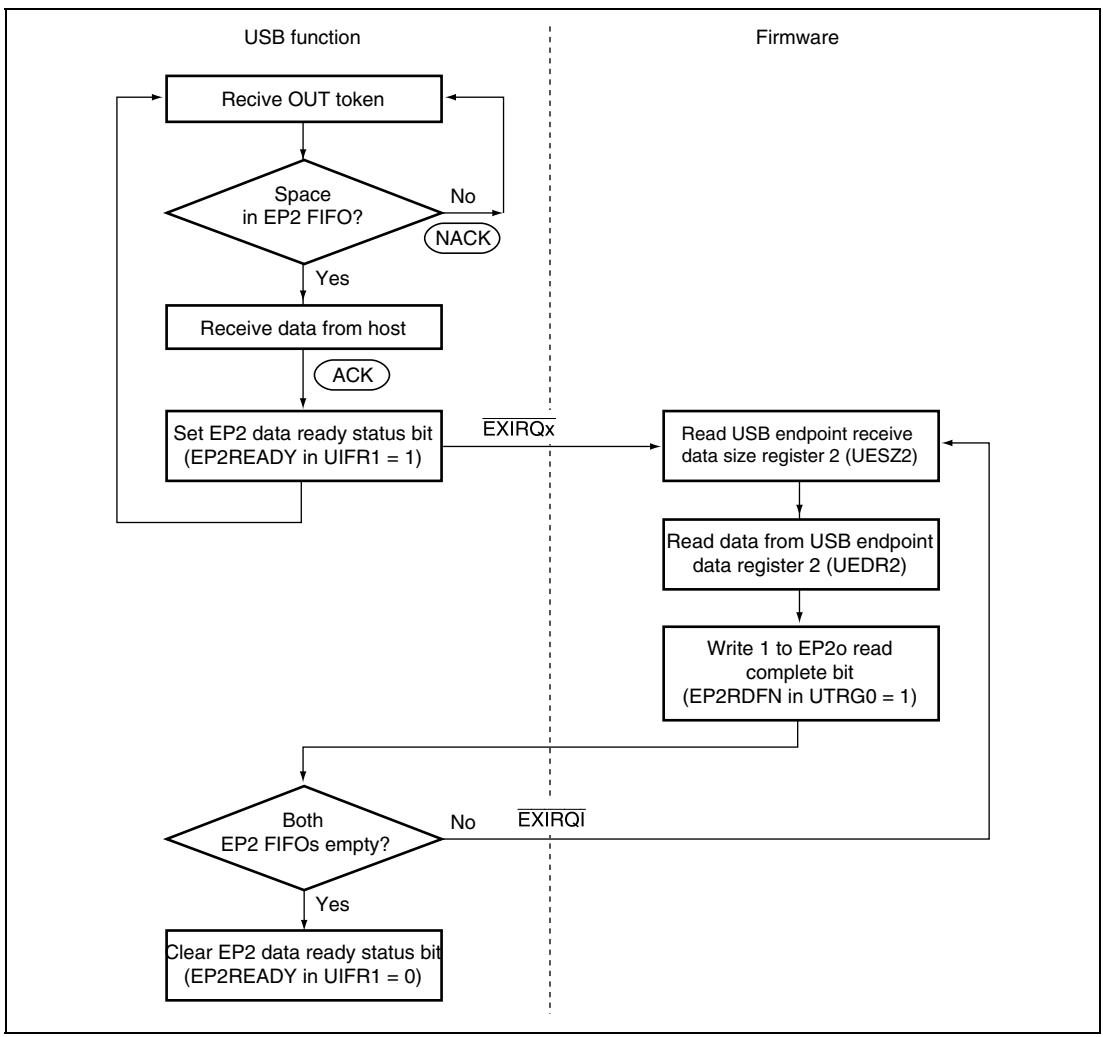


Figure 14.18 EP2 Bulk-Out Transfer Operation

14.5.8 Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands

1. Processing of Commands Transmitted by Control Transfer

A command transmitted from the host by control transfer may require decoding and execution of command processing by the firmware. Whether or not command decoding is required by the firmware is indicated in table 14.5 below.

Table 14.5 Command Decoding by Firmware

Decoding not Necessary by Firmware	Decoding Necessary by Firmware
Clear Feature	Get Descriptor
Get Configuration	Synch Frame
Get Interface	Set Descriptor
Get Status	Class/Vendor command
Set Address	
Set Configuration	
Set Feature	
Set Interface	

If decoding is not necessary by the firmware, command decoding and data stage and status stage processing are performed automatically. No processing is necessary by the user. An interrupt is not generated in this case.

If decoding is necessary by the firmware, the USB function module stores the command in the EP0s FIFO. After normal reception is completed, the SetupTS flag in UIER0 is set and an interrupt request is generated from the $\overline{\text{EXIRQx}}$ pin. In the interrupt routine, eight bytes of data must be read from the EP0s data register (UEDR0s) and decoded by the firmware. The necessary data stage and status stage processing should then be carried out according to the result of the decoding operation.

14.5.9 Stall Operations

1. Overview

This section describes stall operations in the USB function module. There are two cases in which the USB function module stall function is used:

A. When the firmware forcibly stalls an endpoint for some reason

B. When a stall is performed automatically within the USB function module due to a USB specification violation.

The USB function module has internal status bits that hold the status (stall or non-stall) of each endpoint. When a transaction is sent from the host, the module refers these internal status bits and determines whether to return a stall to the host. These bits cannot be cleared by the firmware; they must be cleared with a Clear Feature command from the host. However, the internal status bit for EP0 is cleared automatically at the reception of the setup command.

2. Forcible Stall by Firmware

The firmware uses the UESTL register to issue a stall request for the USB function module. When the firmware wishes to stall a specific endpoint, it sets the corresponding EPnSTL bit (1-1 in figure 14.19). The internal status bits are not changed at this time.

When a transaction is sent from the host for the endpoint for which the EPnSTL bit was set, the USB function module refers the internal status bit, and if this is not set, refers the corresponding EPnSTL bit (1-2 in figure 14.19). If the corresponding EPnSTL bit is not set, the internal status bit is not changed and the transaction is accepted. If the corresponding EPnSTL bit is set, the USB function module sets the internal status bit and returns a stall handshake to the host (1-3 in figure 14.19). If the SCME bit in UESTL1 is set at this time, the EPnSTL bit is automatically cleared (1-4 in figure 14.19).

Once an internal status bit is set, it remains set until cleared by a Clear Feature command from the host, without regarding to EPnSTL. Even after a bit is cleared by the Clear Feature command (3-1 in figure 14.19), the USB function module continues to return a stall handshake while the EPnSTL bit is set, since the internal status bit is set each time a transaction is executed for the corresponding endpoint (1-2 in figure 14.19). To clear a stall, therefore, it is necessary for the corresponding EPnSTL bit to be cleared by the firmware (or set the SCME bit so that the EPnSTL bit is automatically cleared when the USB function module returns a stall handshake), and also for the internal status bit to be cleared with a Clear Feature command (2-1, 2-2, and 2-3 in figure 14.19).

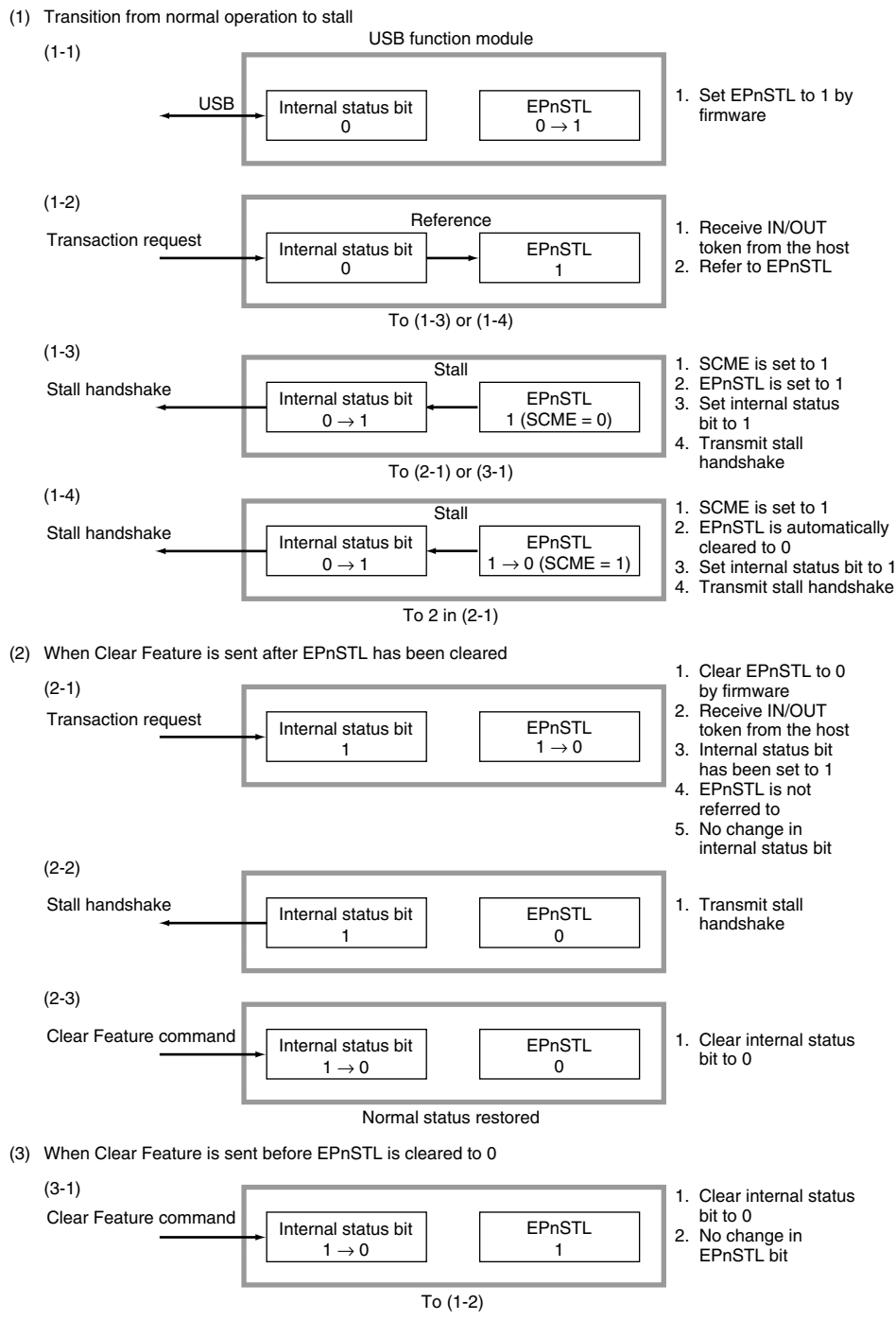


Figure 14.19 Forcible Stall by Firmware

3. Automatic Stall by USB Function Module

When a stall setting is made with the Set Feature command, when the information of this module differs from that returned to the host by the Get Descriptor, or in the event of a USB specification violation, the USB function module automatically sets the internal status bit for the corresponding endpoint without regarding to EPnSTL, and returns a stall handshake (1-1 in figure 14.20).

Once an internal status bit is set, it remains set until cleared by a Clear Feature command from the host, without regarding to EPnSTL. After a bit is cleared by the Clear Feature command, EPnSTL is referred (3-1 in figure 14.20). The USB function module continues to return a stall handshake while the internal status bit is set, since the internal status bit is set even if a transaction is executed for the corresponding endpoint (2-1 and 2-2 in figure 14.20). To clear a stall, therefore, the internal status bit must be cleared with a Clear Feature command (3-1 in figure 14.20). If set by the firmware, EPnSTL should also be cleared (2-1 in figure 14.20).

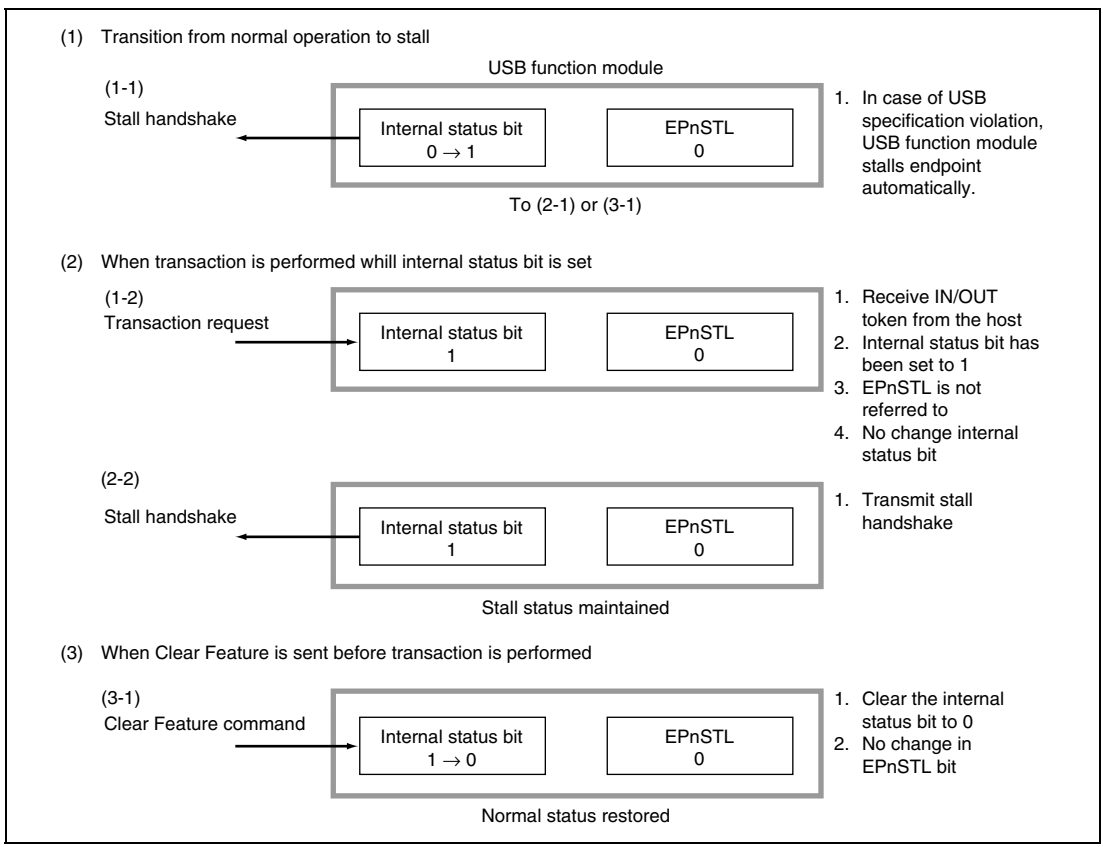


Figure 14.20 Automatic Stall by USB Function Module

14.6 DMA Transfer Specifications

14.6.1 Overview

This module incorporates the interface that supports dual-address transfer by means of the on-chip DMAC. Endpoints that can be transferred by the on-chip DMAC are EP1 and EP2 in Bulk transfer (corresponding registers are UEDR1 and UEDR2). In DMA transfer, the USB module must be accessed as an external device in area 6. The USB module cannot be accessed as a device with external ACK (single-address transfer cannot be performed.). 0-byte data transfer to EP2 is ignored even if the DMA transfer is enabled by setting the EP2T1 bit in UDMAR to 1.

14.6.2 On-Chip DMAC Settings

The on-chip DMAC must be specified as follows: A USB request ($\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is used), activated by low-level input, byte size, full-address mode transfer, and the DTA bit in DMABCR = 1. After completing the DMA transfer of specified times, the DMAC automatically stops. Note, however, that the USB module keeps the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low while data to be transferred by the on-chip DMAC remains regardless of the DMAC status.

14.6.3 EP1 DMA Transfer

The EP1T1 bit in UDMAR enables the DMA transfer. The EP1T0 bit in UDMAR specifies the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal to be used by the DMA transfer. When 1 is written to the EP1T1 bit, the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven low if at least one of EP1 data FIFOs is empty; the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven high if both EP1 data FIFOs are full.

14.6.4 EP2 DMA Transfer

The EP2T1 bit in UDMAR enables the DMA transfer. The EP2T0 bit in the UDMAR specifies the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal to be used by the DMA transfer. When 1 is written to the EP2T1 bit, the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven low if at least one of EP2 data FIFOs is full (ready state); the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven high if both EP2 data FIFOs are empty when all receive data items are read.

14.6.5 EP1PKTE and EP2RDFN Bits in UTRG0

1. EP1PKTE in UTRG0

When DMA transfer is performed on EP1 transmit data, the USB module automatically performs the same processing as writing 1 to EP1PKTE if one data FIFO (64 bytes) becomes full. Accordingly, to transfer data of integral multiples of 64 bytes, the user needs not to write 1 to EP1PKTE. To transfer data of less than 64 bytes, the user must write 1 to EP1PKTE using the DMA transfer end interrupt of the on-chip DMAC. If the user writes 1 to EP1PKTE in cases other than the case when data of less than 64 bytes is transferred, excess transfer occurs and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

Figure 14.21 shows an example for transmitting 150 bytes of data from EP1 to the host. In this case, internal processing as the same as writing 1 to EP1PKTE is automatically performed twice. This kind of internal processing is performed when the currently selected data FIFO becomes full. Accordingly, this processing is automatically performed only when 64-byte data is sent. This processing is not performed automatically when data less than 64 bytes is sent.

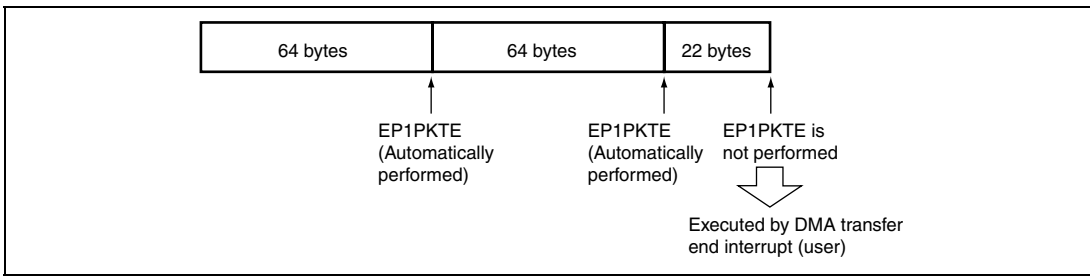


Figure 14.21 EP1PKTE Operation in UTRG0

2. EP2RDFN in UTRG0

When DMA transfer is performed on EP2 receive data, do not write 1 to EP2RDFN after one data FIFO (64 bytes) has been read. In data transfer other than DMA transfer, the next data cannot be read after one data FIFO (64 bytes) has been read unless 1 is written to EP2RDFN. While in DMA transfer, the USB module automatically performs the same processing as writing 1 to EP2RDFN if the currently selected data FIFO becomes empty. Accordingly, in DMA transfer, the user needs not to write 1 to EP2RDFN. If the user writes 1 to EP2RDFN in DMA transfer, excess transfer occurs and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

Figure 14.22 shows an example of EP2 receiving 150 bytes of data from the host. In this case, internal processing as the same as writing 1 to EP2RDFN is automatically performed three times. This kind of internal processing is performed when the currently selected data FIFO becomes empty. Accordingly, this processing is automatically performed both when 64-byte data is sent and when data less than 64 bytes is sent.

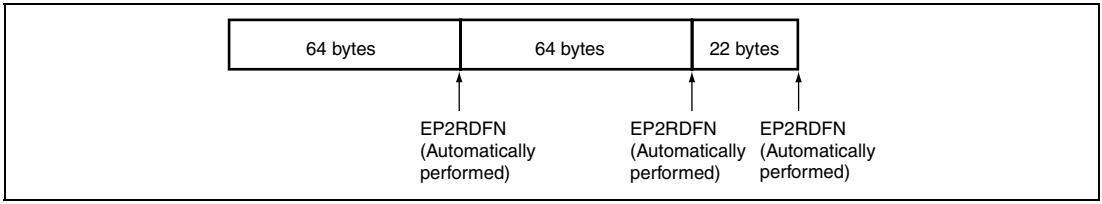
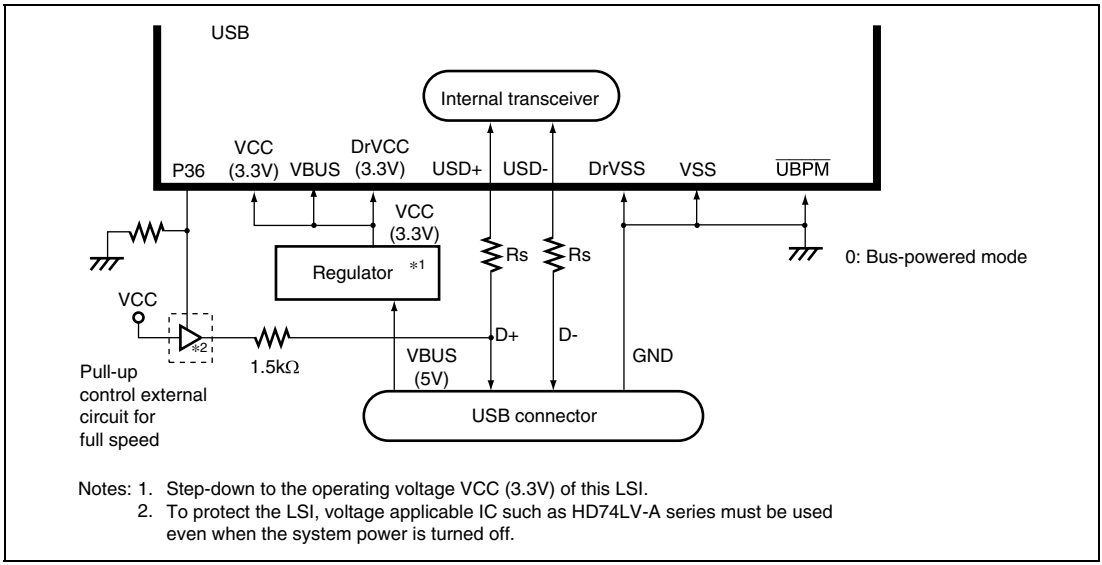


Figure 14.22 EP2RDFN Operation in UTRG0

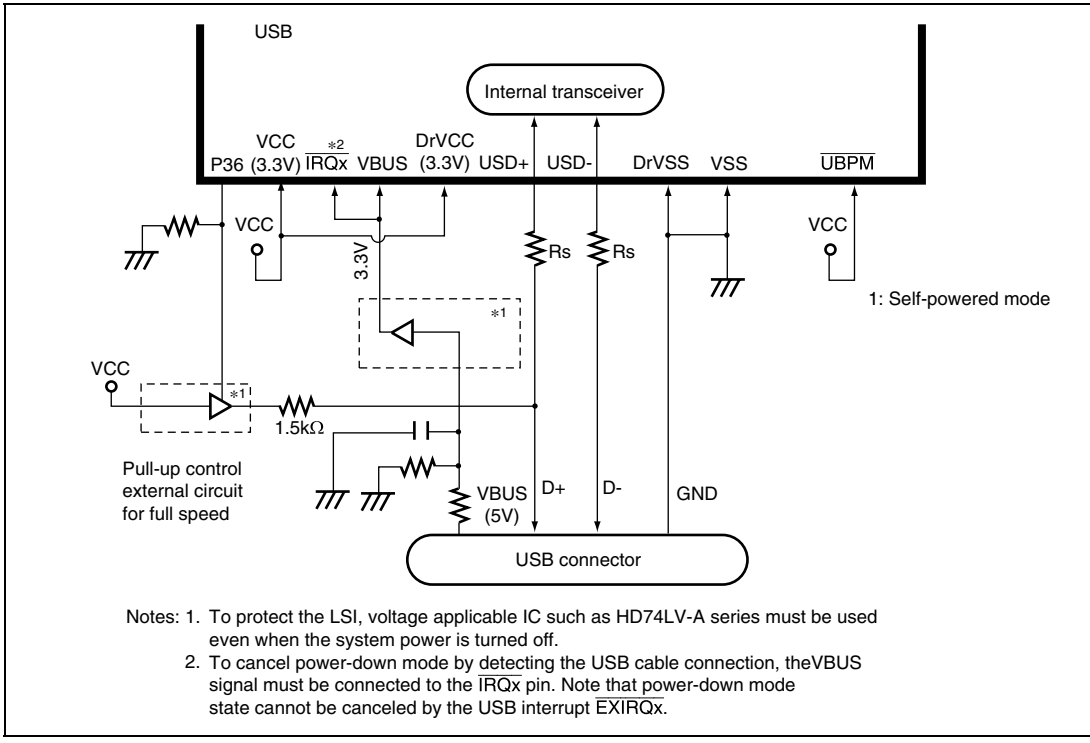
14.7 USB External Circuit Example

Figures 14.23 and 14.24 show the USB external circuit examples of this LIS.



Notes: 1. Step-down to the operating voltage VCC (3.3V) of this LSI.
2. To protect the LSI, voltage applicable IC such as HD74LV-A series must be used even when the system power is turned off.

Figure 14.23 USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode



Notes: 1. To protect the LSI, voltage applicable IC such as HD74LV-A series must be used even when the system power is turned off.
2. To cancel power-down mode by detecting the USB cable connection, theVBUS signal must be connected to the $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ pin. Note that power-down mode state cannot be canceled by the USB interrupt $\overline{\text{EXIRQx}}$.

Figure 14.24 USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode

14.8 Usage Notes

14.8.1 E6000 Usage Notes

In the E6000, since the USB module is mounted on the external extended board and accessed as an external module, there are some restrictions as shown below. In the E10A, however, there are no such restrictions.

- Mode 7 (single-chip mode) of the H8S/2218 Series is not supported.
- In modes 6 and 7 (on-chip ROM enabled mode), $\overline{CS6}$ and A9 to A0 are input pins in the initial state. Accordingly, before accessing the USB module, set $\overline{CS6}$ and A9 to A0 to output pins by setting P72DDR = 1, AE3 to AE0 = B′0010, and PC7DDR to PC0DDR = H′FF. In modes 4 and 5 (on-chip ROM disabled mode), set $\overline{CS6}$, $\overline{A9}$, and $\overline{A8}$ to output pins by setting P72DDR = 1 and AE3 to AE0 = B′0010.

14.8.2 Operating Frequency

The main clock of this LSI must be 24 MHz or 16 MHz. This 24-MHz main clock, used as base clock, is doubled in the on-chip PLL circuit or this 16-MHz main clock, also used as base clock, is tripled in the on-chip PLL circuit, to generate the 48-MHz USB operating clock. Since the USB module does not support medium-speed mode, sleep mode, watch mode, subactive mode, and subsleep mode, make sure to use full-speed mode.

14.8.3 Bus Interface

The USB module's interface is based on the bus specifications of external area 6. Accordingly, before accessing the USB module, area 6 must be specified as having an 8-bit bus width and 3-state access using the bus controller register.

14.8.4 Setup Data Reception

The following must be noted for the EP0s FIFO used to receive 8-byte setup data. The USB is designed to always receive setup commands. Accordingly, write from the UDC has higher priority than read from the LSI. If the reception of the next setup command starts while the LSI is reading data after completing reception, this data read from the LSI is forcibly cancelled and the next setup command write starts. After the next setup command write, data read from the LSI is thus undefined. Read operation is forcibly disabled because data cannot be guaranteed if DP-RAM used as FIFO accesses the same address for write and read.

14.8.5 FIFO Clear

If the USB cable is disconnected during communication, old data may be contained in the FIFO. Accordingly, FIFOs must be cleared immediately after USB cable connection. In addition, after bus reset, all FIFOs must also be cleared. Note, however, that FIFOs that are currently used for data transfer to or from the host must not be cleared.

14.8.6 $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ Interrupt

A suspend/resume interrupt requested by $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified as falling-edge sensitive.

14.8.7 Data Register Overread or Overwrite

When the CPU reads or writes to data registers, the following must be noted:

- Transmit data registers (UEDR0i, UEDR3, UEDR1)

  Data to be written to the transmit data registers must be within the maximum packet size. For the transmit data register of EP1 having a dual-FIFO configuration, data to be written at any time must be within the maximum packet size. In this case, after a data write, the FIFO is switched to the other FIFO, enabling an further data write, when the PKTE bit in UTRG0 is set to 1. Accordingly, data of size corresponding to two FIFOs must not be written to the transmit data registers at a time.
- Receive data registers (UEDR0o, UEDR2)

  Receive data registers must not read a data size that is greater than the effective size of the read data item. In other words, receive data registers must not read data with data size larger than that specified by the receive data size register. For the receive data register of EP2 having a dual-FIFO configuration, data to be read at any time must be within the maximum packet size. In this case, after reading the currently selected FIFO, set the RDFN bit in UTRG to 1. This switches the FIFO to the other FIFO and updates the receive data size, enabling the next data read. In addition, if there is no receive data in a FIFO, data must not be read. Otherwise, the pointer that controls the internal module FIFO is updated and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

14.8.8 Reset

The manual reset during USB communication operations must not be executed, since the LSI may stop with the state of USD+ and USD- pins maintained.

This USB module uses synchronous reset for some registers. The reset state of these registers must be cancelled after the clock oscillation stabilization time has passed. At initialization, reset must be cancelled using the following procedure:

1. Cancel the USB module stop 1: Clear the USBSTOP1 bit in EXMDLSTP to 0.
2. Select the USB operating clock: Write 1 to the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits in UCTLR.
3. Cancel the USB module stop 2: Clear the MSTPB0 bit in MSTPCRB to 0.
4. Wait for the USB operating clock stabilization: Wait until the CK48READY bit in UIFR3 is set to 1.
5. Cancel the USB interface reset state: Clear the UIFRST bit in UCTLR to 0.
6. Cancel the UDC core reset state: Clear the UDCRST bit in UCTLR to 0.

For details, see the flowcharts in section 14.5.1, Initialization and section 14.5.2, USB Cable Connection/Disconnection.

14.8.9 EP0 Interrupt Sources Assignment

EP0 interrupt sources assigned to bits 3 to 0 in UIFR0 must be assigned to the same interrupt signal ($\overline{\text{EXIRQx}}$) by setting UISR0. There are no other restrictions on interrupt sources.

14.8.10 Level Shifter for VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ Pins

The VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ pins of this USB module must be connected to the USB connector's VBUS pin via a level shifter. This is because the USB module has a circuit that operates by detecting USB cable connection or disconnection.

Even if the power of the device incorporating this USB module is turned off, 5-V power is applied to the USB connector's VBUS pin while the USB cable is connected to the device set. To protect the LSI from destruction, use a level shifter such as the HD74LV-A series, which allows voltage application to the pin even when the power is off.

14.8.11 Read and Write to USB Endpoint Data Register

To write data to an USB endpoint data register (UEDR0i, UEDR1, or UEDR3) on the transmit side using a CPU word or longword transfer instruction, the size of data to be written must be smaller than the size of data that is to be transmitted.

For example, when 7-byte data is transferred to the host, 8-byte data is sent to the host if data is written twice by the longword transfer instructions or if data is written four times by the word transfer instructions. To write 7-byte data correctly, data must be written once by a longword transfer instruction, once by a word transfer instruction, and once by a byte transfer instruction, or data must be written three times by a word transfer instruction and once by a byte transfer instruction.

To read data from the USB endpoint data register (UEDR0o or UEDR2) on the receive side, the correct size of data must be read. In this case, the data size is specified by the USB endpoint receive size register (UESZ0o or UESZ2).

To execute DMA transfer on data in the USB endpoint data register using the on-chip DMAC, byte transfer musts be used. In word transfer, odd-byte data cannot be transferred. Word transfer is thus disabled.

14.8.12 Restrictions on Entering and Canceling Power-Down Mode

Before entering the power-down mode, set the USB module stop 2 state. The UDC core must not be reset.

To access the USB module after canceling power-down mode, cancel the USB module stop 2 state and wait for the USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time.

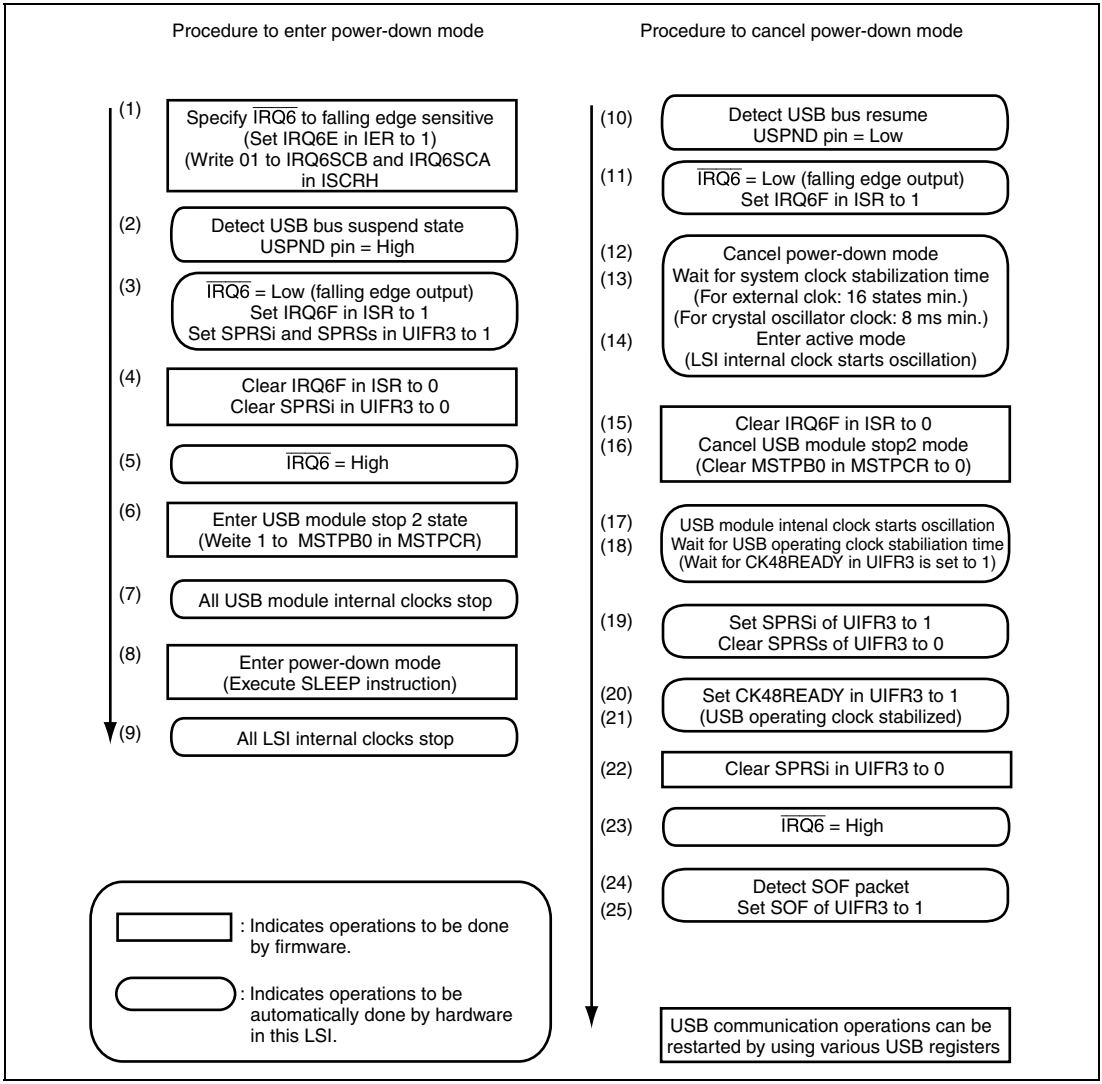


Figure 14.25 Flowchart

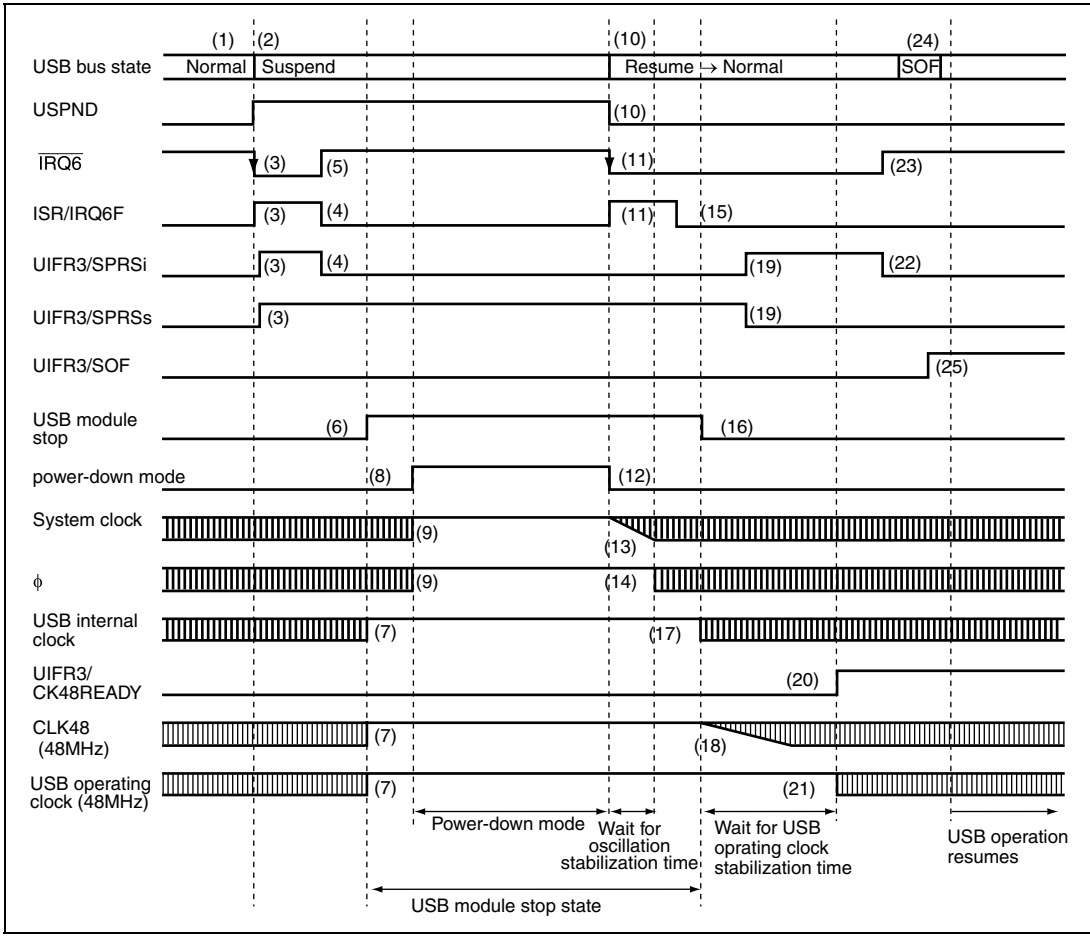


Figure 14.26 Timing Chart

14.8.13 USB External Circuit Example

The USB external circuit examples are used for reference only. In actual board design, carefully check the system operation.

In addition, the USB external circuit examples cannot guarantee the correct system operation. The user must individually take measures against external surges or ESD noise by incorporating protective diodes or other components if necessary.

Section 15 A/D Converter

This LSI includes a successive approximation type 10-bit A/D converter that allows up to six analog input channels to be selected. The block diagram of the A/D converter is shown in figure 15.1.

15.1 Features

- 10-bit resolution
- Six input channels
- Conversion time: 8.4 µs per channel (at 16 MHz operation), 11.08 µs per channel (at 24 MHz operation)
- Two operating modes
  - Single mode: Single-channel A/D conversion
  - Scan mode: Continuous A/D conversion on 1 to 4 channels
- Four data registers
  - Conversion results are held in a 16-bit data register for each channel
- Sample and hold function
- Three methods conversion start
  - Software
  - Timer (TPU) conversion start trigger
  - External trigger signal ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$)
- Interrupt request
  - An A/D conversion end interrupt request (ADI) can be generated
- Module stop mode can be set

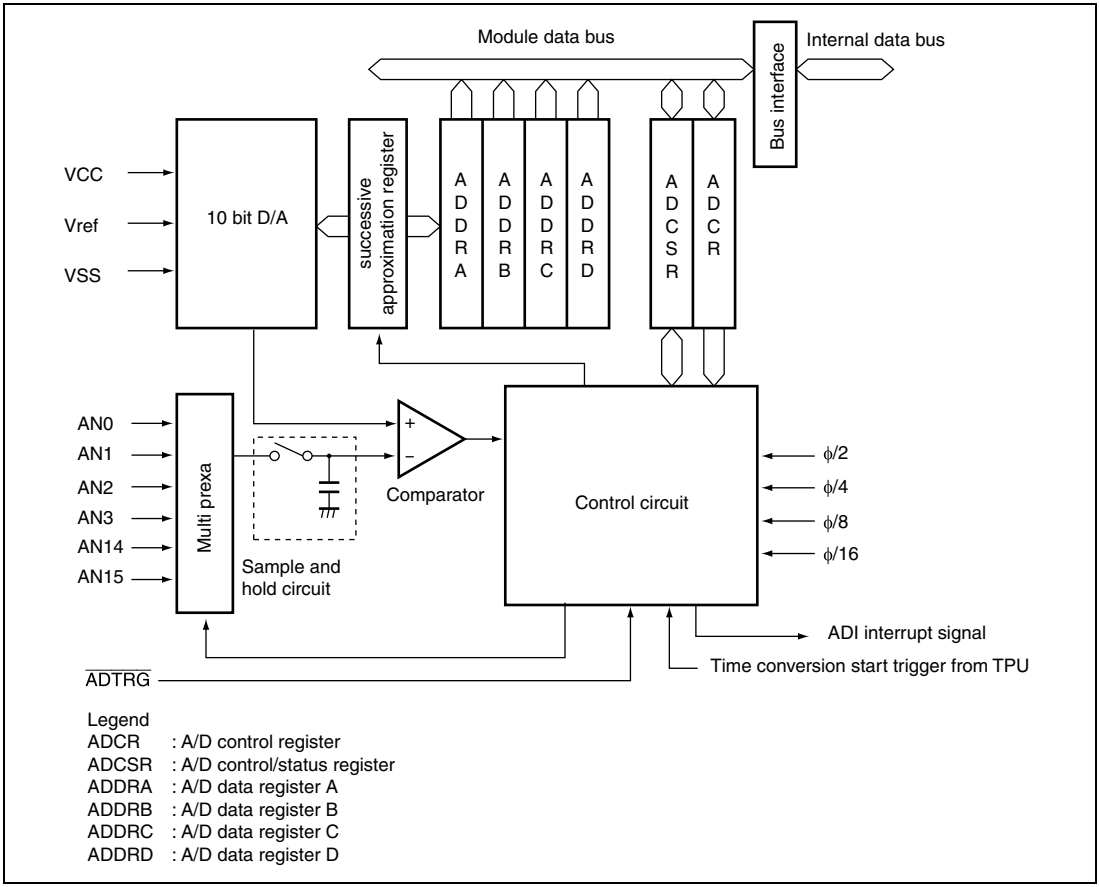


Figure 15.1 Block Diagram of A/D Converter

15.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 15.1 summarizes the input pins used by the A/D converter. The AN0 to AN3 and AN14 to AN15 pins are analog input pins. The VCC and VSS pins are the power supply pins for the analog block in the A/D converter. The Vref pin is the reference voltage pin for the A/D conversion.

Table 15.1 Pin Configuration

Pin Name	Symbol	I/O	Function
Power supply pin	VCC	Input	Analog block power supply and reference voltage (also used for digital block)
Ground pin	VSS	Input	Analog block ground and reference voltage (also used for digital block)
Reference voltage pin	Vref	Input	Reference voltage pin for A/D conversion
Analog input pin 0	AN0	Input	Analog input pins
Analog input pin 1	AN1	Input	
Analog input pin 2	AN2	Input	
Analog input pin 3	AN3	Input	
Analog input pin 14	AN14	Input	
Analog input pin 15	AN15	Input	
A/D external trigger input pin	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$	Input	External trigger input pin for starting A/D conversion

15.3 Register Descriptions

The A/D converter has the following registers.

- A/D data register A (ADDRA)
- A/D data register B (ADDRB)
- A/D data register C (ADDRC)
- A/D data register D (ADDRD)
- A/D control/status register (ADCSR)
- A/D control register (ADCR)

15.3.1 A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDRD)

There are four 16-bit read-only ADDR registers; ADDRA to ADDRD, used to store the results of A/D conversion. The ADDR registers, which store a conversion result for each channel, are shown in table 15.2.

The converted 10-bit data is stored in bits 6 to 15. The lower 6 bits are always read as 0.

The data bus between the CPU and the A/D converter is 8 bits wide. The upper byte can be read directly from the CPU, however the lower byte should be read via a temporary register. The temporary register contents are transferred from the ADDR when the upper byte data is read. When reading the ADDR, read the upper byte before the lower byte, or read in word unit. The initial value of the ADDR is H'0000.

Table 15.2 Analog Input Channels and Corresponding ADDR Registers

Analog Input Channel	A/D Data Register to Be Stored the Results of A/D Conversion
AN0	ADDRA
AN1	ADDRB
AN2, AN14	ADDRC
AN3, AN15	ADDRD

15.3.2 A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR)

ADCSR controls A/D conversion operations.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	ADF	0	R/(W)*	A/D End Flag A status flag that indicates the end of A/D conversion. [Setting conditions] When A/D conversion ends in single mode When A/D conversion ends on all channels specified in scan mode [Clearing condition] When 0 is written after reading ADF = 1
6	ADIE	0	R/W	A/D Interrupt Enable A/D conversion end interrupt (ADI) request enabled when 1 is set

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	ADST	0	R/W	A/D Start Clearing this bit to 0 stops A/D conversion, and the A/D converter enters the wait state. Setting this bit to 1 starts A/D conversion. In single mode, this bit is cleared to 0 automatically when conversion on the specified channel is complete. In scan mode, conversion continues sequentially on the specified channels until this bit is cleared to 0 by software, a reset, or a transition to software standby mode, hardware standby mode or module stop mode.
4	SCAN	0	R/W	Scan Mode Selects single mode or scan mode as the A/D conversion operating mode. 0: Single mode 1: Scan mode
3	CH3	0	R/W	Channel Select 3 to 0 Select analog input channels.
2	CH2	0	R/W	
1	CH1	0	R/W	When SCAN = 0 When SCAN = 1
0	CH0	0	R/W	0000: AN0 0000: AN0 0001: AN1 0001: AN0 to AN1 0010: AN2 0010: AN0 to AN2 0011: AN3 0011: AN0 to AN3 01xx: Setting prohibited 01xx: Setting prohibited 10xx: Setting prohibited 1xxx: Setting prohibited 11xx: Setting prohibited 1110: AN14 1111: AN15 Legend x: Don't care

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.3 A/D Control Register (ADCR)

The ADCR enables A/D conversion started by an external trigger signal.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	TRGS1	0	R/W	Timer Trigger Select 0 and 1
6	TRGS0	0	R/W	Enables the start of A/D conversion by a trigger signal. Only set bits TRGS0 and TRGS1 while conversion is stopped (ADST = 0). 00: A/D conversion start by software 01: A/D conversion start by TPU 10: Setting prohibited 11: A/D conversion start by external trigger pin ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$)
5, 4	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits are always read as 1 cannot be modified.
3	CKS1	0	R/W	Clock Select 1 and 0
2	CKS0	0	R/W	These bits specify the A/D conversion time. The conversion time should be changed only when ADST = 0. 00: Conversion time = 530 states (Max.) 01: Conversion time = 266 states (Max.) 10: Conversion time = 134 states (Max.) 11: Conversion time = 68 states (Max.) The conversion time setting should exceed the conversion time shown in section 22.6, A/D Converter Characteristics.
1, 0	—	All 1	R/W	Reserved These bits are always read as 1 cannot be modified.

15.4 Interface to Bus Master

ADDRA to ADDRD are 16-bit registers. As the data bus to the bus master is 8 bits wide, the bus master accesses to the upper byte of the registers directly while to the lower byte of the registers via the temporary register (TEMP).

Data in ADDR is read in the following way: When the upper-byte data is read, the upper-byte data will be transferred to the CPU and the lower-byte data will be transferred to TEMP. Then, when the lower-byte data is read, the lower-byte data will be transferred to the CPU.

When data in ADDR is read, the data should be read from the upper byte and lower byte in the order. When only the upper-byte data is read, the data is guaranteed. However, when only the lower-byte data is read, the data is not guaranteed.

Figure 15.2 shows data flow when accessing to ADDR.

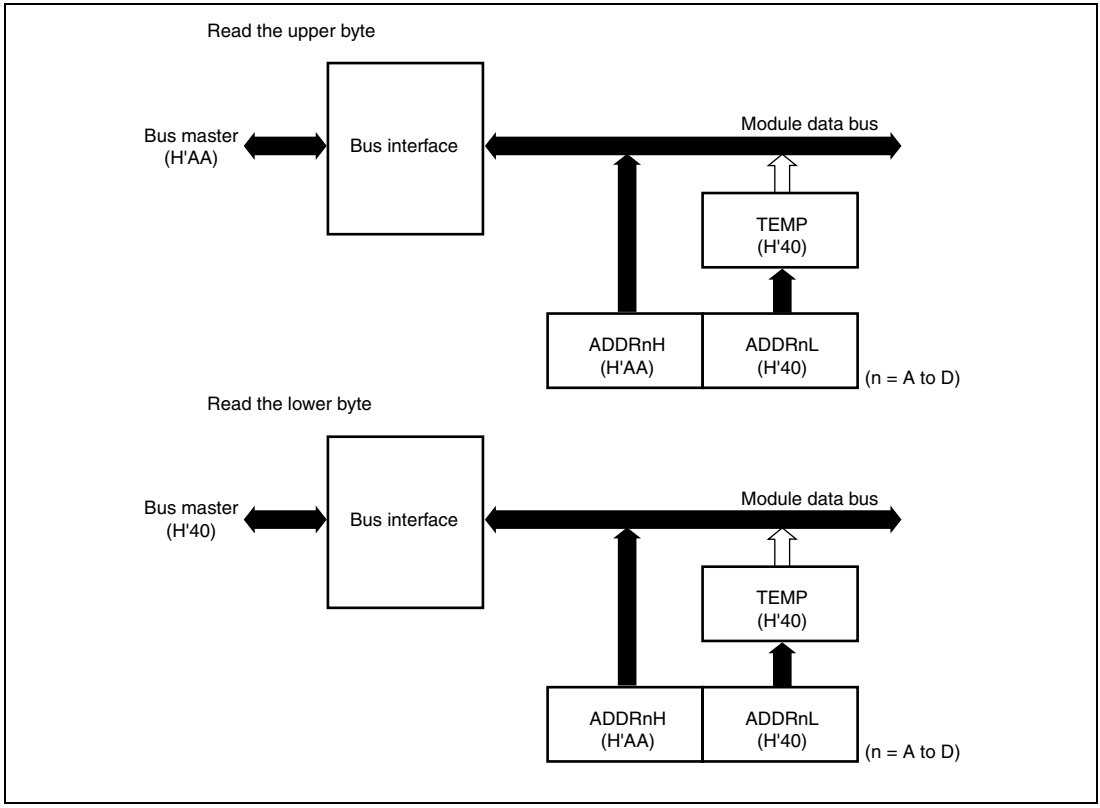


Figure 15.2 Access to ADDR (When Reading H'AA40)

15.5 Operation

The A/D converter operates by successive approximation with 10-bit resolution. It has two operating modes; single mode and scan mode. When changing the operating mode or analog input channel, in order to prevent incorrect operation, first clear the bit ADST to 0 in ADCSR. The ADST bit can be set at the same time as the operating mode or analog input channel is changed.

15.5.1 Single Mode

In single mode, A/D conversion is to be performed only once on the specified single channel. The operations are as follows.

1. A/D conversion is started when the ADST bit is set to 1, according to software or external trigger input.
2. When A/D conversion is completed, the result is transferred to the corresponding A/D data register to the channel.
3. On completion of conversion, the ADF bit in ADCSR is set to 1. If the ADIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an ADI interrupt request is generated.
4. The ADST bit remains set to 1 during A/D conversion. When A/D conversion ends, the ADST bit is automatically cleared to 0 and the A/D converter enters the wait state.

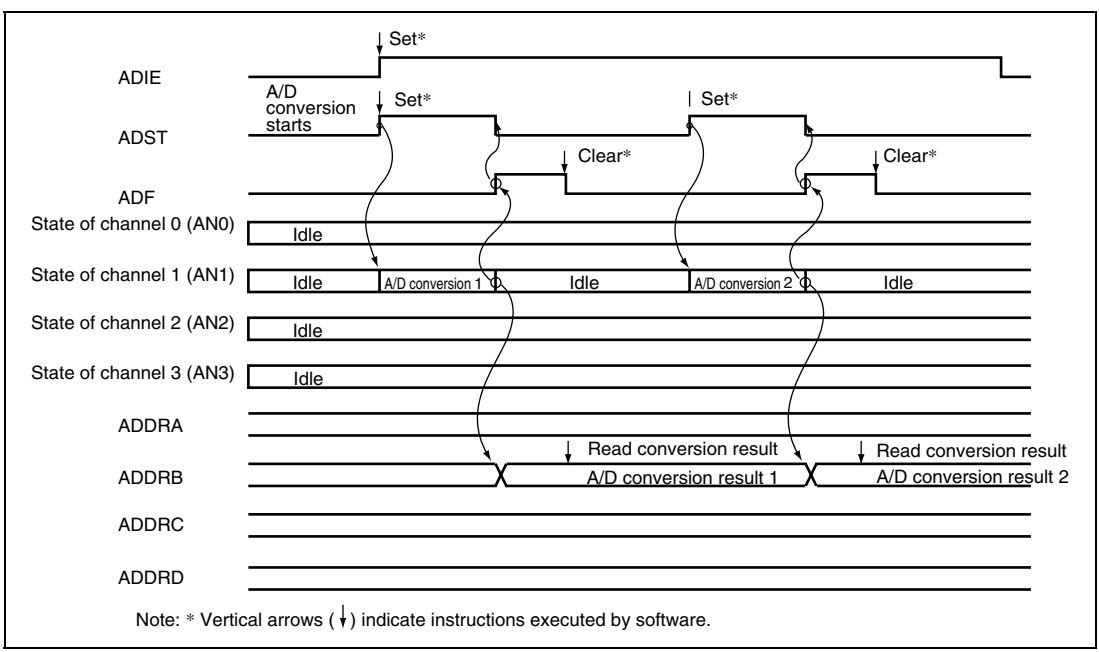
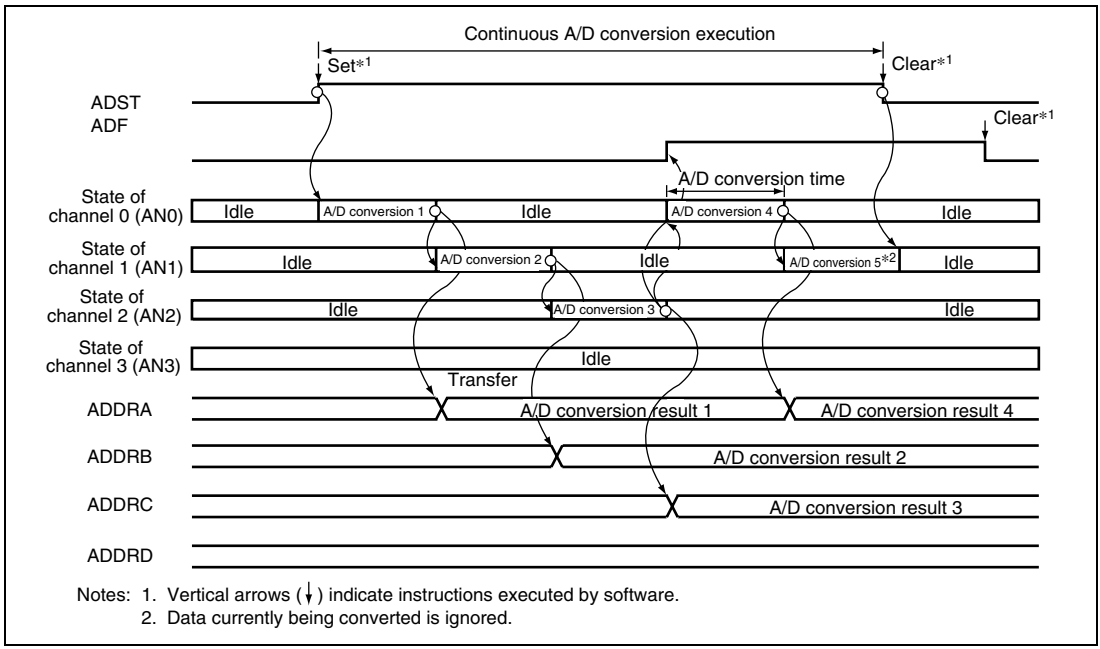


Figure 15.3 A/D Conversion Timing (Single-Chip Mode, Channel 1 Selected)

15.5.2 Scan Mode

In scan mode, A/D conversion is to be performed sequentially on the specified channels (four channels maximum). The operations are as follows.

1. When the ADST bit is set to 1 by software, TPU or external trigger input, A/D conversion starts on the first channel in the group (AN0 when CH3 and CH2 = 00, AN4 when CH3 and CH2 = 01, or AN8 when CH3 and CH2 = 10).
2. When A/D conversion for each channel is completed, the result is sequentially transferred to the A/D data register corresponding to each channel.
3. When conversion of all the selected channels is completed, the ADF flag is set to 1. If the ADIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an ADI interrupt is requested after A/D conversion ends. Conversion of the first channel in the group starts again.
4. Steps [2] to [3] are repeated as long as the ADST bit remains set to 1. When the ADST bit is cleared to 0, A/D conversion stops.



Notes: 1. Vertical arrows (↓) indicate instructions executed by software.
2. Data currently being converted is ignored.

Figure 15.4 A/D Conversion Timing (Scan Mode, Channels AN0 to AN3 Selected)

15.5.3 Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time

The A/D converter has a built-in sample-and-hold circuit. The A/D converter samples the analog input when the A/D conversion start delay time (tD) has passed after the ADST bit is set to 1, then starts conversion. Figure 15.5 shows the A/D conversion timing. Tables 15.3 and 15.4 show the A/D conversion time.

As indicated in figure 15.5, the A/D conversion time (tCONV) includes tD and the input sampling time (tSPL). The length of tD varies depending on the timing of the write access to ADCSR. The total conversion time therefore varies within the ranges indicated in table 15.4.

In scan mode, the values given in table 15.4 apply to the first conversion time. The values given in table 15.3 apply to the second and subsequent conversions.

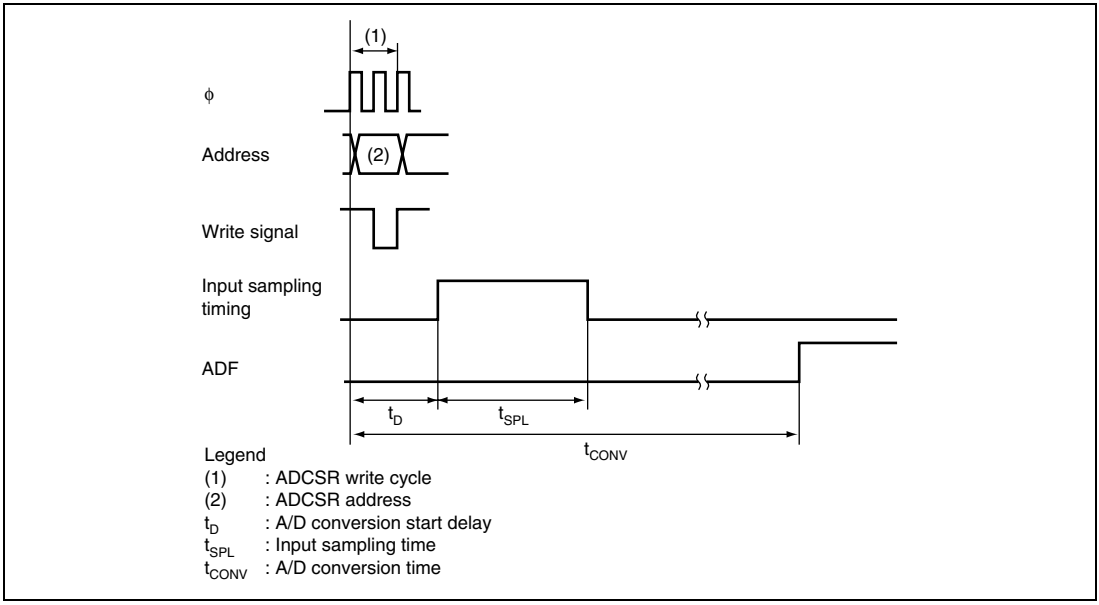


Figure 15.5 A/D Conversion Timing

Table 15.3 A/D Conversion Time (Single Mode)

Item	Symbol	CKS1 = 0						CKS1 = 1					
		CKS0 = 0			CKS0 = 1			CKS0 = 0			CKS0 = 1		
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Min.	Typ.	Max.
A/D conversion start delay	tD	18	—	33	10	—	17	6	—	9	4	—	5
Input sampling time	tSPL	—	127	—	—	63	—	—	31	—	—	15	—
A/D conversion time	tCONV	515	—	530	259	—	266	131	—	134	67	—	68

Note: All values represent the number of states.

Table 15.4 A/D Conversion Time (Scan Mode)

CKS1	CKS0	Conversion Time (State)
0	0	512 (Fixed)
	1	256 (Fixed)
1	0	128 (Fixed)
	1	64 (Fixed)

15.5.4 External Trigger Input Timing

A/D conversion can be externally triggered. When the TRGS0 and TRGS1 bits are set to 11 in ADCR, external trigger input is enabled at the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin. A falling edge at the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin sets the ADST bit to 1 in ADCSR, starting A/D conversion. Other operations, in both single and scan modes, are the same as when the bit ADST has been set to 1 by software. Figure 15.6 shows the timing.

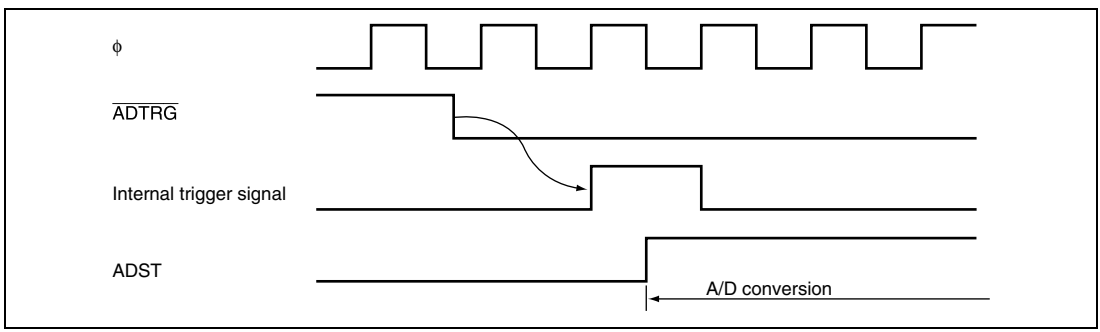


Figure 15.6 External Trigger Input Timing

15.6 Interrupts

The A/D converter generates an A/D conversion end interrupt (ADI) at the end of A/D conversion. Setting the ADIE bit to 1 enables ADI interrupt requests while the bit ADF in ADCSR is set to 1 after A/D conversion is completed. The DMAC can be activated by an ADI interrupt.

Table 15.5 A/D Converter Interrupt Source

Name	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Source Flag	DMAC Activation
ADI	A/D conversion completed	ADF	Possible

15.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions

This LSI's A/D conversion precision definitions are given below.

- Resolution

  The number of A/D converter digital output codes
- Quantization error

  The deviation inherent in the A/D converter, given by 1/2 LSB (see figure 15.7).
- Offset error

  The deviation of the analog input voltage value from the ideal A/D conversion characteristic when the digital output changes from the minimum voltage value B'0000000000 (H'000) to B'0000000001 (H'001) (see figure 15.8).
- Full-scale error

  The deviation of the analog input voltage value from the ideal A/D conversion characteristic when the digital output changes from B'1111111110 (H'3FE) to B'1111111111 (H'3FF) (see figure 15.8).
- Nonlinearity error

  The error with respect to the ideal A/D conversion characteristic between zero voltage and full-scale voltage. Does not include offset error, full-scale error, or quantization error (see figure 15.8).
- Absolute precision

  The deviation between the digital value and the analog input value. Includes offset error, full-scale error, quantization error, and nonlinearity error.

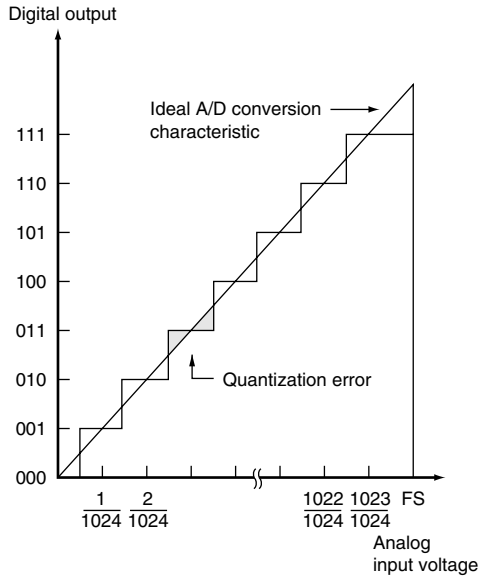


Figure 15.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (1)

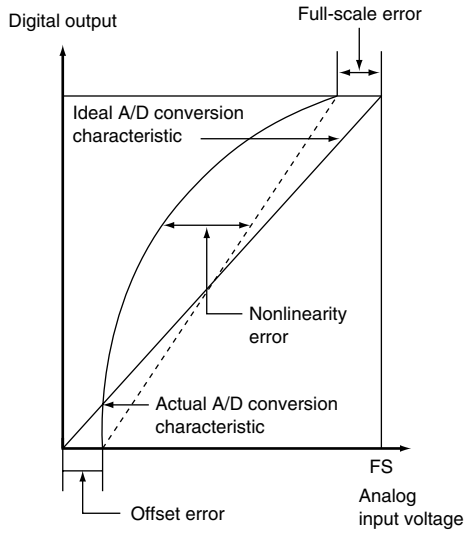


Figure 15.8 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (2)

15.8 Usage Notes

15.8.1 Permissible Signal Source Impedance

This LSI's analog input is designed such that conversion precision is guaranteed for an input signal for which the signal source impedance is 5 kΩ or less. This specification is provided to enable the A/D converter's sample-and-hold circuit input capacitance to be charged within the sampling time; if the sensor output impedance exceeds 5 kΩ, charging may be insufficient and it may not be possible to guarantee A/D conversion precision. However, for A/D conversion in single mode with a large capacitance provided externally, the input load will essentially comprise only the internal input resistance of 10 kΩ, and the signal source impedance is ignored. However, as a low-pass filter effect is obtained in this case, it may not be possible to follow an analog signal with a large differential coefficient (e.g., 5 mV/Ωs or greater) (see figure 15.9). When converting a high-speed analog signal, a low-impedance buffer should be inserted.

15.8.2 Influences on Absolute Precision

Adding capacitance results in coupling with GND, and therefore noise in GND may adversely affect absolute precision. Be sure to make the connection to an electrically stable GND such as AVSS.

Care is also required to insure that filter circuits do not communicate with digital signals on the mounting board (i.e., acting as antennas).

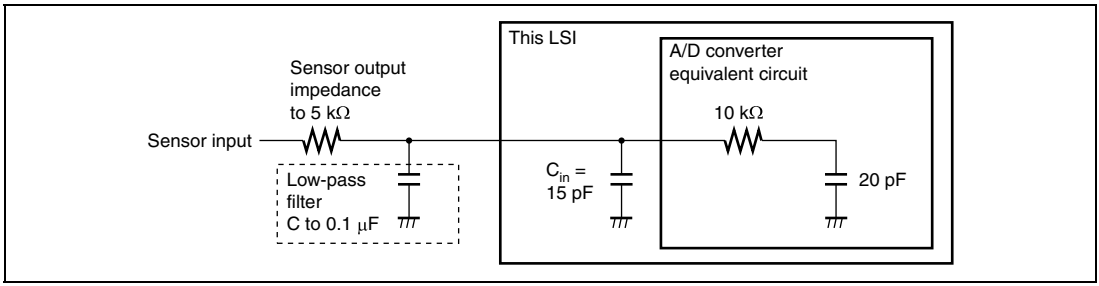


Figure 15.9 Example of Analog Input Circuit

15.8.3 Range of Analog Power Supply and Other Pin Settings

If the conditions below are not met, the reliability of the device may be adversely affected.

- Analog input voltage range
  The voltage applied to analog input pin ANn during A/D conversion should be in the range VSS ≤ ANn ≤ Vref.
- Vref input range
  The analog reference voltage input at the Vref pin set is the range Vref ≤ Vcc.

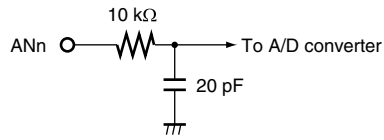
15.8.4 Notes on Board Design

Careful consideration is required in board design for noise countermeasures and in order to prevent damage due to abnormal voltage, such as an excessive surge at the analog input pins (AN0 to AN3 or AN14 to AN15) and analog reference voltage pin (Vref).

Table 15.6 Analog Pin Specifications

Item	Min.	Max.	Unit
Analog input capacitance	—	20	pF
Permissible signal source impedance	—	5*	kΩ

Note: * Vcc = 2.7 to 3.6 V



Note: Values are reference values.

Figure 15.10 Analog Input Pin Equivalent Circuit

Section 16 RAM

The H8S/2218 Series and H8S/2212 Series have 12 kbytes of on-chip high-speed static RAM. The H8S/2217 Series and H8S/2211 Series have 8 kbytes of on-chip high-speed static RAM. The H8S/2210 Series has 4 kbytes of on-chip high-speed static RAM. The RAM is connected to the CPU by a 16-bit data bus, enabling one-state access by the CPU to both byte data and word data. This makes it possible to perform fast word data transfer.

The on-chip RAM can be enabled or disabled by means of the RAM enable bit (RAME) in the system control register (SYSCR). For details on SYSCR, refer to section 3.2.2, System Control Register (SYSCR).

Product Class		ROM Type	RAM Size	RAM Address
H8S/2218 Series	HD64F2218	Flash memory Version	12 kbytes	H'FFC000 to H'FFEFBF
	HD64F2218U			H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF
	HD6432217	Masked ROM Version	8 kbytes	H'FFD000 to H'FFEFBF
				H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF
H8S/2212 Series	HDF64F2212	Flash memory Version	12 kbytes	H'FFC000 to H'FFEFBF
	HDF64F2212U			H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF
	HD6432211	Masked ROM Version	8 kbytes	H'FFD000 to H'FFEFBF
				H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF
	HD6432210		4 kbytes	H'FFE000 to H'FFEFBF
				H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF

Section 17 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version)

The features of the on-chip flash memory are summarized below. The block diagram of the flash memory is shown in figure 17.1.

17.1 Features

- Size:

Product Class		ROM Size	ROM Address
H8S/2218 Series	HD64F2218, HD64F2218U	128 kbytes	H'000000 to H'01FFFF (mode 6, 7)
H8S/2212 Series	HD64F2212, HD64F2212U		

- Programming/erase methods
  - The flash memory is programmed 128 bytes at a time. Erase is performed in single-block units. The flash memory is configured as follows: 32 kbytes × 2 blocks, 28 kbytes × 1 block, 16 kbytes × 8 blocks, 8 kbytes × 1 block, and 1 kbyte × 4 blocks. To erase the entire flash memory, each block must be erased in turn.
- Reprogramming capability
  - flash memory can be reprogrammed up to 100 times.
- Two flash memory operating modes
  - Boot mode

    SCI boot mode: HD64F2218 and HD64F2212

    USB boot mode: HD64F2218U and HD64F2212U
  - User program mode

    On-board programming/erasing can be done in boot mode in which the boot program built into the chip is started for erase or programming of the entire flash memory. In normal user program mode, individual blocks can be erased or programmed.
- Automatic bit rate adjustment
  - With data transfer in SCI boot mode, this LSI's bit rate can be automatically adjusted to match the transfer bit rate of the host.
- Programming/erasing protection
  - Sets software protection against flash memory programming/erasing.
- Programmer mode
  - Flash memory can be programmed/erased in programmer mode, using a PROM programmer, as well as in on-board programming mode.
- Flash memory emulation in RAM
  - Flash memory programming can be emulated in real time by overlapping a part of RAM onto flash memory.

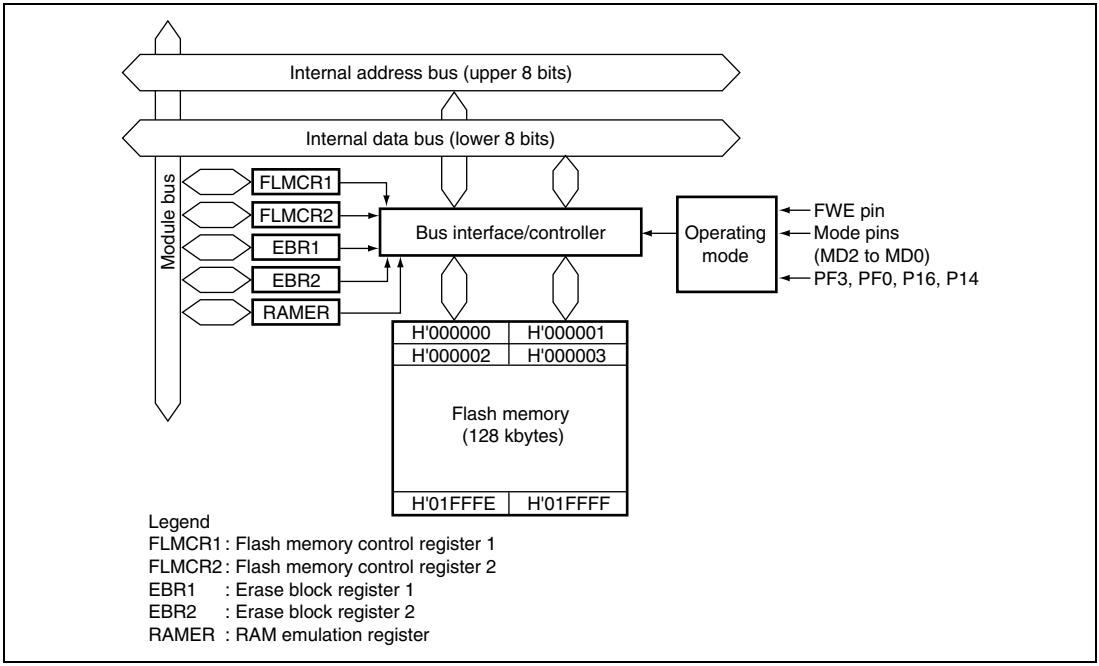
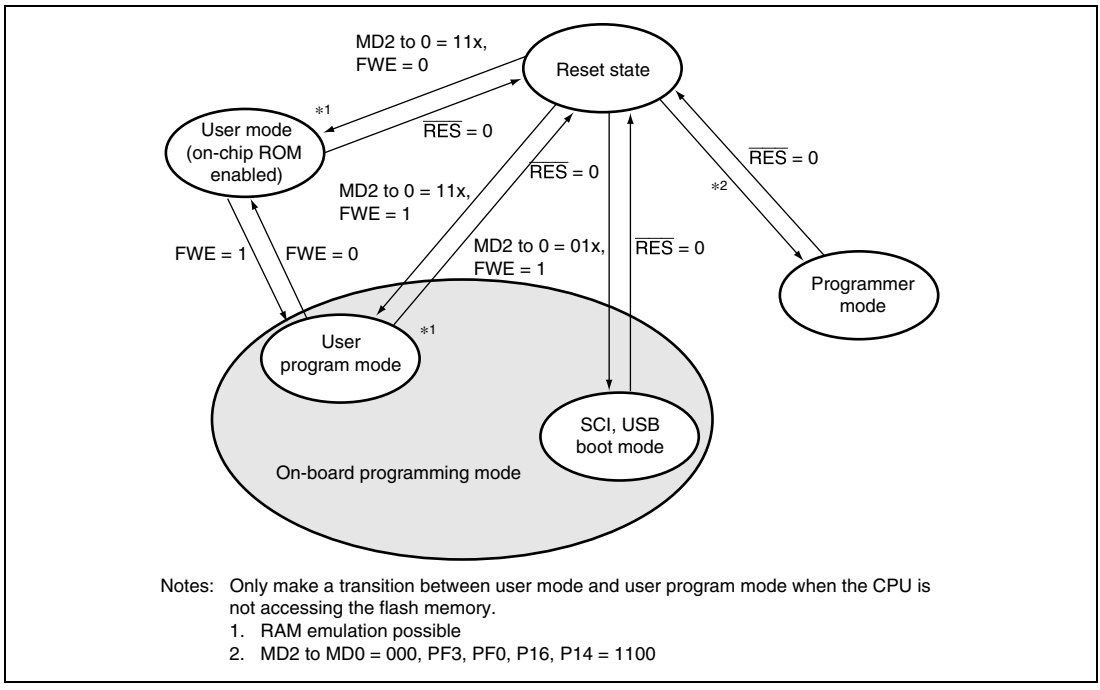


Figure 17.1 Block Diagram of Flash Memory

17.2 Mode Transitions

When the mode pins and the FWE pin are set in the reset state and a reset-start is executed, this LSI enters an operating mode as shown in Figure 17.2. In user mode, flash memory can be read but not programmed or erased. The boot and user program modes are provided as modes to write and erase the flash memory.

The differences between boot mode and user program mode are shown in Table 17.1. Boot mode and user program mode operations are shown in figures 17.3 and 17.4, respectively.



Notes: Only make a transition between user mode and user program mode when the CPU is not accessing the flash memory.
1. RAM emulation possible
2. MD2 to MD0 = 000, PF3, PF0, P16, P14 = 1100

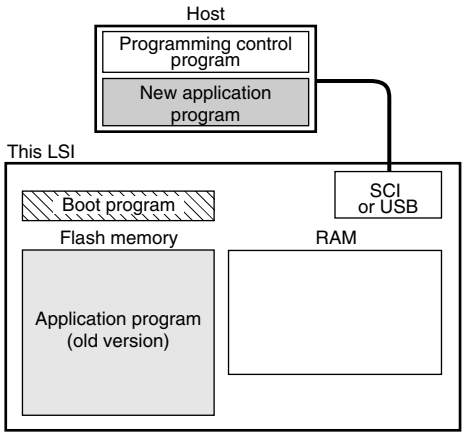
Figure 17.2 Flash Memory State Transitions

Table 17.1 Differences between Boot Mode and User Program Mode

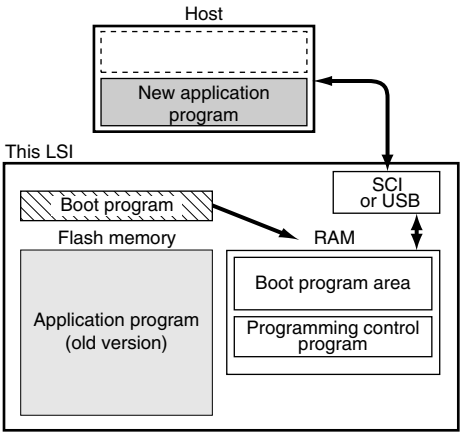
	SCI, USB Boot Mode	User Program Mode	User Mode
Total erase	Yes	Yes	No
Block erase	No	Yes	No
Programming control program*	Program/program-verify	Erase/erase-verify Program/program-verify Emulation	—

Note: * To be provided by the user, in accordance with the recommended algorithm.

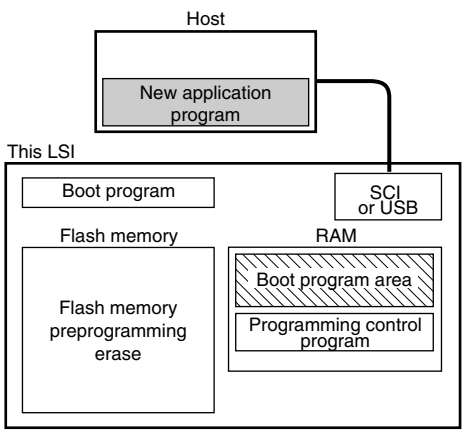
1. Initial state
   The old program version or data remains written in the flash memory. The user should prepare the programming control program and new application program beforehand in the host.



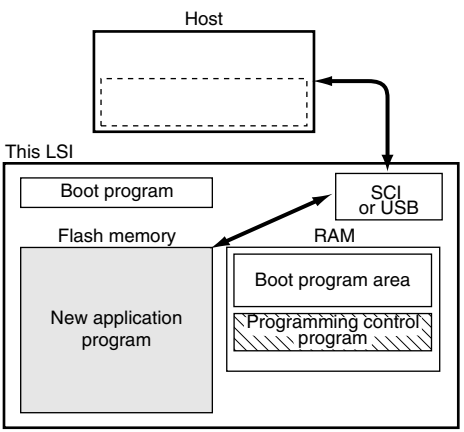
2. Programming control program transfer
   When boot mode is entered, the boot program in this LSI (originally incorporated in the chip) is started and the programming control program in the host is transferred to RAM via SCI or USB communication. The boot program required for flash memory erasing is automatically transferred to the RAM boot program area.



3. Flash memory initialization
   The erase program in the boot program area (in RAM) is executed, and the flash memory is initialized (to H'FF). In boot mode, total flash memory erasure is performed, without regard to blocks.



4. Writing new application program
   The programming control program transferred from the host to RAM is executed, and the new application program in the host is written into the flash memory.

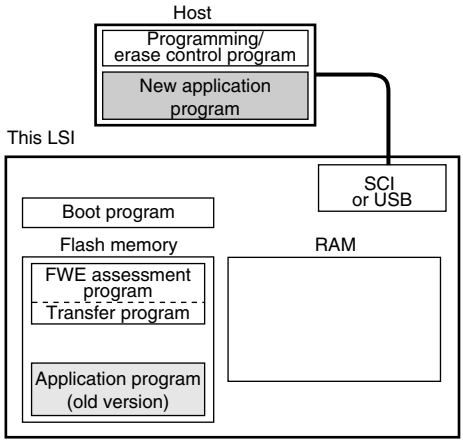


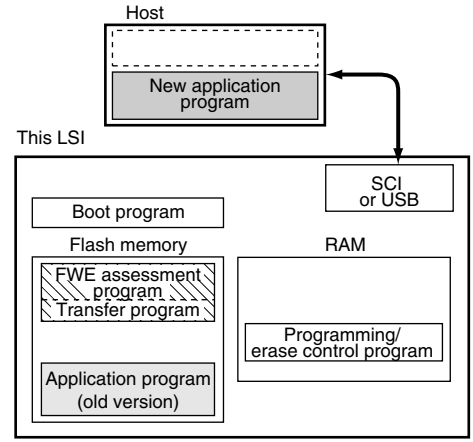
Program execution state

Figure 17.3 Boot Mode (Sample)

1. Initial state
   The FWE assessment program that confirms that user program mode has been entered, and the program that will transfer the programming/erase control program from flash memory to on-chip RAM should be written into the flash memory by the user beforehand. The programming/erase control program should be prepared in the host or in the flash memory.

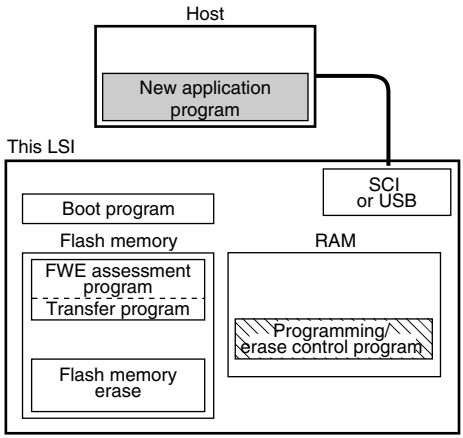
2. Programming/erase control program transfer
   When user program mode is entered, user software confirms this fact, executes transfer program in the flash memory, and transfers the programming/erase control program to RAM.

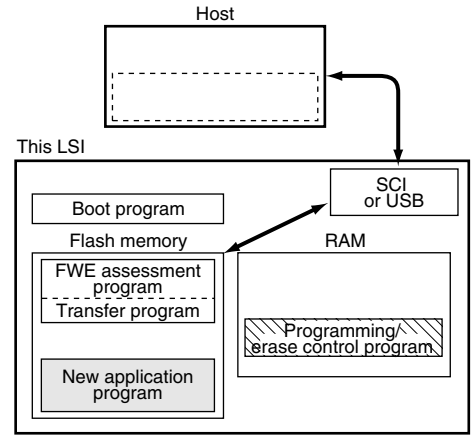




3. Flash memory initialization
   The programming/erase program in RAM is executed, and the flash memory is initialized (to H'FF). Erasing can be performed in block units, but not in byte units.

4. Writing new application program
   Next, the new application program in the host is written into the erased flash memory blocks. Do not write to unerased blocks.





Program execution state

Figure 17.4 User Program Mode (Sample)

17.3 Block Configuration

Figure 17.5 shows the block configuration of 128-kbyte flash memory. The thick lines indicate erasing units, the narrow lines indicate programming units, and the values are addresses. The flash memory is divided into one kbyte (four blocks), 28 kbytes (one block), 16 kbytes (one block), eight kbytes (two blocks), and 32 kbytes (two blocks). Erasing is performed in these divided units. Programming is performed in 128-byte units starting from an address whose lower eight bits are H'00 or H'80.

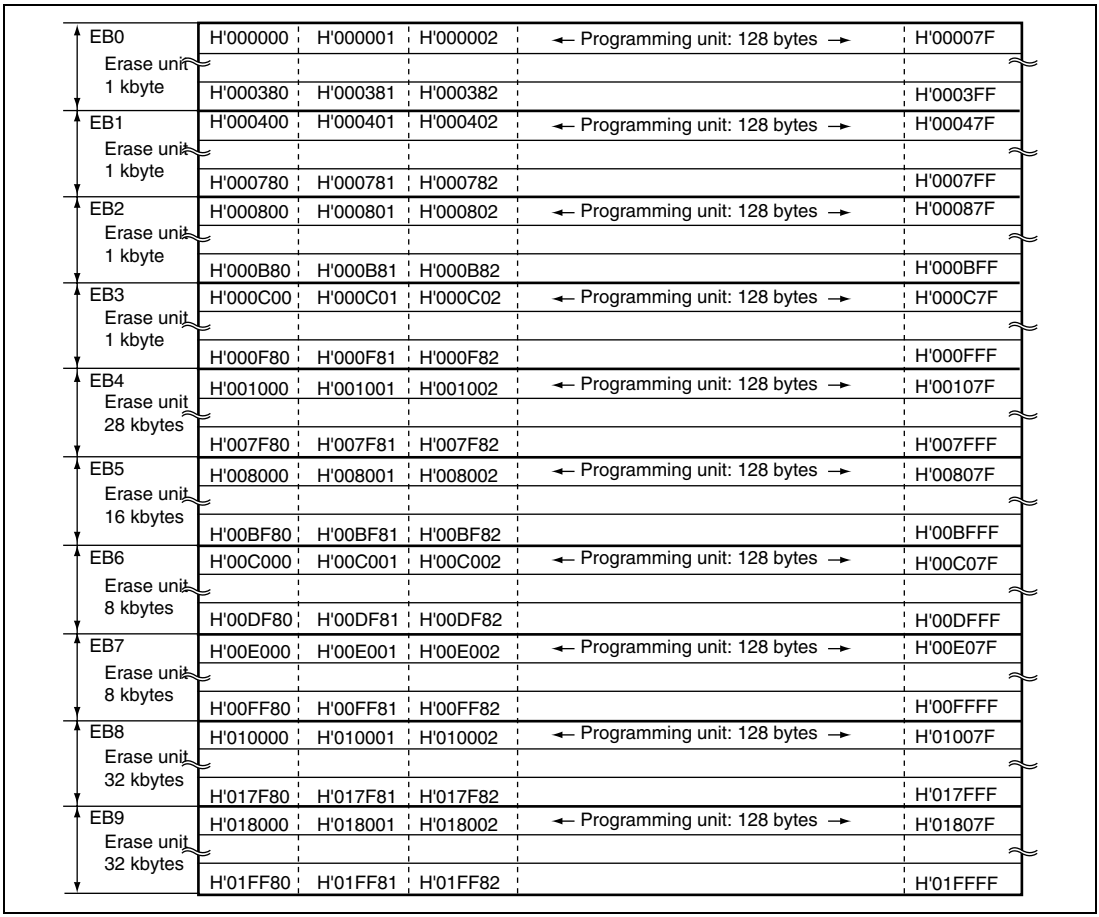


Figure 17.5 Flash Memory Block Configuration

17.4 Input/Output Pins

The flash memory is controlled by means of the pins shown in table 17.2.

Table 17.2 Pin Configuration

Pin Name	I/O	Function	
$\overline{\text{RES}}$	Input	Reset	
FWE	Input	Flash program/erase protection by hardware	
MD2, MD1, MD0	Input	Sets this LSI's operating mode	
PF3, PF0, P16, P14	Input	Sets this LSI's operating mode in programmer mode	
TxD2	Output	Serial transmit data output	HD64F2218, HD64F2212
RxD2	Input	Serial receive data input	
USD+, USD–	Input/output	USB data input/output	HD64F2218U, HD64F2212U
VBUS	Input	USB cable connect/cut detect	
UBPM	Input	USB bus power mode/self power mode select	
USPND	Output	USB suspend output	
P36	Output	D+ pull-up control	

17.5 Register Descriptions

The flash memory has the following registers. For details on register addresses and register states during each processing, refer to section 21, List of Registers.

- Flash memory control register 1 (FLMCR1)
- Flash memory control register 2 (FLMCR2)
- Erase block register 1 (EBR1)
- Erase block register 2 (EBR2)
- RAM emulation register (RAMER)
- Serial control register X (SCRX)

17.5.1 Flash Memory Control Register 1 (FLMCR1)

FLMCR1 is a register that makes the flash memory transit to program mode, program-verify mode, erase mode, or erase-verify mode. For details on register setting, refer to section 17.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	FWE	—*	R	Reflects the input level at the FWE pin. It is set to 1 when a low level is input to the FWE pin, and cleared to 0 when a high level is input.
6	SWE1	0	R/W	Software Write Enable When this bit is set to 1, flash memory programming/erasing is enabled. When this bit is cleared to 0, other FLMCR1 register bits and all EBR1, EBR2 bits cannot be set. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1
5	ESU1	0	R/W	Erase Setup When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to the erase setup state. When it is cleared to 0, the erase setup state is cancelled. Set this bit to 1 before setting the E1 bit in FLMCR1. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1
4	PSU1	0	R/W	Program Setup When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to the program setup state. When it is cleared to 0, the program setup state is cancelled. Set this bit to 1 before setting the P1 bit in FLMCR1. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1
3	EV1	0	R/W	Erase-Verify When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to erase-verify mode. When it is cleared to 0, erase-verify mode is cancelled. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
2	PV1	0	R/W	Program-Verify When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to program-verify mode. When it is cleared to 0, program-verify mode is cancelled. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1
1	E1	0	R/W	Erase When this bit is set to 1 while the SWE1 and ESU1 bits are 1, the flash memory transits to erase mode. When it is cleared to 0, erase mode is cancelled. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1, SWE1 = 1, and ESU1 = 1
0	P1	0	R/W	Program When this bit is set to 1 while the SWE1 and PSU1 bits are 1, the flash memory transits to program mode. When it is cleared to 0, program mode is cancelled. [Setting condition] When FWE = 1, SWE1 = 1, and PSU1 = 1

Note: * Set according to the FWE pin state.

17.5.2 Flash Memory Control Register 2 (FLMCR2)

FLMCR2 is a register that displays the state of flash memory programming/erasing. FLMCR2 is a read-only register, and should not be written to.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	FLER	0	R	Indicates that an error has occurred during an operation on flash memory (programming or erasing). When FLER is set to 1, flash memory goes to the error-protection state. See 17.9.3 Error Protection, for details.
6 to 0	—	0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.

17.5.3 Erase Block Register 1 (EBR1)

EBR1 specifies the flash memory erase area block. EBR1 is initialized to H'00 when the SWE1 bit in FLMCR is 0. Do not set more than one bit at a time, as this will cause all the bits in EBR1 and EBR2 to be automatically cleared to 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	EB7	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 8 kbytes of EB7 (H'00E000 to H'00FFFF) are to be erased.
6	EB6	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 8 kbytes of EB6 (H'00C000 to H'00DFFF) are to be erased.
5	EB5	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 16 kbytes of EB5 (H'008000 to H'00BFFF) are to be erased.
4	EB4	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 28 kbytes of EB4 (H'001000 to H'007FFF) are to be erased.
3	EB3	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 1 kbyte of EB3 (H'000C00 to H'000FFF) is to be erased.
2	EB2	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 1 kbyte of EB2 (H'000800 to H'000BFF) is to be erased.
1	EB1	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 1 kbyte of EB1 (H'000400 to H'0007FF) is to be erased.
0	EB0	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 4, 1 kbyte of EB0 (H'000000 to H'0003FF) is to be erased.

17.5.4 Erase Block Register 2 (EBR2)

EBR2 specifies the flash memory erase area block. EBR2 is initialized to H'00 when the SWE1 bit in FLMCR1 is 0. Do not set more than one bit at a time, as this will cause all the bits in EBR1 and EBR2 to be automatically cleared to 0.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 2	—	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
1	EB9	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 32 kbytes of EB9 (H'018000 to H'01FFFF) are to be erased.
0	EB8	0	R/W	When this bit is set to 1, 32 kbytes of EB8 (H'010000 to H'017FFF) are to be erased.

17.5.5 RAM Emulation Register (RAMER)

RAMER specifies the area of flash memory to be overlapped with part of RAM when emulating real-time flash memory programming. RAMER settings should be made in user mode or user program mode. To ensure correct operation of the emulation function, the ROM for which RAM emulation is performed should not be accessed immediately after this register has been modified. Normal execution of an access immediately after register modification is not guaranteed. For details, refer to section 17.7, Flash Memory Emulation in RAM.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 5	—	0	—	Reserved These bits always read as 0.
4	—	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
3	RAMS	0	R/W	RAM Select Specifies selection or non-selection of flash memory emulation in RAM. When RAMS = 1, the flash memory is overlapped with part of RAM, and all flash memory block are program/erase-protected.
2	RAM2	0	R/W	Flash Memory Area Selection
1	RAM1	0	R/W	When the RAMS bit is set to 1, selects one of the following flash memory areas to overlap the RAM area. The areas correspond with 1-kbyte erase blocks.
0	RAM0	0	R/W	000: H'000000 to H'0003FF (EB0) 001: H'000400 to H'0007FF (EB1) 010: H'000800 to H'000BFF (EB2) 011: H'000C00 to H'000FFF (EB3) 100: Setting prohibited 101: Setting prohibited 110: Setting prohibited 111: Setting prohibited

17.5.6 Flash Memory Power Control Register (FLPWCR)

FLPWCR enables/disables transition to power-down modes for the flash memory when this LSI enters sub-active mode.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PDWND	0	R/W	Power Down Disable Enables/disables transition to power-down modes for the flash memory when this LSI enters sub-active mode. 0: Transition to power-down modes for the flash memory enabled. 1: Transition to power-down modes for the flash memory disabled.
6 to 0	—	All 0	R	Reserved These bits always read as 0

17.5.7 Serial Control Register X (SCRX)

SCRX performs register access control.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 4	—	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
3	FLSHE	0	R/W	Flash Memory Control Register Enable: Controls CPU access to the flash memory control registers (FLMCR1, FLMCR2, EBR1, and EBR2). Setting the FLSHE bit to 1 enables read/write access to the flash memory control registers. If FLSHE is cleared to 0, the flash memory control registers are deselected. In this case, the flash memory control register contents are retained. 0: Flash control registers deselected in area H'FFFFA8 to H'FFFFAC 1: Flash control registers selected in area H'FFFFA8 to H'FFFFAC
2 to 0	—	0	R/W	Reserved The write value should always be 0.

17.6 On-Board Programming Modes

When pins are set to on-board programming mode and a reset-start is executed, a transition is made to the on-board programming state in which program/erase/verify operations can be performed on the on-chip flash memory. There are two on-board programming modes: boot mode and user program mode. The pin settings for transition to each of these modes are shown in table 17.3. For a diagram of the transitions to the various flash memory modes, see figure 17.2.

Table 17.3 Setting On-Board Programming Modes

Mode		FWE	MD2	MD1	MD0
SCI boot mode (HD64F2212, HD64F2218) USB boot mode (HD64F2212U, HD64F2218U)	Advanced: single-chip mode (24 MHz system clock in USB boot mode or SCI boot mode)	1	0	1	0
	Advanced: single-chip mode (16 MHz system clock in USB boot mode or SCI boot mode)	1	0	1	1
User program mode	Advanced: on-chip ROM extended mode (MCU operating mode 6)	1	1	1	0
	Advanced: Single-chip mode (MCU operating mode 7)	1	1	1	1

17.6.1 SCI Boot Mode (HD64F2218 and HD64F2212)

When a reset-start is executed after the LSI's pins have been set to boot mode, the boot program built into the LSI is started and the programming control program prepared in the host is serially transmitted to the LSI via the SCI. In the LSI, the programming control program received via the SCI is written into the programming control program area in on-chip RAM. After the transfer is completed, control branches to the start address of the programming control program area and the programming control program execution state is entered (flash memory programming is performed). The system configuration in boot mode is shown in figure 17.6.

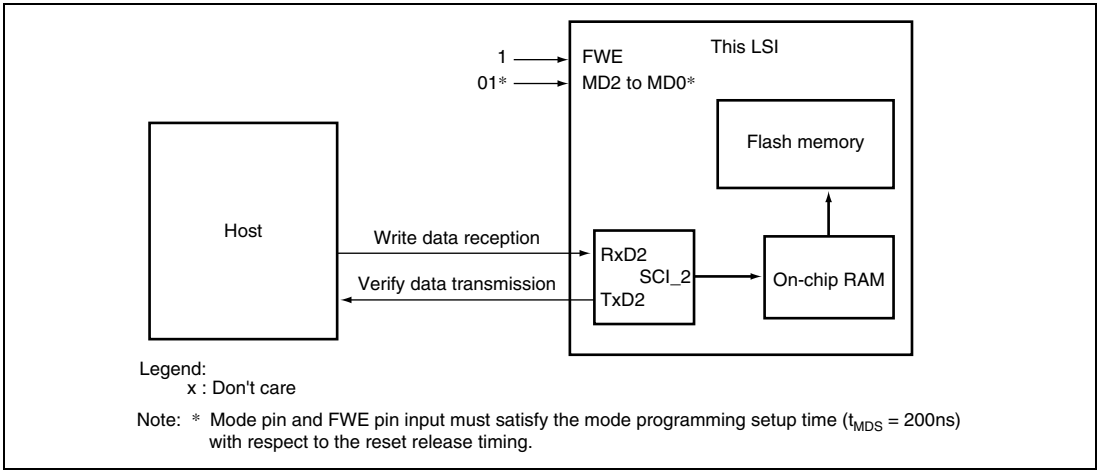


Figure 17.6 System Configuration in Boot Mode

Table 17.4 shows the boot mode operations between reset end and branching to the programming control program.

1. When boot mode is used, the flash memory programming control program must be prepared in the host beforehand. Prepare a programming control program in accordance with the description in section 17.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing. In boot mode, if any data has been programmed into the flash memory (if all data is not 1), all flash memory blocks are erased. Boot mode is for use in enforced exit when user program mode is unavailable, such as the first time on-board programming is performed, or if the program activated in user program mode is accidentally erased.
2. The SCI_2 should be set to asynchronous mode, and the transfer format as follows: 8-bit data, 1 stop bit, and no parity.
3. When the boot program is initiated, the chip measures the low-level period of asynchronous SCI communication data (H'00) transmitted continuously from the host. The chip then calculates the bit rate of transmission from the host, and adjusts the SCI_2 bit rate to match that of the host. The reset should end with the RxD pin high. The RxD and TxD pins should be pulled up on the board if necessary. After the reset ends, it takes approximately 100 states before the chip is ready to measure the low-level period.
4. After matching the bit rates, the chip transmits one H'00 byte to the host to indicate the end of bit rate adjustment. The host should confirm that this adjustment end indication (H'00) has been received normally, and transmit one H'55 byte to the chip. If reception could not be performed normally, initiate boot mode again by a reset. Depending on the host's transfer bit rate and system clock frequency of this LSI, there will be a discrepancy between the bit rates of the host and the chip. To operate the SCI properly, set the host's transfer bit rate and system clock frequency of this LSI within the ranges listed in table 17.5.

5. In boot mode, a part of the on-chip RAM area (four kbytes) is used by the boot program. Addresses H'FFE000 to H'FFEFBF is the area to which the programming control program is transferred from the host. The boot program area cannot be used until the execution state in boot mode switches to the programming control program.
6. Before branching to the programming control program, the chip terminates transfer operations by the SCI_2 (by clearing the RE and TE bits in SCR to 0), but the adjusted bit rate value remains set in BRR. Therefore, the programming control program can still use it for transfer of write data or verify data with the host. The TxD pin is high. The contents of the CPU general registers are undefined immediately after branching to the programming control program. These registers must be initialized at the beginning of the programming control program, since the stack pointer (SP), in particular, is used implicitly in subroutine calls, etc.
7. Boot mode can be cleared by a reset. End the reset* after driving the reset pin low, waiting at least 20 states, and then setting the FWE pin and the mode (MD) pins. Boot mode is also cleared when a WDT overflow occurs.
8. Do not change the MD pin input levels in boot mode. If the mode pin input levels are changed (for example, from low to high) during a reset, the state of ports with multiplexed address functions and bus control output pins ($\overline{AS}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$) will change according to the change in the microcomputer's operating mode . Therefore, care must be taken to make pin settings to prevent these pins from becoming output signal pins during a reset, or to prevent collision with signals outside the microcomputer.
9. All interrupts are disabled during programming or erasing of the flash memory.

Note:* Mode pin and FWE pin input must satisfy the mode programming setup time (t_{MDS} = 200 ns) with respect to the reset release timing.

Table 17.4 Boot Mode Operation

Item	Host Operation	LSI Operation
		Branches to boot program at reset-start
Bit rate adjustment	Continuously transmits data H'00 at specified bit rate	Measures low-level period of receive data H'00
		Calculates bit rate and sets it in BRR of SCI_2
	Transmits data H'55 when data H'00 is received error-free	Transmits data H'00 to host as adjustment end indication
		Transmits data H'AA to host when data H'55 is received
Transmits number of bytes (N) of programming control program	Transmits number of bytes (N) of programming control program to be transferred as 2-byte data (low-order byte following high-order byte)	Echobacks the 2-byte data received as verification data
Transmits 1-byte of programming control program (repeated for N times)	Transmits 1-byte of programming control program	Echobacks received data to host and also transfers it to RAM
Flash memory erase		Checks flash memory data, erases all flash memory blocks in case of written data existing, and transmits data H'AA to host. (If erase could not be done, transmits data H'FF to host and aborts operation)
Programming control program execution		Branches to programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM and starts execution

Table 17.5 System Clock Frequencies for which Automatic Adjustment of LSI Bit Rate is Possible

Host Bit Rate	System Clock Frequency Range of LSI
19,200 bps	8 to 24 MHz
9,600 bps	6 to 24 MHz
4,800 bps	6 to 24 MHz

17.6.2 USB Boot Mode (HD64F2218U and HD64F2212U)

- Features
  - Selection of bus-powered mode or self-powered mode
  - Supports the USB operating clock generation by 16 MHz system clock with PLL3 multiplication (FWE = 1, MD2 to MD0 = 011) or 24 MHz system clock with PLL2 multiplication (FWE = 1, MD2 to MD0 = 010)
  - D+ pull up control connection supported for P36 pin only
  - See table 17.6 for enumeration information

Table 17.6 Enumeration Information

USB Standard	**Ver.1.1**	
Transfer modes	Control (in out), Bulk (in out)	
Maximum power	Self power mode ($\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ pin = 1)	100 mA
	Bus power mode ($\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ pin = 0)	500 mA
Endpoint configuration	EP0 Control (in,out) 64Bytes Configuration 1 └ Interface Number 0 └ Alternate Setting 0 ├ EP1 Bulk (in) 64Bytes └ EP2 Bulk (out) 64Bytes	

- Notes on USB Boot Mode Execution
  - Specify 16 MHz or 24 MHz system clock and the FWE and MD2 to MD0 pins correctly.
  - Use the P36 pin for D+ pull-up control connection.
  - To ensure stable power supply during flash memory programming/erasing, do not use cable connection via a bus powered HUB.
  - Note in particular that, in the worst case, the LSI may be permanently damaged if the USB cable is detached during flash memory programming/erasing.
  - A transition is not made to software standby mode (a power-down mode) even if the USB bus enters suspend mode when in bus power mode.

- Overview

  When a reset start preformed after the pins of this LSI have been set to boot mode, a boot program incorporated in the microcomputer beforehand is activated, and the prepared programming control program is transmitted sequentially to the host using the USB. With this LSI, the programming control program received by the USB is written to a programming control program area in on-chip RAM. After transfer is completed, control branches to the start address of the programming control program area, and the programming control program execution state is established (flash memory programming is performed). Figure 17.7 shows a system configuration diagram when using USB boot mode.

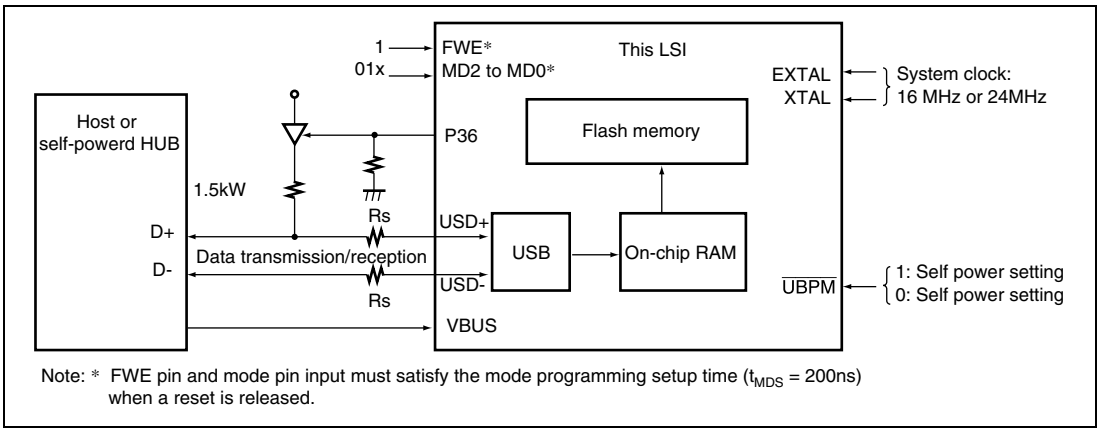


Figure 17.7 System Configuration Diagram when Using USB Boot Mode

1. When boot mode is used, the flash memory programming control program must be prepared in the host beforehand. Prepare a programming control program in accordance with the description in section 17.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing. In boot mode, if any data has been programmed into the flash memory (if all data is not 1), all flash memory blocks are erased. Boot mode is for use in enforced exit when user program mode is unavailable, such a the first time on-board programming control program, or performed, or if the program activated in user program mode is accidentally erased.
2. When the boot program is activated, enumeration with respect to the host is carried out. Enumeration information is shown in table 17.6. When enumeration is completed, transmit a single H'55 byte from the host. If reception has not been preformed normally, restart boot mode by means of a reset.
3. Set the frequency for transmission from the host as a numeric value in units of MHz × 100 (ex: 16.00 MHz → H'0640, 24.00 MHz → H'0960).
4. In boot mode, the 4-kbyte on-chip RAM area H'FFE000 to H'FFEFBF is used by the boot program. The programming control program transmitted form the host can be stored in the 8-kbyte area H'FFC000 to H'FFDFFF. The boot program area cannot be used until program execution switches to the programming control program. Also note that the boot program remains in RAM even after control passes to the programming control program.

5. When a branch is made to the programming control program, the USB remains connected and can be used immediately for transmission/reception of write data or verify data between the programming control program and the host. The contents of CPU general registers are undefined after a branch to the programming control program. Note, in particular, that since the stack pointer is used implicitly in subroutine calls ad the like, it should be initialized at the start of the programming control program.
6. Boot mode is by means of a reset. Drive the reset pin low, wait for the elapse of at least 20 states, then set the FWE pin and mode pins to release the reset. Boot mode is also exited in the event of a WDT overflow reset.
7. Do not change the input level of the mode pins while in boot mode. In the input level of a mode pin is changed (from low to high) during a reset, the states of ports with a dual function as address output s, and bus control output signals ($\overline{AS}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$), will change due to switching of the operating mode. Either make pin settings so that these pins do not become output signal pins during a reset, or take precautions to prevent collisions with external signals.
8. Interrupt cannot be used during flash memory programming or erasing.

Table 17.7 USB Boot Mode Operation

Item	Host Operation	Operation of this LSI
		Branches to boot program after reset start
Start of USB boot mode	Transmits one H'55 byte on completion of USB enumeration	
		Transmits one H'AA byte to host on reception of H'55
Transfer clock information	Transmits frequency (2 bytes), number of multiplication	
	Classification (1 byte), multiplication ratio (1 byte)	
	With this LSI, H'0640 or H'0960, H'01, H'01, are transmitted	
		If received data are within respective ranges, transmits H'AA to host
		If any received data is out-of-ranges, transmits H'FF to host and halts operation

Item	Host Operation	Operation of this LSI
Transfer number of bytes (N) of programming control program	Performs 2-byte transfer number of bytes (N) of programming control program	
		If received number of bytes is within ranges, transmits H'AA to host
		If received number of bytes is out-of- ranges, transmits H'FF to host and halts operation
Transfer of programming control program and sum value	Transmits programming control program in N-byte divisions.	
		Transfers received data to on-chip RAM
	Transmits sum value (two's complement of sum total of programming control program (1 byte))	
		Calculates sum total of received sum value and 1 byte units of programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM
		If sum is 0, transmits H'AA to host
		If sum is not 0, transmits H'FF to host halts operation
Memory erase		Starts total erase of flash memory
	Transmits total erase status command (H'3A)	
		Transmits H'11 to host if total erase processing is being executed when total erase status command is received
		Transmits H'06 to host if total erase of all blocks has been completed when total erase status command is received

Item	Host Operation	Operation of this LSI
Memory erase	Transmits total erase status command (H'3A)	If erase cannot be performed when total erase status command is received, transmits H'EE to host and halts operation
Execution of programming control program		Branches to programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM and starts execution.

17.6.3 Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode

On-board programming/erasing of an individual flash memory block can also be performed in user program mode by branching to a user program/erase control program. The user must set branching conditions and provide on-board FWE control and supply of programming data, and storing a program/erase control program in part of the program area as necessary.. The flash memory must contain the user program/erase control program or a program which provides the user program/erase control program from external memory. Because the flash memory itself cannot be read during programming/erasing, transfer the user program/erase control program to on-chip RAM, as like in boot mode. Figure 17.8 shows a sample procedure for programming/erasing in user program mode. Prepare a user program/erase control program in accordance with the description in section 17.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing.

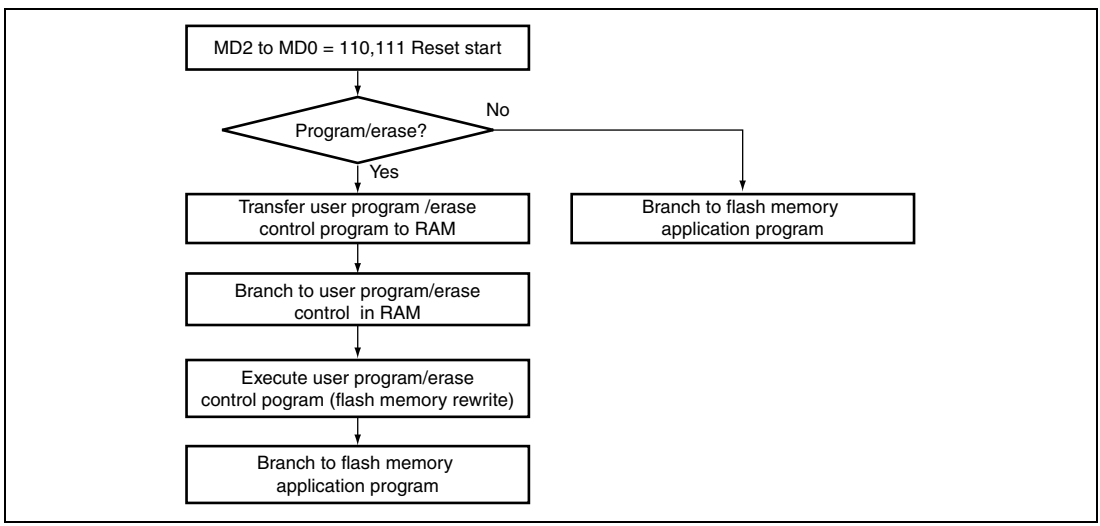


Figure 17.8 Programming/Erasing Flowchart Example In User Program Mode

17.7 Flash Memory Emulation in RAM

Making a setting in the RAM emulation register (RAMER) enables part of RAM to be overlapped onto the flash memory area so that data to be written to flash memory can be emulated in RAM in real time. Emulation can be performed in user mode or user program mode. Figure 17.9 shows an example of emulation of real-time flash memory programming.

1. Set RAMER to overlap part of RAM onto the area for which real-time programming is required.
2. Emulation is performed using the overlapping RAM.
3. After the program data has been confirmed, the RAMS bit is cleared, thus releasing RAM overlap.
4. The data written in the overlapping RAM is written into the flash memory space (EB0).

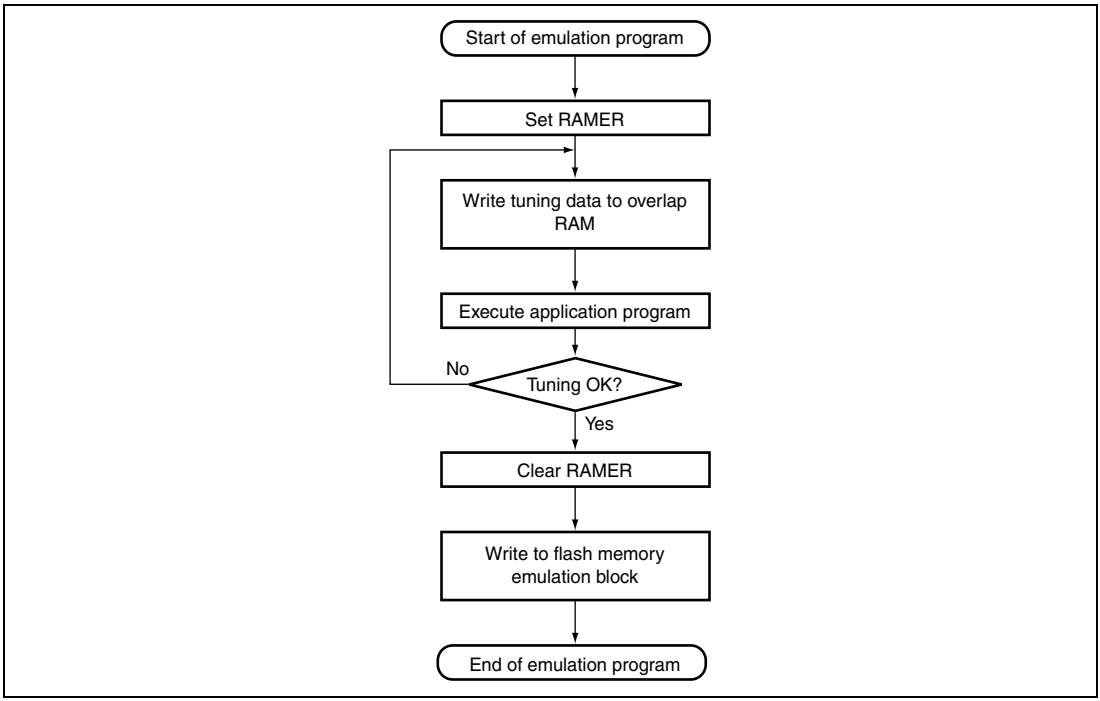


Figure 17.9 Flowchart for Flash Memory Emulation in RAM

An example in which flash memory block area EB0 is overlapped is shown in figure 17.10.

1. The RAM area to be overlapped is fixed at a 1-kbyte area in the range of H'FFD000 to H'FFD3FF.
2. The flash memory area to overlap is selected by RAMER from a 1-kbyte area among one of the EB0 to EB3 blocks.
3. The overlapped RAM area can be accessed from both the flash memory addresses and RAM addresses.
4. When the RAMS bit in RAMER is set to 1, program/erase protection is enabled for all flash memory blocks (emulation protection). In this state, setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1 to 1 does not cause a transition to program mode or erase mode.
5. A RAM area cannot be erased by execution of software in accordance with the erase algorithm.
6. Block area EB0 contains the vector table. When performing RAM emulation, the vector table is needed in the overlap RAM.

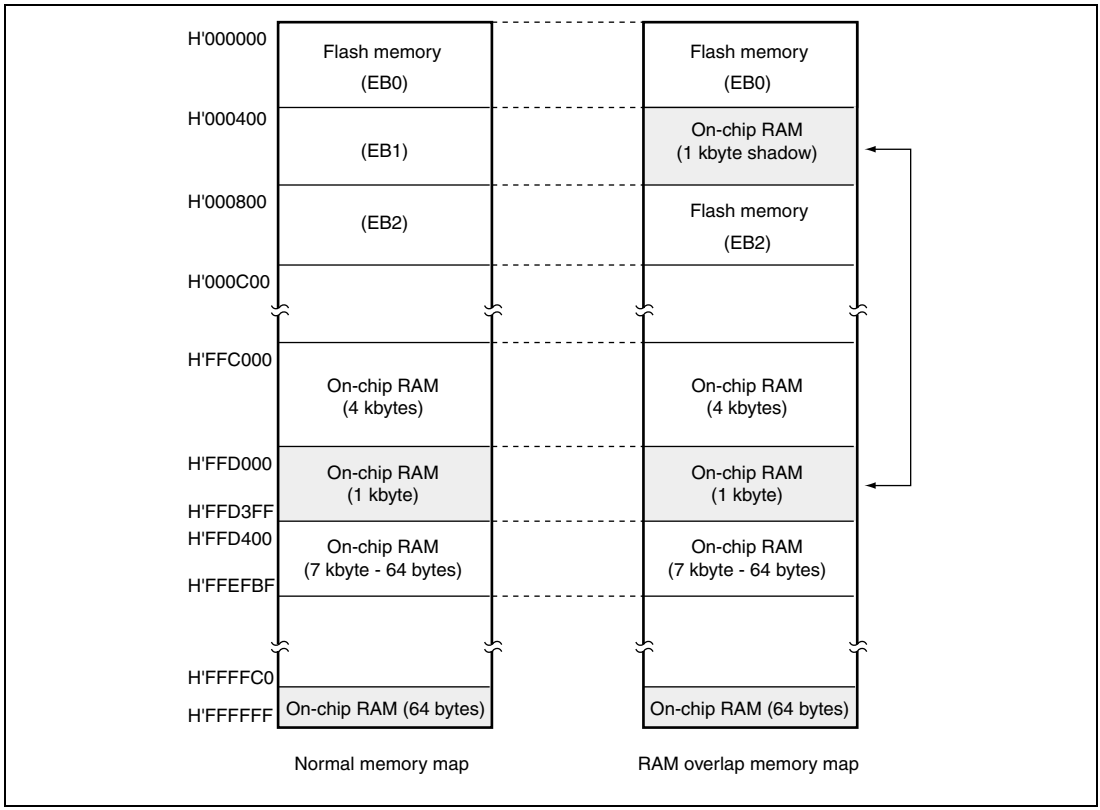


Figure 17.10 Example of RAM Overlap Operation

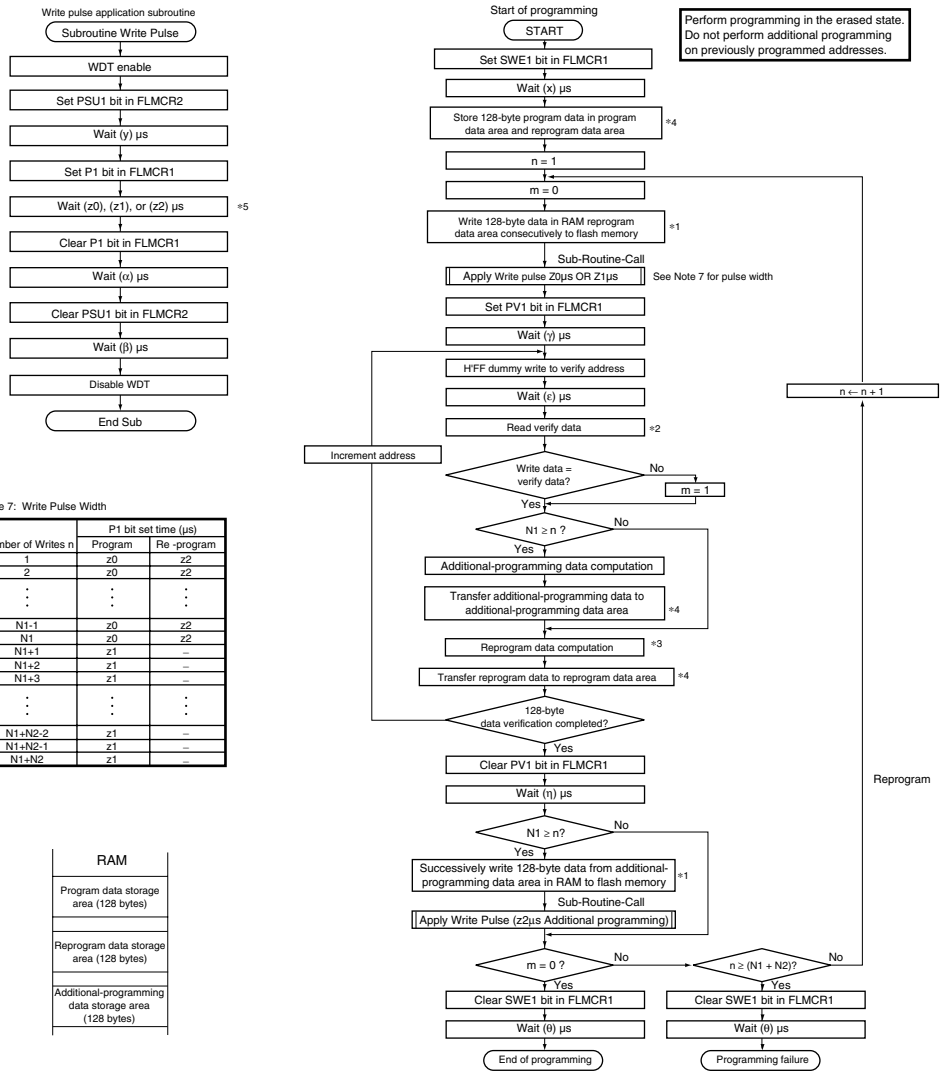
17.8 Flash Memory Programming/Erasing

A software method, using the CPU, is employed to program and erase flash memory in the on-board programming modes. Depending on the FLMCR1 setting, the flash memory operates in one of the following four modes: program mode, erase mode, program-verify mode, and erase-verify mode. The programming control program in boot mode and the user program/erase control program in user program mode use these operating modes in combination to perform programming/erasing. Flash memory programming and erasing should be performed in accordance with the descriptions in section 17.8.1, Program/Program-Verify Mode and section 17.8.2, Erase/Erase-Verify Mode, respectively.

17.8.1 Program/Program-Verify

When writing data or programs to the flash memory, the program/program-verify flowchart shown in figure 17.11 should be followed. Performing programming operations according to this flowchart will enable data or programs to be written to the flash memory without subjecting the chip to voltage stress or sacrificing program data reliability.

1. Programming must be done to an empty address. Do not reprogram an address to which programming has already been performed.
2. Programming should be carried out 128 bytes at a time. A 128-byte data transfer must be performed even if writing fewer than 128 bytes. In this case, H'FF data must be written to the extra addresses.
3. Prepare the following data storage areas in RAM: a 128-byte programming data area, a 128-byte reprogramming data area, and a 128-byte additional-programming data area. Perform reprogramming data computation and additional programming data computation according to figure 17.10.
4. Consecutively transfer 128 bytes of data in byte units from the reprogramming data area or additional-programming data area to the flash memory. The program address and 128-byte data are latched in the flash memory. The lower 8 bits of the start address in the flash memory destination area must be H'00 or H'80.
5. The time during which the P1 bit is set to 1 is the programming time. Figure 17.10 shows the allowable programming times.
6. The watchdog timer (WDT) is set to prevent overprogramming due to program runaway, etc. An overflow cycle of approximately $(y + z2 + \alpha + \beta)$ µs is allowed.
7. For a dummy write to a verify address, write 1-byte data H'FF to an address whose lower 2 bits are b'00. Verify data can be read in words from the address to which a dummy write was performed.
8. The maximum number of repetitions of the program/program-verify sequence to the same bit is (N1 + N2).



Note 7: Write Pulse Width

	P1 bit set time (µs)	
Number of Writes n	Program	Re -program
1	z0	z2
2	z0	z2
⋮	⋮	⋮
N1-1	z0	z2
N1	z0	z2
N1+1	z1	–
N1+2	z1	–
N1+3	z1	–
⋮	⋮	⋮
N1+N2-2	z1	–
N1+N2-1	z1	–
N1+N2	z1	–

Notes: 1. Data transfer is performed by byte transfer. The lower 8 bits of the first address written to must be H'00 or H'80.
A 128-byte data transfer must be performed even if writing fewer than 128 bytes; in this case, H'FF data must be written to the extra addresses.
2. Verify data is read in 16-bit (word) units.
3. Reprogram data is determined by the operation shown in the table below (comparison between the data stored in the program data area and the verify data). Bits for which the reprogram data is 0 are programmed in the next reprogramming loop. Therefore, even bits for which programming has been completed will be subjected to programming once again if the result of the subsequent verify operation is NG.
4. A 128-byte area for storing program data, a 128-byte area for storing reprogram data, and a 128-byte area for storing additional data must be provided in RAM. The contents of the reprogram data area and additional data area are modified as programming proceeds.
5. A write pulse of z0 or z1 is applied according to the progress of the programming operation. See Note 7 for details of the pulse widths. When writing of additional-programming data is executed, a z2 write pulse should be applied. Reprogram data X' means reprogram data when the write pulse is applied.
6. x, y, z0, z1, z2, α, β, γ, ε, η, θ, and N1 are shown in section 22.7, Flash Memory Characteristics.

Reprogram Data Computation Table

Original Data (D)	Verify Data (V)	Reprogram Data (X)	Comments
0	0	1	Programming completed
0	1	0	Programming incomplete; reprogram
1	0	1	
1	1	1	Still in erased state; no action

Additional-Programming Data Computation Table

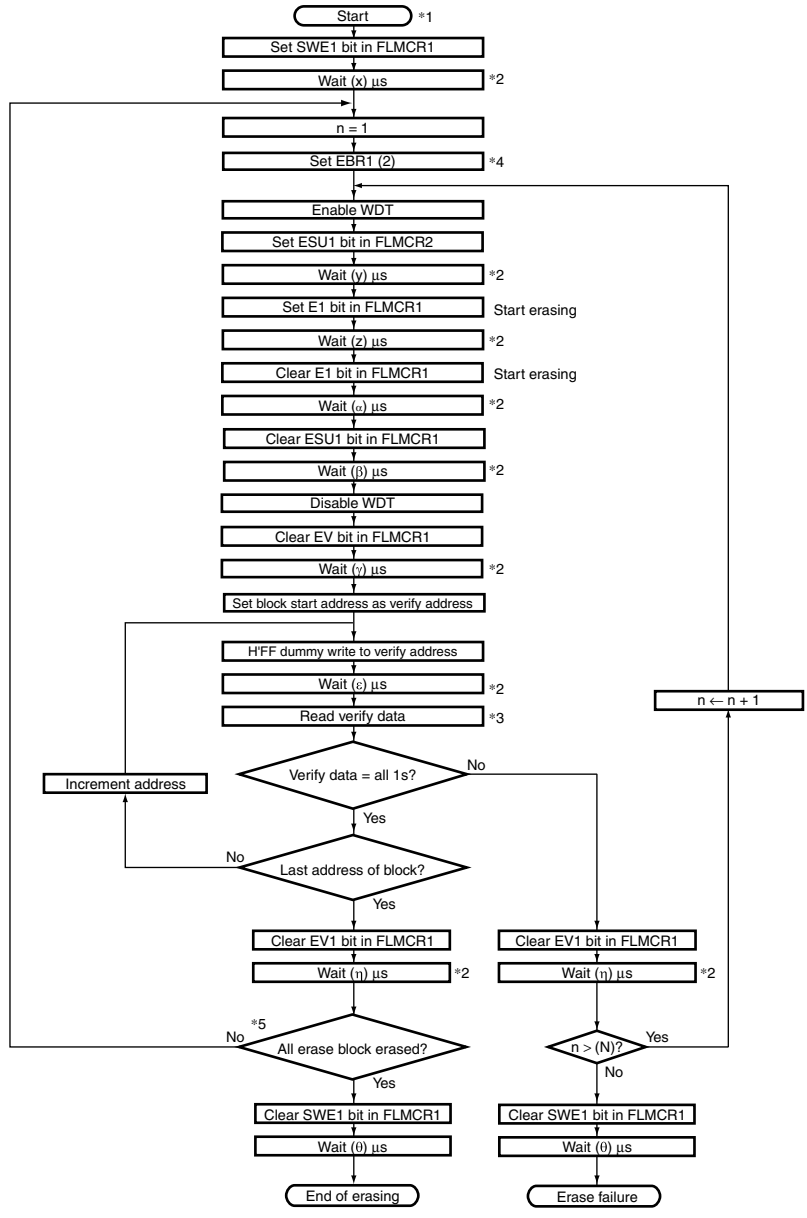
Reprogram Data (X')	Verify Data (V)	Additional-Programming Data (Y)	Comments
0	0	0	Additional programming to be executed
0	1	1	Additional programming not to be executed
1	0	1	Additional programming not to be executed
1	1	1	Additional programming not to be executed

Figure 17.11 Program/Program-Verify Flowchart

17.8.2 Erase/Erase-Verify

When erasing flash memory, the erase/erase-verify flowchart shown in figure 17.12 should be followed.

1. Prewriting (setting erase block data to all 0s) is not necessary.
2. Erasing is performed in block units. Make only a single-bit specification in the erase block register (EBR1). To erase multiple blocks, each block must be erased in turn.
3. The time during which the E1 bit is set to 1 is the flash memory erase time.
4. The watchdog timer (WDT) is set to prevent overprogramming due to program runaway, etc. An overflow cycle of approximately (y+z+α+β) ms is allowed.
5. For a dummy write to a verify address, write 1-byte data H'FF to an address whose lower two bits are b'00. Verify data can be read in longwords from the address to which a dummy write was performed.
6. If the read data is unerased, set erase mode again, and repeat the erase/erase-verify sequence as before. The maximum number of repetitions of the erase/erase-verify sequence is N.



Notes: 1. Pre-write (clearing data in the block to be erased to 0) isn not required.
2. x, y, z, α, β, γ, ε, η, θ, and N are shown in section 22.7, Flash Memory Characteristics.
3. Veryfy data is read in 16 bits.
4. Only 1 bit in the EBR register must be set. Two or more bits in EBR cannot be set.
5. Erasure is performed in block units. To erase multiple blocks, each block must be erased sequentially.

Figure 17.12 Erase/Erase-Verify Flowchart

17.9 Program/Erase Protection

There are three kinds of flash memory program/erase protection: hardware protection, software protection, and error protection.

17.9.1 Hardware Protection

Hardware protection refers to a state in which programming/erasing of flash memory is forcibly disabled or aborted because of a transition to reset or standby mode. Flash memory control register 1 (FLMCR1), flash memory control register 2 (FLMCR2), and erase block register 1 (EBR1) are initialized. In a reset via the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, the reset state is not entered unless the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is held low until oscillation stabilizes after powering on. In the case of a reset during operation, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin low for the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pulse width specified in the AC Characteristics section.

17.9.2 Software Protection

Software protection can be implemented against programming/erasing of all flash memory blocks by clearing the SWE1 bit in FLMCR1. When software protection is in effect, setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1 does not cause a transition to program mode or erase mode. By setting the erase block register 1 (EBR1), erase protection can be set for individual blocks. When EBR1 and EBR2 are set to H'00, erase protection is set for all blocks.

17.9.3 Error Protection

In error protection, an error is detected when the CPU's runaway occurs during flash memory programming/erasing, or operation is not performed in accordance with the program/erase algorithm, and the program/erase operation is aborted. Aborting the program/erase operation prevents damage to the flash memory due to overprogramming or overerasing.

When the following errors are detected during programming/erasing of flash memory, the FLER bit in FLMCR2 is set to 1, and the error protection state is entered.

- When the flash memory of the relevant address area is read during programming/erasing (including vector read and instruction fetch)
- Immediately after exception handling (excluding a reset) during programming/erasing
- When a SLEEP instruction is executed during programming/erasing
- When the CPU releases the bus mastership to the DMAC during programming/erasing

The FLMCR1, FLMCR2, EBR1 and EBR2 settings are retained, but program mode or erase mode is aborted at the point at which the error occurred. Program mode or erase mode cannot be re-entered by re-setting the P1 or E1 bit. However, PV1 and EV1 bit setting is enabled, and a transition can be made to verify mode.

17.10 Interrupt Handling when Programming/Erasing Flash Memory

All interrupts, including NMI interrupt is disabled when flash memory is being programmed or erased (when the P1 or E1 bit is set in FLMCR1), and while the boot program is executing in boot mode*[1], to give priority to the program or erase operation. There are three reasons for this:

1. Interrupt during programming or erasing might cause a violation of the programming or erasing algorithm, with the result that normal operation could not be assured.
2. In the interrupt exception handling sequence during programming or erasing, the vector would not be read correctly*[2] , possibly resulting in CPU runaway.
3. If interrupt occurred during boot program execution, it would not be possible to execute the normal boot mode sequence.

Notes: 1. Interrupt requests must be disabled inside and outside the CPU until the programming control program has completed programming.

2. The vector may not be read correctly in this case for the following two reasons:
   - If flash memory is read while being programmed or erased (while the P1 or E1 bit is set in FLMCR1), correct read data will not be obtained (undetermined values will be returned).
   - If the interrupt entry in the vector table has not been programmed yet, interrupt exception handling will not be executed correctly.

17.11 Programmer Mode

In programmer mode, a PROM programmer can perform programming/erasing via a socket adapter, just like for a discrete flash memory. Use a PROM programmer which supports the Hitachi 128-kbyte flash memory on-chip MCU device type. Memory map in programmer mode is shown in figure 17.13.

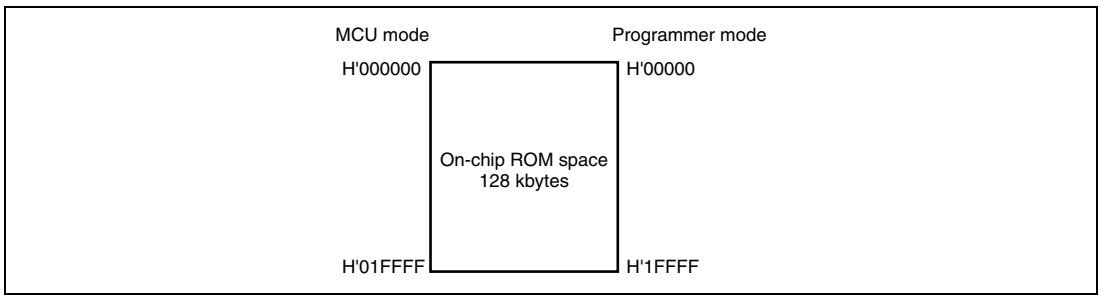


Figure 17.13 Memory Map in Programmer Mode

17.12 Power-Down States for Flash Memory

In user mode, the flash memory will operate in either of the following states:

- Normal operating mode
  The flash memory can be read and written to.
- Standby mode
  All flash memory circuits are halted.
- Power-down state
  The flash memory can be read when part of the power supply circuit is halted and the LSI operates by subclocks.

Table 17.8 shows the correspondence between the operating modes of this LSI and the flash memory. When the flash memory returns to normal operation from a power-down state, a power supply circuit stabilization period is needed. When the flash memory returns to its normal operating state, bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR must be set to provide a wait time of at least 100 µs, even when the external clock is being used and an oscillation stabilization time is not necessary.

Table 17.8 Flash Memory Operating States

LSI Operating State	Flash Memory Operating State
Active mode	Normal operating mode
Sleep mode	Normal operating mode
Watch mode	Standby mode
Standby mode	(Before entering to the normal operation mode, wait time of at least 100 µs is required.)
Subactive mode	PDWND = 0: Power-down mode (read only)
Supsleep mode	PDWND = 1: Normal operating mode (read only)

17.13 Flash Memory Programming and Erasing Precautions

Precautions concerning the use of on-board programming mode, the RAM emulation function, and PROM mode are summarized below.

1. Use the specified voltages and timing for programming and erasing

   Applied voltages in excess of the rating can permanently damage the device. Use a PROM programmer that supports the Hitachi microcomputer device type with 128-kbyte on-chip flash memory (FZTAT128V3A).

   Do not select the HN27C4096 setting for the PROM programmer, and only use the specified socket adapter. Failure to observe these points may result in damage to the device.

2. Powering on and off

   Do not apply a high level to the FWE pin until VCC has stabilized. Also, drive the FWE pin low before turning off VCC. When applying or disconnecting VCC power, fix the FWE pin low and place the flash memory in the hardware protection state. The power-on and power-off timing requirements should also be satisfied in the event of a power failure and subsequent recovery.

3. FWE application/disconnection

   FWE application should be carried out when MCU operation is in a stable condition. If MCU operation is not stable, fix the FWE pin low and set the protection state. The following points must be observed concerning FWE application and disconnection to prevent unintentional programming or erasing of flash memory:

   - Apply FWE when the VCC voltage has stabilized within its rated voltage range.
   - In boot mode, apply and disconnect FWE during a reset.
   - In user program mode, FWE can be switched between high and low level regardless of the reset state. FWE input can also be switched during execution of a program in flash memory.
   - Do not apply FWE if program runaway has occurred.
   - Disconnect FWE only when the SWE1, ESU1, EV1, PV1, P1, and E1 bits in FLMCR1 are cleared. Make sure that the SWE1, ESU1, PSU1, EV1, PV1, P1, and E1 bits are not set by mistake when applying or disconnecting FWE.

4. Do not apply a constant high level to the FWE pin

   Apply a high level to the FWE pin only when programming or erasing flash memory. A system configuration in which a high level is constantly applied to the FWE pin should be avoided. Also, while a high level is applied to the FWE pin, the watchdog timer should be activated to prevent overprogramming or overerasing due to program runaway, etc.

5. Use the recommended algorithm when programming and erasing flash memory

   The recommended algorithm enables programming and erasing to be carried out without subjecting the device to voltage stress or sacrificing program data reliability. When setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1, the watchdog timer should be set beforehand as a precaution against program runaway, etc.

6. Do not set or clear the SWE1 bit during execution of a program in flash memory

   Wait at least θ µs* after clearing the SWE1 bit before executing a program or reading data in flash memory. When the SWE1 bit is set, data in flash memory can be rewritten, but access flash memory only for verify operations (verification during programming/erasing). Also, do not clear the SWE1 bit during programming, erasing, or verifying. Similarly, when using emulation by RAM with a high level applied to the FWE pin, the SWE1 bit should be cleared before executing a program or reading data in flash memory. However, read/write accesses can be performed in the RAM area overlapping the flash memory space regardless of whether the SWE1 bit is set or cleared.

Note: Refer to section 22.7, Flash Memory Characteristics.

7. Do not use interrupts while flash memory is being programmed or erased

   All interrupt requests, including NMI, should be disabled during FWE application to give priority to program/erase operations.

8. Do not perform additional programming. Erase the memory before reprogramming

   In on-board programming, perform only one programming operation on a 128-byte programming unit block. In programmer mode, too, perform only one programming operation on a 128-byte programming unit block. Programming should be carried out with the entire programming unit block erased.

9. Before programming, check that the chip is correctly mounted in the PROM programmer

   Overcurrent damage to the device can result if the index marks on the PROM programmer socket, socket adapter, and chip are not correctly aligned.

10. Do not touch the socket adapter or chip during programming

    Touching either of these can cause contact faults and write errors.

11. The reset state must be entered after powering on

    Apply the reset signal for at least 100 µs during the oscillation setting period.

12. When a reset is applied during operation, this should be done while the SWE1 pin is low.

    Wait at least θ µs* after clearing the SWE1 bit before applying the reset.

Note: Refer to section 22.7, Flash Memory Characteristics.

17.14 Note on Switching from F-ZTAT Version to Masked ROM Version

The masked ROM version does not have the internal registers for flash memory control that are provided in the F-ZTAT version. Table 17.9 lists the registers that are present in the F-ZTAT version but not in the masked ROM version. If a register listed in Table 17.9 is read in the masked ROM version, an undefined value will be returned. Therefore, if application software developed on the F-ZTAT version is switched to a masked ROM version product, it must be modified to ensure that the registers in Table 17.9 have no effect.

Table 17.9 Registers Present in F-ZTAT Version but Absent in Masked ROM Version

Register	Abbreviation	Address
Flash memory control register 1	FLMCR1	H'FFA8
Flash memory control register 2	FLMCR2	H'FFA9
Erase block register 1	EBR1	H'FFAA
Erase block register 2	EBR2	H'FFAB
RAM emulation register	RAMER	H'FEDB
Flash power control register	FLPWCR	H'FFAC
Serial control register x	SCRX	H'FDB4

Section 19 Clock Pulse Generator

This LSI has an on-chip clock pulse generator that generates the system clock (φ), the bus master clock, and internal clocks. The clock pulse generator consists of a main clock oscillator, duty adjustment circuit, clock select circuit, medium-speed clock divider, bus master clock selection circuit, subclock oscillator, waveform shaping circuit, PLL (Phase Locked Loop) circuit, and USB operating clock selection circuit. A block diagram of clock pulse generator is shown in figure 19.1.

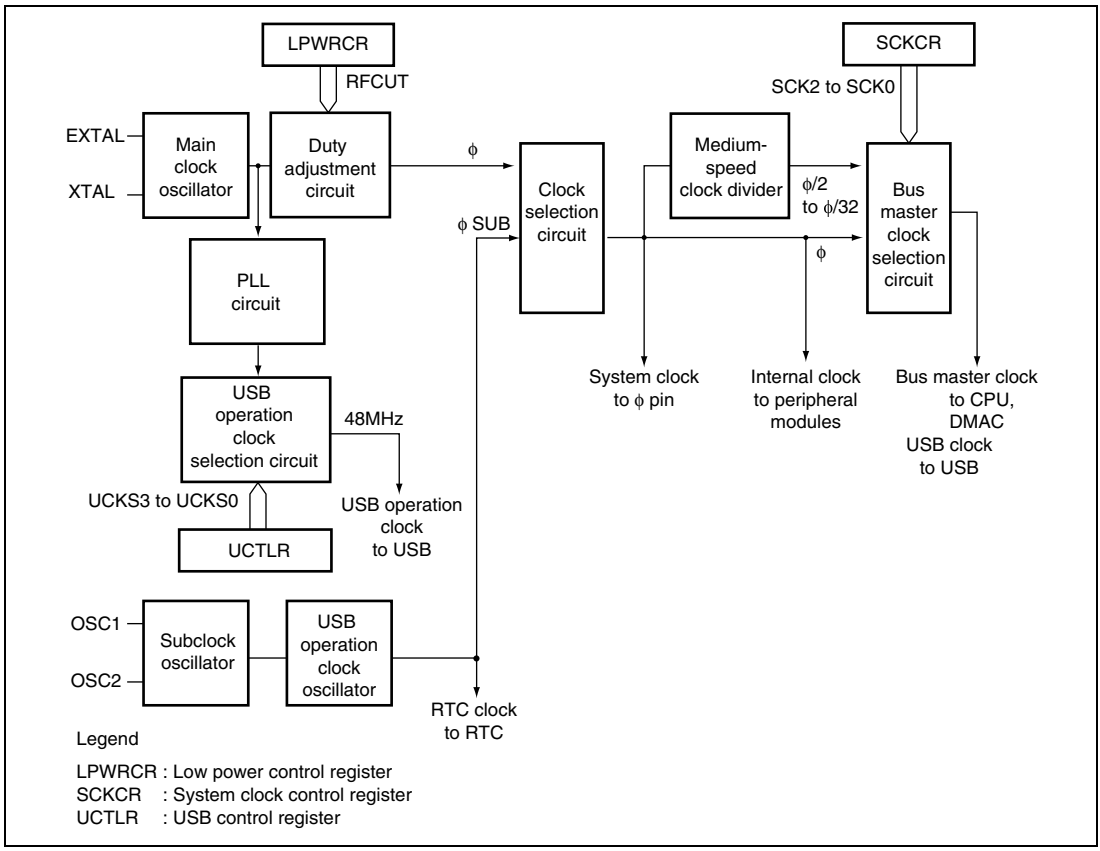


Figure 19.1 Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator

The frequency of the main clock oscillator can be changed by software by means of settings in the low-power control register (LPWRCR) and system clock control register (SCKCR). PLL 48-MHz clock can be selected by software by means of setting the USB control register (UCTLR). For details, refer to section 14, Universal Serial Bus (USB).

19.1 Register Descriptions

The on-chip clock pulse generator has the following registers.

- System clock control register (SCKCR)
- Low-power control register (LPWRCR)

19.1.1 System Clock Control Register (SCKCR)

SCKCR controls φ clock output and medium-speed mode.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PSTOP	0	R/W	φ Clock Output Disable Controls φ output. The operation of this bit changes depending on the operating mode. For details, see section 20.11, φ Clock Output Disabling Function. 0: φ output, fixed high, or high impedance 1: Fixed high or high impedance
6	—	0	R/W	Reserved These bits can be read from or written to, but the write value should always 0.
5, 4	—	All 0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
3	—	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always be 0.
2	SCK2	0	R/W	System Clock Select 2 to 0 These bits select the bus master clock. To operate in sub-active mode or watch mode, clear the SCK2 to SCK0 bits to 0. 000: High-speed mode 001: Medium-speed clock is φ/2 010: Medium-speed clock is φ/4 011: Medium-speed clock is φ/8 100: Medium-speed clock is φ/16 101: Medium-speed clock is φ/32 11X: Setting prohibited
1	SCK1	0	R/W	
0	SCK0	0	R/W	

Legend
X: Don't care

Section 19 Clock Pulse Generator

This LSI has an on-chip clock pulse generator that generates the system clock (φ), the bus master clock, and internal clocks. The clock pulse generator consists of a main clock oscillator, duty adjustment circuit, clock select circuit, medium-speed clock divider, bus master clock selection circuit, subclock oscillator, waveform shaping circuit, PLL (Phase Locked Loop) circuit, and USB operating clock selection circuit. A block diagram of clock pulse generator is shown in figure 19.1.

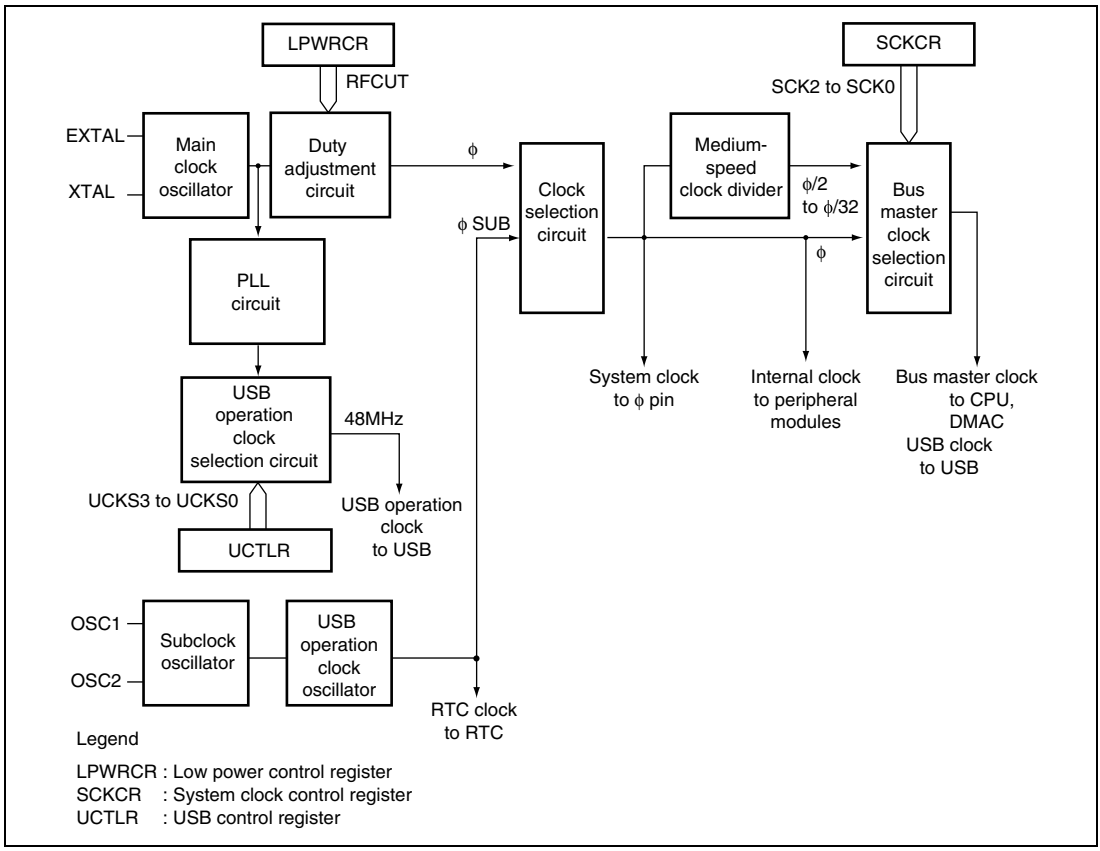


Figure 19.1 Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator

The frequency of the main clock oscillator can be changed by software by means of settings in the low-power control register (LPWRCR) and system clock control register (SCKCR). PLL 48-MHz clock can be selected by software by means of setting the USB control register (UCTLR). For details, refer to section 14, Universal Serial Bus (USB).

19.1 Register Descriptions

The on-chip clock pulse generator has the following registers.

- System clock control register (SCKCR)
- Low-power control register (LPWRCR)

19.1.1 System Clock Control Register (SCKCR)

SCKCR controls φ clock output and medium-speed mode.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	PSTOP	0	R/W	φ Clock Output Disable Controls φ output. The operation of this bit changes depending on the operating mode. For details, see section 20.11, φ Clock Output Disabling Function. 0: φ output, fixed high, or high impedance 1: Fixed high or high impedance
6	—	0	R/W	Reserved These bits can be read from or written to, but the write value should always 0.
5, 4	—	All 0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0.
3	—	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always be 0.
2	SCK2	0	R/W	System Clock Select 2 to 0 These bits select the bus master clock. To operate in sub-active mode or watch mode, clear the SCK2 to SCK0 bits to 0. 000: High-speed mode 001: Medium-speed clock is φ/2 010: Medium-speed clock is φ/4 011: Medium-speed clock is φ/8 100: Medium-speed clock is φ/16 101: Medium-speed clock is φ/32 11X: Setting prohibited
1	SCK1	0	R/W	
0	SCK0	0	R/W	

Legend
X: Don't care

19.1.2 Low Power Control Register (LPWRCR)

LPWRCR performs power-down mode control, selects sampling frequency for eliminating noise, performs subclock oscillator control, and selects whether or not built-in feedback resistance and duty adjustment circuit of the system clock generator used.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	DTON	0	R/W	Direct Transition ON Flag 0: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode, operation shifts to sleep mode, software standby mode, or watch mode*. When the SLEEP instruction is executed in sub-active mode, operation shifts to sub-sleep mode or watch mode. 1: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode, operation shifts directly to sub-active mode, or shifts to sleep mode or software standby mode. When the SLEEP instruction is executed in sub-active mode, operation shifts directly to high-speed mode, or shifts to sub-sleep mode.
6	LSON	0	R/W	Low Speed ON Flag 0: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode, operation shifts to sleep mode, software standby mode, or watch mode*. When the SLEEP instruction is executed in sub-active mode, operation shifts to watch mode* or shifts directly to high-speed mode. Operation shifts to high-speed mode when watch mode is cancelled. 1: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode*, operation shifts to watch mode or sub-active mode*. When the SLEEP instruction is executed in sub-active mode, operation shifts to sub-sleep mode or watch mode. Operation shifts to sub-active mode when watch mode is cancelled.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
5	NESEL	0	R/W	Noise Elimination Sampling Frequency Select This bit selects the sampling frequency of the subclock (ϕ_{SUB}) generated by the subclock oscillator is sampled by the clock (ϕ) generated by the system clock oscillator 0: Sampling using 1/32 x ϕ 1: Sampling using 1/4 x ϕ
4	SUBSTP	0	R/W	Subclock Enable This bit enables/disables subclock generation. This bit should be set to 1 when subclock is not used. 0: Enables subclock generation. 1: Disables subclock generation.
3	RFCUT	0	R/W	Built-in Feedback Resistor Control Selects whether the oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are used with external clock input. This bit should not be accessed when a crystal oscillator is used. After this bit is set when using external clock input, a transition should initially be made to software standby mode. Switching between use and non-use of the oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit is performed when the transition is made to software standby mode. 0: Main clock oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are used 1: Main clock oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are not used
2	—	0	R/W	Reserved This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always 0.
1	STC1	0	R/W	Frequency Multiplication Factor
0	STC0	0	R/W	Specify the frequency multiplication factor of the PLL circuit incorporated into the evaluation chip. The specified frequency multiplication factor is valid after a transition to software standby mode. With this LSI, the STC1 and STC0 bits must both be set to 1. After a reset, the STC1 and STC0 bits are both cleared to 0, and so they must be set to 1. 00: $\times$ 1 01: $\times$ 2 (Setting prohibited) 10: $\times$ 4 (Setting prohibited) 11: PLL is bypassed

Note: * When watch mode or subactive mode is entered, set high-speed mode.

19.2 System Clock Oscillator

Clock pulses can be supplied by connecting a crystal resonator, or by input of an external clock.

19.2.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator

A crystal resonator can be connected as shown in the example in figure 19.2. Select the damping resistance Rd according to table 19.2. An AT-cut parallel-resonance crystal should be used.

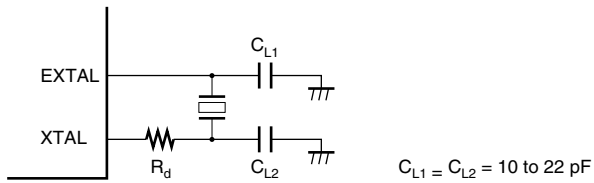


Figure 19.2 Connection of Crystal Resonator (Example)

Table 19.1 Damping Resistance Value

Frequency (MHz)	2	4	6	8	10	13	16	20	24
Rd (Ω)	1k	500	300	200	100	0	0	0	0

Figure 19.3 shows the equivalent circuit of the crystal resonator. Use a crystal resonator that has the characteristics shown in table 19.2. The crystal resonator frequency should not exceed 20 MHz.

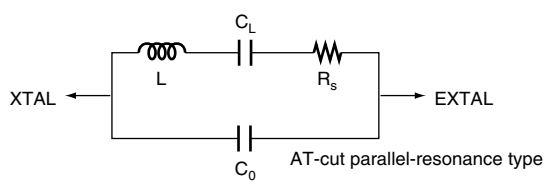


Figure 19.3 Crystal Resonator Equivalent Circuit

Table 19.2 Crystal Resonator Characteristics

Frequency (MHz)	2	4	6	8	10	13	16	20	24
RS max (Ω)	500	120	100	80	60	60	50	40	40
C0 max (pF)	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7

19.2.2 Inputting External Clock

An external clock signal can be input as shown in an example in figure 19.4. If the XTAL pin is left open, make sure that stray capacitance is no more than 10 pF. When complementary clock input to XTAL pin, the external clock input should be fixed high in standby mode.

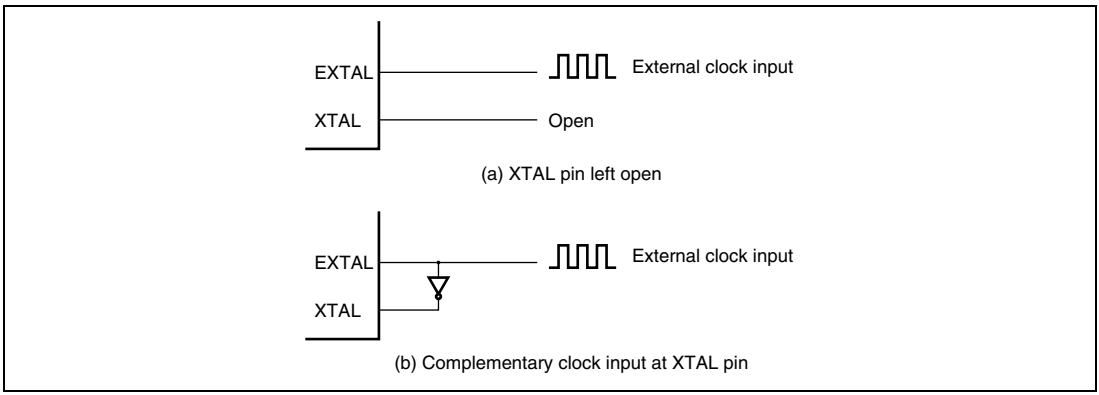


Figure 19.4 External Clock Input (Examples)

Table 19.3 shows the input conditions for the external clock.

Table 19.3 External Clock Input Conditions

		VCC= 2.4 to 3.6V		VCC = 2.7 to 3.6V		VCC = 3.0 to 3.6V			Test
Item	**Symbol**	**min**	**max**	**Min**	**max**	**min**	**max**	**Unit**	**Conditions**
External clock input low pulse width	t_{EXL}	65	—	25	—	15.5	—	ns	Figure 19.5
External clock input high pulse width	t_{EXH}	65	—	25	—	15.5	—	ns	
External clock rise time	t_{EXr}	—	15	—	6.25	—	5.25	ns	
External clock fall time	t_{EXf}	—	15	—	6.25	—	5.25	ns	
Clock low pulse width level	t_{CL}	0.35	0.65	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	tcyc	Figure 22.3
Clock high pulse width level	t_{CH}	0.35	0.65	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	tcyc	

The external clock input conditions when the duty adjustment circuit is not used are shown in table 19.4. When the duty adjustment circuit is not used, note that the maximum operating frequency depends on the external clock input waveform. For example, if $t_{EXL} = t_{EXH} = 20.8$ ns and $T_{EXr} = t_{EXf} = 5.25$ ns, the maximum operating frequency becomes 19.2 MHz depending on the clcok cycle time of 52.1 ns.

Table 19.4 External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit is not Used

Item	Symbol	min	max	Min	max	min	max	Unit	Test Conditions
External clock input low pulse width	t_{EXL}	80	—	31.25	—	20.8	—	ns	Figure 19.5
External clock input high pulse width	t_{EXH}	80	—	31.25	—	20.8	—	ns	
External clock rise time	t_{EXr}	—	15	—	6.25	—	5.25	ns	
External clock fall time	t_{EXf}	—	15	—	6.25	—	5.25	ns	

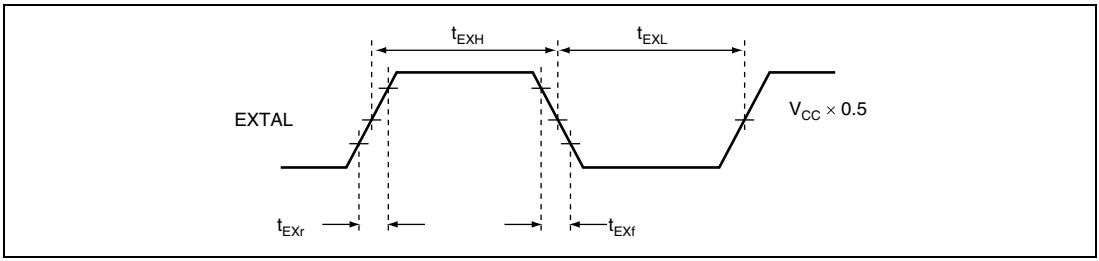


Figure 19.5 External Clock Input Timing

19.3 Duty Adjustment Circuit

When the oscillator frequency is 5 MHz or higher, the duty adjustment circuit adjusts the duty cycle of the clock signal from the oscillator to generate the system clock (ϕ).

19.4 Medium-Speed Clock Divider

The medium-speed clock divider divides the system clock to generate ϕ/2, ϕ/4, ϕ/8, ϕ/16, and ϕ/32.

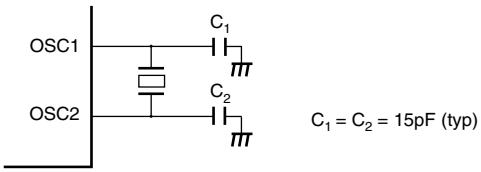
19.5 Bus Master Clock Selection Circuit

The bus master clock selection circuit selects the clock supplied to the bus master by setting the bits SCK2 to SCK0 in SCKCR. The bus master clock can be selected from high-speed mode, or medium-speed clocks (ϕ/2, ϕ/4, ϕ/8, ϕ/16, ϕ/32).

19.6 Subclock Oscillator

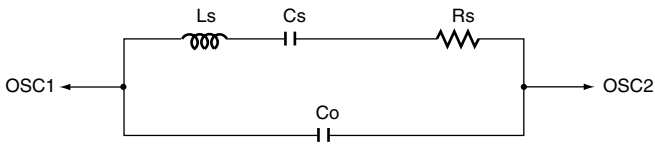
19.6.1 Connecting 32.768kHz Crystal Resonator

supply a clock to the subclock divider, connect a 32.768kHz crystal resonator, as shown in figure 19.6. Figure 19.7 shows the equivalence circuit for a 32.768kHz oscillator.



Note: C_1 and C_2 are reference values including the floating capacitance of the board.

Figure 19.6 Example Connection of 32.768kHz Quartz Oscillator



Co = 1.5pF (typ.)
Rs = 14kΩ (typ.)
fw = 32.768kHz
Type name = C001R (SEIKO EPSON)

Figure 19.7 Equivalence Circuit for 32.768kHz Oscillator

19.6.2 Handling Pins When Subclock Not Required

If no subclock is required, connect the OSC1 pin to Vss and leave OSC2 open, as shown in figure 19.8. Set the SUBSTP bit of LPWRCR to 1.

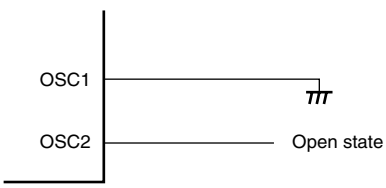


Figure 19.8 Pin Handling When Subclock Not Required

19.7 Subclock Waveform Generation Circuit

To eliminate noise from the subclock input to OSCI, the subclock is sampled using the dividing clock ϕ. The sampling frequency is set using the NESEL bit of LPWRCR. For details, see section 19.1.2, Low Power Control Register (LPWRCR).

No sampling is performed in sub-active mode, sub-sleep mode, or watch mode.

19.8 PLL Circuit for USB

The PLL circuit has the function of doubling or tripling the 16-MHz or 24-MHz clock from the main oscillator to generate the 48-MHz USB operating clock.

Regardless of the PLL circuit usage, connect the PLLVCC pin and PLLVSS pin to Vcc and ground (Vss) respectively.

When the PLL circuit is used, set the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits of UCTLR. For details, refer to section 14, Universal Serial Bus (USB).

19.9 Usage Notes

19.9.1 Note on Crystal Resonator

Since various characteristics related to the crystal resonator are closely linked to the user's board design, thorough evaluation is necessary on the user's part, using the resonator connection examples shown in this section as a guide. As the resonator circuit ratings will depend on the floating capacitance of the resonator and the mounting circuit, the ratings should be determined in consultation with the resonator manufacturer. The design must ensure that a voltage exceeding the maximum rating is not applied to the oscillator pin.

19.9.2 Note on Board Design

When designing the board, place the crystal resonator and its load capacitors as close as possible to the XTAL or OSC1 and EXTAL or OSC2 pins. Other signal lines should be routed away from the oscillator circuit to prevent induction from interfering with correct oscillation. See figure 19.9.

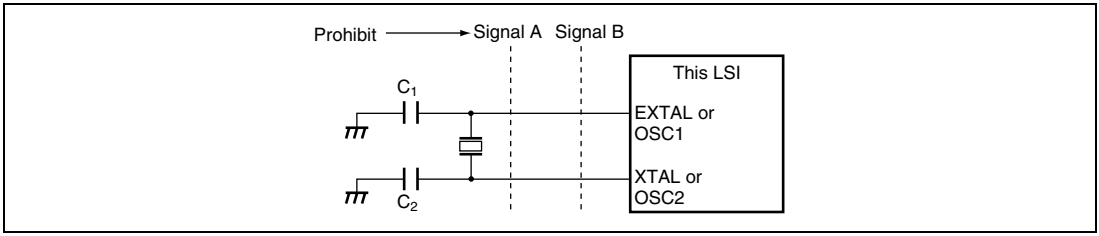


Figure 19.9 Note on Board Design of Oscillator Circuit

19.9.3 Note on Switchover of External Clock

When two or more external clocks (e.g. 16 MHz and 13 MHz) are used as the system clock, switchover of the input clock should be carried out in software standby mode.

An example of an external clock switching circuit is shown in figure 19.10, and an example of the external clock switchover timing in figure 19.11.

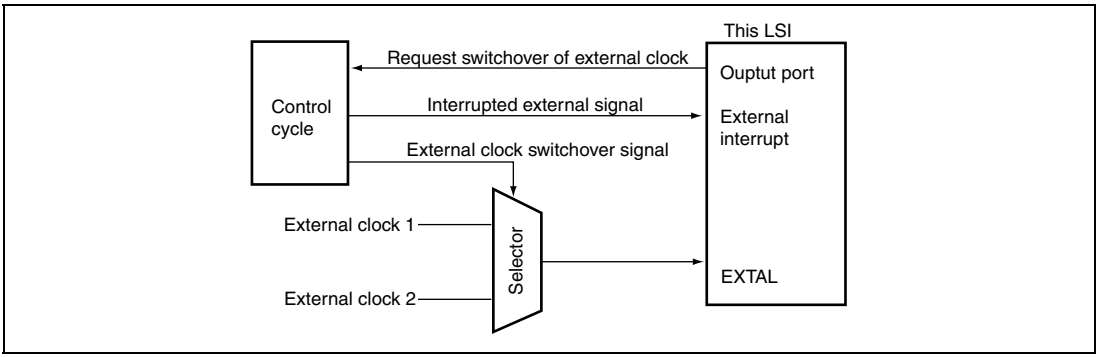
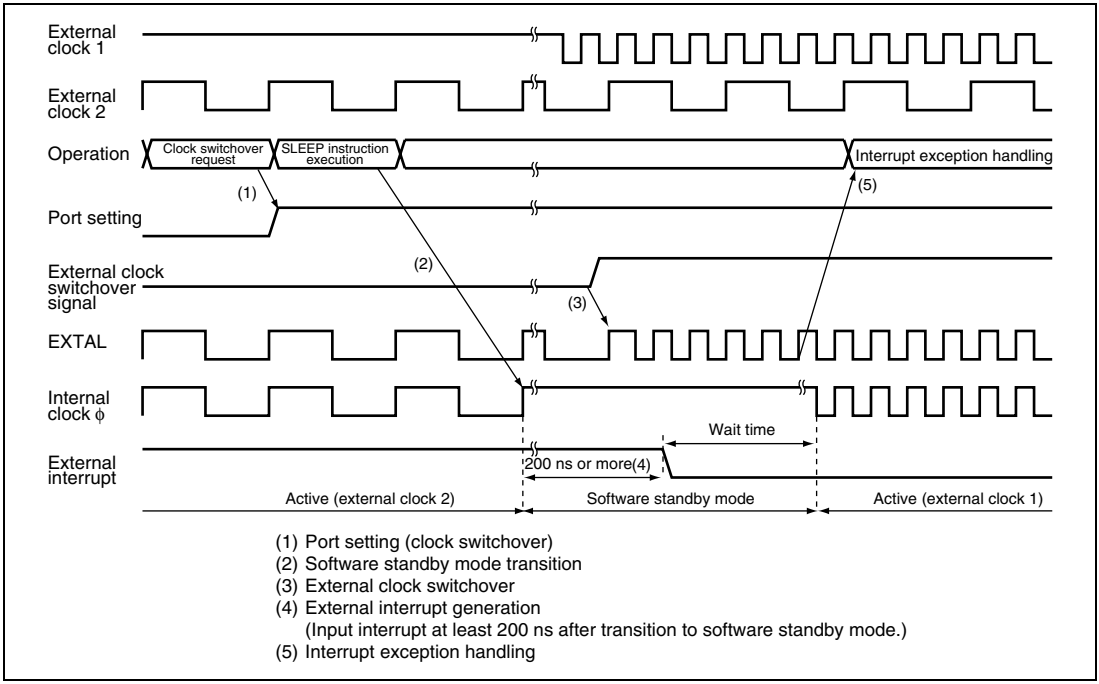


Figure 19.10 Example of External Clock Switching Circuit



(1) Port setting (clock switchover)
(2) Software standby mode transition
(3) External clock switchover
(4) External interrupt generation
(Input interrupt at least 200 ns after transition to software standby mode.)
(5) Interrupt exception handling

Figure 19.11 Example of External Clock Switchover Timing

Section 20 Power-Down Modes

In addition to the normal program execution state, this LSI has five power-down modes in which operation of the CPU and oscillator is halted and power dissipation is reduced. Low-power operation can be achieved by individually controlling the CPU, on-chip supporting modules, and so on.

This LSI's operating modes are high-speed mode and five power down modes:

1. Medium-speed mode
2. Subactive mode
3. Sleep mode
4. Subsleep mode
5. Watch mode
6. Module stop mode
7. Software standby mode
8. Hardware standby mode

1. to 5. are power-down modes. Sleep mode is CPU states, medium-speed mode is a CPU and bus master state, subactive mode is a CPU, bus master, and on-chip peripheral function state, and module stop mode is an internal peripheral function (including bus masters other than the CPU) state. Some of these states can be combined.

After a reset, the LSI is in high-speed mode and module stop mode (other than DMAC).

Table 20.1 and table 20.2 show the LSI internal states in each mode and the transition conditions of power-down modes respectively. Figure 20.1 shows the diagram of mode transition.

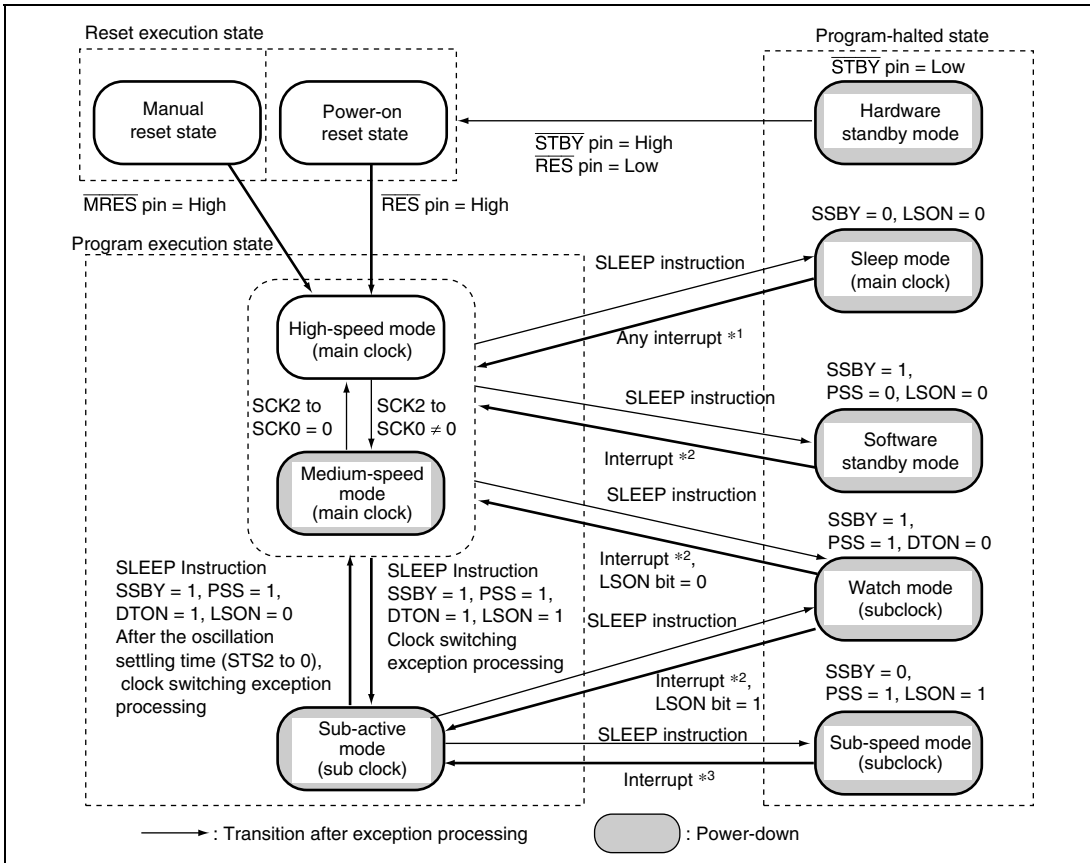
Table 20.1 LSI Internal States in Each Mode

Function			High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-active	Subsleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby
System clock pulse generator			Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted	Halted	Halted	Halted	Halted
Subclock pulse generator			Function-ing/halted	Function-ing/halted	Function-ing/halted	Function-ing/halted	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing/halted	Halted
CPU	Instructions		Function-ing	Medium-speed operation	Halted	Function-ing	Halted	Subclock operation	Halted	Halted	Halted
	Registers				Retained		Retained		Retained	Retained	Undefined
RAM			Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Retained	Function-ing	Retained	Retained	Retained
I/O			Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Retained	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted	High impedance
External interrupts	NMI IRQ0 to IRQ4, IRQ7		Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted
Peripheral functions	DMAC		Function-ing	Medium-speed operation	Function-ing	Function-ing/halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (reset)
	WDT		Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted (retained)	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Halted (retained)	Halted (reset)
	RTC	Clock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Halted (retained)	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Subclock operation	Halted (reset)
		Free-running timer operation	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing/halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (reset)
	TPU		Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (retained)	Halted (reset)
	SCI										
	A/D		Function-ing	Function-ing	Function-ing	Halted (reset)	Halted (reset)	Halted (reset)	Halted (reset)	Halted (reset)	Halted (reset)
	USB		Function-ing	Function not guaranteed	Function-ing	Halted (retained)	Function not guaranteed. Always select module stop mode.			Halted (retained)	Halted (reset)
		PLL circuit				Halted				Halted	

Notes: "Halted (retained)" means that internal register values are retained. The internal state is "operation suspended."

"Halted (reset)" means that internal register values and internal states are initialized.

In module stop mode, only modules for which a stop setting has been made are halted (reset or retained).



Notes: 1. All interrupts
2. NMI and IRQ0 to IRQ4, IRQ7, RTC interrupt, and USB suspend/resume interrupt
3. NMI and IRQ0 to IRQ4, IRQ7, RTC interrupt, and WDT interrupt

- When a transition is made between modes by means of an interrupt, the transition cannot be made on interrupt source generation alone. Ensure that interrupt handling is performed after accepting the interrupt request.
- From any state except hardware standby mode, a transition to the power-on reset state occurs when $\overline{\text{RES}}$ is driven low. From any state except hardware standby mode and power-on reset, a transition to the manual reset state occurs when $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ is driven low.
- From any state, a transition to hardware standby mode occurs when $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ is driven low.
- Always select high-speed mode before making a transition to watch mode or sub-active mode.

Figure 20.1 Mode Transition Diagram

Table 20.2 Transition Conditions of Power-Down Modes

Pre-Transition State	Status of Control Bit at Transition				State after Transition Invoked by SLEEP Command	State after Transition Back from Power-Down Mode Invoked by Interrupt
	SSBY	PSS	LSON	DTON		
High-speed/ Medium-speed	0	x	0	x	Sleep	High-speed/Medium-speed
	0	x	1	x	—	—
	1	0	0	x	Software standby	High-speed/Medium-speed
	1	0	1	x	—	—
	1	1	0	0	Watch	High-speed
	1	1	1	0	Watch	Subactive
	1	1	0	1	—	—
	1	1	1	1	Subactive	—
Subactive	0	0	x	x	—	—
	0	1	0	x	—	—
	0	1	1	x	Sub sleep	Subactive
	1	0	x	x	—	—
	1	1	0	0	Watch	High-speed
	1	1	1	0	Watch	Subactive
	1	1	0	1	High-speed	—
	1	1	1	1	—	—

Legend x: Don't care

Note: — : Do not set

20.1 Register Descriptions

The registers relating to the power down mode are shown below. For details on the low power control register (LPWRCR), refer to section 19.1.2, Low Power Control Register (LPWRCR). For details on the system clock control register (SCKCR), refer to section 19.1.1, System Clock Control Register (SCKCR).

- Standby control register (SBYCR)
- System clock control register (SCKCR)
- Low power control register (LPWRCR)
- Timer control/status register (TCSR_1)
- Module stop control register A (MSTPCRA)
- Module stop control register B (MSTPCRB)
- Module stop control register C (MSTPCRC)
- Extended module stop register (EXMDLSTP)

20.1.1 Standby Control Register (SBYCR)

SBYCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that performs software standby mode control.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7	SSBY	0	R/W	Software Standby This bit specifies the transition mode after executing the SLEEP instruction 0: Shifts to sleep mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode. Shifts to subsleep mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed in subactive mode. 1: Shifts to software standby mode, subactive mode, or watch mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode. Shifts to watch mode or high-speed mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed in subactive mode. This bit does not change when clearing software standby mode by using external interrupts and shifting to normal operation. 0 should be written to this bit for clearing.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
6	STS2	0	R/W	Standby Timer Select 2 to 0
5	STS1	0	R/W	These bits select the MCU wait time for clock stabilization when cancel software standby mode, watch mode, or subactive mode by an external interrupt. With a crystal oscillator (Table 20.3), select a wait time of 8ms (oscillation stabilization time) or more, depending on the operating frequency. With an external clock, there are no specific wait requirements.
4	STS0	0	R/W	000: Standby time = 8192 states 001: Standby time = 16384 states 010: Standby time = 32768 states 011: Standby time = 65536 states 100: Standby time = 131072 states 101: Standby time = 262144 states 110: Standby time = 2048 states 111: Standby time = 16 states
3	OPE	1	R/W	Output Port Enable This bit selects whether address bus and bus control signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$, $\overline{AS}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{HWR}$, and $\overline{LWR}$) are brought to high impedance state or retained in software standby mode, watch mode, or direct transition. 0: High impedance state 1: Retained
2 to 0	—	0	—	Reserved These bits are always read as 0, and cannot be modified.

20.1.2 Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR_1)

TCSR_1 controls the operation in power-down mode transition.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Description
7 to 5	—	0	—	Reserved The write value should always be 0.
4	PSS	0	R/W	Prescaler Select 0: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode, operation shifts to sleep mode or software standby mode. 1: When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or medium-speed mode, operation shifts to sleep mode, watch mode, or subactive mode. When the SLEEP instruction is executed in subactive mode, operation shifts to subsleep mode, watch mode, or high-speed mode TCSR_1 differs from other registers in being more difficult to write to. The procedures for writing to and reading this register are given below. Write: TCSR_1 must be written to by a word transfer instruction. The upper byte of the written word must contain H′A5 and the lower byte must contain the write data. (When the PSS bit is set to 1, the upper byte of the written word must contain H′A510.) Read: TCSR_1 is read by the same procedure as for the general registers.
3 to 0	—	0	—	Reserved The write value should always be 0.

20.1.3 Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC)

MSTPCR, comprising three 8-bit readable/writable registers, performs module stop mode control. Setting a bit to 1, causes the corresponding module to enter module stop mode, while clearing the bit to 0 clears the module stop mode.

MSTPCRA

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Module
7	MSTPA7	0	R/W	DMA controller (DMAC)
6	MSTPA6*	0	R/W	—
5	MSTPA5	1	R/W	16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU)
4	MSTPA4*	1	R/W	—
3	MSTPA3*	1	R/W	—
2	MSTPA2*	1	R/W	—
1	MSTPA1	1	R/W	A/D converter
0	MSTPA0*	1	R/W	—

MSTPCRB

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Module
7	MSTPB7	1	R/W	Serial communication interface 0 (SCI_0)
6	MSTPB6*	1	R/W	—
5	MSTPB5	1	R/W	Serial communication interface 2 (SCI_2)
4	MSTPB4*	1	R/W	—
3	MSTPB3*	1	R/W	—
2	MSTPB2*	1	R/W	—
1	MSTPB1*	1	R/W	—
0	MSTPB0	1	R/W	USB

MSTPCRC

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Module
7	MSTPC7*	1	R/W	—
6	MSTPC6*	1	R/W	—
5	MSTPC5*	1	R/W	—
4	MSTPC4*	1	R/W	—
3	MSTPC3*	1	R/W	—
2	MSTPC2*	1	R/W	—
1	MSTPC1*	0	R/W	Flash memory
0	MSTPC0*	1	R/W	H-UDI

Note: * MSTPA6, MSTPA4 to MSTPA2, MSTPA0, MSTPB6, MSTPB4 to MSTPB1, MSTPC7 to MSTPC2 are readable/writable bits with an initial value of 1 and should always be written with 1.

20.1.4 Extended Module Stop Register (EXMDLSTP)

EXMDLSTP controls the clock supply of the RTC and USB.

Bit	Bit Name	Initial Value	R/W	Module
7 to 2	—	Undefined	—	Reserved Read is undefined. These bits should not to be modified.
1	RTCSTOP	0	R/W	RTC
0	USBSTOP1	0	R/W	USB

20.2 Medium-Speed Mode

When the SCK2 to SCK0 bits in SCKCR are set to 1, the operating mode changes to medium-speed mode as soon as the current bus cycle ends. In medium-speed mode, the CPU operates on the operating clock (φ/2, φ/4, φ/8, φ/16, or φ/32) specified by the SCK2 to SCK0 bits. The bus masters other than the CPU (DMAC) also operate in medium-speed mode. On-chip supporting modules other than the bus masters always operate on the high-speed clock (φ).

In medium-speed mode, a bus access is executed in the specified number of states with respect to the bus master operating clock. For example, if φ/4 is selected as the operating clock, on-chip memory is accessed in 4 states, and internal I/O registers in 8 states.

Medium-speed mode is cleared by clearing all of bits SCK2 to SCK0 to 0. A transition is made to high-speed mode and medium-speed mode is cleared at the end of the current bus cycle.

If a SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR and the LSON bit in LPWRCR are cleared to 0, a transition is made to sleep mode. When sleep mode is cleared by an interrupt, medium-speed mode is restored.

When the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SSBY bit = 1 and the LSON bit is cleared to 0, operation shifts to the software standby mode. When software standby mode is cleared by an external interrupt, medium-speed mode is restored.

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin* is set low and medium-speed mode is cancelled, operation shifts to the reset state. The same applies in the case of a reset caused by overflow of the watchdog timer.

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Figure 20.2 shows the timing for transition to and clearance of medium-speed mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

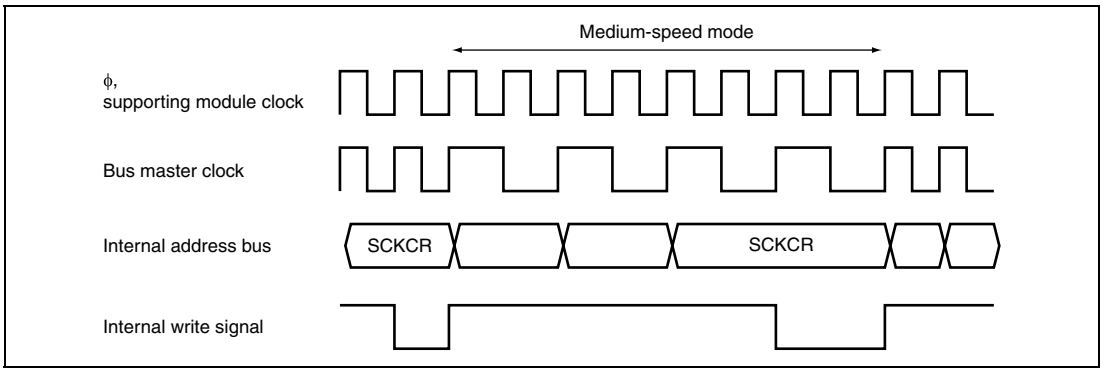


Figure 20.2 Medium-Speed Mode Transition and Clearance Timing

20.3 Sleep Mode

20.3.1 Transition to Sleep Mode

When the SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR and the LSON bit in LPWRCR are cleared to 0, the CPU enters the sleep mode. In sleep mode, CPU operation stops but the contents of the CPU's internal registers are retained. Other supporting modules do not stop.

20.3.2 Exiting Sleep Mode

Sleep mode is exited by any interrupt, or signals at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* and $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pins.

- Exiting Sleep Mode by Interrupts
  When an interrupt occurs, sleep mode is exited and interrupt exception processing starts. Sleep mode is not exited if the interrupt is disabled, or interrupts other than NMI are masked by the CPU.
- Exiting Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* Pin
  Setting the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin level Low selects the reset state. After the stipulated reset input duration, driving the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin High starts the CPU performing reset exception processing.
- Exiting Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ Pin
  When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin level is driven Low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

20.4 Software Standby Mode

20.4.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode

A transition is made to software standby mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR is set to 1 and the LSON bit in LPWRCR and the PSS bit in TCSR_1 are cleared to 0. In this mode, the CPU, on-chip supporting modules, and oscillator all stop. However, the contents of the CPU's internal registers, RAM data, and the states of on-chip supporting modules other than the A/D converter, and the states of I/O ports, are retained. In this mode the oscillator stops, and therefore power dissipation is significantly reduced.

20.4.2 Clearing Software Standby Mode

Software standby mode is cleared by an external interrupt (NMI pin, $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ pin, or $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ pins), RTC interrupt ($\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ signal), or USB suspend/resume interrupt ($\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal), or by means of the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin*, or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin.

- Clearing with an interrupt

  When an NMI or IRQ0 to IRQ7 interrupt request signal is input, clock oscillation starts, and after the elapse of the time set in bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR, stable clocks are supplied to the entire chip, software standby mode is cleared, and interrupt exception handling is started.

  When clearing software standby mode with an IRQ0 to IRQ7 interrupt, set the corresponding enable bit to 1 and ensure that no interrupt with a higher priority than interrupts IRQ0 to IRQ5 is generated. Software standby mode cannot be cleared if the interrupt has been masked on the CPU side.
- Clearing with the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin

  When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin is driven low, clock oscillation is started. At the same time as clock oscillation starts, clocks are supplied to the entire chip. Note that the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin must be held low until clock oscillation stabilizes. When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pin goes high, the CPU begins reset exception handling.
- Clearing with the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin

  When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

20.4.3 Setting Oscillation Stabilization Time after Clearing Software Standby Mode

Bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR should be set as described below.

- Using a Crystal Oscillator:

  Set bits STS2 to STS0 so that the standby time is at least 8 ms (the oscillation stabilization time).

  Table 20.3 shows the standby times for different operating frequencies and settings of bits STS2 to STS0.
- Using an External Clock

  Set bits STS2 to STS0 as any value. Usually, minimum value is recommended. A 16-state standby time cannot be used in the F-ZTAT version; a standby time of 2048 states or longer should be used.

Table 20.3 Oscillation Stabilization Time Settings

STS2	STS1	STS0	Standby Time	24MHz	20MHz	16MHz	13MHz	10MHz	8MHz	6MHz	4MHz	2MHz	Unit
0	0	0	8192 states	0.3	0.4	0.51	0.6	0.8	1.0	1.3	2.0	4.1	ms
		1	16384 states	0.7	0.8	1.0	1.3	1.6	2.0	2.7	4.1	8.2	
	1	0	32768 states	1.4	1.6	2.0	2.5	3.3	4.1	5.5	8.2	16.4	
		1	65536 states	2.7	3.3	4.1	5.0	6.6	8.2	10.9	16.4	32.8	
1	0	0	131072 states	5.5	6.6	8.2	10.1	13.1	16.4	21.8	32.8	65.5	
		1	262144 states	10.9	13.1	16.4	20.2	26.2	32.8	43.6	65.6	131.2	
	1	0	2048 states	0.09	0.1	0.13	0.16	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.5	1.0	
		1	16 states	0.7	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.6	2.0	1.7	4.0	8.0	µs

: Recommended time setting

20.4.4 Software Standby Mode Application Example

Figure 20.3 shows an example in which a transition is made to software standby mode at the falling edge on the NMI pin, and software standby mode is cleared at the rising edge on the NMI pin.

In this example, an NMI interrupt is accepted with the NMIEG bit in SYSCR cleared to 0 (falling edge specification), then the NMIEG bit is set to 1 (rising edge specification), the SSBY bit is set to 1, and a SLEEP instruction is executed, causing a transition to software standby mode.

Software standby mode is then cleared at the rising edge on the NMI pin.

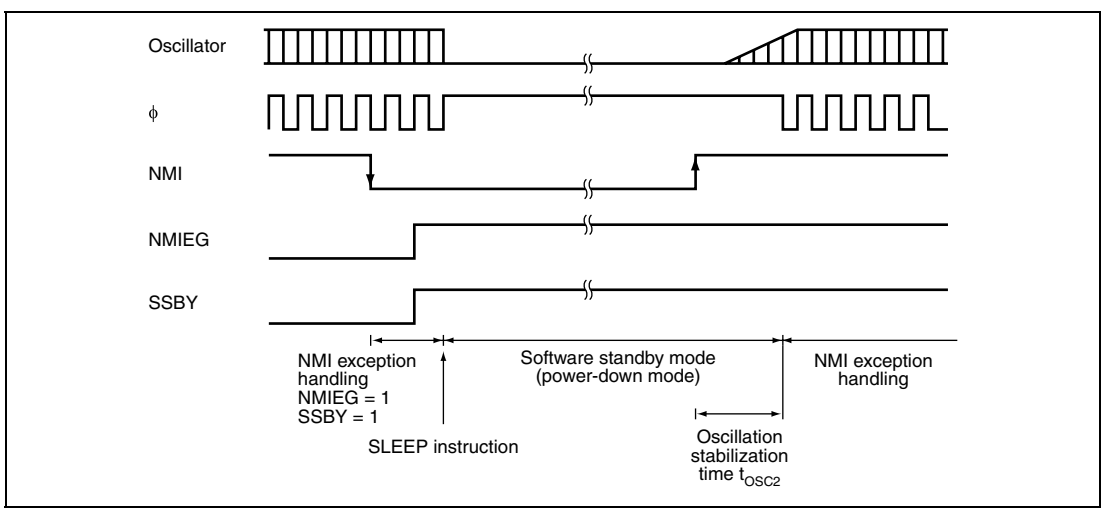


Figure 20.3 Software Standby Mode Application Example

20.5 Hardware Standby Mode

20.5.1 Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode from any mode.

In hardware standby mode, all functions enter the reset state and stop operation, resulting in a significant reduction in power dissipation. As long as the prescribed voltage is supplied, on-chip RAM data is retained. I/O ports are set to the high-impedance state.

In order to retain on-chip RAM data, the RAME bit in SYSCR should be cleared to 0 before driving the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin low.

Do not change the state of the mode pins (MD2 to MD0) while this LSI is in hardware standby mode.

20.5.2 Clearing Hardware Standby Mode

Hardware standby mode is cleared by means of the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin and the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin. When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven high while the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is low, the reset state is set and clock oscillation is started. Ensure that the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is held low until the clock oscillator stabilizes (at least t_{osc1}—the oscillation stabilization time—when using a crystal oscillator). When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is subsequently driven high, a transition is made to the program execution state via the reset exception handling state.

20.5.3 Hardware Standby Mode Timing

Figure 20.4 shows an example of hardware standby mode timing.

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low after the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin has been driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode. Hardware standby mode is cleared by driving the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin high, waiting for the oscillation stabilization time, then changing the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin from low to high.

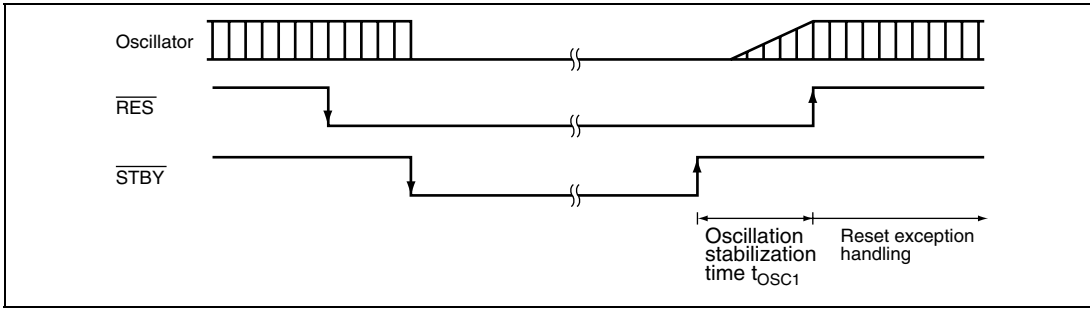


Figure 20.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timing (Example)

20.5.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timings

Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode:

1. To retain RAM contents with the RAME bit set to 1 in SYSCR
   Drive the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal low at least 10 states before the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ signal goes low, as shown in Figure 20.5. After $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ has gone low, $\overline{\text{RES}}$ has to wait for at least 0 ns before becoming high.

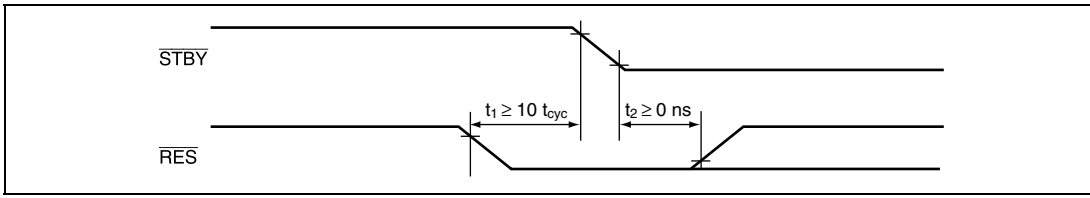


Figure 20.5 Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

2. To retain RAM contents with the RAME bit cleared to 0 in SYSCR, or when RAM contents do not need to be retained
   $\overline{\text{RES}}$ does not have to be driven low as in the above case.

Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode: Drive the $\overline{RES}$ signal low approximately 100 ns or more before $\overline{STBY}$ goes high to execute a power-on reset.

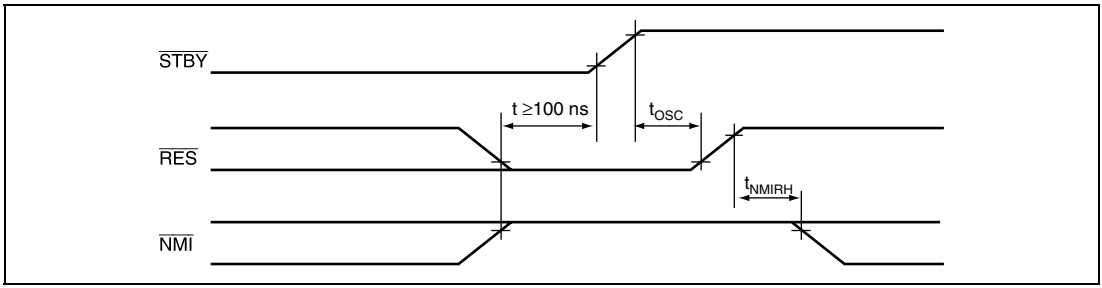


Figure 20.6 Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode

20.6 Module Stop Mode

Module stop mode can be set for individual on-chip supporting modules.

When the corresponding MSTP bit in MSTPCR is set to 1, module operation stops at the end of the bus cycle and a transition is made to module stop mode. The CPU continues operating independently.

When the corresponding MSTP bit is cleared to 0, module stop mode is cleared and the module starts operating at the end of the bus cycle. In module stop mode, the internal states of modules other than the A/D converter are retained.

After reset clearance, all modules other than DMAC are in module stop mode.

When an on-chip supporting module is in module stop mode, read/write access to its registers is disabled.

When a transition is made to sleep mode with all modules stopped, the bus controller and I/O ports also stop operating, enabling current dissipation to be further reduced.

20.7 Watch Mode

20.7.1 Transition to Watch Mode

CPU operation makes a transition to watch mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode or sub-active mode with SBYCR SSBY=1, LPWRCR DTON = 0, and TCSR_1 PSS = 1.

In watch mode, the CPU is stopped and peripheral modules other than WDT are also stopped. The contents of the CPU's internal registers, the data in internal RAM, and the statuses of the internal peripheral modules (excluding the A/D converter) and I/O ports are retained. To make a transition to watch mode, bits SCK2 to SCK0 in SCKCR must be set to 0.

20.7.2 Exiting Watch Mode

Watch mode is exited by any interrupt (WOVI interrupt, NMI pin, or $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$, to $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$), or signals at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$*, or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pins.

- Exiting Watch Mode by Interrupts

  When an interrupt occurs, watch mode is exited and a transition is made to high-speed mode or medium-speed mode when the LPWRCR LSON bit = 0 or to sub-active mode when the LSON bit = 1. When a transition is made to high-speed mode, a stable clock is supplied to all LSI circuits and interrupt exception processing starts after the time set in SBYCR STS2 to STS0 has elapsed. In case of IRQ0, to IRQ7 interrupts, no transition is made from watch mode if the corresponding enable bit/pin function switching bit has been cleared to 0, and, in the case of interrupts from the internal peripheral modules, the interrupt enable register has been set to disable the reception of that interrupt, or is masked by the CPU.

  See section 20.4.3 Setting, Oscillation Stablization Time after Clearing Software Standby Mode, for how to set the oscillation settling time when making a transition from watch mode to high-speed mode.
- Exiting Watch Mode by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins

  For exiting watch mode by the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins, see section 20.4.2, Clearing Software Standby Mode.
- Exiting Watch Mode by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin

  When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin level is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

20.8 Sub-Sleep Mode

20.8.1 Transition to Sleep Mode

When the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SBYCR SSBY bit = 0, LPWRCR LSON bit = 1, and TCSR_1 PSS bit = 1, CPU operation shifts to sub-sleep mode.

In sub-sleep mode, the CPU is stopped. Peripheral modules other WDT are also stopped. The contents of the CPU's internal registers, the data in internal RAM, and the statuses of the internal peripheral modules (excluding the A/D converter) and I/O ports are retained.

22.8.2 Exiting Sub-Sleep Mode

Sub-sleep mode is exited by an interrupt (interrupts from internal peripheral modules, NMI pin, or $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$, to $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$), or signals at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ or pins.

- Exiting Sub-Sleep Mode by Interrupts

  When an interrupt occurs, sub-sleep mode is exited and interrupt exception processing starts.

  In case of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$, to $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$interrupts, sub-sleep mode is not cancelled if the corresponding enable bit/pin function switching bit has been cleared to 0, and, in the case of interrupts from the internal peripheral modules, the interrupt enable register has been set to disable the reception of that interrupt, or is masked by the CPU.
- Exiting Sub-Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins

  For exiting sub-sleep mode by the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins, see section 20.4.2, Clearing Software Standby Mode.
- Exiting Sub-Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ Pin

  When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin level is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

20.9 Sub-Active Mode

20.9.1 Transition to Sub-Active Mode

When the SLEEP instruction is executed in high-speed mode with the SBYCR SSBY bit = 1, LPWRCR DTON bit = 1, LSON bit = 1, and TCSR_1 PSS bit = 1, CPU operation shifts to sub-active mode. When an interrupt occurs in watch mode, and if the LSON bit of LPWRCR is 1, a transition is made to sub-active mode. And if an interrupt occurs in sub-sleep mode, a transition is made to sub-active mode.

In sub-active mode, the CPU operates at low speed on the subclock, and the program is executed step by step. Peripheral modules other than WDT are also stopped.

When operating the CPU in sub-active mode, the SCKCR SCK2 to SCK0 bits must be set to 0.

22.9.2 Exiting Sub-Active Mode

Sub-active mode is exited by the SLEEP instruction or the $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$*, or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pins.

- Exiting Sub-Active Mode by SLEEP Instruction

  When the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SBYCR SSBY bit = 1, LPWRCR DTON bit = 0, and TCSR_1 PSS bit = 1, the CPU exits sub-active mode and a transition is made to watch mode. When the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SBYCR SSBY bit = 0, LPWRCR LSON bit = 1, and TCSR_1 PSS bit = 1, a transition is made to sub-sleep mode. Finally, when the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SBYCR SSBY bit = 1, LPWRCR DTON bit = 1, LSON bit = 0, and TCSR_1 PSS bit = 1, a direct transition is made to high-speed mode (SCK0 to SCK2 all 0).
- Exiting Sub-Active Mode by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins

  For exiting sub-active mode by the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$* pins, see section 20.4.2, Clearing Software Standby Mode.
- Exiting Sub-Active Mode by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ Pin

  When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin level is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Note: * Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.

20.10 Direct Transitions

There are three modes, high-speed, medium-speed, and sub-active, in which the CPU executes programs. When a direct transition is made, there is no interruption of program execution when shifting between high-speed and sub-active modes. Direct transitions are enabled by setting the LPWRCR DTON bit to 1, then executing the SLEEP instruction. After a transition, direct transition interrupt exception processing starts.

20.10.1 Direct Transitions from High-Speed Mode to Sub-Active Mode

Execute the SLEEP instruction in high-speed mode when the SBYCR SSBY bit = 1, LPWRCR LSON bit = 1, and DTON bit = 1, and TSCR_1 PSS bit = 1 to make a transition to sub-active mode.

20.10.2 Direct Transitions from Sub-Active Mode to High-Speed Mode

Execute the SLEEP instruction in sub-active mode when the SBYCR SSBY bit = 1, LPWRCR LSON bit = 0, and DTON bit = 1, and TSCR_1 PSS bit = 1 to make a direct transition to high-speed mode after the time set in SBYCR STS2 to STS0 has elapsed.

20.11 φ Clock Output Disabling Function

Output of the φ clock can be controlled by means of the PSTOP bit in SCKCR, and DDR for the corresponding port. When the PSTOP bit is set to 1, the φ clock stops at the end of the bus cycle, and φ output goes high. ø clock output is enabled when the PSTOP bit is cleared to 0. When DDR for the corresponding port is cleared to 0, φ clock output is disabled and input port mode is set. Table 20.4 shows the state of the φ pin in each processing state.

Table 20.4 φ Pin State in Each Processing State

Register Settings		High-Speed Mode, Medium-Speed Mode, Subactive Mode	Sleep Mode, Subsleep Mode	Software Standby Mode, Watch Mode, Direct Transition	Hardware Standby Mode
DDR	PSTOP				
0	X	High impedance	High impedance	High impedance	High impedance
1	0	φ output	φ output	Fixed high	High impedance
1	1	Fixed high	Fixed high	Fixed high	High impedance

Legend X: Don't care

20.12 Usage Notes

20.12.1 I/O Port Status

In software standby mode, I/O port states are retained. Therefore, there is no reduction in current dissipation for the output current when a high-level signal is output.

20.12.2 Current Dissipation during Oscillation Stabilization Wait Period

Current dissipation increases during the oscillation stabilization wait period.

20.12.3 DMAC Module Stop

Depending on the operating status of the DMAC, the MSTPA7 bit may not be set to 1. Setting of the DMAC module stop mode should be carried out only when the DMAC is not activated.

For details, section 7, DMA Controller (DMAC).

20.12.4 On-Chip Peripheral Module Interrupt

Relevant interrupt operations cannot be performed in module stop mode. Consequently, if module stop mode is entered when an interrupt has been requested, it will not be possible to clear the CPU interrupt source or DMAC activation source. Interrupts should therefore be disabled before setting module stop mode.

Section 21 List of Registers

The register list gives information on the on-chip I/O register addresses, how the register bits are configured, and the register states in each operating mode. The information is given as shown below.

1. Register Addresses (address order)

- Registers are listed from the lower allocation addresses.
- Registers are classified by functional modules.
- The access size is indicated.

2. Register Bits

- Bit configurations of the registers are described in the same order as the Register Addresses (address order) above.
- Reserved bits are indicated by — in the bit name column.
- The bit number in the bit-name column indicates that the whole register is allocated as a counter or for holding data.
- 16-bit or 24-bit registers are indicated from the bit on the MSB side.

3. Register States in Each Operating Mode

- Register states are described in the same order as the Register Addresses (address order) above.
- The register states described here are for the basic operating modes. If there is a specific reset for an on-chip peripheral module, refer to the section on that on-chip peripheral module.

21.1 Register Addresses (Address Order)

The data bus width indicates the numbers of bits by which the register is accessed.

The number of access states indicates the number of states based on the specified reference clock.

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
USB reserved area	—	—	H'C00000 to H'C0007F	USB	—	—
USB control register	UCTLR	8	H'C00080	USB	8	3
USB test register A	UTSTRA	8	H'C00081	USB	8	3
USB DMAC transfer request register	UDMAR	8	H'C00082	USB	8	3
USB device resume register	UDRR	8	H'C00083	USB	8	3
USB trigger register 0	UTRG0	8	H'C00084	USB	8	3
USB FIFO clear register 0	UFCLR0	8	H'C00086	USB	8	3
USB endpoint stall register 0	UESTL0	8	H'C00088	USB	8	3
USB endpoint stall register 1	UESTL1	8	H'C00089	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 0s	UEDR0s	8	H'C00090 to H'C00093	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 0i	UEDR0i	8	H'C00094 to H'C00097	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 0o	UEDR0o	8	H'C00098 to H'C0009B	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 3	UEDR3	8	H'C0009C to H'C0009F	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 1	UEDR1	8	H'C000A0 to H'C000A3	USB	8	3
USB endpoint data register 2	UEDR2	8	H'C000A4 to H'C000A7	USB	8	3

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
USB endpoint receive data size register 0o	UESZ0o	8	H'C000BC	USB	8	3
USB endpoint receive data size register 2	UESZ2	8	H'C000BD	USB	8	3
USB interrupt flag register 0	UIFR0	8	H'C000C0	USB	8	3
USB interrupt flag register 1	UIFR1	8	H'C000C1	USB	8	3
USB interrupt flag register 3	UIFR3	8	H'C000C3	USB	8	3
USB interrupt enable register 0	UIER0	8	H'C000C4	USB	8	3
USB interrupt enable register 1	UIER1	8	H'C000C5	USB	8	3
USB interrupt enable register 3	UIER3	8	H'C000C7	USB	8	3
USB interrupt selection register 0	UISR0	8	H'C000C8	USB	8	3
USB interrupt selection register 1	UISR1	8	H'C000C9	USB	8	3
USB interrupt selection register 3	UISR3	8	H'C000CB	USB	8	3
USB data status register	UDSR	8	H'C000CC	USB	8	3
USB configuration value register	UCVR	8	H'C000CF	USB	8	3
USB test register 0	UTSTR0	8	H'C000F0	USB	8	3
USB test register 1	UTSTR1	8	H'C000F1	USB	8	3
USB test register 2	UTSTR2	8	H'C000F2	USB	8	3
USB test register B	UTSTRB	8	H'C000FB	USB	8	3
USB test register C	UTSTRC	8	H'C000FC	USB	8	3
USB test register D	UTSTRD	8	H'C000FD	USB	8	3
USB test register E	UTSTRE	8	H'C000FE	USB	8	3
USB test register F	UTSTRF	8	H'C000FF	USB	8	3
USB reserved area	—	—	H'C00100 to H'C001FF	USB	—	—
DPRAM (512 bytes)	—	8	H'C00200 to H'C003FF	USB	8	3
USB reserved area	—	—	H'C00400 to H'DFFFFF	USB	—	—

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
Serial control register X	SCRX	8	H'FDB4	FLASH	8	2
Standby control register	SBYCR	8	H'FDE4	SYSTEM	8	2
System control register	SYSCR	8	H'FDE5	SYSTEM	8	2
System clock control register	SCKCR	8	H'FDE6	SYSTEM	8	2
Mode control register	MDCR	8	H'FDE7	SYSTEM	8	2
Module stop control register A	MSTPCRA	8	H'FDE8	SYSTEM	8	2
Module stop control register B	MSTPCRB	8	H'FDE9	SYSTEM	8	2
Module stop control register C	MSTPCRC	8	H'FDEA	SYSTEM	8	2
Pin function control register	PFCR	8	H'FDEB	BSC	8	2
Low power control register	LPWRCR	8	H'FDEC	SYSTEM	8	2
Serial extended mode register A_0	SEMRA_0	8	H'FDF8	SCI_0	8	2
Serial extended mode register B_0	SEMRB_0	8	H'FDF9	SCI_0	8	2
IRQ sense control register H	ISCRH	8	H'FE12	INT	8	2
IRQ sense control register L	ISCRL	8	H'FE13	INT	8	2
IRQ enable register	IER	8	H'FE14	INT	8	2
IRQ status register	ISR	8	H'FE15	INT	8	2
Port 1 data direction register	P1DDR	8	H'FE30	PORT	8	2
Port 3 data direction register	P3DDR	8	H'FE32	PORT	8	2
Port 7 data direction register	P7DDR	8	H'FE36	PORT	8	2
Port A data direction register	PADDR	8	H'FE39	PORT	8	2
Port B data direction register	PBDDR	8	H'FE3A	PORT	8	2
Port C data direction register	PCDDR	8	H'FE3B	PORT	8	2
Port D data direction register	PDDDR	8	H'FE3C	PORT	8	2
Port E data direction register	PEDDR	8	H'FE3D	PORT	8	2
Port F data direction register	PFDDR	8	H'FE3E	PORT	8	2
Port G data direction register	PGDDR	8	H'FE3F	PORT	8	2
Port A pull-up MOS control register	PAPCR	8	H'FE40	PORT	8	2
Port B pull-up MOS control register	PBPCR	8	H'FE41	PORT	8	2
Port C pull-up MOS control register	PCPCR	8	H'FE42	PORT	8	2
Port D pull-up MOS control register	PDPCR	8	H'FE43	PORT	8	2
Port E pull-up MOS control register	PEPCR	8	H'FE44	PORT	8	2
Port 3 open drain control register	P3ODR	8	H'FE46	PORT	8	2
Port A open drain control register	PAODR	8	H'FE47	PORT	8	2
Port B open drain control register	PBODR	8	H'FE48	PORT	8	2
Port C open drain control register	PCODR	8	H'FE49	PORT	8	2

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
Timer start register	TSTR	8	H'FEB0	TPU	16	2
Timer synchro register	TSYR	8	H'FEB1	TPU	16	2
Interrupt priority register A	IPRA	8	H'FEC0	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register B	IPRB	8	H'FEC1	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register C	IPRC	8	H'FEC2	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register D	IPRD	8	H'FEC3	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register E	IPRE	8	H'FEC4	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register F	IPRF	8	H'FEC5	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register G	IPRG	8	H'FEC6	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register J	IPRJ	8	H'FEC9	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register K	IPRK	8	H'FECA	INT	8	2
Interrupt priority register M	IPRM	8	H'FECC	INT	8	2
Bus width control register	ABWCR	8	H'FED0	BSC	8	2
Access state control register	ASTCR	8	H'FED1	BSC	8	2
Wait control register H	WCRH	8	H'FED2	BSC	8	2
Wait control register L	WCRL	8	H'FED3	BSC	8	2
Bus control register H	BCRH	8	H'FED4	BSC	8	2
Bus control register L	BCRL	8	H'FED5	BSC	8	2
RAM emulation register	RAMER	8	H'FEDB	FLASH	8	2
Memory address register 0A H	MAR0AH	16	H'FEE0	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 0A L	MAR0AL	16	H'FEE2	DMAC	16	2
I/O address register 0A	IOAR0A	16	H'FEE4	DMAC	16	2
Transfer count register 0A	ETCR0A	16	H'FEE6	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 0B H	MAR0BH	16	H'FEE8	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 0B L	MAR0BL	16	H'FEEA	DMAC	16	2
I/O address register 0B	IOAR0B	16	H'FEEC	DMAC	16	2
Transfer count register 0B	ETCR0B	16	H'FEEE	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 1A H	MAR1AH	16	H'FEF0	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 1A L	MAR1AL	16	H'FEF2	DMAC	16	2
I/O address register 1A	IOAR1A	16	H'FEF4	DMAC	16	2
Transfer count register 1A	ETCR1A	16	H'FEF6	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 1B H	MAR1BH	16	H'FEF8	DMAC	16	2
Memory address register 1B L	MAR1BL	16	H'FEFA	DMAC	16	2
I/O address register 1B	IOAR1B	16	H'FEFC	DMAC	16	2
Transfer count register 1B	ETCR1B	16	H'FEFE	DMAC	16	2

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
Port 1 data register	P1DR	8	H'FF00	PORT	8	2
Port 3 data register	P3DR	8	H'FF02	PORT	8	2
Port 7 data register	P7DR	8	H'FF06	PORT	8	2
Port A data register	PADR	8	H'FF09	PORT	8	2
Port B data register	PBDR	8	H'FF0A	PORT	8	2
Port C data register	PCDR	8	H'FF0B	PORT	8	2
Port D data register	PDDR	8	H'FF0C	PORT	8	2
Port E data register	PEDR	8	H'FF0D	PORT	8	2
Port F data register	PFDR	8	H'FF0E	PORT	8	2
Port G data register	PGDR	8	H'FF0F	PORT	8	2
Timer control register_0	TCR_0	8	H'FF10	TPU_0	16	2
Timer mode register_0	TMDR_0	8	H'FF11	TPU_0	16	2
Timer I/O control register H_0	TIORH_0	8	H'FF12	TPU_0	16	2
Timer I/O control register L_0	TIORL_0	8	H'FF13	TPU_0	16	2
Timer interrupt enable register_0	TIER_0	8	H'FF14	TPU_0	16	2
Timer status register_0	TSR_0	8	H'FF15	TPU_0	16	2
Timer counter_0	TCNT_0	16	H'FF16	TPU_0	16	2
Timer general register A_0	TGRA_0	16	H'FF18	TPU_0	16	2
Timer general register B_0	TGRB_0	16	H'FF1A	TPU_0	16	2
Timer general register C_0	TGRC_0	16	H'FF1C	TPU_0	16	2
Timer general register D_0	TGRD_0	16	H'FF1E	TPU_0	16	2
Timer control register_1	TCR_1	8	H'FF20	TPU_1	16	2
Timer mode register_1	TMDR_1	8	H'FF21	TPU_1	16	2
Timer I/O control register _1	TIOR_1	8	H'FF22	TPU_1	16	2
Timer interrupt enable register _1	TIER_1	8	H'FF24	TPU_1	16	2
Timer status register_1	TSR_1	8	H'FF25	TPU_1	16	2
Timer counter_1	TCNT_1	16	H'FF26	TPU_1	16	2
Timer general register A_1	TGRA_1	16	H'FF28	TPU_1	16	2
Timer general register B_1	TGRB_1	16	H'FF2A	TPU_1	16	2
Timer control register_2	TCR_2	8	H'FF30	TPU_2	16	2
Timer mode register_2	TMDR_2	8	H'FF31	TPU_2	16	2
Timer I/O control register 2	TIOR_2	8	H'FF32	TPU_2	16	2
Timer interrupt enable register 2	TIER_2	8	H'FF34	TPU_2	16	2
Timer status register_2	TSR_2	8	H'FF35	TPU_2	16	2
Timer counter_2	TCNT_2	16	H'FF36	TPU_2	16	2

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
Timer general register A_2	TGRA_2	16	H'FF38	TPU_2	16	2
Timer general register B_2	TGRB_2	16	H'FF3A	TPU_2	16	2
Extended module stop register	EXMDLSTP	8	H'FF40	SYSTEM	8	2
Second data register/ free running counter data register	RSECDR	8	H'FF48	RTC	8	2
Minute data register	RMINDR	8	H'FF49	RTC	8	2
Hour data register	RHRDR	8	H'FF4A	RTC	8	2
Day-of-week data register	RWKDR	8	H'FF4B	RTC	8	2
RTC control register 1	RTCCR1	8	H'FF4C	RTC	8	2
RTC control register 2	RTCCR2	8	H'FF4D	RTC	8	2
Clock source select register	RTCCSR	8	H'FF4F	RTC	8	2
DMA control register 0A	DMACR0A	8	H'FF62	DMAC	16	2
DMA control register 0B	DMACR0B	8	H'FF63	DMAC	16	2
DMA control register 1A	DMACR1A	8	H'FF64	DMAC	16	2
DMA control register 1B	DMACR1B	8	H'FF65	DMAC	16	2
DMA band control register	DMABCR	16	H'FF66	DMAC	16	2
Timer control/status register	TCSR	8	H'FF74	WDT	16	2
Timer counter	TCNT	8	H'FF74 (write)	WDT	16	2
Timer counter	TCNT	8	H'FF75 (read)	WDT	16	2
Reset control/status register	RSTCSR	8	H'FF76 (write)	WDT	16	2
Reset control/status register	RSTCSR	8	H'FF77 (read)	WDT	16	2
Serial mode register_0	SMR_0	8	H'FF78	SCI_0	8	2
Bit rate register_0	BRR_0	8	H'FF79	SCI_0	8	2
Serial control register_0	SCR_0	8	H'FF7A	SCI_0	8	2
Transmit data register_0	TDR_0	8	H'FF7B	SCI_0	8	2
Serial status register_0	SSR_0	8	H'FF7C	SCI_0	8	2
Receive data register_0	RDR_0	8	H'FF7D	SCI_0	8	2
Smart card mode register_0	SCMR_0	8	H'FF7E	SCI_0	8	2

Register Name	Abbreviation	Number of Bits	Address	Module	Data Bus Width	Number Of Access States
Serial mode register_2	SMR_2	8	H'FF88	SCI_2	8	2
Bit rate register_2	BRR_2	8	H'FF89	SCI_2	8	2
Serial control register_2	SCR_2	8	H'FF8A	SCI_2	8	2
Transmit data register_2	TDR_2	8	H'FF8B	SCI_2	8	2
Serial status register_2	SSR_2	8	H'FF8C	SCI_2	8	2
Receive data register_2	RDR_2	8	H'FF8D	SCI_2	8	2
Smart card mode register_2	SCMR_2	8	H'FF8E	SCI_2	8	2
A/D data register AH	ADDRAH	8	H'FF90	A/D	8	2
A/D data register AL	ADDRAL	8	H'FF91	A/D	8	2
A/D data register BH	ADDRBH	8	H'FF92	A/D	8	2
A/D data register BL	ADDRBL	8	H'FF93	A/D	8	2
A/D data register CH	ADDRCH	8	H'FF94	A/D	8	2
A/D data register CL	ADDRCL	8	H'FF95	A/D	8	2
A/D data register DH	ADDRDH	8	H'FF96	A/D	8	2
A/D data register DL	ADDRDL	8	H'FF97	A/D	8	2
A/D control/status register	ADCSR	8	H'FF98	A/D	8	2
A/D control register	ADCR	8	H'FF99	A/D	8	2
Timer control/status register	TCSR_1	8	H'FFA2	SYSTEM	16	2
Flash memory control register 1	FLMCR1	8	H'FFA8	FLASH	8	2
Flash memory control register 2	FLMCR2	8	H'FFA9	FLASH	8	2
Erase block register 1	EBR1	8	H'FFAA	FLASH	8	2
Erase block register 2	EBR2	8	H'FFAB	FLASH	8	2
Flash memory power control register	FLPWCR	8	H'FFAC	FLASH	8	2
Port 1 register	PORT1	8	H'FFB0	PORT	8	2
Port 3 register	PORT3	8	H'FFB2	PORT	8	2
Port 4 register	PORT4	8	H'FFB3	PORT	8	2
Port 7 register	PORT7	8	H'FFB6	PORT	8	2
Port 9 register	PORT9	8	H'FFB8	PORT	8	2
Port A register	PORTA	8	H'FFB9	PORT	8	2
Port B register	PORTB	8	H'FFBA	PORT	8	2
Port C register	PORTC	8	H'FFBB	PORT	8	2
Port D register	PORTD	8	H'FFBC	PORT	8	2
Port E register	PORTE	8	H'FFBD	PORT	8	2
Port F register	PORTF	8	H'FFBE	PORT	8	2
Port G register	PORTG	8	H'FFBF	PORT	8	2

21.2 Register Bits

Register bit names of the on-chip peripheral modules are described below.

Each line covers eight bits, so 16-bit registers are shown as two lines and 32-bit registers as four lines.

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
UCTLR	—	USPNDE	UCKS3	UCKS2	UCKS1	UCKS0	UIFRST	UDCRST	USB
UTSTRA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UDMAR	—	—	—	—	EP2T1	EP2T0	EP1T1	EP1T0	
UDRR	—	—	—	—	—	—	RWUPs	DVR	
UTRG0	—	—	EP2RDFN	EP1PKTE	EP3PKTE	EP0oRDFN	EP0iPKTE	EP0sRDFN	
UFCLR0	—	—	EP2CLR	EP1CLR	EP3CLR	EP0oCLR	EP0iCLR	—	
UESTL0	—	—	EP2STL	EP1STL	EP3STL	—	—	EP0STL	
UESTL1	SCME	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UEDR0s	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UEDR0i	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UEDR0o	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UEDR3	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UEDR1	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UEDR2	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UESZ0o	—	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UESZ2	—	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	
UIFR0	BRST	—	EP3TR	EP3TS	EP0oTS	EP0iTR	EP0iTS	SetupTS	
UIFR1	—	—	—	—	EP1ALL EMPTY	EP2 READY	EP1TR	EP1 EMPTY	
UIFR3	CK48 READY	SOF	SETC	—	SPRSs	SPRSi	VBUSs	VBUSi	
UIER0	BRSTE	—	EP3TRE	EP3TSE	EP0oTSE	EP0iTRE	EP0iTSE	SetupTSE	
UIER1	—	—	—	—	EP1ALL EMPTYE	EP2 READYE	EP1TRE	EP1 EMPTYE	
UIER3	CK48 READYE	SOFE	SETCE	—	—	SPRSiE	—	VBUSiE	
UISR0	BRSTS	—	EP3TRS	EP3TSS	EP0oTSS	EP0iTRS	EP0iTSS	SetupTSS	
UISR1	—	—	—	—	EP1ALL EMPTYS	EP2 READYS	EP1TRS	EP1 EMPTYS	
UISR3	CK48 READYS	SOFS	SETCS	—	—	—	—	VBUSiS	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
UDSR	—	—	—	—	—	EP1DE	EP3DE	EP0iDE	USB
UCVR	—	—	CNFV0	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTR0	PTSTE	—	—	—	SUSPEND	$\overline{OE}$	FSE0	VPO	
UTSTR1	VBUS	$\overline{UBPM}$	—	—	—	RCV	VP	VM	
UTSTR2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTRC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTRD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTRE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UTSTRF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
SCRX	—	—	—	—	FLSHE	—	—	—	FLASH
SBYCR	SSBY	STS2	STS1	STS0	OPE	—	—	—	SYSTEM
SYSCR	—	—	INTM1	INTM0	NMIEG	MRESE	—	RAME	
SCKCR	PSTOP	—	—	—	—	SCK2	SCK1	SCK0	
MDCR	—	—	—	—	—	MDS2	MDS1	MDS0	
MSTPCRA	MSTPA7	MSTPA6	MSTPA5	MSTPA4	MSTPA3	MSTPA2	MSTPA1	MSTPA0	
MSTPCRB	MSTPB7	MSTPB6	MSTPB5	MSTPB4	MSTPB3	MSTPB2	MSTPB1	MSTPB0	
MSTPCRC	MSTPC7	MSTPC6	MSTPC5	MSTPC4	MSTPC3	MSTPC2	MSTPC1	MSTPC0	
PFCR	—	—	—	—	AE3	AE2	AE1	AE0	BSC
LPWRCR	DTON	LSON	NESEL	SUBSTP	RFCUT	—	STC1	STC0	SYSTEM
SEMRA_0	SSE	TCS2	TCS1	TCS0	ABCS	ACS2	ACS1	ACS0	SCI_0
SEMRB_0	ACS3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ISCRH	IRQ7SCB	IRQ7SCA	IRQ6SCB	IRQ6SCA	IRQ5SCB	IRQ5SCA	IRQ4SCB	IRQ4SCA	INT
ISCRL	IRQ3SCB	IRQ3SCA	IRQ2SCB	IRQ2SCA	IRQ1SCB	IRQ1SCA	IRQ0SCB	IRQ0SCA	
IER	IRQ7E	IRQ6E	IRQ5E	IRQ4E	IRQ3E	IRQ2E	IRQ1E	IRQ0E	
ISR	IRQ7F	IRQ6F	IRQ5F	IRQ4F	IRQ3F	IRQ2F	IRQ1F	IRQ0F	
P1DDR	P17DDR	P16DDR	P15DDR	P14DDR	P13DDR	P12DDR	P11DDR	P10DDR	PORT
P3DDR	—	P36DDR	—	—	—	P32DDR	P31DDR	P30DDR	
P7DDR	P77DDR	P76DDR	P75DDR	P74DDR	—	—	P71DDR	P70DDR	
PADDR	—	—	—	—	PA3DDR	PA2DDR	PA1DDR	PA0DDR	
PBDDR	PB7DDR	PB6DDR	PB5DDR	PB4DDR	PB3DDR	PB2DDR	PB1DDR	PB0DDR	
PCDDR	PC7DDR	PC6DDR	PC5DDR	PC4DDR	PC3DDR	PC2DDR	PC1DDR	PC0DDR	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
PDDDR	PD7DDR	PD6DDR	PD5DDR	PD4DDR	PD3DDR	PD2DDR	PD1DDR	PD0DDR	PORT
PEDDR	PE7DDR	PE6DDR	PE5DDR	PE4DDR	PE3DDR	PE2DDR	PE1DDR	PE0DDR	
PFDDR	PF7DDR	PF6DDR	PF5DDR	PF4DDR	PF3DDR	PF2DDR	PF1DDR	PF0DDR	
PGDDR	—	—	—	PG4DDR	PG3DDR	PG2DDR	PG1DDR	PG0DDR	
PAPCR	—	—	—	—	PA3PCR	PA2PCR	PA1PCR	PA0PCR	
PBPCR	PB7PCR	PB6PCR	PB5PCR	PB4PCR	PB3PCR	PB2PCR	PB1PCR	PB0PCR	
PCPCR	PC7PCR	PC6PCR	PC5PCR	PC4PCR	PC3PCR	PC2PCR	PC1PCR	PC0PCR	
PDPCR	PD7PCR	PD6PCR	PD5PCR	PD4PCR	PD3PCR	PD2PCR	PD1PCR	PD0PCR	
PEPCR	PE7PCR	PE6PCR	PE5PCR	PE4PCR	PE3PCR	PE2PCR	PE1PCR	PE0PCR	
P3ODR	—	P36ODR	—	—	—	P32ODR	P31ODR	P30ODR	
PAODR	—	—	—	—	PA3ODR	PA2ODR	PA1ODR	PA0ODR	
PBODR	PB7ODR	PB6ODR	PB5ODR	PB4ODR	PB3ODR	PB2ODR	PB1ODR	PB0ODR	
PCODR	PC7ODR	PC6ODR	PC5ODR	PC4ODR	PC3ODR	PC2ODR	PC1ODR	PC0ODR	
TSTR	—	—	—	—	—	CST2	CST1	CST0	TPU
TSYR	—	—	—	—	—	SYNC2	SYNC1	SYNC0	
IPRA	—	IPRA6	IPRA5	IPRA4	—	IPRA2	IPRA1	IPRA0	INT
IPRB	—	IPRB6	IPRB5	IPRB4	—	IPRB2	IPRB1	IPRB0	
IPRC	—	IPRC6	IPRC5	IPRC4	—	—	—	—	
IPRD	—	IPRD6	IPRD5	IPRD4	—	—	—	—	
IPRE	—	—	—	—	—	IPRE2	IPRE1	IPRE0	
IPRF	—	IPRF6	IPRF5	IPRF4	—	IPRF2	IPRF1	IPRF0	
IPRG	—	IPRG6	IPRG5	IPRG4	—	—	—	—	
IPRJ	—	IPRJ6	IPRJ5	IPRJ4	—	IPRJ2	IPRJ1	IPRJ0	
IPRK	—	—	—	—	—	IPRK2	IPRK1	IPRK0	
IPRM	—	IPRM6	IPRM5	IPRM4	—	—	—	—	
ABWCR	ABW7	ABW6	ABW5	ABW4	ABW3	ABW2	ABW1	ABW0	BSC
ASTCR	AST7	AST6	AST5	AST4	AST3	AST2	AST1	AST0	
WCRH	W71	W70	W61	W60	W51	W50	W41	W40	
WCRL	W31	W30	W21	W20	W11	W10	W01	W00	
BCRH	ICIS1	ICIS0	BRSTRM	BRSTS1	BRSTS0	RMTS2	RMTS1	RMTS0	
BCRL	BRLE	—	—	—	—	—	—	WAITE	
RAMER	—	—	—	—	RAMS	—	RAM1	RAM0	FLASH

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
MAR0A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DMAC
	Bit 23	Bit 22	Bit 21	Bit 20	Bit 19	Bit 18	Bit 17	Bit 16	
	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
IOAR0A	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
ETCR0A	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
MAR0B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	Bit 23	Bit 22	Bit 21	Bit 20	Bit 19	Bit 18	Bit 17	Bit 16	
	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
IOAR0B	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
ETCR0B	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
MAR1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	Bit 23	Bit 22	Bit 21	Bit 20	Bit 19	Bit 18	Bit 17	Bit 16	
	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
IOAR1A	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
ETCR1A	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
MAR1B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	Bit 23	Bit 22	Bit 21	Bit 20	Bit 19	Bit 18	Bit 17	Bit 16	
	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
IOAR1B	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
ETCR1B	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
P1DR	P17DR	P16DR	P15DR	P14DR	P13DR	P12DR	P11DR	P10DR	PORT
P3DR	—	P36DR	—	—	—	P32DR	P31DR	P30DR	
P7DR	P77DR	P76DR	P75DR	P74DR	—	—	P71DR	P70DR	
PADR	—	—	—	—	PA3DR	PA2DR	PA1DR	PA0DR	
PBDR	PB7DR	PB6DR	PB5DR	PB4DR	PB3DR	PB2DR	PB1DR	PB0DR	
PCDR	PC7DR	PC6DR	PC5DR	PC4DR	PC3DR	PC2DR	PC1DR	PC0DR	
PDDR	PD7DR	PD6DR	PD5DR	PD4DR	PD3DR	PD2DR	PD1DR	PD0DR	
PEDR	PE7DR	PE6DR	PE5DR	PE4DR	PE3DR	PE2DR	PE1DR	PE0DR	
PFDR	PF7DR	PF6DR	PF5DR	PF4DR	PF3DR	PF2DR	PF1DR	PF0DR	
PGDR	—	—	—	PG4DR	PG3DR	PG2DR	PG1DR	PG0DR	
TCR_0	CCLR2	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	TPU_0
TMDR_0	—	—	BFB	BFA	MD3	MD2	MD1	MD0	
TIORH_0	IOB3	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	IOA3	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
TIORL_0	IOD3	IOD2	IOD1	IOD0	IOC3	IOC2	IOC1	IOC0	
TIER_0	TTGE	—	—	TCIEV	TGIED	TGIEC	TGIEB	TGIEA	
TSR_0	—	—	—	TCFV	TGFD	TGFC	TGFB	TGFA	
TCNT_0	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRA_0	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRB_0	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRC_0	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRD_0	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
TCR_1	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	TPU_1
TMDR_1	—	—	—	—	MD3	MD2	MD1	MD0	
TIOR_1	IOB3	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	IOA3	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
TIER_1	TTGE	—	TCIEU	TCIEV	—	—	TGIEB	TGIEA	
TSR_1	TCFD	—	TCFU	TCFV	—	—	TGFB	TGFA	
TCNT_1	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRA_1	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRB_1	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TCR_2	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	TPU_2
TMDR_2	—	—	—	—	MD3	MD2	MD1	MD0	
TIOR_2	IOB3	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	IOA3	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
TIER_2	TTGE	—	TCIEU	TCIEV	—	—	TGIEB	TGIEA	
TSR_2	TCFD	—	TCFU	TCFV	—	—	TGFB	TGFA	
TCNT_2	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRA_2	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TGRB_2	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
EXMDLSTP	—	—	—	—	—	—	RTCSTOP	USBSTOP1	SYSTEM
RSECDR	BSY	SC12	SC11	SC10	SC03	SC02	SC01	SC00	RTC
RMINDR	BSY	MN12	MN11	MN10	MN03	MN02	MN01	MN00	
RHRDR	BSY	—	HR11	HR10	HR03	HR02	HR01	HR00	
RWKDR	BSY	—	—	—	—	WK2	WK1	KWK0	
RTCCR1	RUN	12/24	PM	RST	—	—	—	—	
RTCCR2	—	—	FOIE	WKIE	DYIE	HRIE	MNIE	SEIE	
RTCCSR	—	RCS6	RCS5	—	RCS3	RCS2	RCS1	RCS0	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
DMACR0A*[1]	DTSZ	DTID	RPE	DTDIR	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	DMAC
DMACR0A*[2]	DTSZ	SAID	SAIDE	BLKDIR	BLKE	—	—	—	
DMACR0B*[1]	DTSZ	DTID	RPE	DTDIR	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	
DMACR0B*[2]	—	DAID	DAIDE	—	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	
DMACR1A*[1]	DTSZ	DTID	RPE	DTDIR	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	
DMACR1A*[2]	DTSZ	SAID	SAIDE	BLKDIR	BLKE	—	—	—	
DMACR1B*[1]	DTSZ	DTID	RPE	DTDIR	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	
DMACR1B*[2]	—	DAID	DAIDE	—	DTF3	DTF2	DTF1	DTF0	
DMABCR*[1]	FAE1	FAE0	—	—	DTA1B	DTA1A	DTA0B	DTA0A	
	DTE1B	DTE1A	DTE0B	DTE0A	DTIE1B	DTIE1A	DTIE0B	DTIE0A	
DMABCR*[2]	FAE1	FAE0	—	—	DTA1	—	DTA0	—	
	DTME1	DTE1	DTME0	DTE0	DTIE1B	DTIE1A	DTIE0B	DTIE0A	
TCSR	OVF	WT/$\overline{IT}$	TME	—	—	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	WDT
TCNT	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
RSTCSR	WOVF	RSTE	RSTS	—	—	—	—	—	
SMR_0	C/$\overline{A}$	CHR	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	STOP	MP	CKS1	CKS0	SCI_0
SMR_0*[3]	GM	BLK	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	BCP1	BCP0	CKS1	CKS0	
BRR_0	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SCR_0	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE1	CKE0	
TDR_0	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SSR_0	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT	
SSR_0*[3]	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	ERS	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT	
RDR_0	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SCMR_0	—	—	—	—	SDIR	SINV	—	SMIF	
SMR_2	C/$\overline{A}$	CHR	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	STOP	MP	CKS1	CKS0	SCI_2
SMR_2*[3]	GM	BLK	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	BCP1	BCP0	CKS1	CKS0	
BRR_2	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SCR_2	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE1	CKE0	
TDR_2	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SSR_2	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT	
RDR_2	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
SCMR_2	—	—	—	—	SDIR	SINV	—	SMIF	

Register Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Module
ADDRAH	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	A/D
ADDRAL	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ADDRBH	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
ADDRBL	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ADDRCH	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
ADDRCL	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ADDRDH	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
ADDRDL	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ADCSR	ADF	ADIE	ADST	SCAN	—	CH2	CH1	CH0	
ADCR	TRGS1	TRGS0	—	—	CKS1	CKS0	—	—	
TCSR_1	—	—	—	PSS	—	—	—	—	SYSTEM
FLMCR1	FWE	SWE1	ESU1	PSU1	EV1	PV1	E1	P1	FLASH
FLMCR2	FLER	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
EBR1	EB7	EB6	EB5	EB4	EB3	EB2	EB1	EB0	
EBR2	—	—	—	—	—	—	EB9	EB8	
FLPWCR	PDWND	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORT1	P17	P16	P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	PORT
PORT3	—	P36	—	—	—	P32	P31	P30	
PORT4	—	—	—	—	P43	P42	P41	P40	
PORT7	P77	P76	P75	P74	—	—	P71	P70	
PORT9	P97	P96	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTA	—	—	—	—	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	
PORTB	PB7	PB6	PB5	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0	
PORTC	PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0	
PORTD	PD7	PD6	PD5	PD4	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0	
PORTE	PE7	PE6	PE5	PE4	PE3	PE2	PE1	PE0	
PORTF	PF7	PF6	PF5	PF4	PF3	PF2	PF1	PF0	
PORTG	—	—	—	PG4	PG3	PG2	PG1	PG0	

Notes: 1. Short address mode
2. Full address mode
3. Smart card interface

21.3 Register States in Each Operating Mode

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
UCTLR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	USB
UTSTRA	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UDMAR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UDRR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTRG0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UFCLR0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UESTL0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UESTL1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UEDR0s	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UEDR0i	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UEDR0o	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UEDR3	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UEDR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UEDR2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UESZ0o	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UESZ2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
UIFR0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UIFR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UIFR3	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UIER0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UIER1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UIER3	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UISR0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UISR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UISR3	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UDSR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UCVR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
UTSTR0	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	USB
UTSTR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTR2	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTRB	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTRC	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTRD	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTRE	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
UTSTRF	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
SCRX	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	FLASH
SBYCR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SYSTEM
SYSCR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
SCKCR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
MDCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
MSTPCRA	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
MSTPCRB	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
MSTPCRC	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PFCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	BSC
LPWRCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SYSTEM
SEMRA_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SCI_0
SEMRB_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
ISCRH	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	INT
ISCRL	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IER	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
ISR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
P1DDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	PORT
P3DDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
P7DDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PADDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PBDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PCDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PDDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PEDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PFDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PGDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
PAPCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	PORT
PBPCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PCPCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PDPCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PEPCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
P3ODR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PAODR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PBODR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PCODR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TSTR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	TPU
TSYR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRA	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	INT
IPRB	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRC	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRD	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRE	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRF	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRG	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRJ	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRK	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
IPRM	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
ABWCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	BSC
ASTCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
WCRH	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
WCRL	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
BCRH	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
BCRL	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RAMER	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	FLASH

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
MAR0A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DMAC
IOAR0A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ETCR0A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
MAR0B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
IOAR0B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ETCR0B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
MAR1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
IOAR1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ETCR1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
MAR1B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
IOAR1B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
ETCR1B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
P1DR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	PORT
P3DR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
P7DR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PADR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PBDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PCDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PDDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PEDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PFDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
PGDR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	TPU_0
TMDR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIORH_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIORL_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIER_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TSR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCNT_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRA_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRB_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRC_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRD_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
TCR_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	TPU_1
TMDR_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIOR_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIER_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TSR_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCNT_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRA_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRB_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	TPU_2
TMDR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIOR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TIER_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TSR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCNT_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRA_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TGRB_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
EXMDLSTP	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SYSTEM
RSECDR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	RTC
RMINDR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RHRDR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RWKDR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RTCCR1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RTCCR2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RTCCSR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
DMACR0A	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	DMAC
DMACR0B	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
DMACR1A	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
DMACR1B	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
DMABCR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TCSR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	WDT
TCNT	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
RSTCSR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
SMR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SCI_0
BRR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
SCR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TDR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
SSR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
RDR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
SCMR_0	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
SMR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SCI_2
BRR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
SCR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
TDR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
SSR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
RDR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
SCMR_2	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	
ADDRAH	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	A/D
ADDRAL	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRBH	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRBL	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRCH	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRCL	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRDH	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADDRDL	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADCSR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
ADCR	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	Initialized	
TCSR_1	Initialized	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	SYSTEM
FLMCR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	FLASH
FLMCR2	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	
EBR1	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	
EBR2	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	
FLPWCR	Initialized	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Initialized	Initialized	

Register Name	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	High-Speed	Medium-Speed	Sleep	Module Stop	Watch	Sub-Active	Sub-Sleep	Software Standby	Hardware Standby	Module
PORT1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PORT
PORT3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORT4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORT7	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORT9	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTB	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
PORTG	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

Note: — : is not initialized.

Section 22 Electrical Characteristics

22.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 22.1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 22.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Power supply voltage	V_{CC}, $PLLV_{CC}$, DrV_{CC}	–0.3 to +4.3	V
Input voltage	V_{in}	–0.3 to V_{CC} +0.3	V
Reference voltage	V_{ref}	–0.3 to V_{CC} +0.3	V
Analog input voltage	V_{AN}	–0.3 to V_{CC} +0.3	V
Operating temperature	T_{opr}	Regular specifications: –20 to +75	°C
		Wide-range specifications: –40 to +85*	°C
Storage temperature	T_{stg}	–55 to +125	°C

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum rating are exceeded.

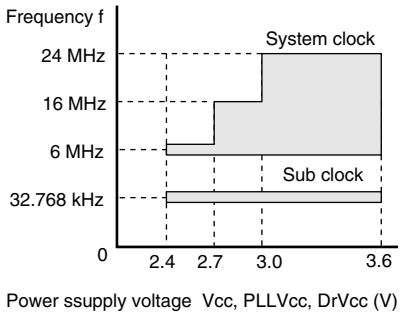
Note: * The operating temperature ranges for flash memory programming/erasing are T_a = –20°C to +75°C.

Preliminary

22.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range

Power supply voltage and operating frequency ranges (shaded areas) are shown in figure 22.1.

(1) Mask ROM version

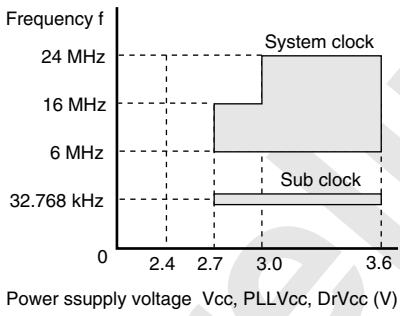


Condition A: Vcc = PLLVcc = DrVcc = 2.4 to 3.6V
Vref = 2.4V to Vcc
Vss = PLLVss = DrVss = 0V
f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz
Ta = -20 to +75 (Regular specifications)
Ta = -40 to + 85 (Wide-range specifications)

Condition B: Vcc = PLLVcc = DrVcc = 2.7 to 3.6V
Vref = 2.7 V to Vcc
Vss = PLLVss = DrVss = 0V
f = 32.768 kHz, 6 to 16 MHz
Ta = -20 to +75 (Regular specifications)
Ta = -40 to + 85 (Wide-range specifications)

Condition C: Vcc = PLLVcc = DrVcc = 3.0 to 3.6V
Vref = 3.0V to Vcc
Vss = PLLVss = DrVss = 0V
f = 32.768 kHz, 6 to 24 MHz
Ta = -20 to +75 (Regular specifications)
Ta = -40 to + 85 (Wide-range specifications)

(2) F-ZTAT version



Condition A: None

Condition B: Vcc = PLLVcc = DrVcc = 2.7 to 3.6V
Vref = 2.7V to Vcc
Vss = PLLVss = DrVss = 0V
f = 32.768 kHz, 6 to 16 MHz
Ta = -20 to +75 (Regular specifications)
Ta = -40 to + 85 (Wide-range specifications)

Condition C: Vcc = PLLVcc = DrVcc = 3.0 to 3.6V
Vref = 3.0V to Vcc
Vss = PLLVss = DrVss = 0V
f = 32.768 kHz, 6 to 24 MHz
Ta = -20 to +75 (Regular specifications)
Ta = -40 to + 85 (Wide-range specifications)

(3) When using the on-chip USB

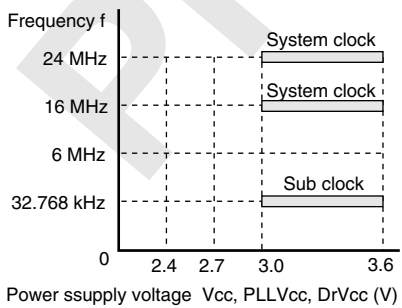


Figure 22.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges

Preliminary

22.3 DC Characteristics

Table 22.2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 22.3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 22.2 DC Characteristics

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	Test Conditions
Schmitt trigger input voltage	$\overline{IRQ0}$ to $\overline{IRQ4}$	V_T^-	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	—	—	V	
		V_T^+	—	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.8$	V	
		$V_T^+ - V_T^-$	$V_{CC} \times 0.05$	—	—	V	
Input high voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, NMI, MD2 to MD0, $\overline{TRST}$, TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLE, VBUS, $\overline{UBPM}$, FWE*4	V_{IH}	$V_{CC} \times 0.9$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	EXTAL, ports 1, 4, 3, 7, 9, and A to G		$V_{CC} \times 0.8$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
Input low voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, MD2 to MD0, $\overline{TRST}$, TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLE, VBUS, $\overline{UBPM}$, FWE*4	V_{IL}	–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.1$	V	
	EXTAL, NMI, ports 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, and A to G		–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	V	

Preliminary

Item		Symbol	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	Test Conditions
Output high voltage	All output pins	V_{OH}	V_{CC} – 0.5	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –200 µA
			V_{CC} – 1.0	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –1 mA
Output low voltage	All output pins	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	V	I_{OH} = 0.4 mA
			—	—	0.4	V	I_{OL} = 0.8 mA
Input leakage current	$\overline{RES}$, VBUS, $\overline{UBPM}$, $\overline{STBY}$, NMI, EMLE, MD2 to MD0, FWE*4, ports 4, 9	$\lvert I_{in} \rvert$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{in} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
Three-state leakage current (off state)	Ports 1, 3, 7, and A to G	$\lvert I_{TSI} \rvert$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{in} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
Input pull-up MOS current	Ports A to E	$-I_P$	10	—	300	µA	V_{in} = 0 V
Input capacitance	$\overline{RES}$, NMI	C_{in}	—	—	30	pF	V_{in} = 0 V f = 1 MHz
	All input pins other than $\overline{RES}$, NMI		—	—	15	pF	T_a = 25°C
Current dissipation*1	Normal operation (USB halts)	I_{CC}*2	—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 16 MHz
			—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 24 MHz
	Normal operation (USB operates)		—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 16 MHz, When PLL3 is used
			—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 24 MHz, When PLL2 is used
	Sleep mode		—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 16 MHz, When USB and PLL are halted
			—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	TBD V_{CC} = 3.6 V	mA	f = 24 MHz, When USB and PLL are halted

Preliminary

Item		Symbol	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	Test Conditions
Current dissipation*[1]	All modules stopped		—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	—	mA	f = 16 MHz (reference value)
			—	TBD V_{CC} = 3.3 V	—	mA	f = 24 MHz (reference value)
	Sub-active mode		—	TBD	TBD	µA	Vcc = 3.0 V, When crystal resonator (32.768 kHz) is used
	Sub-sleep mode		—	TBD	TBD	µA	
	Watch mode		—	TBD	TBD	µA	
	Standby mode*[3]		—	1.0	10	µA	$T_a \leq 50°C$
			—	—	50	µA	$50°C < T_a$
Reference power supply current	During A/D conversion	AI_{CC}	—	1.3	2.5	mA	V_{ref} = 3.3 V
	Idle		—	0.01	5.0	µA	
RAM standby voltage		V_{RAM}	2.0	—	—	V	

Notes: 1. Current dissipation values are for V_{IH} min. = V_{CC} – 0.2 V and V_{IL} max. = 0.2 V, with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip MOS pull-up transistors in the off state.

2. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
   I_{CC} max = TBD (mA) + TBD (mA/(MHz x V)) × V_{CC} × f (normal operation, USB halted)
   I_{CC} max = TBD (mA) + TBD (mA/(MHz x V)) × V_{CC} × f (normal operation, USB operated)
   I_{CC} max = TBD (mA) + TBD (mA/(MHz x V)) × V_{CC} × f (sleep mode)
3. The values are for $V_{RAM} < V_{CC} < 2.7$ V, V_{IH} min. = V_{CC} × 0.9, and V_{IL} max. = 0.3 V.
4. The FWE pin is effective only in the F-ZTAT version.

Preliminary

Table 22.3 Permissible Output Currents

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Permissible output low current (per pin)	All output pins	I_{OL}	—	—	1.0	mA
Permissible output low current (total)	Total of all output pins	ΣI_{OL}	—	—	60	mA
Permissible output high current (per pin)	All output pins	$-I_{OH}$	—	—	1.0	mA
Permissible output high current (total)	Total of all output pins	$\Sigma -I_{OH}$	—	—	30	mA

Note: * To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 22.3.

22.4 AC Characteristics

Figure 22.2 shows, the test conditions for the AC characteristics.

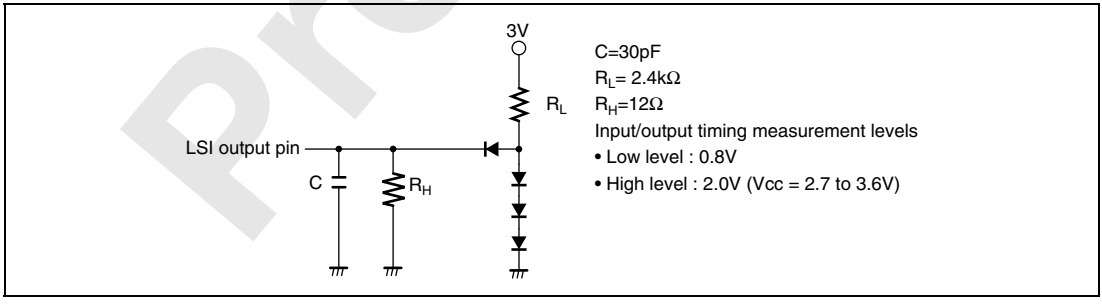


Figure 22.2 Output Load Circuit

Preliminary

22.4.1 Clock Timing

Table 22.4 lists the clock timing

Table 22.4 Clock Timing

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			Test
Item	**Symbol**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Unit**	**Conditions**
Clock cycle time	t_{cyc}	166.6		62.5	166.6	41.6	166.6	ns	Figure 22.3
Clock high pulse width	t_{CH}	50	—	20	—	15	—	ns	
Clock low pulse width	t_{CL}	50	—	20	—	15	—	ns	
Clock rise time	t_{Cr}	—	25	—	10	—	5	ns	
Clock fall time	t_{Cf}	—	25	—	10	—	5	ns	
Oscillation stabilization time at reset (crystal)	t_{OSC1}	40	—	20	—	20	—	ms	Figure 22.4
Oscillation stabilization time in software standby (crystal)	t_{OSC2}	16	—	8	—	8	—	ms	Figure 20.4
External clock output stabilization delay time	t_{DEXT}	1000	—	500	—	500	—	µs	Figure 22.4
Sub-clock stabilization time	t_{OSC3}	—	4	—	2	—	2	s	
Sub-clock oscillator frequency	f_{SUB}	32.768		32.768		32.768		kHz	
Sub-clock (ϕ_{SUB}) cycle time	f_{SUB}	30.5		30.5		30.5		µs	

Preliminary

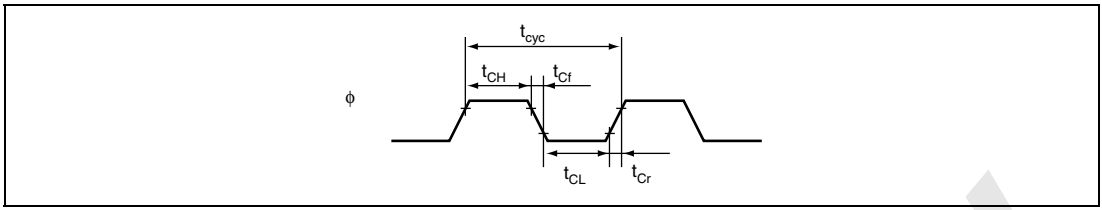


Figure 22.3 System Clock Timing

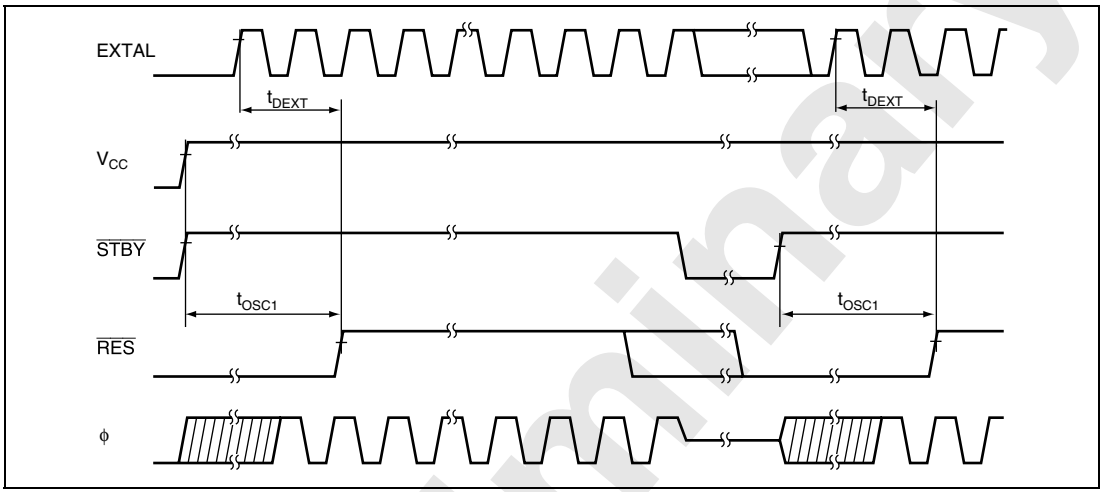


Figure 22.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing

Preliminary

22.4.2 Control Signal Timing

Table 22.5 lists the control signal timing.

Table 22.5 Control Signal Timing

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B, C			
Item	**Symbol**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
$\overline{RES}$ setup time	t_{RESS}	350	—	250	—	ns	Figure 22.5
$\overline{RES}$ pulse width	t_{RESW}	20	—	20	—	t_{cyc}	
$\overline{MRES}$ setup time	T_{MRESS}	350	—	250	—	ns	
$\overline{MRES}$ pulse width	T_{MRESW}	20	—	20	—	t_{cyc}	
NMI setup time	t_{NMIS}	350	—	250	—	ns	Figure 22.6
NMI hold time	t_{NMIH}	10	—	10	—	ns	
NMI pulse width (exiting software standby mode)	t_{NMIW}	300	—	200	—	ns	
$\overline{IRQ}$ setup time	t_{IRQS}	350	—	250	—	ns	
$\overline{IRQ}$ hold time	t_{IRQH}	10	—	10	—	ns	
$\overline{IRQ}$ pulse width (exiting software standby mode)	t_{IRQW}	300	—	200	—	ns	

Preliminary

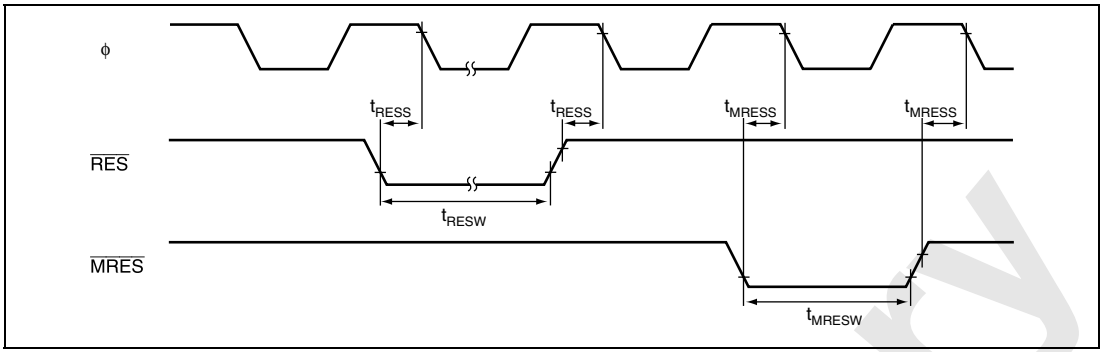


Figure 22.5 Reset Input Timing

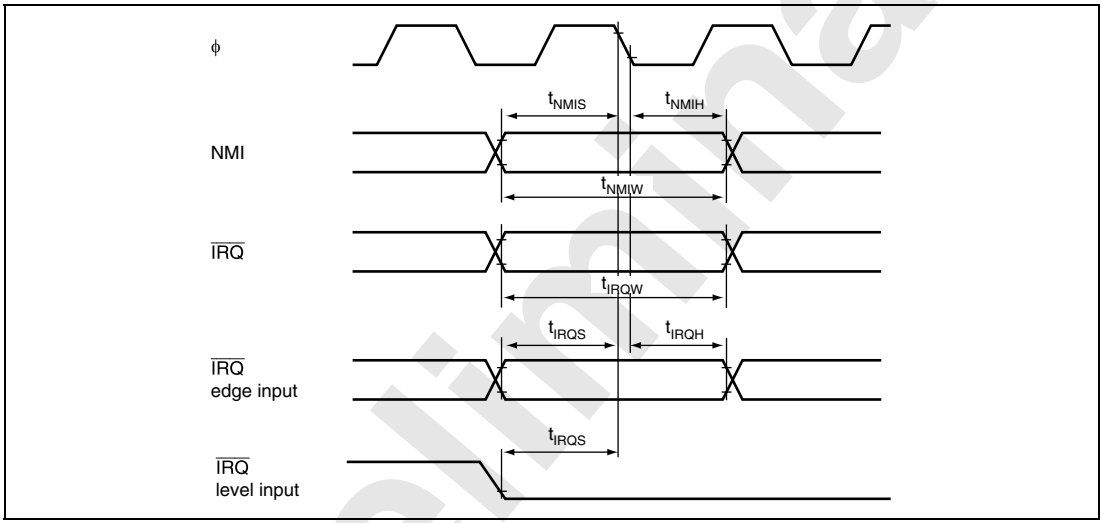


Figure 22.6 Interrupt Input Timing

Preliminary

22.4.3 Bus Timing

Table 22.6 shows, Bus Timing.

Table 22.6 Bus Timing

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			Test
Item	**Symbol**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Unit**	**Conditions**
Address delay time	t_{AD}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8, 22.10
Address setup time	t_{AS}	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 60	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 30	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 15	—	ns	
Address hold time	t_{AH}	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 30	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 15	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 8	—	ns	
$\overline{CS}$ delay time	t_{CSD}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8
$\overline{AS}$ delay time	t_{ASD}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8, 22.10
$\overline{RD}$ delay time 1	t_{RSD1}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8
$\overline{RD}$ delay time 2	t_{RSD2}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8, 22.10
Read data setup time	t_{RDS}	50	—	30	—	25	—	ns	
Read data hold time	t_{RDH}	0	—	0	—	0	—	ns	
Read data access time 2	t_{ACC2}	—	$1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 90	—	$1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 65	—	$1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ – 35	ns	Figures 22.7
Read data access time 3	t_{ACC3}	—	$2.0 \times t_{cyc}$ – 90	—	$2.0 \times t_{cyc}$ – 65	—	$2.0 \times t_{cyc}$ – 35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.10

Preliminary

Item	Symbol	Condition A		Condition B		Condition C		Unit	Test Conditions
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		
Read data access time 4	t_{ACC4}	—	$2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 90$	—	$2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 65$	—	$2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 35$	ns	Figure 22.8
Read data access time 5	t_{ACC5}	—	$3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 90$	—	$3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 65$	—	$3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 35$	ns	
$\overline{WR}$ delay time 1	t_{WRD1}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figure 22.8
$\overline{WR}$ delay time 2	t_{WRD2}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8
$\overline{WR}$ pulse width 1	t_{WSW1}	$1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 60$	—	$1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 30$	—	$1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 20$	—	ns	Figure 22.7
$\overline{WR}$ pulse width 2	t_{WSW2}	$1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 60$	—	$1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 30$	—	$1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$	—	ns	Figure 22.8
Write data delay time	t_{WDD}	—	100	—	50	—	40	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8
Write data setup time	t_{WDS}	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 80$	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 30$	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$	—	ns	Figure 22.8
Write data hold time	t_{WDH}	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 60$	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 15$	—	$0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 10$	—	ns	Figures 22.7, 22.8
$\overline{WAIT}$ setup time	t_{WTS}	90	—	50	—	35	—	ns	Figure 22.9
$\overline{WAIT}$ hold time	t_{WTH}	10	—	10	—	10	—	ns	
$\overline{BREQ}$ setup time	t_{BRQS}	90	—	50	—	35	—	ns	Figure 22.11
$\overline{BACK}$ delay time	t_{BACD}	—	90	—	50	—	35	ns	
Bus-floating time	t_{BZD}	—	160	—	80	—	50	ns	

Preliminary

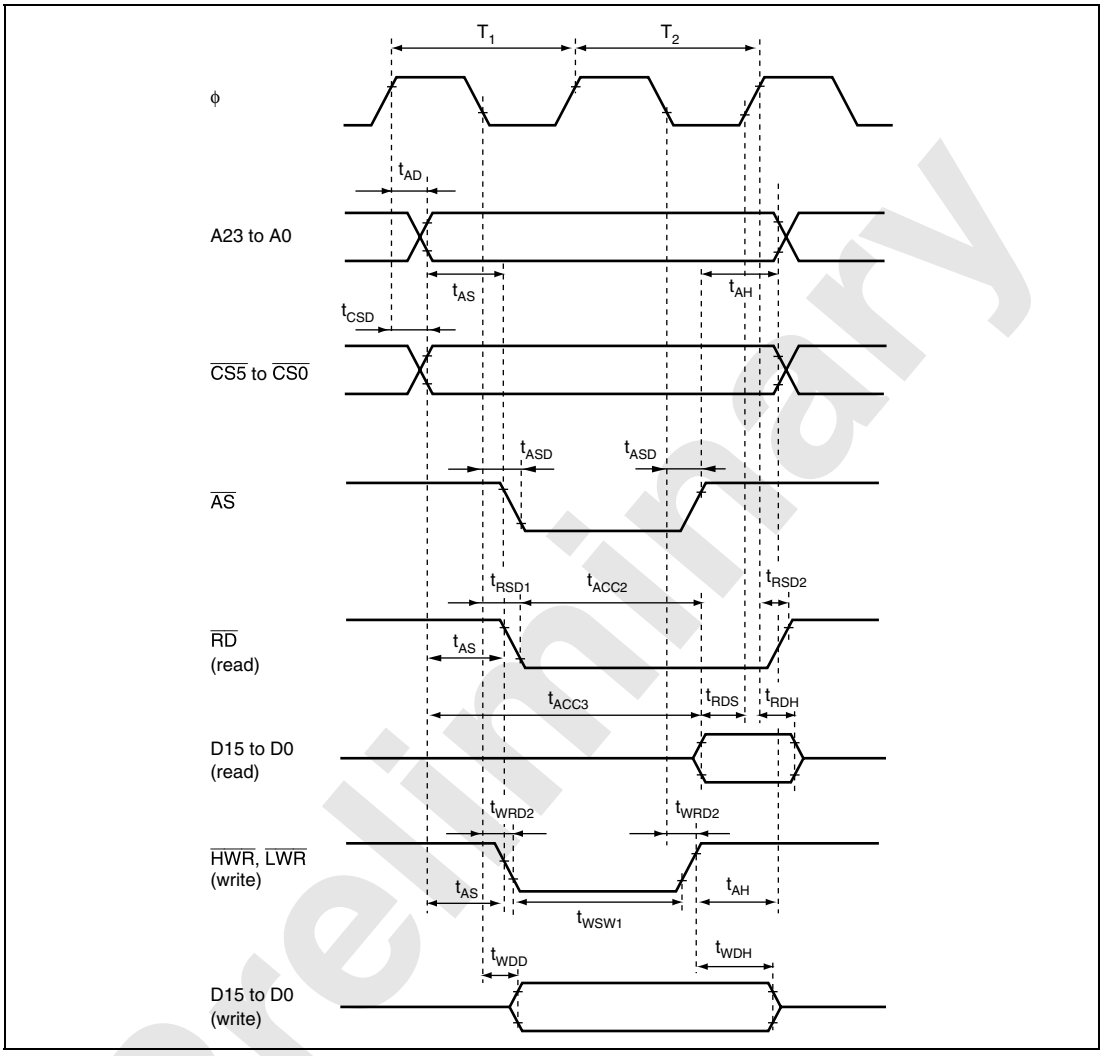


Figure 22.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)

Preliminary

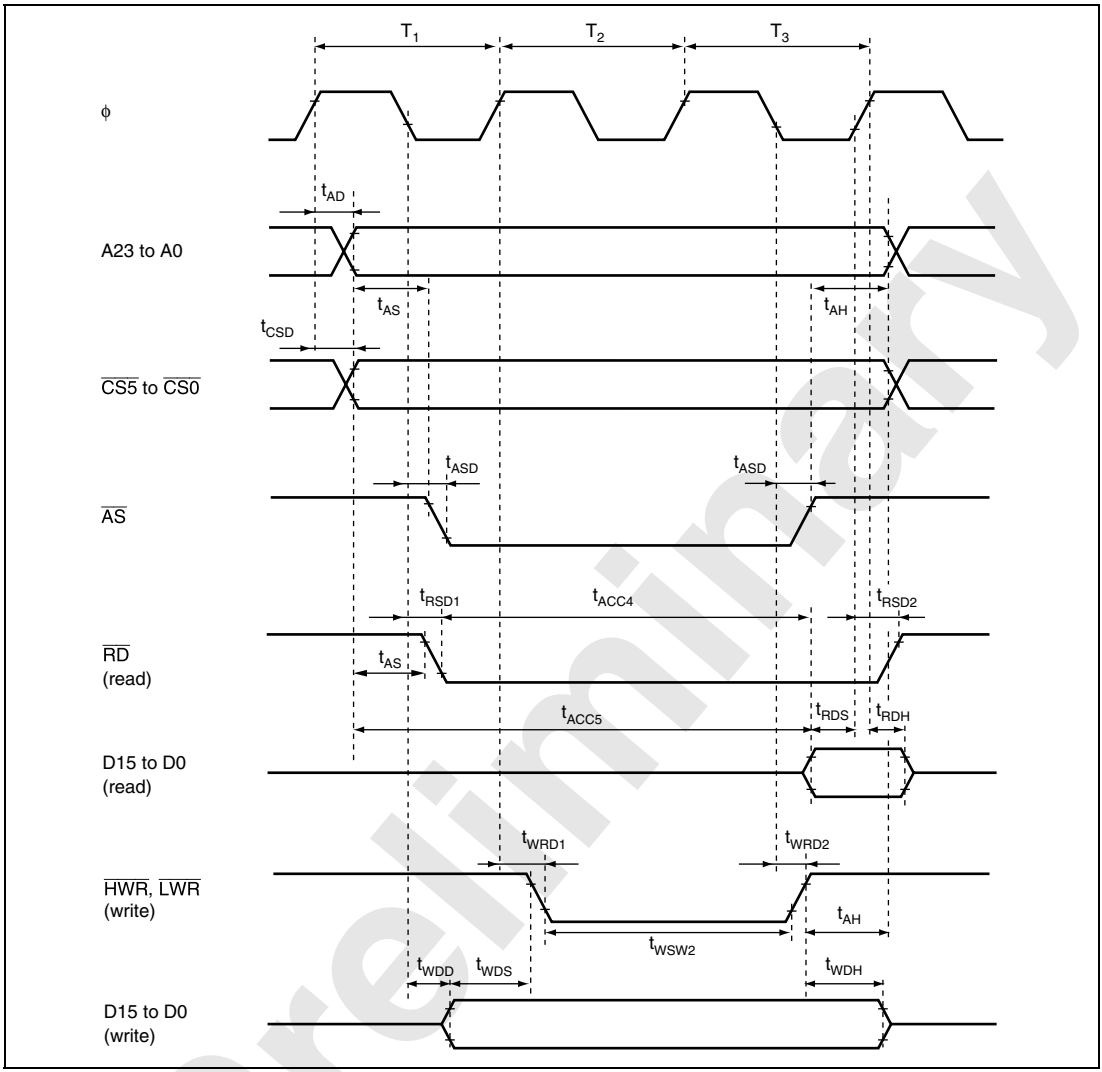


Figure 22.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)

Preliminary

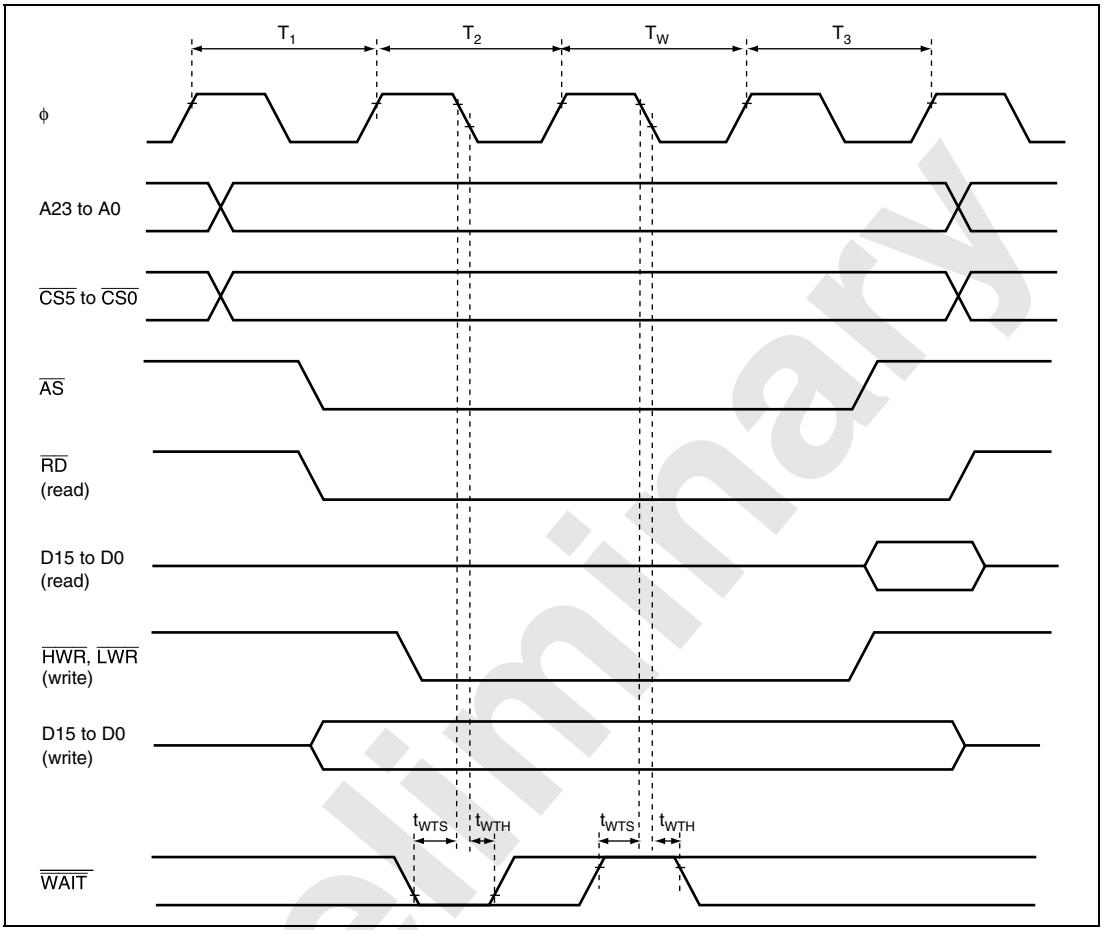


Figure 22.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State)

Preliminary

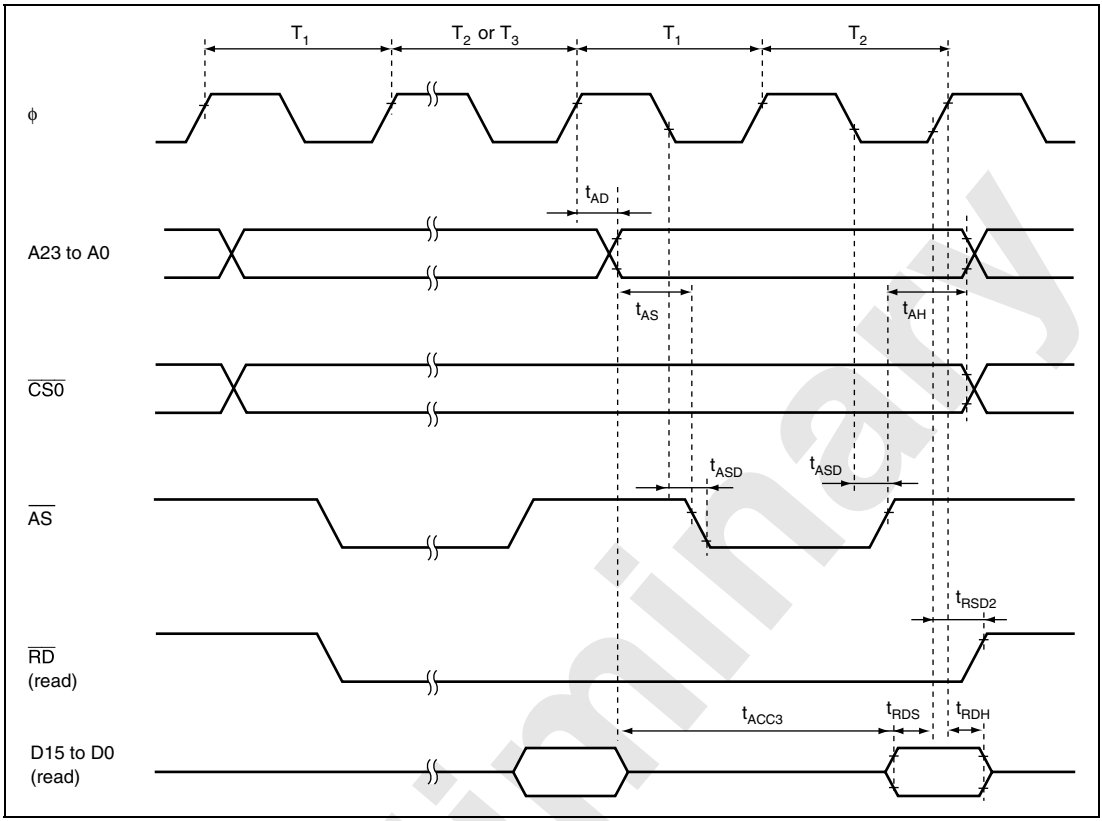


Figure 22.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)

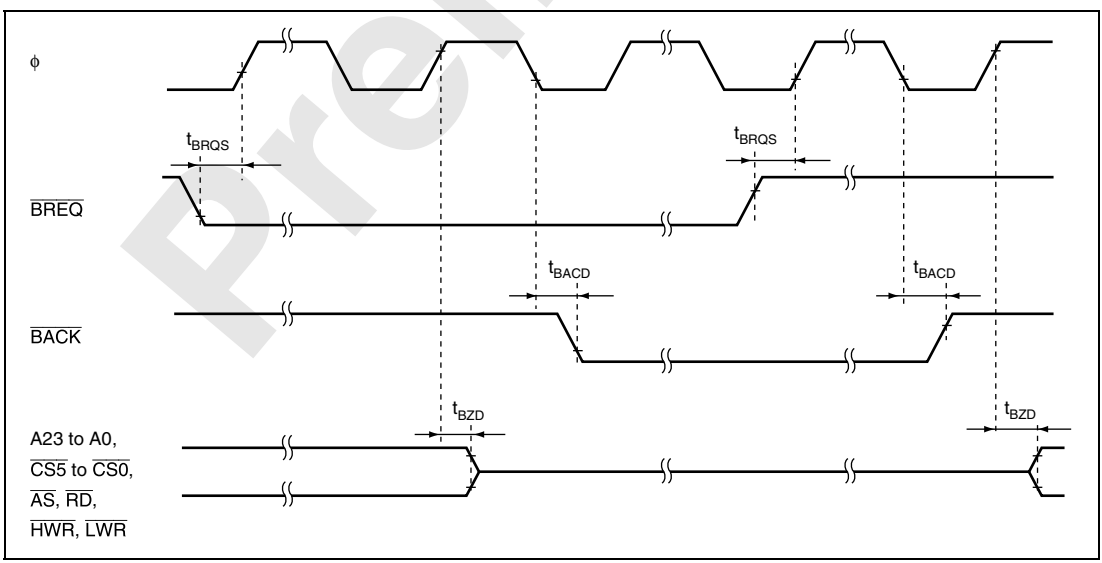


Figure 22.11 External Bus Release Timing

Preliminary

22.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Table 22.7 lists the timing of on-chip supporting modules.

Table 22.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

				Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
Item			**Symbol**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
I/O port	Output data delay time		t_{PWD}	—	150	—	60	—	40	ns	Figure 22.12
	Input data setup time		t_{PRS}	80	—	50	—	30	—		
	Input data hold time		t_{PRH}	50	—	50	—	30	—		
TPU	Timer output delay time		t_{TOCD}	—	150	—	60	—	40	ns	Figure 22.13
	Timer input setup time		t_{TICS}	60	—	40	—	30	—		
	Timer clock input setup time		t_{TCKS}	60	—	40	—	30	—	ns	Figure 22.14
	Timer clock pulse width	Single edge	t_{TCKWH}	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	t_{cyc}	
		Both edges	t_{TCKWL}	2.5	—	2.5	—	2.5	—		

Preliminary

Item			Symbol	Condition A Min.	Condition A Max.	Condition B Min.	Condition B Max.	Condition C Min.	Condition C Max.	Unit	Test Conditions
SCI	Input clock cycle	Asynchronous	t_{Scyc}	4	—	4	—	4	—	t_{cyc}	Figure 22.15
		Synchronous		6	—	6	—	6	—		
	Input clock pulse width		t_{SCKW}	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	t_{Scyc}	
	Input clock rise time		t_{SCKr}	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5	t_{cyc}	
	Input clock fall time		t_{SCKf}	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5		
	Transmit data delay time		t_{TXD}	—	150	—	60	—	40	ns	Figure 22.16
	Receive data setup time (synchronous)		t_{RXS}	150	—	60	—	40	—		
	Receive data hold time (synchronous)		t_{RXH}	150	—	60	—	40	—		
A/D converter	Trigger input setup time		t_{TRGS}	60	—	40	—	30	—	ns	Figure 22.17
Boundary scan	TCK cycle time		t_{Tcyc}	166.6	—	62.5	—	41.6	—	ns	Figure 22.18
	TCK high level pulse width		t_{TCKH}	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	t_{Tcyc}	
	TCK low level pulse width		t_{TCKL}	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	t_{Tcyc}	
	$\overline{\text{TRST}}$ pulse width		t_{TRSW}	20	—	20	—	20	—	t_{Tcyc}	Figure 22.19
	$\overline{\text{TRST}}$ setup time		t_{TRSS}	350	—	250	—	250	—	ns	
	TDI setup time		t_{TDIS}	80	—	30	—	20	—	ns	Figure 22.20
	TDI hold time		t_{TDIH}	10	—	10	—	10	—		
	TMS setup time		t_{TMSS}	80	—	30	—	20	—		
	TMS hold time		t_{TMSH}	10	—	10	—	10	—		
	TDO delay time		t_{TDOD}	—	100	—	40	—	35		

Preliminary

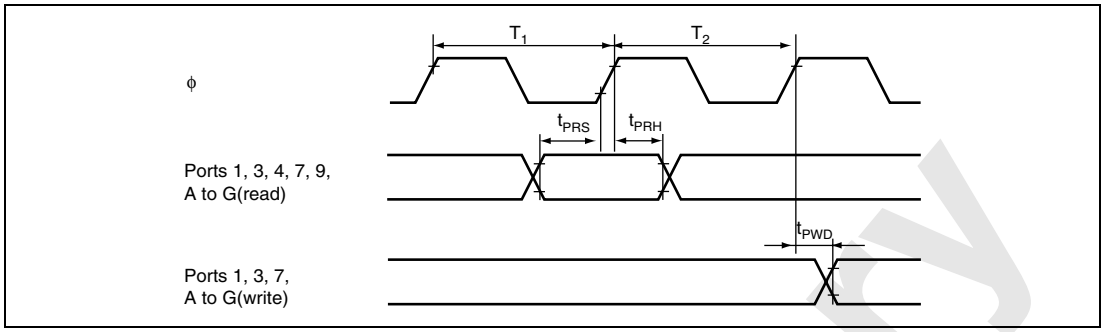


Figure 22.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing

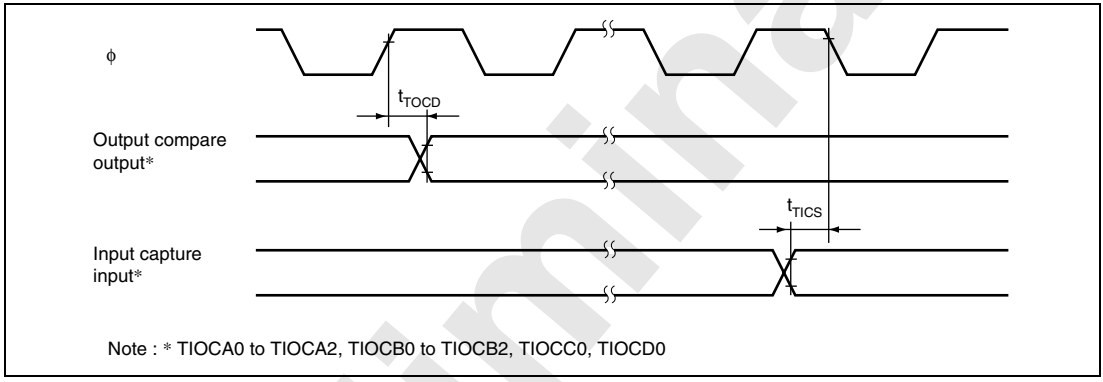


Figure 22.13 TPU Input/Output Timing

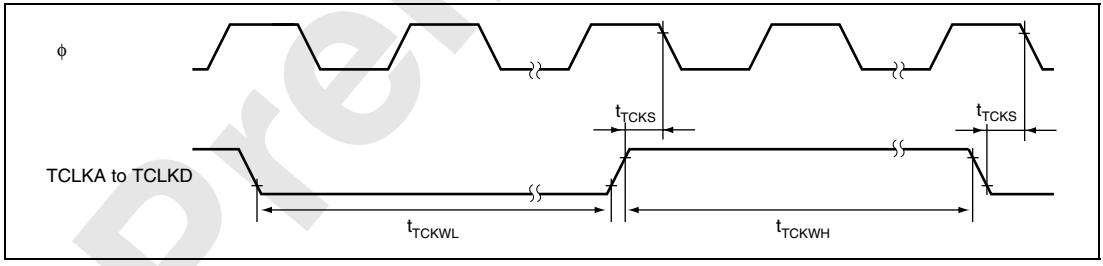


Figure 22.14 TPU Clock Input Timing

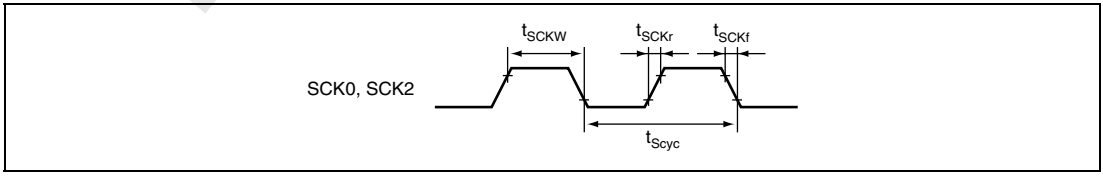


Figure 22.15 SCK Clock Input Timing

Preliminary

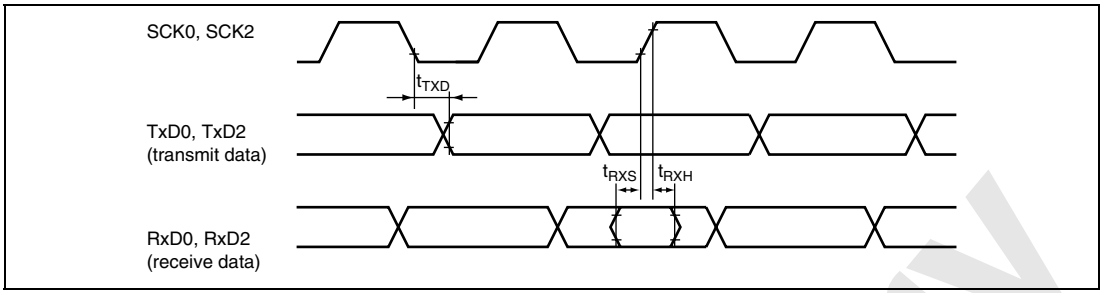


Figure 22.16 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode)

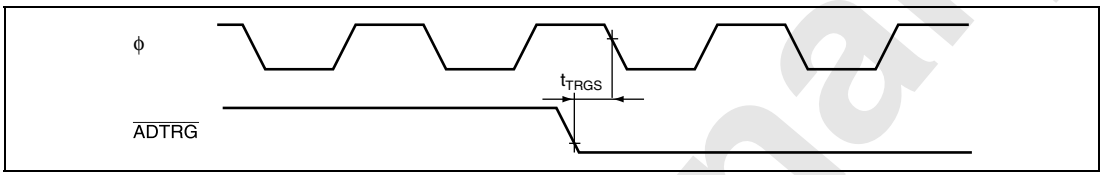


Figure 22.17 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing

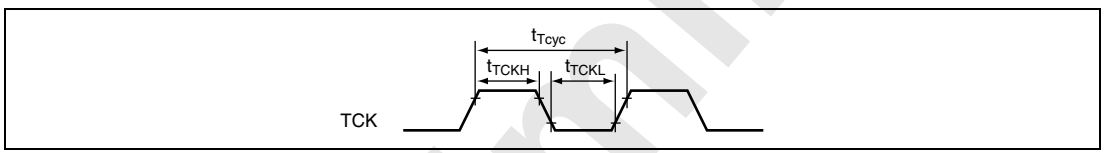


Figure 22.18 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing

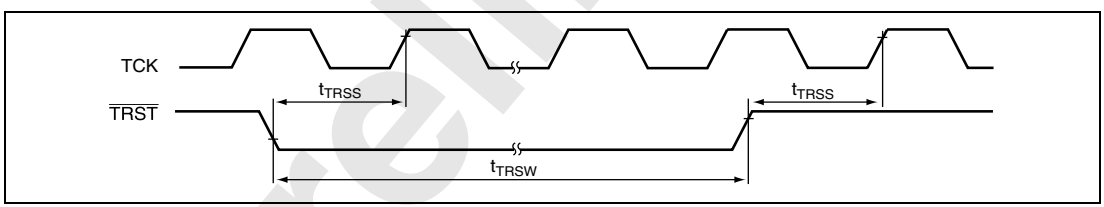


Figure 22.19 Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold)

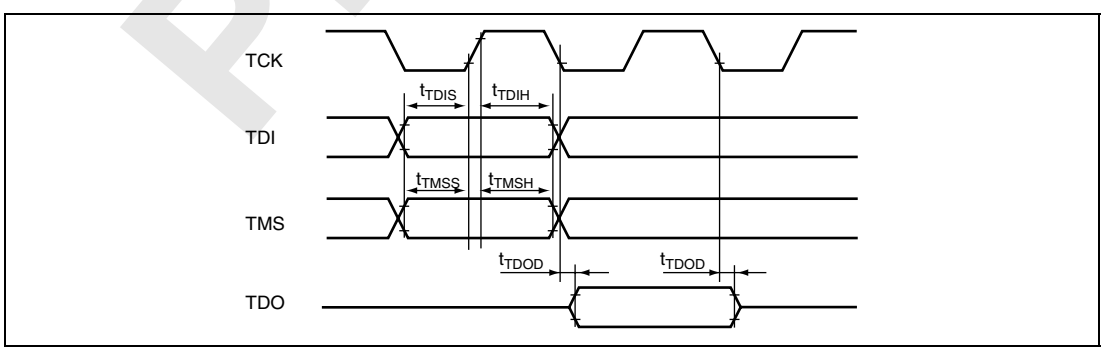


Figure 22.20 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing

Preliminary

22.5 UBS Characteristics

Table 22.8 lists the USB characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when the on-chip USB transceiver is used.

Table 22.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used

Conditions: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = 0 V, f = 16 MHz, 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min.	Max.	Unit	Test Condition	
Input characteristics	Input high level voltage	V_{IH}	2.0	—	V		Figures 22.21,22.22
	Input low level voltage	V_{IL}	—	0.8	V		
	Differential input sense	V_{DI}	0.2	—	V	| (D+)-(D-)|	
	Differential common mode range	V_{CM}	0.8	2.5	V		
Output characteristics	Output high level voltage	V_{OH}	2.8	—	V	I_{OH}=-200 µA	
	Output low level voltage	V_{OL}	—	0.3	V	I_{OL}=2 mA	
	Crossover voltage	V_{CRS}	1.3	2.0	V		
	Rise time	t_R	4	20	ns		
	Fall time	t_F	4	20	ns		
	Rise time/fall time matching	t_{RFM}	90	111.11	%	(T_R / T_F)	
	Output resistance	Z_{TICS}	28	44	Ω	Including Rs = 24 Ω	

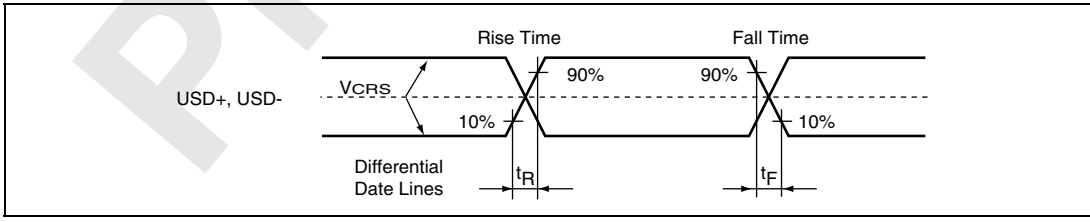


Figure 22.21 Data Signal Timing

Preliminary

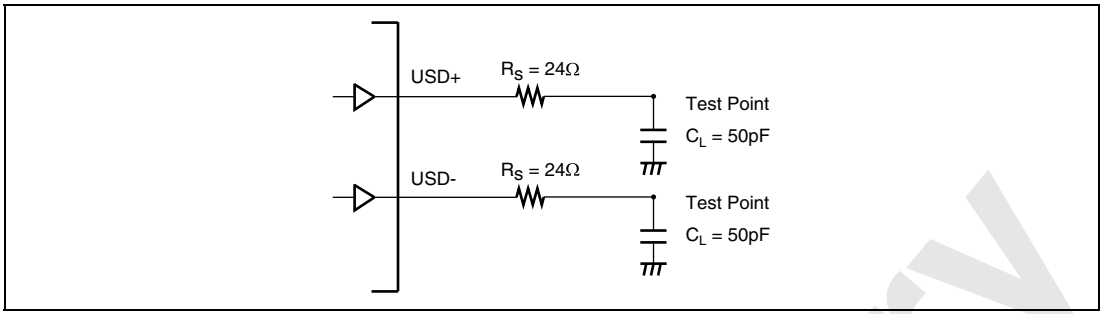


Figure 22.22 Test Load Circuit

22.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 22.9 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 22.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Condition A: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.4 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.4 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =2.7 V to 3.6 V, Vref=2.7 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = PLL V_{CC} =Dr V_{CC} =3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref=3.0 V to V_{CC}, V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = Dr V_{SS} = 0 V, f = 32.768 kHz, 6 MHz to 24 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

	Condition A			Condition B			Condition C			
Item	**Min.**	**Typ.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Typ.**	**Max.**	**Min.**	**Typ.**	**Max.**	**Unit**
Resolution	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	bits
Conversion time	22.3	—	—	8.4	—	—	11.08	—	—	µs
Analog input capacitance	—	—	20	—	—	20	—	—	20	pF
Permissible signal-source impedance	—	—	5	—	—	5	—	—	5	kΩ
Nonlinearity error	—	—	±6.0	—	—	±6.0	—	—	±6.0	LSB
Offset error	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	LSB
Full-scale error	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	LSB
Quantization	—	—	±0.5	—	—	±0.5	—	—	±0.5	LSB
Absolute accuracy	—	—	±8.0	—	—	±8.0	—	—	±8.0	LSB

Preliminary

22.7 Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 22.10 lists the flash memory characteristics.

Table 22.10 Flash Memory Characteristics

Conditions: V_{CC} = $PLLV_{CC}$ = DrV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 3.6 V, Vref = 2.7 V to V_{CC},
V_{SS} = $PLLV_{SS}$ = DrV_{SS} = 0 V,
T_a = –20 to +75°C (Programming / erasing operating temperature range)

Item		Symbol	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Programming time*1, *2, *4		t_P	—	10	200	ms/128 bytes
Erase time*1, *3, *5		t_E	—	50	1000	ms/block
Reprogramming count		N_{WEC}	100*6	10000*7	—	Times
Data retention time*8		t_{DRP}	10	—	—	Years
Programming	Wait time after PSU1 bit setting*1	y	50	50	—	µs
	Wait time after P1 bit setting*1, *4	z0	28	30	32	µs
		z1	198	200	202	µs
		z2	8	10	12	µs
	Wait time after P1 bit clear*1	α	5	5	—	µs
	Wait time after PSU1 bit clear*1	β	5	5	—	µs
	Wait time after PV1 bit setting*1	γ	4	4	—	µs
	Wait time after H'FF dummy write*1	ε	2	2	—	µs
	Wait time after PV1 bit clear*1	η	2	2	—	µs
	Maximum programming count*1, *4	N1	—	—	6*4	Times
		N2	—	—	994*4	Times
Common	Wait time after SWE1 bit setting*1	x	1	1	—	µs
	Wait time after SWE1 bit clear*1	θ	100	100	—	µs
Erase	Wait time after ESU1 bit setting*1	y	100	100	—	µs
	Wait time after E1 bit setting*1, *5	z	10	10	100	ms
	Wait time after E1 bit clear*1	α	10	10	—	µs
	Wait time after ESU1 bit clear*1	β	10	10	—	µs
	Wait time after EV1 bit setting*1	γ	20	20	—	µs
	Wait time after H'FF dummy write*1	ε	2	2	—	µs
	Wait time after EV1 bit clear*1	η	4	4	—	µs
	Maximum erase count*1, *5	N	—	—	100	Times

Notes: 1. Make each time setting in accordance with the program/program-verify flowchart or erase/erase-verify flowchart.
2. Programming time per 128 bytes (Shows the total period for which the P-bit in the flash memory control register(FLMCR1) is set. It does not include the programming verification time.)
3. Block erase time (Shows the total period for which the E1-bit FLMCR1 is set. It does not include the erase verification time.)

Preliminary

4. Maximum programming time value
   t_p(max) = Wait time after P1 bit set (z) x maximum programming count (N1 +N2)
   = (Z0 + Z2) x 6 +Z1 x 994
5. Maximum erasure time value
   t_E(max) = Wait time after E1 bit set (z) x maximum erasure count (N)
6. Minimum times that guarantee all characteristics after programming. (The guaranteed range is 1 to the minimum value.)
7. Reference value when the temperature is 25°C. (it is reference that reprogramming is normally enabled up to this value.)
8. Data hold characteristics when reprogramming is performed within the range of specifications including the minimum value.

22.8 Usage Note

General Notice during Design for Printed Circuit Board: Measures for radiation noise caused by the transient current in this LSI should be taken into consideration. The examples of the measures are shown below.

- To use a multilayer printed circuit board which includes layers for Vcc and GND.
- To mount by-pass capacitors (approximately 0.1 µF) between the Vcc and GND (Vss) pins of this LSI.

Preliminary

A. I/O Port States in Each Processing State

Port Name Pin Name	MCU Operating Mode	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Software Standby Mode	Bus Right Release State	Program Execution State or Sleep Mode
P17 to P14	4 to 7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
P13/A23 P12/A22 P11/A21	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Address output selected by AEn bit	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep	T	Address output
Port selection	4 to 6	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
P10/A20	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Address output selected by AEn bit	4 and 5	L	keep	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep	T	Address output
	6	T					
Port selection	4 to 6	T*1	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Port 3	4 to 7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Port 4	4 to 7	T	T	T	T	T	Input port
P77 to P75*3	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
P74*2	4 to 7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
P71/$\overline{CS5}$*2	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
P70/$\overline{CS4}$*2	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] H	T	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] $\overline{CS5}$, $\overline{CS4}$
Port 9	4 to 7	T	T	T	[DAOEn=1] keep [DAOEn=0] T	keep	Input port
Port A	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Address output selected by AEn bit	4 and 5	L	keep	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep	T	Address output
	6	T					
Port selection	4 to 6	T*1	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port

Port Name / Pin Name		MCU Operating Mode	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Software Standby Mode	Bus Right Release State	Program Execution State or Sleep Mode
Port B*2		7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
	Address output selected by AEn bit	4 and 5	L	keep	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1]	T	Address output
		6	T			keep		
	Port selection	4 to 6	T*1	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Port C*2		4 and5	L	keep	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep	T	Address output
		6	T	keep	T	[DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] keep	T	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] Address output
		7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Port D*2		4 to 6	T	T	T	T	T	Data bus
		7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
Port E	8 bit bus	4 to 6	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
	16 bit bus	4 to 6	T	T	T	T	T	Data bus
		7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PF7/ϕ		4 to 6	Clock output	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] Clock output	T	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] H	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] Clock output	[DDR=0] input port [DDR=1] Clock output
		7	T	keep	T	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] H	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] Clock output	[DDR=0] Input port [DDR=1] Clock output
FA6/$\overline{AS}$*2 PF5/$\overline{RD}$*2 PF4/ $\overline{HWR}$*2		4 to 6	H	H	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] H	T	$\overline{AS}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{HWR}$
		7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port

Port Name Pin Name	MCU Operating Mode	Power-on Reset	Manual Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Software Standby Mode	Bus Right Release State	Program Execution State or Sleep Mode
PF3/$\overline{\text{LWR}}$	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
8 bit bus	4 to 6	(Mode 4) H	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
16 bit bus	4 to 6	(Mode 5 ,6) T	H	T	[OPE=0] T [OPE=1] H	T	$\overline{\text{LWR}}$
PF2/$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$*2	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[WAITE=0] keep [WAITE=1] T	[WAITE=0] keep [WAITE=1] T	[WAITE=0] I/O port [WAITE=1] $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$
	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PF1/$\overline{\text{BACK}}$*2	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[BRLE=0] keep [BRLE=1] H	L	[BRLE=0] I/O port [BRLE=1] $\overline{\text{BACK}}$
	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PF0/$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[BRLE=0] keep [BRLE=1] T	T	[BRLE=0] I/O port [BRLE=1] $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$
	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PG4/$\overline{\text{CS0}}$*2	4 and 5	H	keep	T	[DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] H	T	[DDR=0] I/O port [DDR=1] $\overline{\text{CS0}}$
	6	T					(When sleep mode)H
	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PG3/$\overline{\text{CS1}}$*2 PG2/$\overline{\text{CS2}}$*2 PG1/$\overline{\text{CS3}}$	4 to 6	T	keep	T	[DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] H	T	[DDR=0] I/O port [DDR=1] $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$
	7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port
PG0*3	4 to 7	T	keep	T	keep	keep	I/O port

Legend
H: High level
L: Low level
T: High impedance
keep: Input port level is high impedance, and output port level is retained.
DDR: Data direction register
OPE: Output port enable
WAITE: Wait port enable
BRLE: Bus release enable
Note: 1. L (address input) in mode 4 or 5
2. Supported only by the H8S/2218 Series.
3. Supported only by the H8S/2212 Series.

B. Product Model Lineup

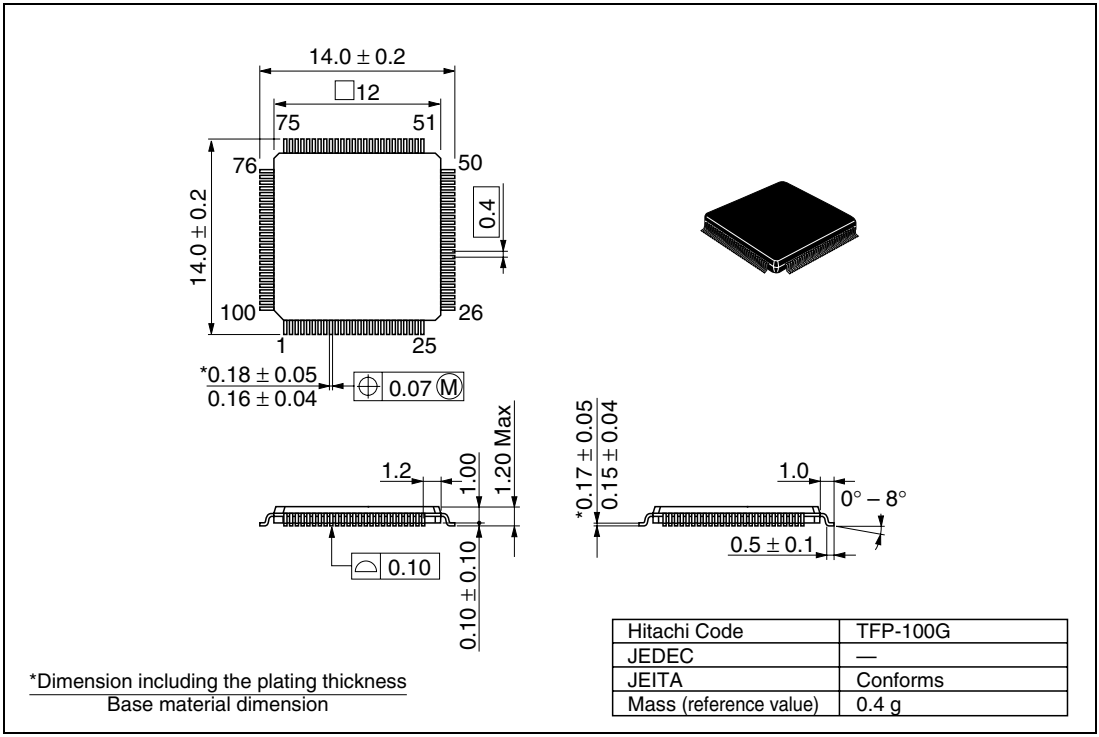
Product Class		Product Type Name	Marking	Package (code)
H8S/2218	Flash memory	HD64F2218	64F2218TF	100 pin TQFP (TFP-100G)
	Version	HD64F2218U	64F2218UTF	100 pin TQFP (TFP-100G)
	Masked ROM Version	HD6432217	6432217(***)TF	100 pin TQFP (TFP-100G)
H8S/2212	Flash memory	HD64F2212	64F2212FP	64 pin LQFP (FP-64E)
	Version	HD64F2212U	64F2212UFP	64 pin LQFP (FP-64E)
	Masked ROM	HD6432211	6432211(***)FP	64 pin LQFP (FP-64E)
	Version	HD6432210	6432210(***)FP	64 pin LQFP (FP-64E)

Legend

(***) is ROM code.

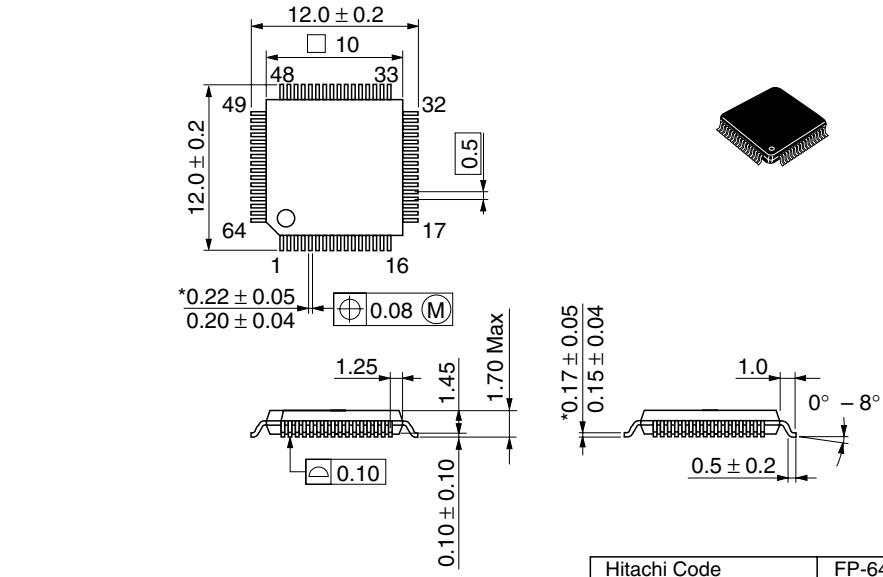
Note: The above list includes products under developing and planning. For the status for each product, please contact your Hitachi sales agency.

C. Package Dimensions



Hitachi Code	TFP-100G
JEDEC	—
JEITA	Conforms
Mass (reference value)	0.4 g

Figure C.1 TFP-100 Package Dimensions



Hitachi Code	FP-64E
JEDEC	—
JEITA	Conforms
Mass (reference value)	0.4 g

*Dimension including the plating thickness
Base material dimension

Figure C.2 FP-64E Package Dimensions

Index

16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit 247
A/D Conversion Time 496
A/D Converter 487
A/D Converter Activation 294
Absolute Address 49
Address Space 28
Addressing Mode 47
ADI 498
Advanced Mode 26
Arithmetic Operations Instructions 39
Asynchronous Mode 369
Bcc 36, 44
Bit Manipulation Instructions 42
Bit rate 362
Block Data Transfer Instruction 46
Boot Mode 517
Boundary Scan 409
Branch Instructions 44
Break 403
Buffer Operation 281
Bulk-In Transfer 470
Bulk-Out Transfer 471
Bus Arbitration 137
Bus cycle 116
Clock Pulse Generator 541
Condition Field 46
Condition-Code Register 32
Control Transfer 463
CPU Operating Modes 24
Data reading procedure 329
Data Transfer Instructions 38
DMA Transfer Specifications 476
Effective Address 47, 51
Effective Address Extension 46
Emulation 526
Erase/Erase-Verify 530
Erasing units 510
Error Protection 532
Exception Handling 67
Extended Control Register (EXR) 31
External Trigger 497
Flash Memory 505
Framing error 375
Free-running count operation 276
General Registers 30
Hardware Protection 532
Immediate 49
Initial Setting Procedure 328
Input Capture Function 278
Instruction Set 36
Internal bus masters 99
Interrupt Control Mode 88
Interrupt Controller 77
Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table 86
Interrupt Mask Bit 32
Interrupt mask level 31
Interrupt priority register 77
Interrupt-In Transfer 469
Interrupts 73
Interval Timer Mode 314
Logic Operations Instructions 41
Mark State 403
Mask ROM 539
Memory cycle 114
Memory Indirect 50
Memory Map 63
NMI Interrupt 85
Normal Mode 24
On-Board Programming 517
Operating Mode Selection 57
Operation Field 46
Overflow 315
Overrun error 375
Parity error 375
Periodic count operation 276
Phase Counting Mode 288
PLL Circuit 549
Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands 472

Program Counter 31
Program/Program-Verify 528
Program-Counter Relative 50
Programmer Mode 533
Programming units 510
Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode 525
PWM Modes 284
Realtime Clock (RTC) 319
Register
ABWCR 102, 579, 585, 593
ADCR 492, 582, 590, 596
ADCSR 490, 582, 590, 596
ADDR 490, 582, 590, 596
ASTCR 103, 579, 585, 593
BCRH 108, 579, 585, 593
BCRL 109, 579, 585, 593
BRR 362, 581, 589, 596
BSCANR 413
BYPASS 413
DMACR 145, 581, 589, 595
EBR1 ..... 514, 582, 590, 596
EBR2 ..... 514, 582, 590, 596
ETCR 144, 579, 586, 594
FLMCR1 ..... 512, 582, 590, 596
FLMCR2 ..... 513, 582, 590, 596
IDCODE 413
IER 81, 578, 584, 592
INSTR 411
IOAR 143, 579, 586, 594
IPR 80, 579, 585, 593
ISCR 82, 578, 584, 592
ISR 84, 578, 584, 592
LPWRCR 543, 578, 584, 592
MAR 143, 579, 586, 594
MDCR 58, 578, 584, 592
MSTPCR 560, 578, 584, 592
P1DDR 194, 578, 584, 592
P1DR 195, 580, 587, 594
P3DDR 201, 578, 584, 592
P3DR 202, 580, 587, 594
P3ODR 203, 578, 585, 593
P7DDR 205, 578, 584, 592
P7DR 206, 580, 587, 594
PADDR 210, 578, 584, 592
PADR 211, 580, 587, 594
PAODR 212, 578, 585, 593
PAPCR 212, 578, 585, 593
PBDDR 216, 578, 584, 592
PBDR 217, 580, 587, 594
PBPCR 218, 578, 585, 593
PCDDR 222, 578, 584, 592
PCDR 222, 580, 587, 594
PCPCR 223, 578, 585, 593
PDDDR 227, 578, 585, 592
PDDR 227, 580, 587, 594
PDPCR 228, 578, 585, 593
PEDDR 231, 578, 585, 592
PEDR 232, 580, 587, 594
PEPCR 233, 578, 585, 593
PFCR 110, 578, 584, 592
PFDDR 237, 578, 585, 592
PFDR 238, 580, 587, 594
PGDDR 242, 578, 585, 592
PGDR 243, 580, 587, 594
PORT1 ..... 195, 582, 590, 597
PORT3 ..... 202, 582, 590, 597
PORT4 ..... 204, 582, 590, 597
PORT7 ..... 207, 582, 590, 597
PORT9 ..... 209, 582, 590, 597
PORTA 211, 582, 590, 597
PORTB 217, 582, 590, 597
PORTC 223, 582, 590, 597
PORTD 228, 582, 590, 597
PORTE 232, 582, 590, 597
PORTF 238, 582, 590, 597
PORTG 243, 582, 590, 597
RAMER 515, 579, 585, 593
RDR 338, 581, 589, 596
RHRDR 322
RMINDR 321, 581, 588, 595
RSECDR 320, 581, 588, 595
RSTCSR 312, 581, 589, 595
RTCCR1 ..... 324, 581, 588, 595
RTCCR2 ..... 325, 581, 588, 595
RTCCSR 326, 581, 588, 595

RWKDR 323, 581, 588, 595
SBYCR 557, 578, 584, 592
SCKCR 542, 578, 584, 592
SCMR 352, 581, 589, 596
SCR 342, 581, 589, 596
SCRX 516, 578, 584, 592
SEMRA_0 ..... 353, 578, 584, 592
SEMRB_0 ..... 355, 578, 584, 592
SMR 339, 581, 589, 596
SSR 346, 581, 589, 596
SYSCR 59, 578, 584, 592
TCNT ..... 271, 310, 580, 581, ... 587, 589, 594, 595
TCR 253, 580, 587, 594
TCSR 310, 581, 589, 595
TDR 338, 581, 589, 596
TGR 271, 580, 587, 594
TIER 267, 580, 587, 594
TIOR 258, 580, 587, 594
TMDR 256, 580, 587, 594
TSR 268, 580, 587, 594
TSTR 271, 579, 585, 593
TSYR 272, 579, 585, 593
UCTLR 429, 576, 583, 591
UCVR 447, 577, 584, 591
UDMAR 431, 576, 583, 591
UDRR 432, 576, 583, 591
UDSR 446, 577, 584, 591
UEDR0i 437, 576, 583, 591
UEDR0o 437, 576, 583, 591
UEDR0s 437, 576, 583, 591
UESTL0 ..... 435, 576, 583, 591
UESTL1 ..... 436, 576, 583, 591
UESZ0o 439, 577, 583, 591
UESZ2 ..... 439, 577, 583, 591
UFCLR0 ..... 434, 576, 583, 591
UIER0 ..... 443, 577, 583, 591
UIER1 ..... 444, 577, 583, 591
UIER3 ..... 444, 577, 583, 591
UIFR0 ..... 439, 577, 583, 591
UIFR1 ..... 441, 577, 583, 591
UIFR3 ..... 442, 577, 583, 591
UISR0 ..... 445, 577, 583, 591
UISR1 ..... 445, 577, 583, 591
UISR3 ..... 446, 577, 583, 591
UTRG0 ..... 433, 576, 583, 591
UTSTR0 ..... 448, 577, 584, 592
UTSTR1 ..... 449, 577, 584, 592
WCRH 104, 579, 585, 593
WCRL 104, 579, 585, 593
Register Direct 48
Register Field 46
Register Indirect 48
Register Indirect with Displacement 48
Register Indirect with Post-Increment 48
Register indirect with pre-decrement 48
Reset 69
Reset exception handling 70
Scan Mode 495
Serial Communication Interface 333
Shift Instructions 41
Single Mode 494
Software Protection 532
Stack pointer (SP) 30
Stack Status 75
Stall Operations 473
Suspend and Resume 460
Synchronous Operation 279
System Control Instruction 45
TCI0V 293
TCI1U 293
TCI1V 293
TCI2U 293
TCI2V 293
TGI0A 293
TGI0B 293
TGI0C 293
TGI0D 293
TGI1A 293
TGI1B 293
TGI2A 293
TGI2B 293
Toggle output 278
Trace Bit 31
Traces 73
Trap Instruction 74

TRAPA 49, 74
Universal Serial Bus 425
USB Cable Connection/Disconnection ... 456
Watchdog timer 309
Waveform Output by Compare Match 277
WOVI 315

H8S/2218 Series H8S/2212 Series Hardware Manual

Publication Date: 1st Edition, February 2003
Published by: Business Operation Division
Semiconductor & Integrated Circuits
Hitachi, Ltd.
Edited by: Technical Documentation Group
Hitachi Kodaira Semiconductor Co., Ltd.
Copyright © Hitachi, Ltd., 2003. All rights reserved. Printed in Japan.